

*Alexander* having thus quell'd his *Rebellious Subjects* with more Cruelty than became a common Father, or a good Priest, fell into a languishing Distemper which afflicted him for the rest of his Days; yet did he not desist making War upon his Neighbours until the Hour of his Death, which happen'd at the Siege of *Ragaba*, a Castle situated in the Land of the *Gerasens* beyond the River *Jordan*, after a cruel and bloody Reign of twenty seven Years, leaving two Sons after him, call'd *Hircanius* and *Aristobulus*, to whom yet he did not leave the Administration of his Kingdom, but to his Wife whose Name was *Alexandra*; and advis'd her to conceal his Death from the Soldiers till the Castle was taken, then to adhere to the sentiments of the *Pharisees*, as being the Men who carry'd the greatest Sway among the People, and the best able to support her in Case of any Rebellion or Disturbance; giving her also to understand that all the Cruelties, which he was oblig'd to exercise, proceeded from his not following the Advice of these Men.

*Josephus lib.*  
13. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 23.

*Alexandra* took care to follow this wholesome Advice: So having taken the Castle she return'd in Triumph to *Jerusalem*, and then expos'd the Dead Body of the King, producing his Last Will, by which he had constituted her Administratrix of the Kingdom during her Life. Then she sent for the Ringleaders of the *Pharisees* and deliver'd the Corps of the King up to them, desiring they wou'd use it as they pleas'd, in order to expiate the Guilt of all the Blood which he had spilt, and protesting that she wou'd follow their Advice in the Administration of the Government, and stand by them in all their Undertakings. The *Pharisees* seeing themselves thus caress'd by the Queen, instead of abusing the Kings Corps, as was expected, decreed him an honourable Funeral, declaring that all the Blood he had spilt was necessary, and for the good of the Kingdom.

Things being thus settled, and the King's Corps interr'd suitable to his Dignity, *Alexandra* declar'd her eldest Son *Hircanius* High Priest, not so much for his being the first Born, as that he was of a sluggish Indolent Nature; and as to her second Son *Aristobulus*, perceiving that he was of a turbulent haughty Spirit, apt to undertake any thing, tho' never so desperate, she caus'd him to lead a private Life, and made use of the *Pharisees* in the Administration of the Government; which so well succeeded, that she had little or no Disturbance in the whole Course of her Reign: For these *Hypocrites* carrying in their Countenance an exteriour shew of Sanctity did so lull the People asleep, that they swallow'd all their Words and Precepts as so many Oracles. *Alexandra* having thus reign'd for nine Years in great Tranquility, fell into a grievous sickness whereof she dy'd: But a little before her Death, *Aristobulus* her second Son, being Ambitious of succeeding her to the prejudice of his Elder Brother, whom he despis'd as a sluggish lazy Man unfit for Governing; and perceiving that the *Pharisees* were not of his side, concluded that he must make his Way to the Crown by open Force: He therefore rais'd a Tumult in the City, sided with, and headed all the *Malecontents*, whereof the *Pharisees* had made a great many, cruelly punishing such as they had a Spleen to, or wou'd not give into their Measures; and by this Means having possess'd himself of twenty Forts or strong Castles in fifteen Days time, led a considerable Army towards *Jerusalem* in order to wrest the Crown out of his Brother's Hands, who had been, by this time, proclaim'd King of *Judea*.

*Josephus lib.*  
13. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 24.

*Josephus lib.*  
14. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 1.

This civil War did sorely vex the *Jews* for the space of three Years: At last the two Brothers came to a decisive Battle in the Plains of *Jericho*, in which



which *Hircanus* was defeated, by the defection of the greatest Part of his Army, and himself forc'd to fly into the Tower of *Jerusalem*, the rest of his Soldiers taking Sanctuary in the Precincts of the Temple: But these did soon Surrender themselves to *Aristobulus*, who lost no time in pursuing his Blow. *Hircanus* seeing himself abandon'd by all the World, concluded that his best way was to yield to the Times, and submit to Fortune: Accordingly he consented that his Brother shou'd Reign, and himself be content, or rather necessitated to lead a private Life, which indeed he wou'd have done, for the rest of his Days, had not a certain Man call'd *Antipater* excited him to stir up new Broils in the Kingdom.

Josephus lib.  
14. Antiquit.  
Cap. 2.

This *Antipater* was the Father of *Herod*, in whose Reign our LORD JESUS CHRIST was born in *Bethlehem*; he was an *Idumean* by Descent, of the Race of the Sons of *Esau*, the Patriarch *Isaac*'s eldest Son; was made Governour of *Idumea* by *Alexander* the Father of *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus*, a little after he had subdu'd that Nation; and being of a Turbulent Factious Spirit, he endeavour'd to perswade *Hircanus* to leave *Judea*, and put himself under the Protection of *Aretas* the King of the *Arabs*; alledging that his Brother *Aristobulus* did design to kill him. *Hircanus* being a quiet Innocent Man, wou'd not for a long time give Credit to the Words of *Antipater*, but *Antipater* still urging the Danger of his Life, and assuring him of the King of the *Arabs* his Protection, he at last consented to leave the Kingdom. So he and *Antipater* set out from *Jerusalem* by Night, and went to *Aretas*, who receiv'd them very civilly.

Josephus lib.  
14. Antiquit.  
Cap. 3.

This Prince, at the Instigation of *Antipater*, who by large Sums of Money had brib'd his Counsellors, promis'd *Hircanus* he wou'd restore him to his Kingdom, provided he wou'd give him up the twelve Cities, which his Father *Alexander* had taken from him. This being readily agreed to by *Hircanus*, *Aretas* rais'd a Powerful Army, march'd into *Judea*, and having join'd Battle with *Aristobulus*, defeated his Army, and forc'd himself to fly unto *Jerusalem*; whither *Aretas* with all his Troops pursu'd him, and being join'd by a great many of *Aristobulus* his Army, who came over to *Hircanus*, besieg'd him in the Temple.

Josephus lib.  
14. Antiquit.  
Cap. 4.

About this time *Pompey* being taken up with the War which the Romans made upon *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, sent a great Officer call'd *Emilius Scaurus*, to take Possession of *Damascus* in *Syria*, which was a little before reduc'd to a Province of the Roman Empire by *Metellus* and *Lollius*. This *Scaurus* coming to *Damascus*, and hearing that *Jerusalem* had been besieg'd by *Aretas* King of the *Arabs*, he March'd with some Troops towards *Judea*. *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus* hearing of the March of *Scaurus*, sent Ambassadors to him to bribe his Friendship; each promising him four hundred Talents. *Scaurus* being well inform'd of the Character of *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus*, and believing the latter the better able and the more willing to pay so great a Sum, chose rather to side with him. So having receiv'd *Aristobulus* his Money, he sent Ambassadors to *Aretas*, charging him to depart forthwith from before *Jerusalem*, else he shou'd be declar'd an Enemy to the Romans. *Aretas* finding himself unable to cope with this Powerful Common-wealth, which, by this time, had subdu'd almost all *Asia*, immediately rais'd the Siege and departed from *Jerusalem*. *Aristobulus* hereupon pursues him, and being reforc'd by a considerable Number of Troops, join'd Battle with him and *Hircanus* at a Place call'd *Papyro*, and defeated them both, killing seven Thousand of their Men in the Field of Battle, among which was *Cephalion* *Antipater*'s Brother.

About



About this time *Pompey*, having finish'd the War with *Tigranes*, came to *Damascus* in *Syria*, and being complimented by the *Syrians* and *Egyptians* with sweet Words and Presents, receiv'd Ambassadors from *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus*, accusing one another, and making him *Arbiter* of their differences. *Pompey* order'd them both to appear in Person before him, not with a Design to make up their Quarrel, but, as it usually happens on the like Occasion, to deprive them both of the Kingdom about which they contended. *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus* however came to *Pompey*. *Hircanus* alledg'd, that he being the First born, the Crown of *Judea*, which his younger Brother *Aristobulus* had unjustly usurped, did by Right devolve upon him. On the other side *Aristobulus* pleaded, that his Elder Brother *Hircanus* being a simple Man, and next degree to a Natural, was unfit to Govern; and therefore ought to be excluded as wanting those Qualities necessarily requir'd in a Prince to Rule a Kingdom, citing many Presidents of Elder Brothers, who had been excluded for the like Cause.

*Josephus lib.*  
14. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 5.

*Pompey* heard them both with a pleasant Air, promising to visit them in *Judea* in a short time, and to determine their Difference, and charging them, in the mean time to live peaceably together, and to leave the Affairs of *Judea* in *Statu quo*, until he should go thither. *Hircanus* seemed to be well satisfy'd with these Words of *Pompey*, and therefore withdrew, doing nothing that might give offence: But *Aristobulus*, who saw into his Heart, returned to a City call'd *Deinum*; put it into a posture of Defence, and then went into *Judea*. *Pompey* being inform'd hereof, took this occasion to fall out with *Aristobulus*; and having gathered together his Auxiliary Troops, and the Roman Legions, March'd against him, taking, in his way, a City call'd *Corcas*, situated upon the Coasts of the *Mediterranean Sea*, being the uttermost Bounds of *Judea* on that side; and understanding that *Aristobulus* had shut himself up in a strong Castle, seated on a Hill near the said City, sent Messengers requiring him to appear before him. *Aristobulus* was very unwilling to give himself up, but being advis'd by his Friends not to exasperate *Pompey*, considering how little able he was to make his Party good, he came before him; and after some Conferences, in which *Aristobulus* promis'd to obey all *Pompey's* Commands, *Pompey* permitted him to go to *Jerusalem*.

*Josephus lib.*  
14. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 6.

*Aristobulus* being come to *Jerusalem* and perceiving by *Pompey's* Words and Deeds, that he design'd to strip him of his Crown, resolv'd to undertake an open War against him; but he no sooner understood that *Pompey* was on his March towards *Jerusalem*, than he repented and came, in an humble Manner to him, begging his Pardon, and promising to open the Gates of *Jerusalem* for him, as also to give him a considerable Sum of Money. *Pompey* hereupon kept *Aristobulus* in his Camp, and sent *Gabinus* one of his Officers with some Soldiers to *Jerusalem* to receive the Money: But *Aristobulus* his Party in the City wou'd not give the Money to *Gabinus*. So he came back re-infect'd. *Pompey* being hereupon in great Rage, put *Aristobulus* in Chains, and March'd with his whole Army towards *Jerusalem*. This occasion'd a great Consternation in the City: Those that were of *Aristobulus* his Party determining to defend the Town, and those that adhered to *Hircanus*, resolving to open the Gates for him. When *Aristobulus* his Party found that all the Inhabitants wou'd not agree to defend the Town, they retir'd into the Precincts of the Temple, broke down the Bridge that was between the City and it, and resolv'd to make good the Temple against *Pompey*: But *Hircanus* his Party open'd the Gates, and receiv'd the Roman Army

*Josephus lib.*  
14. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 7.

*Josephus lib.*  
14. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 8.



Army into the City. *Pompey* perceiving the Obstinacy of *Aristobulus* his Party, rais'd immediately Moles and Warlike Engins, and batter'd the Walls with such Fury and Vigour, that one of the Towers, which defended the Temple, falling down, the *Romans* enter'd the Breach, took the Temple, and put twelve Thousand *Jews* to the Sword. Then *Pompey* went into the Temple, and beheld that which was not lawful for any Man to see, (except the Priests) viz. the Holy of Holies : And having found therein the Sacred Vessels, the golden Table, the Cups and Candlesticks ; and in the Treasury about two Thousand Talents ; yet, out of Veneration to the Place, he did not touch or take away any thing : On the contrary, he restor'd *Hircanus* to the Office of High Priest, as well for the good Offices he had done him, as that the most part of the Inhabitants of *Judea* did not, at the Request of *Hircanus*, carry Arms against him. However he took from *Judea* all the Towns and Cities which the *Jews* had lately conquer'd from the Nations round about them, and restor'd them to their respective Provinces ; made *Judea* it self a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and exacted from the *Jews* more than ten Thousand Talents in Hand, and a yearly Tribute from the Temple, over and above the Tribute which he put the whole Country under. Thus did that unfortunate Nation, by the Contention of *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus*, lose at last their Liberty, so as not to recover it to this Day, and their Kingdom and Royalties, which were in the Hands of their High Priests, devolv'd upon Strangers, Men that were not of the Race of *Jacob*, as we shall see hereafter.

*Pompey* having subdu'd *Judea*, left *Scaurus* to Command all the Forces and Countries from *Calesyria* unto the Coasts of *Egypt*, and return'd to *Rome*, carrying *Aristobulus* with him in Chains, with two of his Sons, and as many of his Daughters, to grace his Triumph. All this while *Antipater* stood by *Hircanus* the High Priest, and by his Prudent Management and subtle Policy, gain'd the good Graces of *Pompey* and *Scaurus* : But this he did, not out of any Love or Affection for *Hircanus* ; or the *Jewish* Nation ; but to Work out his Way to the Supream Power, as we shall see by and by.

*Josephus* lib.  
14. Antiquit.  
Cap. 9.

*Scaurus* being intrusted with the care of all the Provinces from *Calesyria* unto *Egypt*, determin'd to make War upon *Aretas* King of the *Arabs* ; and having March'd his Army into the Deserts of *Arabia*, was put to great straits for want of Water and Provision in this barren Land. *Antipater*, who kept always near *Hircanus*, and had his Ear, being inform'd of the Distress of the *Roman* Army, came to *Scaurus* by the Command of *Hircanus*, (or rather he himself advising the same) with Provision and all sorts of Refreshments ; and even went as Ambassador from *Scaurus* to *Aretas*, with whom he so well Negotiated the Matter, that *Aretas* paid *Scaurus* three hundred Talents to save the Plundering of his Country ; and so a Peace was concluded to the great Satisfaction of *Scaurus*, and Credit of *Antipater*.

*Josephus* lib.  
14. Antiquit.  
Cap. 10.

When *Aristobulus* was led in Chains to *Rome*, as was said before, with two of his Sons, his third Son whose Name was *Alexander*, having escap'd the Hands of *Pompey*, remain'd lurking in *Judea* at this time ; and being encourag'd by many of the *Jews*, who cou'd not bear the Yoke and Bondage of the *Romans*, he made up an Army of ten Thousand Foot and one Thousand five hundred Horse, and ran over a great Part of *Judea*, taking many Cities and Fortresses, among others the strong Castle call'd *Alexandrium* near the City *Corcas*.

About



About this time, *Gabinus* the Pro-consul came from *Rome* to *Syria*, in order to command in chief all the *Asiatick* Provinces, having in his Army the famous *Mark Anthony* as one of his Lieutenant-Generals. Him *Gabinus* sent with some Troops to quell *Alexander*, and being join'd by *Hircanus* and *Antipater*, their Forces, gave Battle to *Alexander*, and slew three Thousand of his Men in the Field, took as many more Prisoners, and forc'd himself to fly into his strong Castle *Alexandrium*; whither also *Gabinus* with all his Army pursu'd him. *Alexander* seeing the impossibility of resisting the *Romans*, got his Mother to intercede for him to *Gabinus*, who in Consideration of her Tears, and of the Calamity of her Husband *Aristobulus*, and of the rest of her Children, cou'd refuse her nothing that was reasonable. So she obtain'd *Alexander's* Pardon, and he deliver'd the Cities which he had taken to *Gabinus*. Then *Gabinus* having gone over all the Country went to *Jerusalem*, and divided all the Land that was formerly in the Possession of the *Jews*, into five Provinces, appointing a President or chief Ruler over each Province; which Division continu'd (bating a little alteration) unto the Days of *St. John the Baptist*, and gives light to that Passage of *St. Luke*, Cap. 3. Vers. 1, 2, 3. Now in the fifteenth Year of the Reign of *Tiberius Cæsar*, *Pontius Pilate* being Governour of *Judea*, and *Herod* being Tetrarch of *Galilee*, &c.

Soon after these things, *Aristobulus* finding means to steal away from *Rome*, came into *Judea*, and having gather'd some Troops endeavour'd to retake *Alexandrium*, and some other Fortresses, but in vain; for he was defeated by the *Romans*, taken and sent back in Chains to *Rome*, together with his Son *Antigonus* who had accompany'd him in his flight; where he remain'd unto the Days of *Julius Cæsar*, but all his Children were set at Liberty by the Senate upon sight of the Letters of *Gabinus* the Pro-consul, who declar'd he had promis'd their Mother, that they shou'd have their Liberty upon the surrender made by *Alexander* of the Cities and Castles which he possess'd. This same *Alexander*, notwithstanding his own and his Father's Calamities, wou'd not be at rest: For as soon as he found that the *Roman* Legions were employ'd in *Egypt*, he rose up in Arms, and oppress'd all the small *Roman* Garrisons he cou'd meet with in *Judea*; nay, had the assurance to join Battle with *Gabinus* the *Roman* Pro-consul: But was defeated with the loss of ten Thousand of his best Men.

*Gabinus* being recall'd was succeeded by *Marcus Crassus* in the Government of *Asia*. This *Crassus* resolving to make War upon the *Parthians*, led his Army to *Jerusalem*, making that his Way; and being come into the City, Plunder'd the Treasury of the Temple, taking away thence ten Thousand Talents, and a golden Beam, which *Eleazar* one of the Priests had in his Custody, and which he offer'd to *Crassus*, on Condition he shou'd forbear touching the Sacred Treasure: But tho' *Pompey* wou'd not meddle with this Treasure, out of Piety, and in respect to the Sacred Place where it lay; yet *Crassus* took all, and even the golden Beam, which was offer'd him as a Ransom for the Treasure, and which might have been conceal'd from him. But he soon paid for his Impiety: For having join'd Battle with the *Parthians*, he lost the Field and his Life: Leaving *Caius Cassius* to make the best of his Way with his scatter'd Forces back to *Syria*.

About this time *Julius Cæsar* possess'd himself of *Rome*, set *Aristobulus* at Liberty, and sent him with two Legions into *Judea* in order to reduce that Province to his Subjection; but before he cou'd arrive there he was poyson'd by some of *Pompey's* Party, and his Son *Alexander's* Head was

*Josephus lib. 14. Antiquit. Cap. 11.*

*Josephus lib. 14. Antiquit. Cap. 13.*



cut off at *Antioch* by Order of *Pompey*, for carrying Arms against the Romans.

*Ptolomy Meneus* a certain great Lord who dwelt at a Place call'd *Chalcis* on Mount *Libanus*, being inform'd of the fatal Catastrophe of *Aristobulus* and of his Son *Alexander*, sent his own Son, whose Name was *Philip*, out of pure Pitty and Compassion to *Aristobulus* his Wife, and pray'd her to send him her Children, and that he wou'd take care of them. Accordingly, *Antigonus* her eldest Son, and *Alexandra* her Daughter and the rest of her Children being sent to *Chalcis*, *Ptolomy* took care of them, and Marry'd his Son *Philip* to *Alexandra*.

Josephus lib.  
14. Antiquit.  
Cap. 13.

After the Battle of *Pharsalia* and the Death of *Pompey*, *Julius Caesar* determin'd to invade *Egypt*, and *Antipater*, who had before insinuated himself into *Pompey's* Favour, began now to adore the rising Sun : He therefore join'd himself to *Caesar's* Party, and drew *Hircanus* into his Sentiments, which was of great Consequence to *Caesar* : For when *Mithridates* came with his Auxiliary Troops as far as *Pelusium* in order to join the Romans, and the Inhabitants of the City had shut their Gates against him, *Antipater* came to him with three Thousand *Jews* well Arm'd, and even gain'd so far upon the *Arabians*, and the great Lords of Mount *Libanus*, that they also join'd him with their Troops; so that what with the Address and Conduct of *Antipater*, and the vigorous Attack made upon the Town, it was soon carry'd, and all these Forces join'd the Romans which facilitated very much the Conquest of *Egypt*.

Josephus lib.  
14. Antiquit.  
Cap. 16, 17,  
18, 19.

*Julius Caesar* being inform'd by *Mithridates* of the great Care and Industry of *Antipater*, and how much he was Instrumental in the Reduction of *Egypt*, commended him highly, and when he came to *Syria* conferr'd a great many Favours upon him, making him a Citizen of *Rome*, Governour of *Judea*, and President of whatsoever Province in *Syria* he shou'd pitch upon; as also confirming *Hircanus* in the Office of High Priest in *Jerusalem*, for his sake. *Antipater* being thus rais'd to the highest Pitch of Honour and Power that a Subject cou'd reasonably wish for, took care to settle Matters so as that his Children shou'd inherit his Fortune. He had four Sons by his Wife *Cypris*, an *Idumcan*, as he was himself, *Phasaclius*, *Herod*, *Joseph*, *Pheroras*, and a Daughter call'd *Salome*. *Phasaclius* he made Governour of *Jerusalem*, and *Herod*, tho' but very Young, President of *Galilee*. *Herod* soon discover'd his ill Nature, for having taken a certain great Robber Nam'd *Ezechias*, he put him to Death, tho' all Capital Crimes were reserv'd to the Kings and the Senate : Being call'd to Question for this, he appear'd before the great Council in *Jerusalem*, attended with Guards and arm'd Men, as if he had been King, and by the Favour of *Sextus Caesar* President of *Syria*, eluded the Judgment of the Council. In some time after, being made Governour of *Cælesyria* by the said *Sextus*, he resolv'd to revenge that Affront with arm'd Force; so that he wou'd have invaded *Jerusalem* with Fire and Sword, had not his Father and his Brethren, with Prayers and Tears diverted him from it.

About this time *Julius Caesar* went back to *Rome*, and being highly pleas'd with *Antipater* and *Hircanus* for their good Offices, he publish'd an Edict in favour of the *Jews*, by which he confirm'd *Hircanus* and his Children, not only in the Office of High Priests, but also made them as it were perpetual Rulers and Governours of *Jerusalem*, giving them Power to determine all Matters relating to their own Laws and Discipline, and exempting all the *Jews* from several Cesses and Tributes before impos'd upon them.



them. But *Antipater* did not live long to enjoy the Fruits of these Favours : For a certain Friend of *Hircanus* call'd *Malichus* poyson'd him. His Son *Herod* being at this time Governour of *Cælesyria*, reveng'd his Father's Death by that of *Malichus* ; and understanding that *Antigonus* the Son of *Aristobulus* late King of *Judea* took an Occasion hence to rise in Arms, being back'd by *Fabius*, *Ptolomy*, and *Marion* Governour of *Tyre*, he defeated him in Battle, and forc'd him to leave the Country. This last Act of *Herod* was so agreeable to *Hircanus* the High Priest, that he gave him his Niece the famous *Mariamne*, the Daughter of *Alexander*, the Son of *Aristobulus*, to Wife. By this means *Herod* was ally'd to the Royal Blood of the *Assamonean* Family, tho' he was himself an *Idumean* by Descent. But *Herod* did not at this time Marry *Mariamne*, being content to be only Contracted to her, until the weighty Affairs he had upon his Hands shou'd permit him to solemnize his Marriage in a Splendid Manner.

*Josephus* lib. 14. Antiquit. Cap. 20.

*Josephus* lib. 14. Antiquit. Cap. 21.

*Julius Cæsar* being Murder'd in the Senate House by *Brutus* and *Cassius*, the Romans were mightily divided ; most of the Senators and some of the Army standing by the Assassins ; but the greater Part of the said Army adhering to *Octavius Cæsar*, *Julius Cæsar*'s Nephew, and to *Mark Anthony*. While these Divisions lasted, there was a bloody Battle fought at *Philipi*, a City in *Macedonia*, between *Cassius* and *Brutus* on the one side, and *Octavius Cæsar*, and *Mark Anthony* on the other, which determin'd the Fate of the Roman Common-wealth, and made it ever after a Monarchy. For *Brutus* and *Cassius* being defeated and slain ; *Mark Anthony* took upon him the Government of the Eastern Part of the Empire, and *Octavius Cæsar* that of the West ; and tho' the Common-wealth held the Ancient Form during the Contention of *Octavius Cæsar* and *Mark Anthony*, yet upon the Death of the latter, the former took all the Power to himself, so as that the *Senatus populusque Romanus*, was but a meer Cypher ever after.

*Herod*, who, it seems, had learnt from his Father to Adore the Rising Sun, hearing that *Mark Anthony* had got *Asia* for his Portion, came to him, and wrought so effectually with Money and flattering Words upon him, that he wou'd not hear any thing to the Prejudice of him or his Brother *Phasaelus*, tho' the chief of the *Jews* had deputed some of their Body to accuse them both of Enormous Crimes : On the contrary, when *Mark Anthony* came to *Syria*, where he unfortunately saw the celebrated *Cleopatra*, and fell in Love with her, he not only acquitted *Herod* and his Brother of the Accusations brought by an hundred of the chief among the *Jews* against them, but also constituted them both Tetrarchs, one of *Judea* and the other of *Galilee* ; and caus'd most of their Accusers to be put to Death.

*Josephus* lib. 14. Antiquit. Cap. 23.

*Herod* and his Brother *Phasaelus* being thus Establish'd in *Judea* and *Galilee* by the Authority of *Mark Anthony*, were soon after violently tossed, and driven out of their Principalities : For *Antigonus*, the Son of *Alexander*, being by *Herod* driven out of *Judea*, as aforesaid, apply'd himself to the King of the *Parthians* ; and upon Promise of giving the said King a Thousand Talents, and five hundred *Jewish* Virgins, he was furnish'd with a formidable Army, wherewith he invaded *Judea*, took and plunder'd *Jerusalem*, put *Hircanus* the High Priest, and *Phasaelus* *Herod*'s Brother in Irons, and possess'd himself of the High Priesthood, and of the Kingdom ; *Herod* with much difficulty escaping his Hands, and flying first to *Egypt*, and afterwards to *Rome*. Then *Antigonus* cut off the Ears of *Hircanus* the High Priest, his own Grand-Uncle, that he might no more be capable of exercising the Office of High Priest, and *Phasaelus*, lest he shou'd be abus'd

*Josephus* lib. 14. Antiquit. Cap. 24.



by *Antigonus* struck his Head against the Walls of the Prison, and dash'd out his Brains.

*Josephus lib.*  
12. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 27, 28.

*Antigonus* was not well settled in his new acquir'd Kingdom when he was exceedingly disturb'd : For when *Herod* was come to *Rome*, and had expos'd the Miserable Condition to which he and his Family were reduc'd, not only *Mark Anthony*, but even *Octavius Caesar*, took so much Pitty of him, that they created him King of *Judea*, clothed him with Royal Robes, put a Crown on his Head, and afterwards sent him back to *Judea* ordering eleven *Roman* Legions to assist him in the recovery of his Kingdom. With these Troops and others that join'd him. *Herod* made War upon *Antigonus* for three Years, and having taken many Cities and Castles, he at last besieg'd *Jerusalem*, took it and sent *Antigonus* in Chains to *Mark Anthony*, who, to gratify *Herod*, caus'd his Head to be cut off at *Antioch*.

*Josephus lib.*  
13. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 1.

*Herod* being now settled and fix'd in his Kingdom, went to *Samaria*, and Celebrated his Marriage with *Mariamne*, who had been long before betroth'd to him. This Ceremony being over, he sent for Poor Old *Hircanus* his good Friend, who had been carry'd away by the *Parthians*, but being unfit for the Office of High Priest, by reason of his great Age and the loss of his Ears, he made *Aristobulus*, Brother to *Mariamne*, Nephew to *Hircanus*, and the last (beside *Hircanus*) of the Race of the *Assamonean*, High Priest, instead of *Ananelus* whom he had depos'd. But the Wickedness and Jealousie of *Herod* did not suffer *Aristobulus* to enjoy long this Dignity ; for, in the first Year of his Pontificate, as he was bathing himself in a Pond near *Herod's* Palace, this Impious King caus'd one of his own Servants to hold his Head, as it were in a Joke, under Water, till he was stifled.

*Josephus lib.*  
13. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 2.

*Josephus lib.*  
13. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 3.

This villainous Act did so exasperate *Alexandra* the Mother of *Aristobulus*, and all the good *Jews* against *Herod*, whom they otherwise mortally hated, as being an *Idumean* both by Father and Mother, that she prevailed upon *Cleopatra* to cause *Mark Anthony* to cite *Herod* to appear before him, to give an account of the Death of *Aristobulus*, and what share he had in it : But *Herod* easily eluded all their Endeavours, being always very much esteem'd and favour'd by that Emperor ; and upon his return Home, caus'd his own Uncle call'd *Joseph* to be murder'd, because he had revealed his Secrets to his Wife *Mariamne*, whom he had order'd him to kill, in case *Mark Anthony* shou'd take away his Life ; out of Envy, I suppose, lest any other Man shou'd enjoy so fine a Woman.

*Josephus lib.*  
13. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 4.

*Josephus lib.*  
13. *Antiquit.*  
Cap. 6.

Soon after these Broils in *Judea*, *Octavius Caesar* began to grow jealous of the growing Greatness of *Mark Anthony* ; and the matter was carry'd to that height, that either the one or the other must fall. In a Word, *Cleopatra* wou'd be *Caesar aut nullus*, and *Mark Anthony* was of the same Mind. *Herod* being always highly favour'd by *Mark Anthony*, and seeing him now upon the point of winning or losing all, offer'd him his Service and all his Troops : But *Mark Anthony* thank'd him, as judging his own Legions and Power sufficient to deal with *Caesar*. And only prayed him to turn his Arms against the *Arabs*, who had refused to pay their usual Tribute. *Herod* readily undertook this Expedition to gratify *Mark Anthony*, and to spare him the Troops he shou'd have imploy'd in the same. In the first Conflict with the *Arabs*, *Herod* had the better ; but in the second he was quite overthrown, losing the Field of Battle, and the best of his Troops. In some time after, *Herod* having recruited his Army, joined Battle with the Enemy, and gave them so great an Overthrow that such as remained alive submitted themselves to his Mercy.

*Herod*



*Herod* having thus happily finish'd the War with the *Arabs*, return'd in Triumph to *Jerusalem*, to the great joy of all his well Withers : But he had not as yet enter'd the City when the doleful News was brought him of *Cæsar's* Victory over *Mark Anthony* in a Sea Fight, over-against a place call'd *Actium*, importing moreover, that *Mark Anthony* had, in despair, laid violent Hands upon himself, that his beloved *Cleopatra* had poyson'd herself, and that *Cæsar* was now in Possession of all the *Roman* Empire without a Competitor. This woful account put *Herod* into great Consternation, being sensible, that as he had espous'd *Mark Anthony's* Cause, so he and all his Family shou'd, in all likelihood follow his Fate. However he put on the best Countenance, and determin'd to go meet *Cæsar*. But before he set out, he resolv'd to take Old *Hircanus* out of the Way, concluding that he being the last of the *Assamonean* Family, none else wou'd lay any Claim to the Crown or Government of *Judea*, and that consequently some of his own Family must succeed, in Case *Cæsar* shou'd take away his Life. He therefore (to give a colour to so wicked a Deed) counterfeited Letters, as written from *Hircanus* to the King of the *Arabs*, and from the King of the *Arabs* to him, importing that *Hircanus* made large Offers to the said King for his Assistance in recovering the Inheritance of his Ancestors, and the Promises of the same King to help and assist him. 'Tis true *Nicholaus Damascenus* says, that in Effect *Hircanus* had Written such Letters to the King of the *Arabs*, and the King of the *Arabs* to him; and that they were all intercepted by *Herod*. But it is well known, *Nicholaus Damascenus* was too great a Flatterer to be believ'd in what he Writes in favour of *Herod*. However *Hircanus* was put to Death by *Herod* at the Age of fourscore and odd Years, without any other Crime than those pretended Letters. He Rul'd as King and chief Governour of the *Jews*, and, a great Part of the time, as High Priest, in all forty Years. In him fail'd the Line of the *Assamonean* Family, and by his Death the Scepter was taken from the Family of *Jacob*, and possess'd by a Stranger, partly as a Judgment from Heaven upon him, for his Countenancing that Impious Stranger *Antipater* and his Son *Herod*; and partly, or rather chiefly to let the *Jews* understand that the coming of the MESSIAS (the Lion of the Tribe of *Juda*, who was to resume the Scepter of *David*, and to Reign over the House of *Jacob* for ever, not in a Carnal or Temporal, but in a Spiritual and Divine Manner) was at Hand, Pursuant to the Prophecie of *Jacob*, *The Scepter shall not depart from Juda, nor a Captain from his Loins, until he that is to be sent (the MESSIAS) shall come.* Gen. 49. 10.

*Josephus* lib. 15. Antiquit. Cap. 9.

*Herod* having thus dispatch'd *Hircanus* being apprehensive that his Wife *Mariamne* and her Mother *Alexandra* might in his Absence raise new Troubles upon the Death of their Uncle *Hircanus*, caus'd them both to be shut up in the strong Castle call'd *Alexandrium*, giving them in Charge to the Governour of the said Castle, with Orders to put them to Death in Case *Cæsar* shou'd take away his Life; and then went by Sea to *Rhodes* to meet *Cæsar*. Being come in his Presence, he took off his Diadem, but kept on all other Marks of Royalty, and far from cringing or falling down to beg Pardon, as was expected, he boldly told *Cæsar*, that he was indeed *Mark Anthony's* Friend, that he gave him all the Assistance he cou'd, and that, if it depended of him, he shou'd be the Emperor of the World; but since Providence had otherwise decreed, and that Fortune had allotted the Empire of the World for *Cæsar*, he came to submit to him, and to assure him, he might by his Faithful Adherence to *Mark Anthony* to the last, because he gave him his Word and Honour, be convinc'd he wou'd as faithfully serve him

*Josephus* lib. 15. Antiquit. Cap. 10.



him upon the same Word and Honour. *Cæsar*, who delighted very much in Men of Courage and Resolution, was so well pleas'd with the Boldness and Assurance of *Herod*, that he immediately receiv'd him into Favour, confirming upon him the Kingdom of *Judea*, and all the Immunities which *Mark Anthony* had granted to him, and to his People; and when he had taken Possession of *Egypt*, added to his Kingdom the Cities of *Gadara*, *Hippon* and *Samaria*, and the Sea-Port Towns of *Gaza*, *Anthenedon*, *Joppa*, and the strong Castle call'd, in those Days, *Turris Stratonis*.

One wou'd think that *Herod* might now sit down in Peace, and Consult the Interest of his People; but this was the time he pitch'd upon to exercise his greatest Cruelty, because he might do it without Controul. In a Word, all the rest of his Reign (bating that he rebuilt the Temple in *Jerusalem* from the Foundation, and made it more Glorious than that of *Zorobabel*, as *Josephus* informs us, *lib. 15. Ant. Cap. 14.* and *lib. 6. de Bello Judaico Cap. 6. and 16.*) was almost one continu'd Series of Slaughter and Blood-shed, perpetrated upon his Wife, Friends, Relations and Children; so Cruel was his Nature and so Wicked his Principles. Upon his return from *Antioch* whither he waited upon *Cæsar*, *Mariamne* being inform'd of the cruel Orders he had given to *Joseph* the Governour of *Alexandrium* to kill her and her Mother, did not receive him with her usual Tenderness; he therefore caus'd her immediately to be put to Death, killing in her Person the most Chaste and Beautiful Woman that *Judea* in many Ages had produc'd. Soon after, he caus'd her Mother *Alexandra* to be kill'd on a Groundless Suspicion of Treason: Then he gave the Reins to the Rage of his Cruelty against his own Friends: For he imbru'd his Hands in the Blood of *Costobarus* his Sister's Husband, of *Lycimachus*, *Antipater*, and *Desithews*, Men that were always Zealous for his Interest and true Friends to him; as also in that of all the Relations and Kindred of *Hircanus*, that had escap'd his former Cruelties: And not Content herewith, he introduc'd Pagan Idolatry and Superstition into the Land: For he instituted Games and Theatrical Spectacles every fifth Year in Honour of *Cæsar*, erected a Publick Theatre in *Jerusalem* and planted upon it the Standard and Image of *Cæsar*, built a City in the Place where the Castle call'd *Turris Stratonis* was, and call'd it *Cæsarea*; erected Temples and Altars in it, and in other Cities, and set up in *Cæsarea* the Idol of *Jupiter Olympus*: And such of the poor *Jews*, (who had retain'd any Zeal for the GOD of *Israel*) as durst Murmur or Complain of these Abominations, were sure to be immediately sent to the other World. Nay, his own Children cou'd not escape his Cruelty. The Chaste and Beautiful *Mariamne* had two Sons by him, call'd *Alexander* and *Aristobulus*. These Young Men were falsely accus'd by a certain Wicked Man nam'd *Hurycles*, as if they had design'd to raise new Troubles in the Kingdom. *Herod* being Apprehensive, lest he shou'd offend *Cæsar*, if he had put his own Children to Death, complain'd to him of the Undutifulness of *Alexander* and *Aristobulus* his own Sons, letting forth, that they design'd to Murder him. *Cæsar* remits the Cause to the President of *Syria*, and the Roman Convention that sat at *Berytum*. Here *Herod* harangu'd the Assembly with so much Eloquence, and laid open the Enormity of the pretended Crime of his Sons with such Vehemence and Falsehood, that the poor Young Men were not allow'd to plead for themselves, but Condemn'd unheard, and left at their Father's Disposal to do with them as he pleas'd, who immediately caus'd them to be strangled; and as a further Addition to his Barbarity, he caus'd three hundred of the

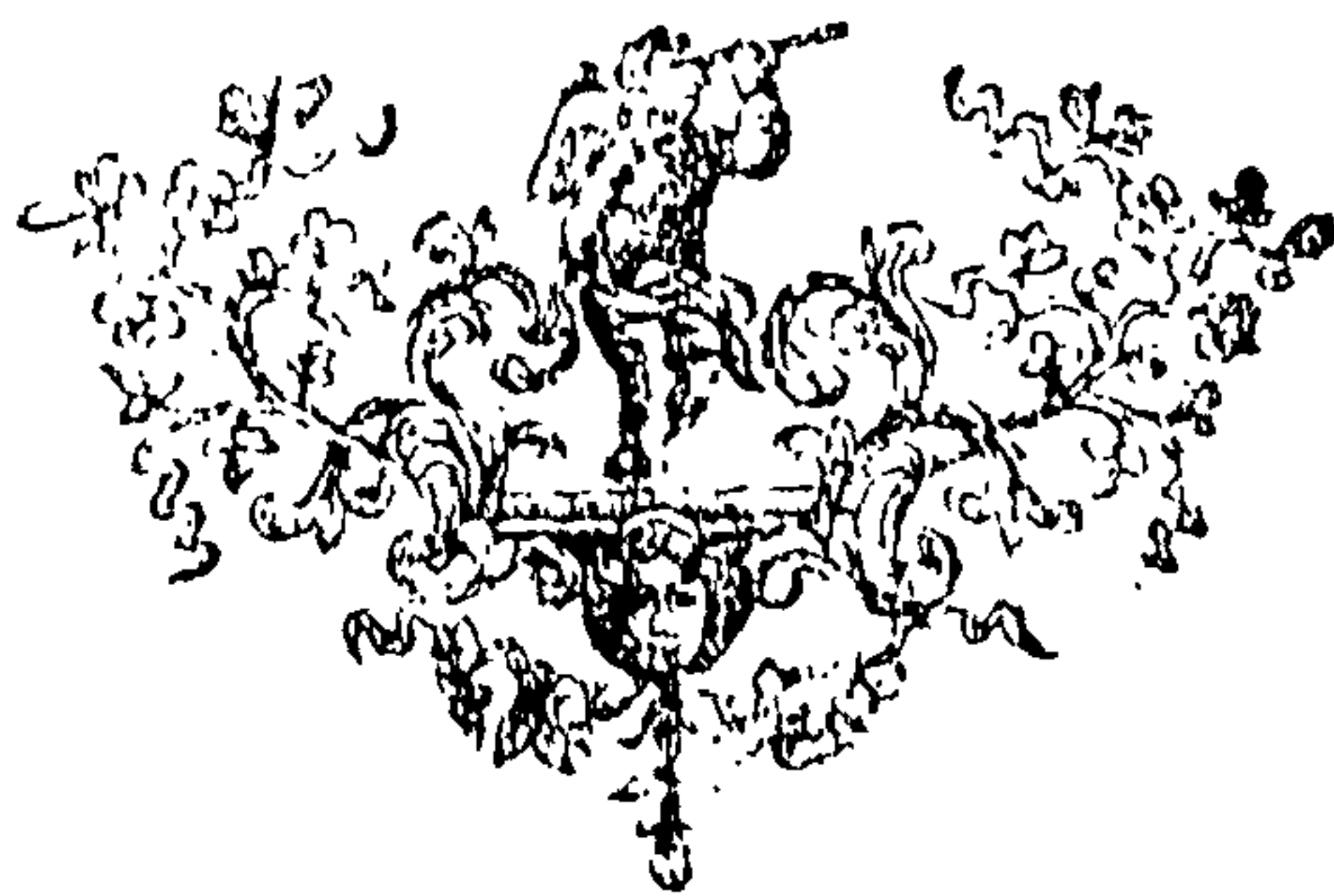
Cap.



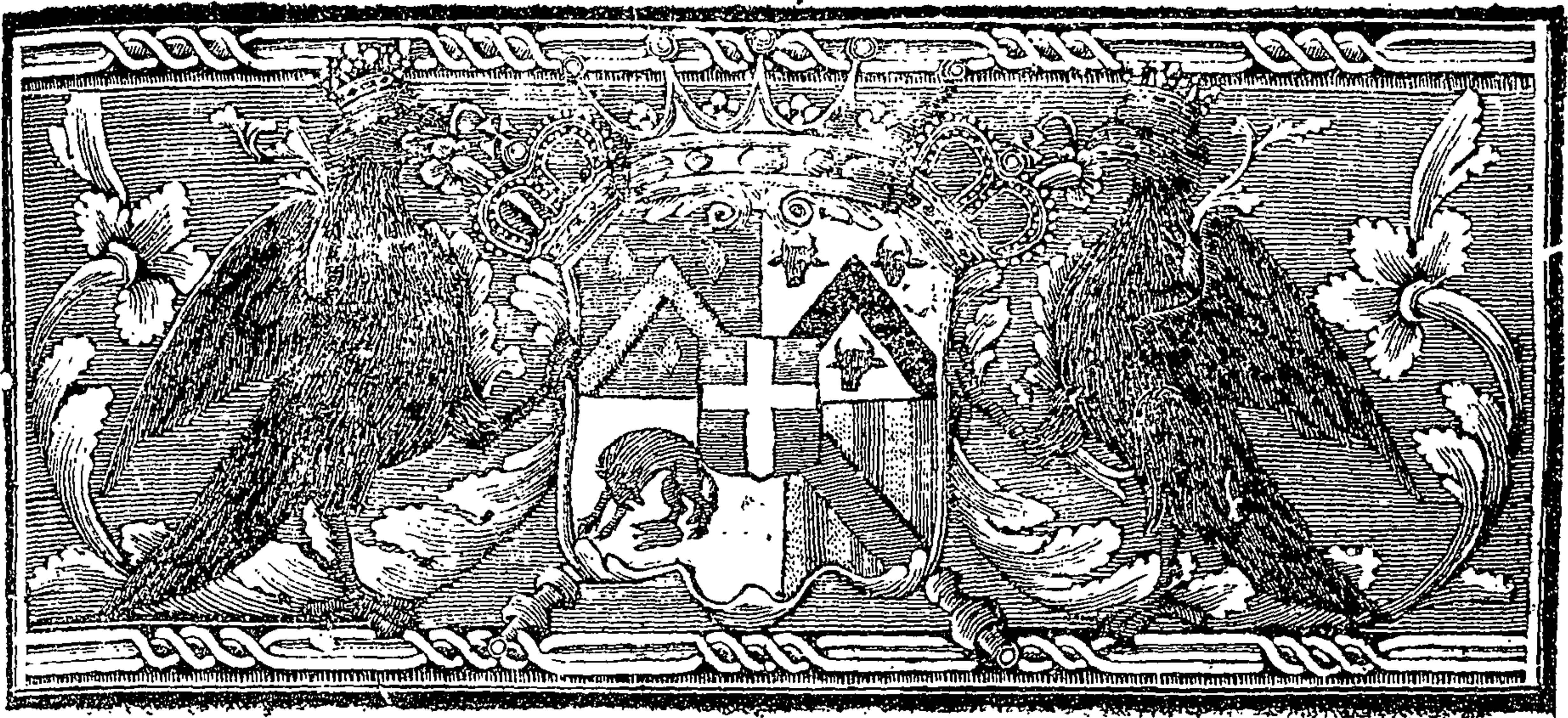
Captains of his Army to be ston'd to Death by the People, upon his return to *Jerusalem*, on Pretence of their being Accomplices of *Alexander* and *Aristobulus* in the pretended Conspiracy. See *Josephus lib. 15. Ant. Cap. 11.* and *lib. 16.* from the 1st. Chapter to the 19th.

Thus did Bloody *Herod* continue his Cruelties unto the 36th Year of his Reign, when the Sun of Justice began to rise, our LORD JESUS CHRIST, who, in the 5827th Year of the Creation of the World; in the 65th Week according to the Propheſie of *Daniel*; in the 194th Olympiad; in the 752d Year of the building of *Rome*; in the 42d Year of the Reign of *Augustus Caesar*, in the sixth Age of the World, the whole Earth being in Peace; was born at *Bethlehem* in *Judea* of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, Pursuant to the Oracles of the Divinely inspired Prophets of the GOD of *Israel*. Nor was *Herod's* thirst after Blood even then satiated: For when the Magician Kings, who were guided by the Resplendent and Miraculous Star recorded in the Gospel, came to *Jerusalem*, to adore the New Born King of the *Jews*, he caus'd all the Children in *Bethlehem* and in the Coasts thereof from two Years Old and under to be slain, thinking that in the Number he might comprehend the only Child he dreaded: Nay, his Cruelty went yet farther; for a little before his Death, he caus'd his own Son *Antipater* to be slain, which gave *Cæsar*, when he heard it, Occasion to break this Jest upon him: *It were better be Herod's Hog than his Son*; as *Macrobius* informs us, *Lib. 2. Saturnaliū Cap. 4.* And to Compleat his Barbarity, when he drew near his End, being sensible, by the Hatred his Relations and Subjects had to him, they wou'd all rejoyce at his Death, he Commanded his Sister *Salome* and her Husband to put all the Nobles of *Judea*, (whom he had call'd together, for that End, in *Jericho*, where he lay sick) to Death, so soon as the Breath was out of his Body; that so there might be an Universal Mourning and Lamentation over all the Land upon his Decease, and having given these Impious Orders, which were not executed, what with the intolerable Stench that came from his Body, and the violent Contorsions of his Bowels, he breath'd out his Impious Soul, leaving his Son *Archelaus* to succeed him, as the Evangelist *St. Matthew 2. 22.* And *Josephus Lib. 17. Ant. Cap. 10.* inform us. And here I shall put an End to the sixth Age of the World with respect to the Sacred History, and proceed to that of the Propane of the same Age.

Matth. 2. 2.



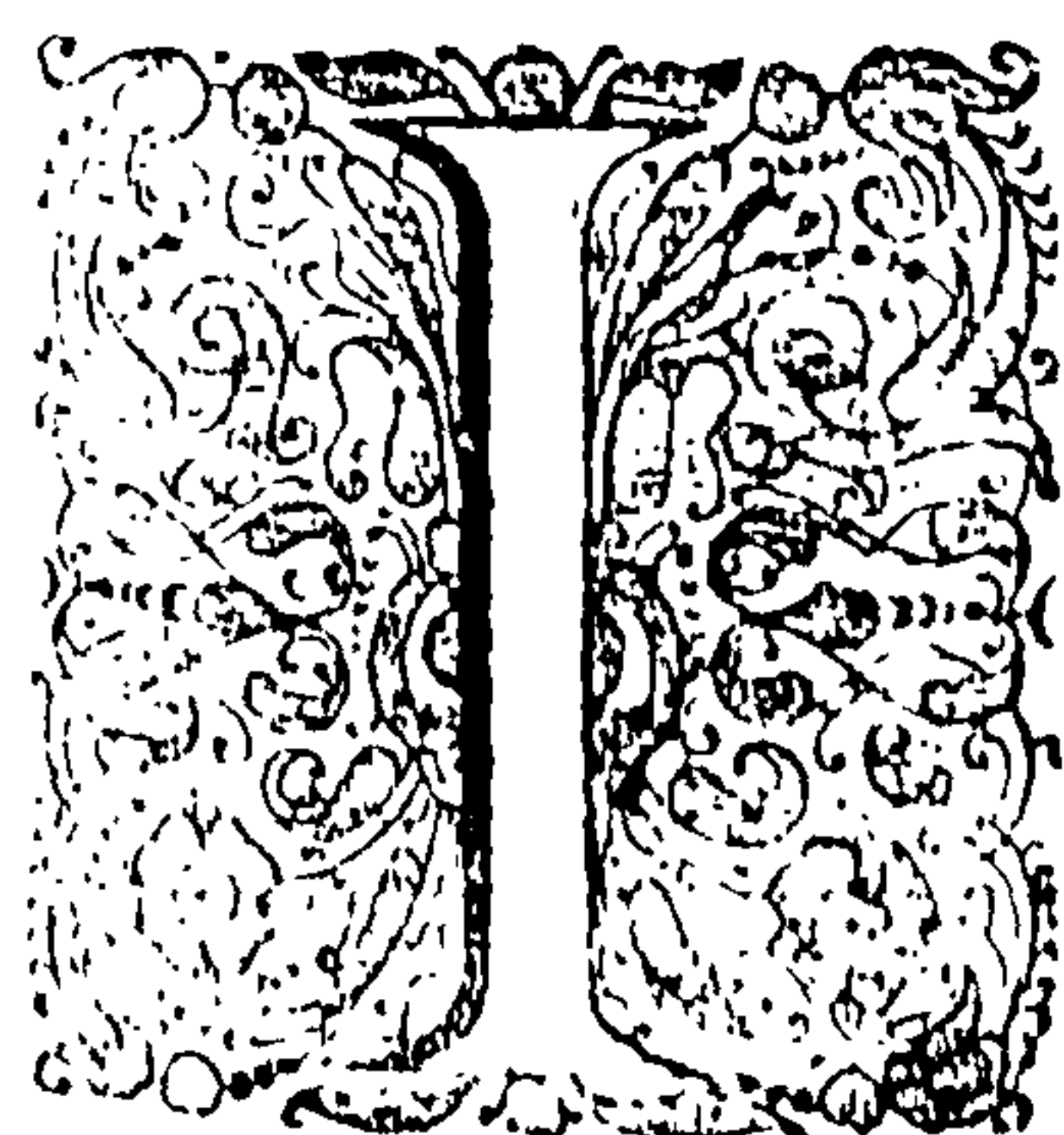




A  
New HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD.  
BOOK V.

CHAP. I.

*Of Astiages and Cyrus.*



Had said, in the Close of the Fifth Age, that the Captivity of *Babylon* was Coincident with the sixth Year of the Reign of *Astiages* King of the *Medes*. I shall now, in this Book, give an Account of the Life and Actions of this Prince, and of his Successors the Kings of the *Medes* and *Persians*, unto the Days of *Alexander* the Great, and borrow the said Account from *Herodotus*, the most Ancient and most exact of all the Profane Historians, whose Works Antiquity hath transmitted unto us. 'Tis true *Herodotus* was mistaken in two Points : The first, in that he saith, the *Assyrian* Monarchy lasted



lasted only 520 Years, when the *Medes* began to shake off its Yoke : The second, that *Dejoces* was the first King of the *Medes* : For all Antiquity is against him, both in the One and in the Other, it being the Unanimous Opinion of the Ancient Historians, that the *Assyrian* Monarchy lasted much longer than this Term, before it suffer'd any Change ; some allowing it 1200 Years ; others, 1300 ; some, 1360 ; as *Diodorus*, *Siculus* and *Berosus* ; and others, 1460, as *Julius Africanus* and *Synceus* : And as to *Dejoces*, the Ancient Historians agree that *Arbaces*, the General of the Troops of the *Medes*, was the Man, who, in Conjunction with *Belesus* the General of the *Babylonian* Troops, did first revolt against the *Assyrians*, in the Days of *Sardanapalus*, forc'd this Prince to burn himself in *Ninive*, transferr'd the *Assyrian* Monarchy to the *Medes*, and was succeeded by four Kings before *Dejoces* came to the Throne, as is at large related in the close of the third Book of this History.

To *Dejoces* succeeded *Phraortes* ; to this, *Ciaxes* ; to *Ciaxes* *Astiages* : And forasmuch as there is scarce any mention in Antiquity of the Actions of these Kings unto the Days of *Astiages*, (bating that *Herodotus* saith, *Phraortes* besieg'd *Ninive*, and perish'd in the Attempt, that his Successor *Ciaxes*, did the same and took it. And that the *Scythians* over-ran *Asia* in the Days of the Latter ; who at last defeated, and drove them out of the Empire.) I shall begin my account with the Life of this Prince.

*Herodotus* tells us, that *Astiages* had a Daughter whose Name was *Mandane*, that he dreamt, *she had made Water in so great abundance, as to overflow the City in which he dwelt, and all Asia*. *Astiages* being very Superstitious, as were indeed all the *Asiatics*, enquir'd of his Magicians what this Dream shou'd mean ; and having receiv'd some ridiculous Interpretation (which yet *Herodotus* was not so kind as to tell us) from these Crafty Knaves, he wou'd not Marry her to any of the *Medes*, but to a certain great *Persian* Lord call'd *Cambyses* : Soon after *Mandane* was Marry'd, *Astiages* dreamt another Dream. It appear'd to him, that his Daughter had brought forth a Vine, which overshadow'd all *Asia*, and being told by his Magicians, that *she was with Child of a Son who shou'd one Day Rule over Asia*, he sent for her to his Court with a Design to cause her Son to be destroy'd, so soon as it came to the World, upon Apprehension that he wou'd one Day turn him out of his Kingdom ; or possibly, because he wou'd not have one of the Blood of the *Persians*, whom the *Medes* in those Days, look'd upon as their Slaves, to succeed him. But, whatever the cause of his fear might be (which our Historian was not pleas'd to tell us,) so soon as *Mandane* was brought to Bed, *Astiages* caus'd *Harpagus* one of his great Lords, and chief Minister of State, to carry away the Child, strictly charging him to put it to Death upon Pain of his high Displeasure. *Harpagus* took the Child and finding it to be a lovely Boy, was loath to imbrue his Hands in the Blood of such an Innocent ; he therefore sent for one *Mytradates*, *Astiages* his chief Cow-herd, and gave the Child into his Hands, strictly charging him to expose it on the Mountains until it shou'd die.

It happen'd that this *Mytradates* his Wife, being at this time with Child, was deliver'd of a dead Child that was a Boy, while her Husband was with *Harpagus* to receive his Commands. Upon his Return Home he shew'd his Wife the Child, which *Harpagus* had put into his Hands, telling her withal, that he was Commanded to expose it on the Mountains. The Woman seeing it a lovely Boy, and finely dress'd in rich Swaiting Bands, pray'd her Husband to expose the dead Child instead of it, and suffer her



to keep the live Child for herself. *Mytrdates* readily consented to the prayer of his Wife, expos'd his own dead Child, and preserv'd the Son of *Mandane*, giving it a Name after his own Fancy, but it was afterward call'd *Cyrus*. When this Child was ten Years Old, he did a Thing that discover'd his Birth and true Parents. There was a certain great Lord of the *Medes* call'd *Artambares* who kept a Country House in the Village where *Mytrdates* the suppos'd Father of *Cyrus* liv'd : This Lord had a Son somewhat younger than *Cyrus* (for so shall I call him henceforth, tho' this Name was given him after his Birth and Parentage had been discover'd) who us'd to play with *Cyrus* and with other Boys that dwelt in the same Village. It happen'd then, on a certain Day, as these Boys were playing together, that they chose *Cyrus* for their King. *Cyrus* hereupon assign'd unto every one of them Peculiar Offices, and Employments, commanding one to do this thing, and another, that ; which they readily executed. But *Artambares* his Son refus'd to do what *Cyrus* had order'd him, scorning to obey a Cow-herd's Son as he thought. Whereupon *Cyrus* Commanded the rest of the Boys to hold him, while he severely whip'd him with Rods. *Artambares* his Son being thus abus'd ran to his Father, crying and complaining of *Cyrus*. The Father in great Indignation not finding *Cyrus* (who it seems absconded) went to King *Astiages*, brought his Son before him, and complain'd of the Affront, the Cow-herd's Son had put upon his Child. *Astiages* hereupon sends for the Cow-herd, and orders him to bring his Son before him; who, being come, and ask'd, how he durst presume to abuse so great a Lord's Son, answer'd the King, with a great deal of Courage and Boldness; that being chosen King by his Play-Fellows, every one of them had readily obey'd his Commands, but the Son of *Artambares*, and that he had only whip'd him for his Disobedience. *Astiages* observing the Intrepidity of *Cyrus*, and the Assurance wherewith he spoke, concluded that he must be the Son of some other than a Cow-herd. He therefore took the Cow-herd aside, and threaten'd to rack him to Death, except he told him how he came by the Boy. The poor Cow-herd frighten'd at these Menaces, declar'd the whole truth. Then *Astiages* sent for *Harpagus*, and ask'd him in the Presence of the Cow-herd, what he had done with the Child which he had put into his Hands? *Harpagus* answer'd, that he had given him to that same Cow-herd, and charg'd him to expose him upon one of the Mountains till he were dead; and did verily believe he had obey'd his Commands. Well, says *Astiages*, my Grandson is alive, and (dissembling his Resentment) I am glad on't; send then your Son here forthwith, that he may keep him Company, and come yourself this Night and Sup with me. *Harpagus* transported with Joy, that his neglect of the Kings Commands had so good an Issue, as he thought, went hastily home, sent his Son immediately to Court, and came at Night to sup with the King. But as soon as *Harpagus* his Son was come, *Astiages* order'd him to be kill'd, caus'd his Flesh to be bak'd in a Pye, and reserv'd his Head, his Hands, and Legs in a Dish, in order to be set before his Father after Supper.

*Harpagus* being come, at the Hour appointed, was serv'd at Supper with the Pye made of his own Son's flesh, and having eaten thereof, the King ask'd him, how he lik'd that Meat? Very well, answer'd *Harpagus*. Then the King order'd the Dish in which his Son's Limbs were laid to be set before him, and added : You may eat of these as much as you will; asking him withal, if he knew what Meat he had eaten? I know very well, reply'd *Harpagus*, but it is my Duty to find no Fault with what my King doeth; and



so smothering his Grief and Resentment, return'd to his House. Then *Astiages* sent for his Magicians and related unto them the whole Adventure of his Grandson; who told him, that *forasmuch as the Boy had been chosen King, and had exercis'd Regal Authority, tho' but in jest and over Boys; yet the same was the fulfilling of his Dream, and that therefore he needed not apprehend any thing ever after upon that account.* So *Astiages* sent *Cyrus* home to his Father and Mother into *Persia*, and took no further Notice of his Dreams.

In some Years after, *Harpagus* having Intelligence of the Courage and Bravery of *Cyrus*, and how much he was admir'd by all the *Persian* Lords; and having withal in his Breast a direful Revenge for the Barbarous Usage of his Son, resolv'd to make use of *Cyrus* in order to compass the same. He therefore stir'd up many of the great Lords of the *Medes* to Rebel, which the Cruelty and Tyrannical Government of *Astiages* did very much Facilitate. Then considering how difficult it wou'd be to inform *Cyrus* of his Design, by Reason of the many Spies *Astiages* had in the Way, bethought himself of an Expedient that took Effect. He caus'd his Huntsman to bring him a Hare, which he gutted, put a Letter into its Belly, and sew it up so nicely, that it cou'd not be discern'd. Then he order'd the same Huntsman to carry the Hare as a Present to *Cyrus*, charging him to desire *Cyrus* to open the Belly of the Hare privately with his own Hands. When *Cyrus* receiv'd this Letter, and had found the favourable Disposition of many of the great Lords of the *Medes* to join him, especially of *Harpagus*, who was likely to Command the Troops of the *Medes*, and who had promis'd to bring over to him, most of the Army upon his Approach, he went about raising Men upon Pretence of serving the King against his Enemies; and having engag'd many of the *Persian* Lords to his Party, he gather'd a considerable Army, which, when he had review'd, he caus'd with a great deal of Labour and Toil to throw up the Earth and stub the Fields the first Day. And, on the next Day, he prepar'd a great Feast for them, made them eat and drink as much as they cou'd hold, and having spent all the Day in Revelling and Banqueting, he ask'd them in the Evening, *which Condition of the two they wou'd chuse, were it at their Election, either the hard Labour and Toil of the first Day, or the good Cheer of the second?* And upon their Answer, that they wou'd chuse the good Cheer of the second Day, he said: *Gentlemen it is in your Power to chuse either the one or the other. Ye know how imperiously the Medes have treated you, and to what Servitude ye have been reduc'd: Do but follow me then, and we will shake off their Yoke, recover our Liberty, and make them our Servants.*

This Speech was so agreeable both to the Officers and Soldiers, that they cry'd out with a loud Voice, declaring their readiness to follow him whithersoever he shou'd lead them. Whereupon *Cyrus* led them on immediately towards *Media*, without giving them time to cool upon their Resolution. *Astiages* being inform'd of *Cyrus* his March, sent Messengers, charging him *to come to the King and give an account of his Conduct*: To which *Cyrus* answer'd, *he wou'd see the King sooner than he wish'd.* *Astiages* hereupon rais'd a great Army to quell *Cyrus* and his Party; and, as if his Stars had infatuated him, who did he make his General, but *Harpagus* his mortal Enemy! When *Cyrus* drew nigh, and had joined Battle with *Astiages*, *Harpagus*, and those that joined with him in the Conspiracy, came over to *Cyrus*, and the rest of the *Medes*, who were weary of the Tyranny of *Astiages*, fought but faintly, or ran away; so that *Astiages* was easily defeated, and forced



forced to fly unto his Capital City; where he put to death all the Magicians, who had advised him to send *Cyrus* into *Perfia*. Then he caused all the *Medes* to take up Arms, went forth at the Head of them, and fought *Cyrus* the second time; but all to no purpose, for his raw Men were soon defeated, and he himself was taken Prisoner to the great Joy of *Harpagus*, who failed not to ask him, in his turn, *How he liked his Condition? and whether he had remembred the P<sup>ye</sup> he had set before him?* Thus was the Kingdom of the *Medes* transferr'd to the *Persians* in the Person of *Cyrus*: And thus ended cruel *Astiages* his Reign, having Ruled, or rather Tyrannized over the *Medes* and *Persians* thirty five Years.

*Cyrus* was no sooner crowned King, and acknowledged as such, both by the *Medes* and *Persians*, when he found himself obliged to wage War with *Cresus* King of the *Lydians*.

This *Cresus* was the Son of *Alyates*, and King of the Nations that inhabited the Countries between the River *Halis* and the *Euxine Sea*. He was the First that brought any of the *Greeks* under Subjection, being always before a Free People. But before I go further, it will be requisite to relate after what manner the Crown of *Lydia*, which belong'd formerly to the Family of the *Heraclidae*, fell to the Family of *Cresus*. The first King of these Countries, of which we find any Footsteps in History was *Lydus* the Son of *Atys*, whence, the Inhabitants were ever since call'd *Lydians*. To *Lydus* succeeded (tho' not immediately, but after some Generations) *Argon*, the Son of *Ninos*, the Son of *Belos*, the Son of *Alceus*, the Son of *Hercules*. *Argon* and his Descendants possess'd the Crown of *Lydia*, for the space of 505 Years, and were call'd the Family of the *Heraclidae*. The last King of this Family was call'd *Candaules*, who being an Extravagant Vain Man, and Passionately in Love with a Beautiful Woman, which he took to Wife, cou'd not contain his Fondness of the said Woman, but must Proclaim it to others, and perswade them, she was the most lovely Thing in the World. There was a certain Officer among his Guards call'd *Gyges*: Him he esteem'd above all the rest of his Court, and wou'd frequently entertain upon the Subject of the Great Beauty of his Wife; and to perswade him the more of the truth of what he said, he told him he shou'd see her Naked, that he might then believe his own Eyes. *Gyges*, who was a Discreet Modest Man, apprehending, that the Extravagance of his Master might draw upon him the Indignation of the Queen, pray'd him, to dispence him from doing a Thing which she cou'd not but highly Resent. *Candaules*, who wou'd be obey'd, told him, there was no Danger in the Matter; that he wou'd convey him privately into his Bed-Chamber, and Place him so behind the Door, that he might see the Queen, as she undress'd herself going to Bed, take a full View of her, and then retire unseen. *Gyges* finding that *Candaules* wou'd not be put off, consented to the Offer: Accordingly, at Night, when *Candaules* was going to Bed, he placed *Gyges* behind the Door, whence he might see the Queen, who soon after came into the Bed-Chamber, (not imagining that there was any Body in the Room but the King, who was in Bed) undress'd, and expos'd herself naked to the Eyes of *Gyges* as she was going to Bed. But it seems *Gyges* did not so discreetly manage himself as he was going out of the Bed-chamber, but that the Queen saw him, and told the same to the King.



*Candaules* bid her take no notice of it : For that he had order'd *Gyges* to stand there that he might see her Naked. The Queen hereupon said no more that Night; but the next Day she caus'd all her Servants to attend her in an outer Room, sent for *Gyges* into her own, and told him, *That since he was so Complaisant as to obey his Master the King in a matter so criminal in itself, and so highly injurious to her Honour, she wou'd give him his choice of two Things; either to kill the King and enjoy the Crown of Lydia and her, whom he had seen naked, or die by the Hands of her Servants.*

*Gyges* was mightily surpris'd at this Proposal, and did endeavour to dissuade the Queen from so desperate an Attempt; but when he saw that he must either kill, or be kill'd, he chose the former, and asked her, *how he might compass the King's Death?* *Thou shalt,* said she, *stand behind the same Door, whence thou sawest me Naked, and when the King thy Master sleepeth, I will put a Dagger into thine Hand, wherewith thou mayest stab him.* *Gyges* promised the Queen to obey her Commands, and then withdrew. At Night when *Candaules* was gone to Bed, *Gyges* got behind the Door, and the Queen soon after brought him the Dagger.

When *Gyges* perceiv'd *Candaules* to sleep, he stabb'd him to Death, possess'd himself of the Crown, and Marry'd the Queen, and enjoy'd the Kingdom of *Lydia*, He and his Posterity for five Generations; the last whereof was *Cresus*.

This Prince extended the Limits of his Dominions far beyond what any of his Predecessors had done. He subdued the *Licians*, the *Phrygians*, the *Paphlagonians*, the *Thracians*, the *Bythinians*, the *Carians*, the *Jonians*, the *Dorians*, and the *Pamphilians*; and exacted such vast Tributes from these People, that he was one of the Richest Kings that was to be heard of in those Days; nay, and rais'd *Sardis* the Capital City of his Kingdom, and the Seat of his Empire to that Splendor and Grandeur, that all the Wise Men of the Earth coveted to see both it, and the Magnificence of his Court: Among other great Men that came to see *Cresus* his Court, *Solon* the Philosopher and Legislator of *Athens*; his Visit was very remarkable. This great Man, prompted by the Fame of the Grandeur and Magnificence of *Cresus* his Court and Metropolis, came to *Sardis*, and desir'd to see *Cresus*; who not only receiv'd him honourably, but also order'd all his Treasures and Riches, and all that was Great and Magnificent both in his Palace and City to be shewn to him; being, no doubt, Ambitious to have the Commendation of so Celebrated a Philosopher, and so Wise a Man.

When *Solon* had seen all the Riches and Magnificence of *Cresus* his Court and Metropolis, *Cresus* entertain'd him on the Subject of his own Happiness, concluding, that *Solon* wou'd Pronounce him to be the happiest Man in the World : My Friend, saith he, *I know that thou art a Wise Man, and that thou hast travell'd much, like a Philosopher, who wou'd learn and see new Things : Tell me then, I pray thee; Didst thou ever see any Man whose Happiness was equal to mine?* Yes, (answer'd *Solon*, who was not of an humour to flatter him) *I saw Tellus the Athenian, and he was happier than you.* *Cresus* surpris'd at this Answer, ask'd *Solon*, why he thought *Tellus* to be more happy than himself? Because, reply'd *Solon*, he liv'd in a Polite Common-wealth, begat Virtuous Children who follow'd his Example, and dy'd Gloriously, Crown'd with Victory in the Defence of his Country; for which he was Dignify'd with a Statue after his Death. Well, said *Cresus*, did you ever see any other Man more happy than I am, imagining, that *Solon* wou'd put him in the next Degree of Happiness after *Tellus*? Yes, return'd *Solon*,



Solon, I saw Cleobis and Biton. These Men, besides their being Citizens of Argos, were so stout and strong that they carry'd the Prize in all Combats : Moreover the same Men having to their Mother a Priestess of Juno, that was oblig'd by her Function to assist at the Temple of this Goddess on a certain Festival Day, put themselves under the Yoke of her Chariot, finding that her Oxen did not come at the Hour appointed, and drew their Mother to the Temple, where the Good Old Woman receiv'd the Praise and Blessing of all the People, for giving the World such Pious Children ; and being transported with Joy to hear her Sons so highly commended for their Piety, she pray'd the Goddess to send them that which was most Advantageous for Mortal Men : And when she had ended this Prayer, her Sons offer'd their Sacrifice by her Hands, fell asleep in the Temple, and there dy'd. This Action appear'd so Glorious to the Citizens of Argos, that they Decreed Statues for them as Illustrious Men, plac'd them in the Temple of Juno, and by this Means perpetuated their Memory to future Ages.

Cresus seeing Solon run Divisions upon the Commendation of such little Men, said in great Passion. What, Friend, do you make so little account of my Happiness, as to prefer private Men of low Condition before me ? You have asked my Opinion, answer'd Solon, and I have freely given it you : I have not learnt to pronounce any Man happy until I see his End. You have indeed immense Riches and Wealth : But how soon you may lose all these, the Experience of past Ages can easily teach you. In my Opinion, nothing can make a Man happy but virtuous Actions, and pious Works, a constant Tenour of the same, and a glorious Exit off the Stage of Life. Men may flatter you now, and pronounce you happy on account of your Wealth ; because they expect to get something by you ; but the same Men will not fail to brand your Memory with an indeleble Character of Infamy, if your Life and Actions be not attended with Piety and Virtue, and Crown'd with a glorious End.

Thus did Solon endeavour to persuade Cresus, that true Happiness did not consist in the Riches and Wealth of this World, which take Wings to themselves and fly away, as the divinely Inspir'd Solomon saith : And well had it been for him, had he profited by so wholesome a Lesson ; but it seems he soon forgot it : For having understood that Cyrus had Conquer'd Astiages, and possess'd himself of the Crown of the Medes and Persians, he resolv'd to make War upon him, and join that great Empire to his Territories, concluding that these Barbarians cou'd not be able to withstand the shock of his Veteran Troops that were always accustomed to Conquer. But before he undertook this War, he made a Confederacy with the King of Egypt, and with the Lacedemonians, and then sent Messengers to Delphi and Egypt with rich Presents, to consult the Oracle of Apollo and that of Jupiter Hamon ; and having received ambiguous Answers from these crafty Ministers of Satan, which he construed to his own advantage, March'd with a formidable Army to the River Halis, over which he pass'd on Bridges made for that purpose, as Herodotus believes, tho' the Greeks, as the same Author tells us, affirm that Thales the famous Mathematician, being then in Cresus his Camp, taught them how to pass over that great River without Boat or Bridge. He caus'd, say they, a great large Canal to be made in the form of a Crescent or Half-moon behind the Camp, reaching from the Banks of the River at one End of the Camp, unto the Banks at the other End, and then let all the Water run into this Canal ; so that by this means the whole Army walk'd almost dry-shod over that part of the Bed of the River which was drain'd. But be that as it will, Cresus pass'd the River, and en-



ter'd into *Capadocia*, took the great City call'd in those Days, *Pterium*, with many other Places of less Note. Then he steer'd his Course toward *Cyrus*, who came upon him with a Force Superior to his before he cou'd leave the Plains of *Pterium*. Here *Cyrus* and *Cresus* fought a most bloody Battle, which lasted from Morning 'till Night; and yet neither Side got any Advantage of the other. The next Day *Cresus* understanding that his Soldiers began to Murmur against him for engaging an Army superior in number to his; and finding that *Cyrus* did not stir out of his Camp all that Day, he March'd away with his Army, and returned to *Sardis*, with a design to call the *Egyptians* and *Lacedemonians* to his assistance the Year following; But *Cyrus* did not give him time to avail himself of these Succours: For having understood that he had dismiss'd all the foreign Troops that were in his Army, and sent them home to their Respective Countries until the next Spring, he March'd with so much Secresy and Expedition, that he was in the very Heart of *Lydia* before *Cresus* knew any thing of his March. This put *Cresus* into great Consternation: However being resolv'd to make the best Defence the shortness of the time wou'd allow, he Muster'd his Cavalry which was the best that was then in the World, and put them in the Front of his Army, concluding, that the *Persian* Foot and their ill-manag'd Horse wou'd not be able to withstand them: And indeed, this wou'd, no doubt, have so well succeeded, that *Cyrus* his Army cou'd not stand before them, had not *Harpagus* *Cyrus* his great Friend, defeated his Design. This experienc'd Captain knowing very well the Weakness of the *Persian* Cavalry, and what Havock *Cresus* his Horse wou'd make among the Foot, when once the Cavalry was defeated, advis'd *Cyrus* to unload all the Camels that carry'd the Baggage, and to put them in the Front of the Army, Mounted by his Troopers, being perswaded, that *Cresus* his Cavalry wou'd be frighten'd at the sight of those Animals; for it seems a Horse cannot bear the sight or smell of a Camel: And indeed this Stratagem succeeded to Admiration: For when *Cresus* his Horses saw the Camels, they were so terrify'd that their Riders cou'd not hold them, much less bring them on to Charge the Enemy. The *Lydian* Cavalry perceiving they cou'd do no Service to their Country on Horseback, and seeing *Cyrus* advancing with his Cavalry in order to break in upon their Foot, lit off their Horses and disputed the Victory for a considerable time with *Cyrus* his Horse, but being overpower'd at last, were forc'd to retreat and get into *Sardis*, leaving many a Gallant Man on the Field of Battle.

*Cyrus* having thus happily overthrown *Cresus* in the Field, lost no time, but immediately laid close Siege to him in his Capital City: But forasmuch as *Sardis* was very strong, *Cyrus* for fourteen Days cou'd make no Impression with all his Warlike Engins upon the Walls, and despairing of Success that way, he promis'd an extraordinary Reward to any of his Soldiers that shou'd first get upon the Walls, concluding, that the hopes of a vast Sum of Money wou'd put his Men upon finding out some Accessible Place which he cou'd not as yet discover. That very Evening, one of his Centinels observ'd a Soldier coming down a great and steep Rock to which one Corner of the City was Contiguous, and seeing him take up his Helmet, which fell down the Rock from him, and climb up the same Way; concluded, he might as well do the like as that Soldier; and the rather that this Rock was not Guarded by any Soldiers, being hitherto esteem'd inaccessible. He therefore fix'd his Eyes upon the Soldier until he had seen him go into the City, and then told his Fellows, that he had discover'd a Passage by which they



they might easily get into *Sardis*, without Hazard or Danger. So this Centinel, when it was dark, climb'd up the Rock, and was first follow'd by a few ; then by more, and lastly by a considerable Body of Men : And when all things were still in the City, these Men enter'd the Town, seiz'd upon several Gates, which they open'd to their Companions, and continu'd all that Night and the next Day to slaughter both Soldiers and Inhabitants without distinction of Sex or Kind : When these Soldiers came to *Cresus* his Palace there happen'd a thing very remarkable. *Cresus* had an only Son that was a Gallant Young Man endow'd with all the Princely Qualities suitable to his Birth, but was dumb from his Infancy. This young Prince seeing one of *Cyrus* his Soldiers lift up his Hand with a Design to kill the King his Father, who made no Opposition, nor spoke a Word, being indifferent whether he shou'd live or die after the loss of his Kingdom, cry'd out with a loud Voice, and said : *O Soldier spare Cresus the King*. The Soldier hereupon remembering that *Cyrus* had given Orders, that *Cresus* shou'd be reserv'd alive, desisted, and only took him Prisoner ; and *Cresus* his Son spoke plain ever after.

*Sardis* being thus taken and sack'd, *Cresus* was brought before *Cyrus*, who order'd him and 14 young Noble Men of the *Lydians* to be burn'd alive before him ; possibly out of some Superstitious intention of sacrificing so many Persons to his Tutelar gods, or, more likely, to deter other Princes from resisting his Power. But whatever the Reason of that Number might be, *Cyrus* wou'd see *Cresus* end his Days after this manner ; who, being led to the Place of Execution loaden with Irons and Chains, and beholding the Pile of Wood on fire ready to devour him, cry'd with Groans and Sighs : *Solon, Solon, Solon*. *Cyrus* being curious to know, who that Person was, whom *Cresus* so earnestly call'd upon, order'd one of his Attendants to ask him, *what he meant by these Words ?* O, says *Cresus*, *a certain Wise Philosopher call'd Solon, told me, not long since, that I shou'd not esteem my self happy notwithstanding all my Riches and Power, until I had ended my Days ; and being now brought to this ignominious Death, I cou'd not forbear mentioning his Name*. *Cyrus* mov'd with Compassion at these Words of *Cresus*, order'd him to be loos'd from his Chains, gave him his Life, and entertain'd him at his Table for the rest of his Days ; possibly reflecting that this, or the like, might be his own Fate ; as indeed, it was not very unlike it, as we shall see hereafter.

When the *Lydians* understood that their King was taken Prisoner, and their Capital City plunder'd, they unanimously submitted to *Cyrus*, and even the *Jonians* and the *Eolians*, whom *Cresus* had but a little before brought under Subjection, sent Ambassadors to him offering to submit on the same Terms as the *Lydians* had done. But *Cyrus* wou'd not except of their Submission upon those Terms, because they refus'd to join with him, when he invaded *Lydia* : He only told the Ambassadors a Story, and sent them away with the reflection he made thereupon. *There was a certain Fisherman, said he, that stood upon the Banks of a River, and seeing a great many Fishes in the Water, he play'd upon his Flute, concluding, the Fish wou'd come up and dance ; but finding they took no Notice of his Musick, he cast his Net, and drew up a great many of them, and then they began to skip and dance. Give over your dancing now (quoth the Fisherman) for since you wou'd not dance to my Pipe when I wou'd have you, it will avail you nothing to do it now that you are in my Power. In like manner (contin'd *Cyrus*) your dancing now to my Pipe, or your submitting to me will avail you nothing, since it is not in your Power to resist*. And having dismiss'd them, he sent *Harpagus* with part of his Army, and subdu'd not only the *Jonians* and the *Eolians* bringing them under Subjection upon such Conditions as he was pleas'd to grant them ; but also the *Carians*, the *Licians*, the *Xanthians*, and all the other Nations of the lesser *Asia*. Z z z Then



Then he turn'd his Arms against the *Assyrians* : And forasmuch as *Babylon* was then the Seat of the *Assyrian* Monarchy, and the most celebrated City that was in the World, in those Days, since the great *Ninive* was destroy'd; *Cyrus* was resolv'd to attempt the taking of it. The King that was then in *Babylon* is call'd by *Herodotus*, *Labyntus*; by *Josephus*, *Nabonadel*; and by the sacred Historian of *Daniel's* Book, *Darius* the *Mede*. This is he that succeeded *Balthasar*, who saw the Hand-writing upon the Wall over against him, and was that very Night, according to the Prophet *Daniel's* Prediction, put to Death, by a Conspiracy of the *Babylonish* Lords, whereof *Darius* was Chief. He was indeed a *Babylonian* by his Mother, but a *Mede* by his Father, who was call'd *Assuerus*, or *Oxyares* : And the whole Race of *Nabuchodonosor* being extinct, was chosen King of *Babylon*, and Govern'd the *Chaldeans* according to the Laws of the *Medes* and *Persians*.

*Darius*, or as *Herodotus* calls him, *Labyntus*, understanding that *Cyrus* was on his March in order to invade his Kingdom, Muster'd his Army, and went out to fight him, leaving *Babylon*, which was, in those Days, the strongest, and best fortify'd Town in the World, in a Condition to endure a Siege of many Years : And having join'd Battle with *Cyrus*, was defeated, and forc'd to fly to a City call'd *Borseppi*, as *Berosus*, and *Megasthenes* inform us, leaving his scatter'd Troops to make the best of their way to *Babylon*. *Cyrus* lost no time in besieging that Celebrated City, and having sat down before it, and consider'd the strength of the Walls and Bullworks wherewith it was defended; as also the vast Number of the Inhabitants, who seem'd in a manner to laugh at his Rashness for attempting to besiege a Town of that strength; saw it was not Practicable to go about taking it by main Force, he therefore resolv'd to attempt it another way.

The River *Euphrates* which is excessive broad, deep and rapid, runs thro' *Babylon*, and divides it into two Parts, which have Communication one with another by a great and Sumptuous Bridge built by the famous *Nitocris* heretofore Queen of *Babylon*. *Cyrus* concluded, that if he cou'd turn the Course of this River another way, so as to make what shou'd remain fordable, he might easily enter the Town that way. And having concerted the matter with some of his chief Officers, he set all Hands to Work, and dug a Canal almost as deep and as large as the *Euphrates* on the outside of his Camp, beginning at the Banks of the River a little above the Place where it flows into the Town, and continuing it in the form of a Crescent to the Banks below the Town, as *Cresus* had done at the River *Halis*, who probably had suggested this Expedient to *Cyrus* : For he was with him upon this Expedition. When this Canal was finish'd, and the Water let into it, the *Euphrates* between that and the Town was so shallow, that any Man might easily pass it on Foot.

*Cyrus* having his Troops in readiness immediately power'd them into the Town, by that way, where they met with little or no Resistance, the Inhabitants being on that Day, taken up with Feasting and drinking upon account of some solemn Sacrifice; so that one Part of the Town was taken before the other knew any thing of it. What Slaughters and Massacres, were there committed, what vast Treasures thence carry'd away, are much easier imagin'd than describ'd. Let it suffice, for to understand the immense Riches of that Proud City, and the fertility of the Lands about it; that whereas all *Asia* was oblig'd by the Decrees of *Cyrus* to maintain his

Army



Army in all Necessaries, *Babylon* and the Lands thereunto belonging, afforded, upon a just and equal Distribution Yearly, a fourth Part of the Maintenance of the said Army.

*Cyrus* being, by the taking of *Babylon*, sole Monarch of all *Asia*, I mean of that great and flourishing Part of it, which was, in those Days, call'd *Asia*; as *Persia*, *Armenia*, *Media*, *Syria*, *Cilicia*, *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, *Palestine*, and all other lesser Provinces pertaining to these great and vast Kingdoms; resolv'd to extend his Conquest as yet farther: For, it seems, Ambition has no Bounds, but the more, Men of that Temper have, the greater is their Thirst after more. And understanding, that the *Massagetes* or *Scythians* were a Warlike People he determin'd to make War upon them.

These *Massagetes* or *Scythians* dwelt, at this time, where the *Cossacks* and the *Crim-Tartars* now dwell, along the Northern Coasts of the *Caspian* Sea, beyond the River *Araxes*, and possess'd a vast Tract of Land extending from Mount *Caucassus* Eastward to the Lands now under the Great *Cham* of *Tartary*, and comprehending a great Part of those Provinces which are at present under the Dominion of the *Zaar* of *Muscovie*. They were then Govern'd by a Heroine Queen call'd *Tomyris*, who, it seems, took up the Reins of the Government upon the Death of the King her Husband. To this Queen, *Cyrus* sent Ambassadors feigning that he was desirous to take her to Wife, but, in Reality, to take a view of her Country, and to bring him an account of her strength. The good Queen perceiving by their Actions, that they came rather to Court her Scepter than her Person, order'd them to be gone, and to tell their Master, that *she charg'd him, at his Peril, not to put his Foot upon her Land*. *Cyrus* having receiv'd this Message by his Ambassadors, March'd immediately with all his Forces to the River *Araxes*, built a Bridge over it, and was ready to enter into the Land of the *Massagetes* when an Ambassador from *Tomyris* came to his Tent, with Orders to tell him, that *since his Boundless Ambition wou'd not suffer him to be Content with the vast Empire he possess'd, he needed not to give himself the Trouble of making a Bridge; for that the Queen his Mistress wou'd retire three Days Journey, and give him all the Leasure he pleas'd to pass over the River: Or, if he wou'd do the like, she wou'd, at the Head of her Troops, pass over the River, and fight him upon his own Land*. This Proposal seem'd to *Cyrus* to be of great Moment, He therefore advis'd with his great Officers upon it. Most of them were for suffering the *Massagetes* to pass the River, concluding, that if they shou'd happen to be beaten, they might with more ease make their Retreat in their own Country than in that of the Enemy. But it seems, *Cresus*, whose Judgment and Counsel *Cyrus* very much admir'd, was of a contrary Opinion, and gave for reason, that the *Massagetes* being a hungry starv'd People, if they shou'd once taste the sweet of the *Persian* Plenty and Luxury, it wou'd prove a difficult Task to drive them out, in case they got the better of the Day: But if the same shou'd happen in their Country, the River *Araxes* might be easily defended against them. Besides, that it was Dishonourable for the great King of *Asia* to retire from before a Woman.

*Cyrus* having heard both these Opinions rejected the former, and concluded with *Cresus*. Accordingly he dismiss'd the Ambassador, and desir'd him to tell the Queen, that *he wou'd pass the River and give her Battle in her own Country*. *Tomyris* hereupon retir'd according to Promise, and *Cyrus* pass'd the *Araxes* with all his Forces. On the next Day, he order'd a great



Feast to be prepar'd, by the Advice of *Cresus*, and having cover'd the Tables in the Tents over all his Camp with Meat and Wine, drew off his Army in the Night from the Camp, and lay in Ambush for the *Massagetes*, leaving only a few to make a shew of Defence, but with Orders to abandon the Camp on sight of the Enemy. Early the next Morning, *Tomyris* sent the third Part of her Army under the Command of *Spargabises* her Son, to take a View of *Cyrus* his Army; who, coming up with the few Troops left therein, cut them to Pieces; and seeing abundance of Meat and Wine over all the Camp, fell to it so greedily, and drank so much, that they fell asleep in the Camp. *Cyrus* being inform'd hereof, came upon them, slew a great Number without any Resistance, and took alive a great many more, among which was *Spargabises*, who, when he recover'd of his Drunkenness, and found himself a Prisoner in Chains, pray'd *Cyrus* to loose his Hands; which done, he slew himself.

*Tomyris* being inform'd of the Disaster of her Son and the Troops under his Command, sent to tell *Cyrus*, that since he acted so Cowardly, and so little like a Man of Honour, who shou'd only covet to Conquer after a fair manner, and not thirst after Human Blood with Tricks and Fraud; she advis'd him to retire forthwith out of her Territories, else she wou'd possibly give him Human Blood enough, tho' he seem'd to be insatiable in that particular. *Cyrus* took no Notice of this Reproach, or rather Gasconade, as he esteem'd it. But it seems *Tomyris* was in earnest, and resolv'd to be as good as her Word: For upon the return of her Messengers, she gather'd together all the Forces of her Kingdom, fought *Cyrus* fairly, defeated his Army, and slew himself in the Field of Battle. Then she cut off his Head, and put it with her own Hands into a Tub fill'd almost to the Brim with Human Blood, pronouncing these Memorable Words: *Satia te Sanguine quem semper sitisti, & cujus insatiabilis semper extitisti. Satiare thy self with that Blood which thou didst always thirst after, and of which thou hast been ever insatiable.*

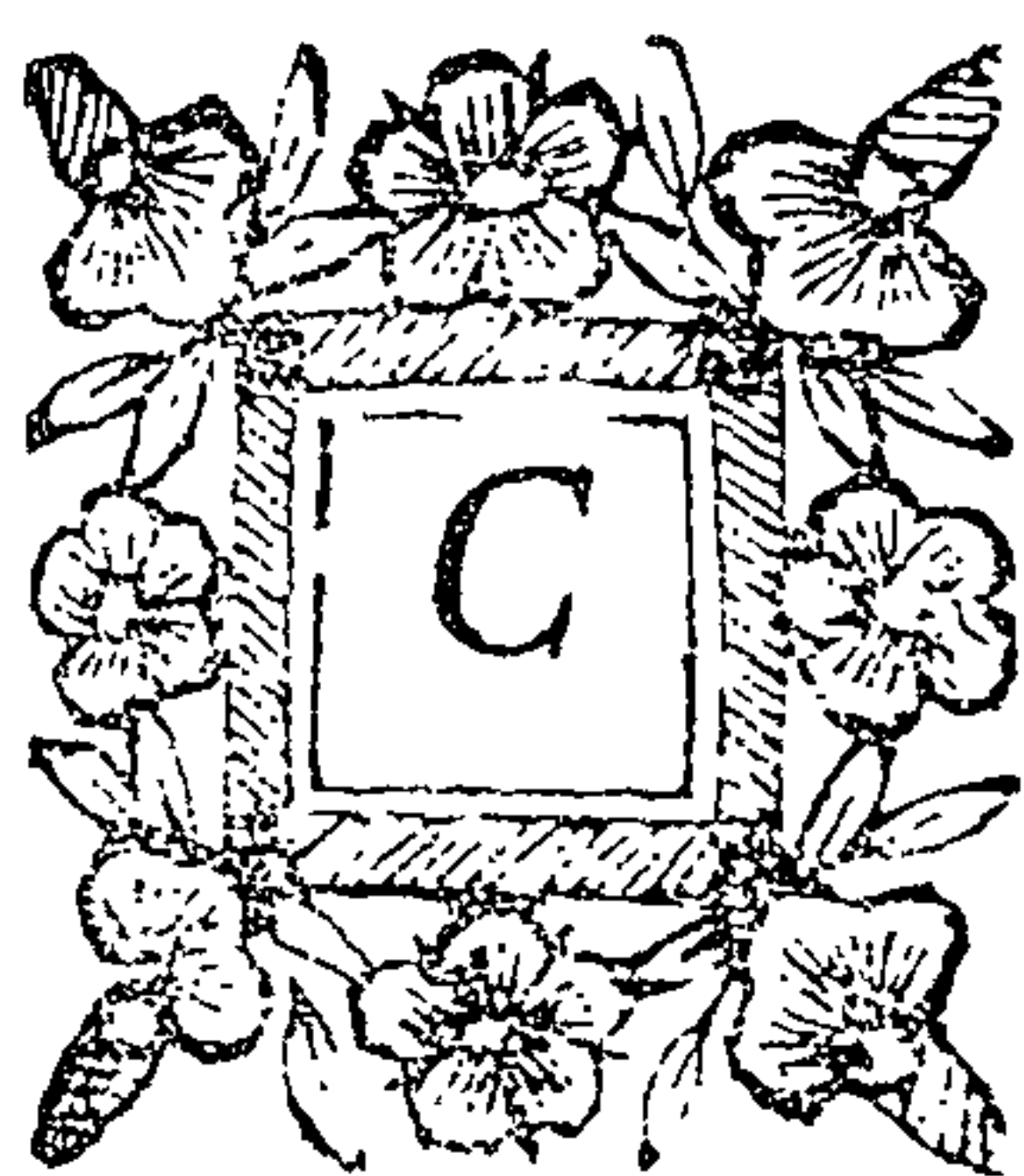
*Xenoph. in  
Cyro Pedia  
Lib. ult.*

Thus did *Cyrus* end his Days, having Reign'd twenty nine Years according to *Herodotus*. But *Xenophon* tells us, he Reign'd only seven Years: Which I cannot be induc'd to believe, considering the many Kingdoms he subdu'd, which cou'd not be well effected in so short a time. However *Herodotus* and *Xenophon* may easily be reconcil'd, by saying, that *Cyrus* Reign'd in all twenty nine Years, and seven Years only after the Conquest of *Babylon*. But then we must reckon the account which *Herodotus* give of his Birth, Education, and the manner of his coming to the Crown; among the Fables of Antiquity, as indeed, it seems to carry such an Air. But however the Truth or Falsehood of that matter may be, it is certain that many Grave and Learned Men have follow'd *Herodotus* in the said account; tho' others not Inferior to them have look'd upon it as Fabulous.



## C H A P. II.

of Cambyfes. *The Magicians.* Darius the Son of Hiftafpes,  
and Xerxes.



YRUS being flain as aforefaid, and fuch of his fcat-  
ter'd Troops as cou'd make their efcape being arriv'd at  
*Sufa* in *Persia*, *Cambyfes* the eldeft Son of *Cyrus* was  
Proclaim'd King of *Asia* in the Room of his Father.  
This Prince made War upon *Amafis* King of *Egypt*  
foon after his Acceffion to the Crown. The Caule of  
his Quarrel to the King of *Egypt* was this. *Amafis*  
had a very Beautiful Daughter whom he lov'd excee-

Herodot.  
lib. 3.

dingly : *Cambyfes* being inform'd thereof fent Ambaffadors to *Egypt* with  
rich Presents, requesting his Alliance and Daughter to Wife. This Em-  
baffy put *Amafis* in great Confternation . For on the one Hand, he cou'd  
not be induc'd to part with his Daughter, whom he tenderly lov'd; and on  
the other, he was very much afraid to provoke fuch a Powerful Prince as  
*Cambyfes*. In thofe ftraights, he thought of this Expedient. There was  
in his Court at this time, a Daughter of *Apries* the late King of *Egypt*,  
(whom he had basely Murther'd, and whose Crown he had ufurp'd) call'd  
*Nitetis*. This young Lady being a great Beauty alfo, *Amafis* gave her an  
Equipage fuitable to her Birth, and fent her with *Cambyfes* his Ambaffadors  
as his own Daughter, charging her to fay the fame. The young Lady faid  
nothing : But when fhe came to *Sufa*, and was receiv'd and Complimented  
by *Cambyfes* as the Daughter of *Amafis*; fhe told him, *he was under a*  
*great Miftake; that fhe was not the Daughter of Amafis but of Apries the*  
*Rightful and Lawful King of Egypt, whom that Bloody Man had basely*  
*Murther'd.*

This Difcourfe provok'd *Cambyfes* to fuch a Degree, that he vow'd to be  
reveng'd of *Amafis* for putting fuch a Trick upon him. Accordingly he  
Muster'd up all his Forces, fent to the King of the *Arabs* for leave to pafs  
thro' his Country, as being the neareft Way; and never ftop'd till he came  
to the Frontiers of *Egypt*. The *Egyptians* being inform'd of the March of  
*Cambyfes*, came to meet him, as far as *Pelufium*, Conducted by their new  
King *Pfammeticus* Son to *Amafis*, who it feems was by this time dead and  
bury'd. Here a bloody fight was a long time maintain'd between the *E-*  
*gyptians* and the *Persians* : At laft the *Persians* got the better, routed the  
*Egyptians*, and forc'd them to fly to *Memphis*, whither *Cambyfes* purfu'd  
them, laid Siege to the Town, took it together with their King *Pfamme-*  
*ticus*, and exercis'd moft cruel Barbarities upon him, his Children, and up-  
on moft of the Noblemen that fell into his Hands; and not content here-  
with,

A a a a



with, he caus'd the Corps of *Amasis* to be taken out of his Sepulchre, and to be treated after the most Ignominious Manner his Rage cou'd Invent.

The taking of *Memphis* determin'd the Fate of *Egypt* : For the Poor *Egyptians* having neither Army to defend them, nor Head to Command, by the slaughter *Cambyfes* made of their great Men after the Town was taken, submitted to his Will, and gave all that he cou'd demand, or rather all that they had, to save their Lives. So *Cambyfes* flush'd with the Conquest of *Egypt*, resolv'd to extend his Dominions as yet farther. To this End he divided his Army into three Bodies, with an Intent to make War, at once, upon the *Carthaginians*, the *Hammonians* or People of *Affrica* Westward of *Egypt*, where was, at this time, the Temple of *Jupiter-Hammon*; and upon the *Ethiopians*, who dwell along the Sea-Coasts in the Southern Part of *Affrica*. And forasmuch as *Cambyfes* intended to lead the Body of Men, which, he design'd for the Expedition of *Ethiopia*, he sent first Ambassadors to the King of that Country with rich Presents, pretending he coveted his Alliance and Friendship, but, in reality, to discover his strength. When these Ambassadors came to the King of *Ethiopia*, and had deliver'd their Message and Presents; the Wile *Ethiopian* receiv'd them coldly, and told them, that *he did not look upon their Master to be an Honest or Virtuous Prince, else he wou'd be Content with his own Dominions, and not disturb other Princes, who did him no wrong. But added he (giving the Ambassador a huge big Bow) when he or any of his Subjects will be able to bend this, or the like Bow with ease; he may come and make War upon us.*

*Cambyfes* his Ambassadors being thus treated with Scorn and Contempt, return'd to their Master and related all they had seen and heard, and withall produc'd the Bow, which none of all the *Persians* was able to bend, only *Smerdes* the King's Brother brought it within two Inches of its due bent. And even this created such a Jealousy in *Cambyfes*, that he sent *Smerdes* back into *Persia*, and, in a few Days after, sent one of his Officers call'd *Prexaspes* after him with Orders to kill him, upon a Ridiculous Dream, in which he pretended to have seen *Smerdes* sitting upon his Throne, and Crown'd King of *Persia*. But being inrag'd at the Character which the King of *Ethiopia* gave of him, he March'd immediately with his Troops towards that Country : And having pass'd by *Thebes* and *Elephantine* in the most Southerly Part of *Egypt*, his Soldiers began to want Provision, and were forc'd to feed upon such Herbs as they cou'd gather. But when they had pass'd over all the Green Lands, and were come into the Sands and Deserts, that divide *Egypt* and *Ethiopia*, they were reduc'd to such Extremity, that they were forc'd to cast Lots, and eat every tenth Man, until one half of the Army was consum'd. This broke all *Cambyfes* his Measures. So that notwithstanding all his Rage and Fury against the *Ethiopians*, he was forc'd to return with less than half the Number he set out with, and these almost famish'd. As to the Army which he sent against the *Hammonians*, when they went as far as *Oasis*, a City some Days Journey from *Thebes*; there was not the least Word heard of them dead or alive ever after, only that the *Hammonians* say, when they came to the great Sands that are between *Oasis* and *Hammon*, the South-Wind blew so fierce in their Backs and rais'd such Mountains of Sand over them, that they were there bury'd alive. And as to the third Army that was to fight the *Carthaginians*, the *Eolians*, and the other *Greeks* who were to go on this Expedition aboard. *Cambyfes* his Ships, refus'd to fight the *Carthaginians*, alledging they were their Friends and Allies. So that *Cambyfes* being come back to

*Memphis,*



Memphis, and hearing all these Malancholly Accounts of his Armies, was quite beside himself. But what contributed most to turn his Brains, was the publick Rejoicings, which he observ'd in that City and over all the Country at his Return. The *Egyptians*, it seems, saw, some Days before his Arrival, their god *Apis*, who did but seldom appear unto them. This *Apis* was a Calf with a White Mark in his Forehead, black over all his Body, the Image of an Eagle upon his Back, and a double Tress of Hair in his Tail. The *Egyptians* say, that *Apis* was engender'd of a Cow, which never Calfed before nor after; and even that he was not begotten by a Bull, but by a Clap of Thunder. *Apis* then appearing about the time *Cambyfes* came back to Memphis, the *Egyptians* put on their best and richest Apparel, and were Feasting and Carrousing for Joy, concluding, that their god appear'd to deliver them from the Yoke of the *Persians*. *Cambyfes* enrag'd to see the *Egyptians* (as he imagin'd) testifie so much Joy at his Misfortunes, sent for their Nobles and chief Men, asking them, *how they durst presume to rejoice at his Disasters, whereas, they did not shew the least Mark of Joy when he was in Prosperity?* And being answer'd, that they only rejoic'd at the Appearance of their god *Apis*, whom they had not seen in a long time before. You are all Lyars, reply'd *Cambyfes*, and shall pay for it. So he caus'd all their Heads to be cut off: Then he sent for the Egyptian Priests and order'd them on Pain of Death to bring him their god *Apis*. When *Cambyfes* saw this Calf he drew his Dagger and thrust it into his Thigh, saying to the Priests: O ye Villains, this is a god fit for the *Egyptians*, a stupid Calf like yourselves; and perceiving the poor Calf low, and the Blood running down his Thigh, added: Ye Wretches, are the gods made of Flesh and Blood? Or do they feel the edge of the Sword? But I will make you know you shall gain nothing by abusing me in this Manner. And having so said, he order'd the Priests to be bastonaded, and all those that assisted at the Feast of *Apis* to be put to Death.

*Cambyfes* having Conquer'd Egypt, and at the same time lost most of his Troops, determin'd to return Home in order to raise more Forces. But by the time he arriv'd at *Ecbatanis* a Town in Syria, he receiv'd such Doleful News as hasten'd his Death. When he undertook the Expedition of Egypt he left the Charge and Care of his Palace to two Magicians, the one call'd *Smerdes*, and the other *Patizithes*. These two, being inform'd of the Losses *Cambyfes* had sustain'd in Egypt, and understanding that *Prexaspes* had slain the King's only Brother *Smerdes*, plotted together, and resolv'd to Usurp the Crown. In order hereunto *Smerdes* carrying the same Name with the King's Brother (whose Death was known but to few) and being very like to him in Person, took upon him to be *Smerdes* the Brother of *Cambyfes*, and caus'd himself to be Proclaim'd King at *Susa*, most of the *Persians* joining him upon account of the Aversion they had to *Cambyfes* for his Cruelty; and really believing him to be *Smerdes* his Brother. When this was done, *Smerdes* the Magician sent Heralds over all the Provinces of the Empire, in order to Proclaim him King; and even one of these had the Assurance to come to the Camp of *Cambyfes*, and Proclaim'd aloud *Smerdes* Brother to *Cambyfes* King of Persia. *Cambyfes* terrify'd at this Proclamation sent for *Prexaspes*, and ask'd him, *how he came to disobey, when he order'd him to kill his Brother Smerdes?* *Prexaspes* answer'd, that he assuredly kill'd his Brother *Smerdes*, and that if the Herald had been sent for, he cou'd not in truth say, that *Smerdes* the King's Brother had sent him on this Message. So the Herald being come into the Presence of *Cambyfes* and



*Prexaspes*, declar'd that he did not see *Smerdes*? but that *Patizithes* the Magician had brought him his Orders as Sign'd by *Smerdes* the King's Brother. *I understand* answer'd *Prexaspes*, this Mystery : *Smerdes the Magician has Usurp'd your Throne under the Notion of your Brother*. Then *Cambyfes* order'd all his Troops to March forthwith towards *Susa* ; but as he was getting on Horseback, the Scabbard of his Sword fell off, and the Point of the Sword gave him a Wound in the Thigh, of which he dy'd in a few Days after, having Reign'd seven Years and five Months, but left no Issue Male to succeed him.

After the Death of *Cambyfes* all his Troops March'd home to *Persia*, and being come to *Susa* their Capital City, the Nobility and chief Officers among them, ask'd *Prexaspes*, if he had in reality kill'd *Smerdes the King's Brother*. *Prexaspes* being afraid of losing his Life, shou'd he Confess it, deny'd the Fact, and said, that indeed, he told *Cambyfes*, he had kill'd him ; because he wou'd cut off his Head, had he known, he did not obey his Commands ; but that *Smerdes the King's Brother was still alive*. This Answer stilled the Minds of the *Persians*, so that they readily obey'd the Commands of *Smerdes* the Magician, believing him to be *Smerdes* the Brother of *Cambyfes*. And indeed, all the *Medes* and *Persians* found their Accounts in serving him. For he publish'd an Edict, at the very Beginning of his Revolt, by which he exempted his Subjects from all Military Duties and Tributes for the space of three Years. But at the end of seven Months, after he had Usurp'd the Crown, some of the great Men began to suspect they were impos'd upon ; because he did not all this while admit any of the great Lords of the Court, who knew very well both *Smerdes* the King's Brother, and *Smerdes* the Magician, to come into his Presence ; but shut himself up among his Wives and Concubines, or rather the Wives and Concubines of *Cambyfes* whereof he made use ; sending out all his Orders and Dispatches by *Patizithes* his Brother Magician : And even, lest any of his Wives or Concubines shou'd discover him, he never suffer'd any of them to see him by Day-light, but sent for them by turns at Night, and in the dark.

There was at this time a certain great Lord at *Susa* call'd *Othanes*, who had a Daughter nam'd *Phedyme*. She had been formerly Concubine to *Cambyfes*, and now kept by *Smerdes* in the same Quality. *Othanes* sent a discreet Woman to her, and desir'd to let him know whether *Smerdes*, that made use of her, was the Brother of *Cambyfes*, or no ? *Phedyme* sent him Word, she cou'd not tell ; for that neither she, nor any other of his Wives or Concubines had ever seen his Face since he came to the Crown. *Othanes* sent the same Woman the second time, and desir'd his Daughter to examine whether the Man she slept with had Ears : For, it seems, *Smerdes* the Magician had none, being cropt by Order of *Cyrus* for some great Misdemeanor, of which he was formerly convicted. This *Phedyme* promis'd to do. Accordingly when it came to her turn to go to Bed to *Smerdes*, she Watch'd her Opportunity, and when she had found him fast asleep, she put up her Hands to his Head and found he had no Ears at all. On the next Day she signify'd the same to her Father. Then *Othanes* sent for *Intaphernes*, *Gobrias*, *Megabyfes*, *Aspathines*, *Hydarnes*, all great *Persian* Lords, and *Darius* the Son of *Histaspes* the General of the *Persian* Troops ; expos'd the matter unto them, and declar'd by what Means he came to be assur'd, the pretended Brother of *Cambyfes* was *Smerdes* the Magician.

This account did very much surprise the Lords ; but however they were mov'd with Indignation for being so impos'd upon, yet they were all of  
Opi-



Opinion (except *Darius*) to take time to consider and to strengthen their Party by the advice and assistance of others, before they attempted any thing. *Darius* was of an other Opinion; and maintain'd it was dangerous to Communicate their Design to any; affirming, that the surest and safest way was to go straight to the Court and kill *Smerdes* and his Companion, protesting also, that except they follow'd his Advice, he wou'd so immediately and discover them all: And being ask'd, how it cou'd be possible for so few to force all the Guards that were between them and the Apartments of *Smerdes*? he answer'd, that these Guards, being all Persians, wou'd ask no Questions of such great Lords, but suffer Them to pass to the King's Bed-Chamber, as was always usual; And as to the Eunuchs, who took care of the Bed-Chamber Door, they might easily make an end of them. The Lords seeing there was no Medium, but that they must all perish in the Attempt, or be discover'd, and so lose their Lives after a most cruel manner; agreed to go straight, and put their Design in Execution. Accordingly they walk'd leasurcly with their Swords by their sides, and being clad in very Sumptuous Apparel, as if they had been sent for by the King, the Guards took no Notice of them, but suffer'd them to pass till they came to the Bed-Chamber, where they met with some Eunuchs, who stop'd them: But they soon dispatch'd one or two of these Villains, at whose Cries *Smerdes* and *Patizithes* ran to the Door, where they met with their Executioners. Who rush'd in upon them, cut off their Heads, and then ran out crying aloud, and shewing *Smerdes* his Head without Ears, to the Guards, and to all the People of the City, who conceiv'd so much Indignation at the Trick put upon them, that they slew all the Magicians they cou'd lay Hands upon; and even instituted a solemn Feast yearly in Remembrance of this Action, terming it *Magothenia*, or the slaughter of the Magicians.

In five Days after, these seven Lords met together in order to deliberate what Form of Government they shou'd chuse: And three Forms being propos'd viz. *Aristocracy*, *Oligarchy*, and *Monarchy*. Some were for *Aristocracy*, others for *Oligarchy*, and made learned Speeches in favour of each. But *Darius* was absolutely for *Monarchy*, and gave such Pregnant Reasons for it, that he brought over all the rest to be of his Opinion. It being then agreed that *Monarchy* was the best Form of Government; the next thing put in deliberation was, who shou'd be the Monarch; and it was also agreed, it shou'd be one of the seven, on Condition that the other six shou'd be free from all Subjection or Obedience to him, they and their Posterity. Then they agreed upon a Method of making a King, which was very Comical, viz. that they shou'd all seven appear on Horseback at a certain place in the Suburbs by Sun-rise the next Day, and that he, whose Horse Neigh'd first, shou'd be invested with *Cambyses* his Authority, and wear his Crown.

When the Assembly broke up, *Darius* hasten'd home, call'd for a skilful Groom that belong'd to his Stables, named *Ebares*, and related unto him upon what Terms a King was to be made the next Day; bidding him to contrive some means by which his Horse should Neigh so soon as he came to the Place appointed. If this be all, answer'd *Ebares*, I will engage no Man's Horse shall Neigh before yours. So *Ebares* took a Mare that very Evening; when it was dark, and tied her in the Place where the Lords were to meet next Day: Then he led *Darius*'s Horse to her, and having brought him about the Mare several times, at last he suffer'd him to cover her. The next Morning *Darius* accompanied by the other six Lords, rode to the place appointed on the said



Horſe, which began to Neigh with all his Might ſo ſoon as he came to the ſpot on which he had cover'd the Mare. Then all the reſt of the *Perſian* Lords lit off their Horſes, worſhipped *Darius*, and acknowledg'd him for their King. Thus was *Darius* the Son of *Hiftaſpes* rais'd to the Throne of *Cambyſes*, and receiv'd the Homage of the People of *Aſia*. He took to Wife, firſt *Atoſſia* the Daughter of *Cyrus*, which was before Married to *Cambyſes*, and afterwards kept by *Smerdes* the Magician; then he Married her Siſter *Artiſtana*, which was a Maid; and *Parmiſa* the Daughter of *Smerdes*, Son of *Cyrus*, as alſo *Phedyme* the Daughter of *Othanes*, who diſcover'd the Cheat of the Magicians.

*Darius* being well ſettled and confirmed in his Throne, divided the Empire of *Aſia* into twenty Provinces, call'd by the *Greeks*, *Satrapia*, from the *Greek* Word *Satrapas*, which ſignifies a great Lord. Becauſe each of theſe Provinces was govern'd by ſuch an One. But we are to obſerve alſo, that every one of theſe Provinces, which conſiſted of intire Kingdoms, was ſub-divided into leſſer Provinces, and govern'd by Preſidents or Deputies to thoſe great Lords: So that *Darius* had in all under his Jurisdiction one Hundred and twenty ſeven Provinces. Which, by the way, ſhews he was the *Aſſuerus* ſpoken of in the Book of *Eſther*, who reign'd from *India* unto *Ethiopia*, over an hundred and twenty ſeven Provinces, *Eſther*, Cap. i. 1.

But forasmuch as this great Empire conſiſted of ſeveral Nations, who had been formerly Free, and loſt their Liberty only ſince the Days of *Cyrus*, it was not long before many of them endeavour'd to ſhake off the Yoke of the *Perſians*, who, it ſeems, were their only Maſters. The *Babylonians* were the firſt who attempted to recover their Liberty. This proud People perceiving that *Cyrus* did rather fortify a new their City, than do it any prejudice, reſolved to attempt the recovering of their Freedom: And in order hereunto, they convey'd ſecretly into the Town vaſt Quantities of Corn and other Proviſions. Then every Man choſe for himſelf one Woman, who, ſhould be to him as a Wife, bake his Bread, and ſerve him in all things; as to the reſt of the Women, they brought them to the place of Execution, and Strangled them, that they might not conſume their Proviſion. Which done, they ſhut up their Gates, and reſolv'd to defend themſelves.

*Darius* being inform'd that *Babylon* had revolted, went in Perſon with a great Army, and beſieg'd it. But the *Babylonians* ſo little valued him, that they walked upon the Ramparts of the City with Muſick and Inſtruments, Dancing, and Mocking him and the *Perſians*. *Darius* hereupon ſet all his Engines to work, uſed all manner of Stratagems, and even turn'd the River *Euphrates* from the Town, as *Cyrus* had done before; but all to no purpoſe. For the *Babylonians* were well provided againſt thoſe Inventions. So having ſpent a Year and ſeven Months before the Town, and advanc'd no farther than the firſt Day, he began to deſpair of ever taking it, when one *Zopyrus* put him in a way that took Effect. This *Zopyrus* was the Son of *Megabyſes*, one of the ſeven Lords, who had deſtroy'd the Magicians; and being a hardy bold young Man, zealous for the Glory of the *Perſians*, came to *Darius* with his Noſe and Ears cut; and bloody over all his Face and Head. *Darius* amaz'd to ſee a young Man of his Quality ſo ſhamefully abus'd, took him into his Cloſet, and ask'd, who had ſo barbarouſly treated him? I did my ſelf, answer'd *Zopyrus*, and if your Maſteſty will follow my advice, I will make you Maſter of *Babylon*. I deſign to go (continu'd he) in this Equipage to the Walls of the Town, and tell the *Babylonians*, how your Maſteſty hath abus'd me, and I doubt not but they will receive me, and  
even



even give me the Command of, at least, some of their Troops to execute my revenge upon you, and your Army. In ten Days after I enter the Town, let a Thousand Men of your Army; the weakest, and whose loss can do you no hurt, be set at the Gate call'd Semiramis. In seven Days after, two Thousand more at another Gate, call'd Ninos. And when twenty Days more are pass'd, set four Thousand at the Gate, call'd the Gate of the Chaldeans; but let all these Troops be arm'd only with Swords, that I, and my Party may the sooner defeat them. Then after twenty Days more, March with your whole Army, as it were to give a general Assault to the Town, and let the Persians attack the Gates, call'd Belides and Cissiennes: For I question not but the Babylonians, seeing the great Actions which I shall perform before, will intrust me with the Keys of these Gates; and then shall I play my Part.

After this Discourse, *Zopyrus* ran away, as it were for Life and Death, turning his Head aside every moment, as if he fear'd to be pursued, and never stopp'd 'till he came to one of the Gates of *Babylon*. The Soldiers, who stood upon the Ramparts seeing a Man bloody all over, running after this manner, and coming alone to the Gate, open'd the Wicket and let him in: And understanding whose Son he was, took pity of the barbarous Condition to which he was reduced. So *Zopyrus* being brought before the chief Magistrates, told a long Tale, like *Sinon*, of the Cruelty of *Darius*, and of his barbarous usage to him, exposing the Wounds of his Nose, Ears, and Head, and begging their Protection. The *Babylonians* were wonderfully taken with so dismal a Story, and order'd him immediately to be dress'd and cloath'd suitable to his Birth. In ten Days after, *Zopyrus* beg'd leave to head a Party of their Men, and that he wou'd Sally out to be reveng'd on the *Persians*. This being readily granted, he sally'd out by the Gate call'd *Semiramis*, and having met a Thousand of *Darius* his Men, not far from that Gate, as he had instructed *Darius*; fell upon them, cut them all to Pieces, and then return'd to the City highly applauded by the *Babylonians*. Seven Days after this Action, *Zopyrus* sally'd out of the Gate call'd *Nmos*, and slew two Thousand more: And in twenty Days after, four Thousand. The foolish *Babylonians* perceiving with how little Difficulty or Loss *Zopyrus* had so often beaten their Enemies, concluded he was the fittest Man to Command all their Troops. So they unfortunately not only gave him the chief Command, but also put all the Keys of the City Gates into his Hands. *Darius* perceiving that all things succeeded with *Zopyrus*, as he had projected, fail'd not to March with his whole Army, as it were to make a general Assault, on the Day appointed; and when the *Persians* came to the Gates call'd *Belides* and *Cissiennes*, *Zopyrus* open'd them, and let them in: So that most of the *Persian* Troops were in the Town before the Garrison knew any thing of their Misfortune: But when they saw their Enemies attack them within, headed by the Man in whom they confided, their Hearts fail'd them. Some ran for Sanctuary into the Temples, others, in despair laid down their Arms, and suffer'd themselves to be knock'd in the Head. In a Word there was nothing to be seen but Bloodshed and Slaughter, till *Darius* came in, and order'd the Soldiers to spare the rest of the Citizens. But that *Babylon* might not revolt any more, he caus'd all the Walls, and Gates, and publick Edifices to be pull'd down, and level'd with the Ground; and as a further Punishment upon the Inhabitants, he order'd three Thousand of their chief Men to be impall'd alive. And as to *Zopyrus*, *Darius* embrac'd him with a tenderness not to be express'd, presented him with the richest things his Empire cou'd afford, made him per-

B b b b 2

petual



petual Governour of *Babylon*, and exprest'd so much concern for his Wounds, as to declare, *he wou'd not wish for twenty Babylons that he had disfigured himself.* Thus was the proud *Babylon* at last dismantled of its tow'ring Walls, and reduc'd to the State of an open Town from that Day to this; groveling in Dust, and serving as an Example of insuperable Pride, and an Instance of the Instability of human Grandeur.

Herodot.  
lib. 4.

*Darius* having thus happily finish'd the Reduction of *Babylon*, determin'd to make War upon the *Scythians*, who had plunder'd almost all *Asia* in the Days of *Ciaxes*. These People, as I observed before, dwelt on the North side of the *Caspian-Sea*, and were the same with the *Massagetes*, only with this difference, that such of them as Inhabited the Lands beyond the River *Araxes*, and possess'd a more happy Climate, which render'd them more considerable, were call'd *Massagetes*, whereas the rest, who Dwelt more Northernly, extending from the *Danube* almost to the Eastern-Sea, had the Name of *Scythians* bestowed upon them by the *Greeks*, from a certain Son of *Hercules* call'd *Scythos*, who was their first King, and the Founder of their Monarchy, if we believe the *Greek* Historians. The *Scythians* then having in the Days of *Ciaxes* driven the *Cimerians*, who dwelt at that time between Mount *Caucassus* and the River *Boristhenes*, out of their Country, and pursuing them into *Asia*, lost their way; so that they fell unawares into the fertile Plains of *Media*; and finding there abundance of all things proper, not only for Life, but also for Luxury, extended their Conquest as far as *Egypt*, and oppress'd the *Medes* and *Persians* for the space of twenty eight Years: But being at last driven out of *Asia* by a Stratagem of *Ciaxes* (who invited their chief Commanders to a Feast, and when they got Drunk, Murder'd them) were forc'd to return to their own Country, where they were like to have as little Admittance, as into the Country which they were forc'd to abandon. For, it seems, they left all their Wives at Home, when they went into *Asia*; and these Wives hearing their Husbands had settled there with a Resolution to return no more, took their Slaves to be to them instead of Husbands, (having no other Men in the Country) and brought them Children, who were grown up to Man's Estate, by the time their Masters were coming back. This young Brood, concluding, that if they shou'd suffer them to come into the Country, they wou'd reduce them to the Condition of their Fathers, resolv'd to oppose their Entrance with all their Might; and in order thereunto, they made a Line from Mount *Taurus* to the *Palus Meotis*, and Incamp'd behind this Line. When the *Scythians* came thither, they were so warmly received by these young Slaves, that they were forced to recoil, and after many bloody Battles, in which they were always foil'd, the matter grew desperate: For their Men were falling, and their Provisions growing scarce. In these Extremities, one of their Captains thought of an Expedient that reliev'd them. You are (says he) fighting your Slaves with Swords and Bows; and by this means you make them believe they are your Equals: But if you take Whips and Scourges in your Hands, you will put them in mind of their Condition, and they will run away from you as your Slaves. This was no sooner said than put in Execution: Immediately all the *Scythians* laid down their Bows and Arrows, and their Swords; took Whips and Scourges in their Hands, and ran to the Lines. The young Slaves no sooner saw the Whips and Scourges, (which put them in Mind of their Condition) but their Hearts failed them; so that they hung down their Arms, and betook them to their Heels, leaving a free Passage for their Masters to enter into their Country.

*Darius*



*Darius* resolving then to punish these *Scythians* for the great Mischief they had done to the *Medes* and *Persians* in the Days of *Ciaxares*, order'd a Bridge to be made over the *Bosphorus*, that he might pass by *Thracia* to come to them. This Bridge must have been made of Boats : For the *Bosphorus* is an Arm of the Sea, which joins the *Propontis* to the *Euxin-Sea*, and is four *Stadia's* broad ; as the *Hellepont* is an Arm that joins the *Propontis* to the *Egean-Sea*, but much broader than the *Bosphorus*. When the Bridge was finish'd, *Darius* led his Army thither, consisting of seven hundred thousand Horse and Foot, besides a Navy of six hundred Sail ; and perceiving the exquisite Art wherewith it was contriv'd, he highly commended the Undertaker, whose Name was *Mandrocles* a *Samian*, and gave him a vast Reward, even twenty times the value of the Work. Then he March'd into *Thracia*, and order'd his Navy to Sail on the *Euxin-Sea* to the Mouth of the *Danube*, and to wait for him there. So having pass'd by *Thracia* and the Country of the *Getes*, which he subdued in his way, because they oppos'd him, as believing themselves to be immortal ; he came after a long and tedious March to the Banks of the *Danube*, where he met his Fleet ; and without delay caus'd a Bridge to be made upon that great River, pass'd over it with all his Troops, and enter'd into the Land of the *Scythians*. When this was done, he order'd the Bridge to be broken down, that his Fleet might Sail up the River, and keep in view of his Camp, to the end it might relieve him with Provision in case he shou'd want. But before his orders were executed he chang'd his Mind, (upon certain weighty reasons offer'd by one *Coes* Captain of the *Mytilenians*, against breaking the Bridge) and commanded the *Jonians* his Sea Captains to continue there, and to guard the Bridge for sixty days, and in case he return'd not by that time, to sail Home.

The *Scythians* understanding that *Darius* had enter'd their Land with so mighty an Host, and finding themselves in no Condition to withstand his Power, resolv'd to fly always before him, to cut off all manner of Provision from his Army, that the Country afforded ; and to lead him into narrow Passes, where he might be straighten'd, that so they might tire him out, and force him to return to his own Country. In order hereunto they loaded all their Carts and Wagons, and their Beasts of Burthen with their Wives and Children, and sent them away to the most Northern Parts of *Scythia* ; then they betook themselves to their Arms, cut down the Grasse and all the Fruit Trees, and burnt them, and fled before *Darius* ; led him over Mountains, and Deserts and Barren Lands, where his Army was often in danger of perishing : In a Word, they did so harass him and all his Troops, that if he had not bethought himself of retreating in time, he and his whole Army must have infallibly perish'd. The King of the *Scythians* knowing very well the distress of the *Persians*, sent *Darius* by way of Present, a Bird, a Frog, a Mouse and a Quiver of Arrows. When he receiv'd this Present, he ask'd the Herald that brought it, what the King of the *Scythians* meant by it ? I know not (answer'd the Herald) I suppose you have Men skilful enough to know what these things are Emblems of. Then *Darius* told his Officers with a great deal of Joy, that he believ'd the King of the *Scythians* had sent him this Present as a Mark of Subjection : For, says he, the Mouse signifies Earth, because the Earth is its Dwelling Place, and the Frog, Water, that being its Element : For it seems the *Persians* always requir'd Earth and Water as an Emblem of Subjection of all the Nations they wou'd bring under their Power. But *Gobrias* one of the seven Lords who had destroy'd the Magicians, told

Cccc

*Darius*



*Darius*, that he was mistaken. For, said he, the *Scythian King* knows to what straits you are reduced : And therefore sent you this Present in Derision, to let you know that you must either fly as a Bird, or dig under Ground as a Mouse, or swim through the Sea as a Frog ; else you will never get out of his Land.

*Darius* and all his great Captains being sensible that this was the true Meaning of the Present, made all the haste they could to come back to the Bridge upon the *Danube*. Accordingly that very Night he retreated with the choice of his Troops, leaving all the Sick and useless Hands in his Camp, with orders to keep great Fires that the Enemy might not discover his Flight. The next Morning the *Scythians* understanding that *Darius* had fled towards the *Danube*, pursued him with a design to cut off his Rear, as he marched on. But forasmuch as they cou'd not tell which way he took, they came long before him to the *Danube*, and found upon enquiry, that he was not come. Then they exhorted the *Jonians*, who guarded the Bridge to break it down, laying before them how much it concerned themselves to destroy the Persians, who had reduced them to slavery ; and the impossibility *Darius* lay under of escaping their Hands. The *Jonians* being loath to break their Word with *Darius* ; and, on the other Hand, unwilling to disoblige the *Scythians*, whom they always fear'd ; promis'd they wou'd break the Bridge, and as a Mark of their readiness to comply with Them, they caused some part of it to be broken in their Presence. Then the whole *Scythian Army* mov'd and went in quest of *Darius* ; but by good luck for him, they took another Course, not imagining that he wou'd or cou'd pass any other way than such as they had sufficiently guarded against him ; so that he came after a most toilsome March, fatigu'd and half starv'd to the *Danube*, where he found part of the Bridge broken down, and it being dark, so as that he cou'd not discover the Ships, having arriv'd in the Night, he caus'd a certain *Egyptian*, which was of his Retinue, and had a prodigious loud Voice, to cry out with all his Might, and call upon *Hystias* the *Milesian*. This *Hystias* was one of *Darius* his Sea-Admirals, and was very Instrumental in dissuading the *Jonians* from going away, or breaking down the Bridge, as the *Scythians* had earnestly requested them. *Hystias* then hearing the Voice of the *Egyptian*, with which he was well acquainted, concluded that *Darius* was not far off. He therefore took Boat and came ashore, where he found *Darius*, and such of his Troops, as had out-lived the most penurious March of above an hundred Days, over Mountains, craggy Rocks, wild Deserts and barren Sands, that ever Men perform'd. Then all Hands were set to work, and the broken part of the Bridge was soon repaired ; so that all the *Persian Troops* got over the *Danube* before the *Scythians* cou'd come up with them.

*Darius* having thus happily escap'd the Hands of the *Scythians*, though, indeed with a shameful and dishonourable Retreat, pass'd by *Thracia*, and came to *Sardis* in *Lydia* by the *Helespont*. Being arriv'd at this City, his first Care was to reward *Hystias* and *Coes* ; *Hystias*, for being faithful to him, in keeping the *Jonians* in their Duty ; and *Coes* for the wholesome Advice he gave him not to break down the Bridge ; which if he had not follow'd, he and all his Troops must have infallibly perish'd. He therefore sent for these two faithful *Grecians*, and demanded what Reward they wou'd Themselves ask for their great Service to him ? *Hystias*, who was Prince and Sovereign of *Miletus*, ask'd no more than his own Principality, only, that he pray'd *Darius* to add thereunto a Piece of Ground call'd



*Myrcine*, that he might build a City in it. As to *Coes*, who was but a private Gentleman, he ask'd the Principality of *Mytilene* : And both the one and the other being granted unto them, they went to their respective Principalities.

No looner was *Hystias* come to *Miletus*, but he began to build a City in *Myrcine*, and to secure it with strong Walls and Turrets. *Megabyfes*, who was one of *Darius* his greatest Captains, conceiving a Jealousy at *Hystias* his Proceedings, advis'd *Darius* not to suffer him to fortify a Place which might, in time, prove of ill Consequence to the Persians. *Darius* being of the same Mind, and, on the other Hand, loath to disoblige *Hystias*, who had render'd him great Service, thought of an Expedient which shou'd hinder the fortifying of the City, and yet not Chagrin *Hystias*. To this end he sent for him, and told him, he wanted his Service and good Advice so much, that he must always keep with himself in his Court, and go along with him to *Susa*; where he shou'd be promoted to the highest Dignity. *Hystias* who knew very well *Darius* his Design, as also how dangerous it was to refuse him, waited upon him to *Susa*, expecting a favourable Opportunity to shew his Resentment, which soon offer'd.

When *Darius* went back into *Asia*, he left *Megabyfes* in Europe at the Head of eighty Thousand Men. This General having conquer'd the *Perinthians*, and the *Peonians*, sent Ambassadors to *Amyntas* King of *Macedonia* to demand Earth and Water : That is, to require him to submit to the King of *Persia*. *Amyntas*, who was in no condition to oppose so mighty a Power, promis'd to comply; and having prepar'd a splendid Entertainment for these Ambassadors and their Retinue, *Alexander* the Son of *Amyntas*, procur'd twelve young Men in Women's Clothes, with Daggers under their Mantoes, to go to Bed to them, who slew each his Man; *Alexander* taking care, at the same time, to kill all their Servants : So that no Man escaped to give an account of what had happen'd. *Megabyfes* admiring what became of his Ambassadors, sent a great *Persian* Lord call'd *Bubares* with some Troops to enquire for them, who coming to *Amyntas* his Court fell in Love with *Gyrea* the King's Daughter, and Married her, and in Compliment to his Father-in-law conceal'd the Murder of the Ambassadors; putting *Megabyfes* off from any further Enquiry with a sham Story. In some time after, *Megabyfes* being remov'd was succeeded by *Otanes*, who took the Cities of *Chalcedon*, *Bisantium* (or *Constantinople*,) and *Tandros*, together with the Islands *Lemnos* and *Imbros*.

*Hystias* being all this while in the Court of *Darius* at *Susa*, and seeing the *Grecians* a subduing by degrees, thought this a fit opportunity of executing his Revenge upon *Darius* : To this purpose he resolv'd to excite the *Jonians* to Revolt, concluding, That *Darius* wou'd send him as the fittest Man to reduce them; and by this means get out of his Clutches. In pursuance of this Project, he shav'd the Head of a trusty Servant of his, and with a hot Iron imprinted certain Characters of his Design upon it; and when his Hair was grown, sent him to *Miletus*, with Orders only to tell *Aristogoras* his trusty Friend, that he shou'd shave his Head. By this Means *Aristogoras* receiv'd the advice he had very much long'd for, and readily influenc'd the *Jonians* to Rebel.

The *Athenians* sided with the *Jonians*, and their Tyrant *Hippias*, then at the Court of *Persia*, us'd all means to incense *Darius* against them. They sent twenty Ships to assist the *Jonians*, besides five sent by the *Eretrians*. This was the beginning of that infinite number of Evils, which put an End



to the *Persian* Empire. With these Naval Forces, *Aristogaras*, who, next to *Hystias*, was the chief Author of this Revolt, quickly took *Sardis*, which was laid in Ashes by the firing of one House : *Artaphernes*, *Darius's* Brother continu'd Master of the Castle. But the *Grecians* were forc'd to fly away to save their Lives, the Tumult occasion'd by the Fire putting the *Persians* and *Lydians* to flight also. Many of the *Grecians* were kill'd in their Retreat, and *Aristogoras* cou'd by no Means hinder the *Athenians* from returning home.

*Cyprus* indeed, sided with the *Grecians*, and *Hystias*, as he had projected, did so far over-reach *Darius*, that he got leave to go back from *Susa*, pretending he wou'd quench the flame, which he himself had industriously kindled. But the *Cyprian's* Condition became soon after more desperate : For at the end of one Year, *Cyprus* was reduc'd by the *Persians*, and the Governours of the Provinces, who had Marry'd the King's Daughters, having divided the *Jonian* Towns among themselves, got most of them; whereupon *Aristogaras*, designing to flee into *Thracia* was kill'd. The Governours having reduc'd all the *Jonians*, that liv'd above the *Hellepont*, to *Darius* his Subjection besieg'd *Miletus* both by Sea and Land. The *Jonian* Ambassadors, out of regard to the *Panionian* Council, resolv'd to fit out a Gallant Navy to make head against them, and not trouble themselves with levying Land Forces. But the *Persian* Officers did so dexterously employ their Interest with the Tyrants of *Samos*, that the *Samians* observing the lazy temper of the rest, gave them the slip, in hopes of obtaining Pardon : And at last the others follow'd their Example.

*Miletus* being block'd up, was at length carry'd by Mines, and other Stratagems usual in the Sieges of Towns; and was quite demolish'd in the sixth Year of their Revolt. *Hystias* finding the Fickleness of his Countrymen, and, notwithstanding their readiness to Revolt, how little steadiness they had in prosecuting their Designs, was forc'd to flee from Town to Town, and being at last taken in the Field by *Harpagus* one of the *Persian* Commanders, was Gibbited by *Artaphernes*, and his Head sent to *Darius*, who was much disturb'd at the Death of so great a Man; saying often to himself, and to those that were about him, that *the Service which Hystias had render'd him was much greater than his Crime*. Thus were the *Jonians* thrice conquer'd, once by the *Lydians*, and twice by the *Persians*.

Tho' the Commotions of the *Jonians* were now laid, and the Ring-Leaders of the Rebellion punish'd, yet *Darius* had no Mind to put up the Affair, while the boldness of the *Athenians* pass'd with Impunity, and the destruction of *Sardis* unrepented; which incens'd him so much against them, that he order'd one of his Servants to cry out every Day while he sat at Table : *Sir, remember the Athenians*. First, he sent Ambassadors to *Greece*, to demand Provisions from the Cities pertaining to *Sparta* and *Athens*; but the *Lacedemonians* and *Athenians* threw them headlong into Pits. Then he sent *Dates* the *Mede*, and *Artaphernes* his Brother's Son at the head of a gallant Army against them. Their orders were to lay *Athens* and *Eretria* waste, and to bring their Inhabitants before him. *Eretria*, indeed was taken by Treachery; but when they March'd against the *Athenians*, they were routed by them, under the Command of *Miltiades* in that great Battle, which was fought in the Fields of *Marathon*.

*Darius*, notwithstanding this unfortunate Expedition against the *Athenians*, design'd to make Trial of another. Accordingly about four Years after,

when



when the *Egyptians* rebell'd, he made great Preparations, in order to invade the *Athenians*, and to quell the Insurrection of the *Egyptians*; and was just ready to take the Field, when the Custom of his Country oblig'd him to declare his Successor, before he set out. *Darius* had many Wives: His first Wife was the Daughter of *Gobrias*, and by her he had three Sons before he was made King of *Persia*. His second was *Atossa*, Daughter to *Cyrus*. This probably was she that is call'd *Vasthi* in the Book of *Esther*, and whom *Darius* (alias *Assuerus*) cast off for her Pride, taking *Esther* the Niece of *Mardocheus* in her stead. By *Atossa* he had three Sons. The Eldest of his Sons by the Daughter of *Gobrias* was call'd *Artabarzanes*, and the Eldest by *Atossa*, *Xerxes*. These two pretended to succeed *Darius* in the Kingdom. *Artabarzanes*, as the First born of all his Children, and *Xerxes*, as the First born since he was King. *Darius* patiently heard out all the Reasons they urg'd in favour of their Pretensions, and determin'd the matter in favour of *Xerxes*, constituting him his Successor in the Kingdom; but before he set out upon this great Expedition he died, having reign'd thirty six Years.

*Xerxes* upon the Death of his Father *Darius* being Proclaim'd and saluted King, bent all his Endeavours towards the Reduction of *Egypt*, for which and the Punishing of the *Athenians*, *Darius* had been four Years making vast Preparations; and having reduc'd the *Egyptians* to a Servitude much more severe than that of his Predecessor *Cambyses*, he left *Achemenes* one of his Brethren to govern, or rather to Rule them with a Rod of Iron. Then he summon'd all his Captains and Officers, and charg'd them to be ready for the Expedition of Greece, being resolv'd, at the Instigation of *Mardonius*, the Son of *Gobrias*, to destroy the *Athenians*, and all those who should presume to assist them. Such mighty Preparations were made for this Expedition, that all *Asia* seem'd in a manner, to be transported into *Europe*. *Xerxes* plac'd so much Confidence in Multitudes of Men, that he led out of *Asia* 2317910 Regular Troops, together with a Fleet consisting of 1200 Sail: And having taken up his Winter Quarters at *Sardis*, he laid Bridges over the *Helespont*, early the next Spring, and pass'd with his Army into *Europe* in seven Days. And lest this prodigious Number shou'd not suffice to swallow up the *Athenians* and their Confederates, he requir'd all the Nations from *Dariens* to Greece to rise up in Arms, by which means his Naval Strength was encreased by the Accession of 120 Ships, and 24000 Men; and his Land Forces by an Addition of 300000 more. So that the total Number of his Men at this rate amounted to 2641910. And it is thought he was follow'd by an equal Number of Servants and other Retainers to the Camp. If so, then his Camp and Fleet must have consisted of 5283820 Souls, which stupendious Multitude must no doubt have drank up Rivers dry, as is often said of *Xerxes* his Army.

Being come to the Plains of *Dariens*, he review'd his Naval and Land Forces; which done, he was seen to Weep; and being ask'd by his Great Officers and Lords, What might be the subject of his Tears? 'Tis (said he) that it grieves me, when I consider that of this Infinite Number of Men, not one Soul shall be alive an hundred Years hence. Then he commanded his Fleet to set to Sea, and having cut a large Canal in which two Ships might Sail a breast across the *Isthmus* that join'd Mount *Atbos* to the Continent, he order'd them to Sail on this Canal, and to wait for him over-against the City *Thermes* at the



Mouth of the River *Axis* ; and so March'd with his Land Army until he came to the said City ; drinking all the Rivers and Lakes, in his way, almost dry.

In the mean time the *Grecians* having Intelligence of the March of *Xerxes*, and of the prodigious Number of his Troops and Ships, laid aside their domestick Quarrels, (for at this time, the *Athenians* and the *Eginetes*, and several other Cities were at Variance) in order to make Head against the Common Enemy : And their chief Heads being met together to consult their common Safety, resolv'd not only to stand by one another, except they were forc'd by the Enemy, but also to send Ambassadors to all the other Provinces, that were either ally'd to them, or whom the consideration of their own safety might induce to help them. Among these, *Gelon* King of *Sicily* was the most considerable : To him the *Athenians* and *Lacedemonians* sent Ambassadors, who being introduc'd, laid before him the impending Danger of *Greece* from a *Barbarian* King, who wou'd not fail to fall upon him and his Country, shou'd he succeed in his Enterprize against the *Grecians* ; and therefore earnestly pray'd him to send his Troops to their Assistance. *Gelon* (who it seems had a grudge to these Republicks, for refusing to assist him against the *Carthaginian* ) told them, in a haughty rough Tone ; that He admir'd Men shou'd beg his Assistance, who had but a little before refused him the like favour ; That however he would do Good for Evil, and assist them with 200 Gallies, 24000 Foot well Arm'd, and 2000 Horse, send them Corn enough to supply all *Greece* so long as the War shou'd last ; provided they wou'd give him the chief Command of their Land Forces. The *Lacedemonian* Ambassador hearing *Gelon* demand the chief Command of the Land Forces, had not the patience to listen any longer, but cryed out, as if *Gelon* had done him the greatest Injury imaginable : Speak no more of that (said he) and do not think the *Lacedemonians* will ever be Commanded by a *Sicilian* : Either resolve to Fight under their Command, or keep your Troops to your self. This haughty Behaviour of the proud *Lacedemonian* did very much exasperate *Gelon* ; however considering the danger his own Country was expos'd to, in case *Greece* had been subdued, he was willing to Compound the matter ; so waving the Command of the Land Forces, he offer'd to be content with the Command of the Fleet : But these Words were no sooner out of his Mouth, when the *Athenian* Ambassador set up his Throat, and told him, That the *Athenians* wanted not a Commander, but Soldiers, which if he would not send upon any other Terms, he might keep them at Home. Well Gentlemen, reply'd *Gelon*, go your way Home : But remember you will pass the next Year without a Spring ; intimating by these Words, that as the Fields are adorn'd with Flowers in Spring, so the *Grecians*, wanting his Soldiers, whom he look'd upon as so many Flowers in their Field of Battle, would want that Ornament, the following Year.

Thus did the *Grecian* Ambassadors return from *Sicily* *re infectâ* ; then *Leonidas* the King of *Lacedemon* was sent with about 10000 Men to defend a narrow Pass call'd *Thermopylae*, by which *Xerxes* was to enter into *Attica* ; and which he wou'd have made good against all the Power of *Persia*, had not one of his own Nation betray'd him. For when *Xerxes*, having March'd thro' *Thesaly*, which immediately submitted to him, came to this Pass, he was so warmly receiv'd by *Leonidas*, that in three different Attacks he lost so many of his best Troops, that he was at his Wits end. First, all the *Medes* came down upon *Leonidas*, and his handful of *Greeks*, but were repuls'd with so much Fury and Slaughter, that they were glad to return



return to their Camp. Then *Xerxes* commanded his *Immortal Persians* (so call'd, because they were all of a vast Stature, bold and resolute, always succeeded by Men of the same size and Complexion, when any of them fell, and always consisting of 10000 Men) to begin the Attack the next Day; but the slaughter of these Men, whom the Persians reputed *Immortal*, was by so much greater than that of the *Medes*, by how much they maintain'd the fight with more Obstinacy. Lastly, a prodigious Detachment of the whole Army attack'd the Pass, but in vain : For *Leonidas* and his stout *Lacedemonians* being posted, so as that but a few cou'd come upon them in a Breast, maintain'd their Ground with so much Vigour and Resolution, that *Xerxes*, who was seated upon an Eminence, beholding his Troops so often repuls'd with dreadful slaughter, and at last running away, got up in great Fury, cursing the Hour he attempted this Expedition. As he was in this Perplexity, not knowing what to do, or what Measures to take, a certain Greek Defenter call'd *Epiates* came to him, and, in hopes of being highly rewarded, told him, he wou'd shew his Men a Passage over the Mountain, by Means of which they might come behind *Leonidas* and his Troops. This was agreeable News to *Xerxes* : Accordingly that very Night he order'd *Hydranes* one of his great Officers to lead all the Troops which he commanded, and to follow *Epiates* as his Guide over the Mountain. *Leonidas* was aware of this Pass, and therefore sent a Thousand *Phoceans* to defend it : But it seems they took no great care of it, concluding that none of the *Persians* cou'd ever imagine, that there was any Way over so steep and craggy a Mountain ; so that the *Persians* by the break of Day came upon them as they lay in their Tents, and kill'd such as fell into their Hands, putting the rest to flight.

When the News of the *Persians* passing the Mountain, and their being in the Plains, was brought to *Leonidas* his Camp, most of his Troops went off, in order to reserve themselves for a better Opportunity : But *Leonidas*, and a few gallant *Lacedemonians* stood their Ground, preferring a glorious Death to a shameful Flight ; and being attack'd in Front and Rear, maintain'd their Ground against the whole Power of *Xerxes* until the last Man of them fell. The *Athenians*, upon the News of the Death of *Leonidas*, and of the *Persians* forcing the Pass of *Thermopylae*, abandon'd their City, which *Xerxes* in a few Days after set on fire, gratifying by this Means part of his Revenge : But matters did not so well succeed with his Naval Forces : For a little before they cou'd make the Port of *Artemisium*, a violent Storm, which lasted a considerable time, scatter'd and Cast-away 400 of their Ships ; and when they came into the Bay of this City, the *Grecian* Fleet worsted them in three Engagements, but none of them was decisive. The *Grecians* had in all, at this time, but 271 Ships of the Line : This Fleet was Commanded in chief by *Eurybiades* a *Lacedemonian*, and next to him was the famous *Themistocles* the *Athenian*, all riding at Anchor in the Harbour of *Artemisium*, when *Xerxes* his Fleet, consisting then of 1000 Ships of the Line of Battle, came in view of the Bay. The *Persians* seeing this small Fleet in the Harbour, resolv'd not to let one of them escape ; and the better to secure their intended Prize, they sent away 200 Sail with Orders to go round the Island *Eubea*, and to lye in wait in the Straits betwixt that Island and the Continent, that they might catch such of the *Grecian* Ships as should escape the Hands of the main Fleet : But what became of these 200 Ships no Man cou'd ever hear ; for they never since appear'd.



There was, at this time, a certain *Grecian* aboard the *Persian* Fleet called *Scyllias*, who being forc'd to serve *Xerxes* more out of Fear than Love, as did indeed all the *Jonians* his Countrymen, griev'd very much to hear the Mischief that was intended against his Country, and being a good Diver, stript himself, and leap'd into the Sea, as if he intended only to wash. But having Dived under water till he got out of sight, swam along to *Artemisium*, and gave an Account unto *Euribiades* and *Themistocles* of the Designs of the *Persians*.

The *Grecian* Fleet hereupon move out of the Harbour, with an intent to Attack first the 200 Ships sent round about *Eubea*; but having roved about for some time, and hearing no Tydings of them, they resolv'd to Attack the Main Fleet of *Xerxes*, which consisted then of 800 Ships, whereas they themselves had only 271. The *Persians* conceiv'd no less indignation against the *Grecians* for presuming to Fight them with so few Men of War, than *Goliath* did against *David* when he saw him come to him with a Staff; and therefore surrounded them, pretending not to let a Man of them escape: But the *Grecians* soon gave them to understand that they were not to be taken so tamely: For after a bloody fight which lasted from Morning till the Night separated them, the *Grecians* took twenty of their best Men of War, with little or no loss. The next Day they renew'd the fight with more eagerness; but were still worsted. The third Day they attack'd the *Athenian* Ships that were in the Front with more than ordinary Resolution (as being assur'd to see so small an handful keep them at Bay) and shatter'd some few of them; but the *Lacedemonians* coming up to their Assistance, kept them in play until Night, killing many of their stoutest Men. By this time both Fleets being sufficiently harass'd, were content to cease for a while. So the *Persians* sail'd off, and the *Grecians* return'd into the Harbour, whence they sail'd in a few Days after, and anchor'd at *Salamina*, where they receiv'd the fatal News of the Death of *Leonidas*, and the burning of *Athens*. This put the whole Fleet into such Consternation that each Province resolv'd to go home and submit to *Xerxes*. But the great *Themistocles*, with his Persuasive Eloquence and Address, prevail'd upon them by much ado to continue there till the Recruits, which they expected from most of the Ports in *Greece* shou'd join them. These being at last come, they made up a Fleet in all of 378 Ships of the Line of Battle. *Themistocles* was pretty sure of destroying the *Persian* Fleet with this Number, wou'd they but fight, and do their Duty; and therefore perswaded *Euribiades* and his Council to lead them on, before the private Captains of the different Provinces that compos'd this Fleet had time to Mutiny or Cabal, as he found by Experience they were wont to do. It being then resolv'd to fight the Enemy upon the weighty Reasons offer'd by *Themistocles*, *Euribiades* order'd the Fleet to be in a readiness to Sail the next Day: But they no sooner left the Port of *Salamina*, when there arose such a Mutiny among them, that it was impossible for *Themistocles* or any other to prevail upon them to wait for the Enemy. This put *Themistocles* (out of the excessive Love and Concern he had for his Country) upon doing a thing, which, had it been discover'd, wou'd render him the most infamous Man alive, and the most obnoxious to Ruin and Destruction, not only in his own Person, but also in that of his House and Family. He sent a trusty Servant in a Boat, when it was Dark, with orders to tell the Admiral and Captains of the *Persian* Fleet, That the *Grecian* Fleet had Mutiny'd, that they were just going to separate, and to return to the respective Ports



from whence they came; that it wou'd be a difficult Task, and the Work of many Campaigns to subdue them all after their Separation; besides the Hazard and Danger the Persian Fleet shou'd be exposed to by Storms and foul Weather in Winter: Whereas if they hasten'd now to come upon them before they had separated, they might make an easy Conquest of them; and find a Friend in their humble Servant Themistocles.

The Persian Captains, knowing very well in what great Credit and Authority Themistocles was among the Athenians, believ'd all this Messenger had told them, and concluded, that upon their Approach the Athenians wou'd join them; they therefore immediately hoist Sail, and made towards the Grecian Fleet, which Themistocles amus'd with all his Art and Eloquence for a Day or two: But when they found themselves inclos'd, and in a manner surrounded by the Persians, they put off all Thoughts of Separating and prepar'd for Battle. Themistocles was then no less Diligent in exhorting them to their Duty, than he was before in endeavouring to keep them together; laying before them, that the Fate of Greece depended of that day; that forasmuch as their All was at Stake, and that they were then to Fight Pro aris & focis, he hop'd they wou'd acquit themselves like Men of Honour, and good Patriots. Then the Signal being given, they fell on the Persians with such Fury, that they broke their first Line, and forc'd them upon the second, which put the whole Fleet in great disorder, their own Ships splitting one another. The Grecians, seeing the Confusion the Enemy was in, pursu'd them so close, that they gave them no time to recover 'till they were quite Disorder'd. So that they had no more to do the rest of the Day, but to take, or sink as many Ships without any resistance as they cou'd overtake or meet with; and even such of them as had escap'd were so close pursu'd by the Eginetes the next Day, that of this prodigious Number of Ships which Xerxes brought into Europe, scarce any two of them remain'd together, to give an account of their Disasters.

Xerxes, who was all this while on the Top of a Mountain call'd Egale, seeing his Ships scatter'd and taken, was deadly afraid the Grecians wou'd Sail to the Hellespont and break down his Bridge, and, by this means, force him to remain in Greece, where he foresaw he must soon want Provision for so great a Multitude; he therefore resolv'd to March back with all possible Expedition, and was glad that Mardonius had concur'd with him in the same opinion. Mardonius was the Man that advis'd Xerxes to undertake this Expedition, and being very much afraid of his Wrath, endeavour'd to persuade him, That the loss of the Battle at Sea was of no great Consequence to his Affairs: That he had in a great measure compass'd the End for which he undertook the War, which was the burning of Athens; That if he wou'd leave him 300000 of his choice Troops he wou'd engage to subdue all the rest of Greece; and that his Majesty might return Home with the rest, and suffer nothing in his Reputation, as having forc'd the Grecians to flee to the Mountains and Islands, burnt and destroy'd Attica their best Province, and laid in Ashes Athens their chief City, and the Glory of their Nation.

Xerxes being exceedingly well pleas'd to lay hold of any pretence of going back with Credit, readily embrac'd Mardonius his Advice; accordingly having left Mardonius 300000 Medes and Persians, such as he himself had chosen, he March'd off with all the rest, making the best of his way to the Hellespont. After the Battle of Salamina the Athenians were for sending a Squadron of their Men of War to the Hellespont to break down the Bridge, in order to hinder the Persians from making their escape: But Themistocles, who knew very well, that a golden Bridge ought to be laid for an Enemy to



run away, endeavour'd to dissuade them from that Design, urging the danger that might arise from rendring so prodigious a Multitude desperate, by putting them upon a Necessity of fighting for their Lives : And when he found he cou'd not prevail, he sent his former trusty Servant to *Xerxes*, to let him know, that he was still his Friend ; that the Grecians intended to send a Squadron to break down his Bridge, and that he therefore advis'd him to make all possible haste to get over it, before they shou'd come. *Xerxes* having receiv'd this Account March'd with such Precipitation, and harra's'd his Troops to such a Degree that not one half of them came alive to the *Helespont*. However being come thither himself together with such of his Army as were best provided for so long a March, he watted over in an ordinary Vessel together with a few of his great Lords (the Bridge being broken by a violent storm) and came to *Sardis*.

When *Xerxes* was gone, *Mardonius* finding the Season far spent, March'd with his 300000 *Medes* and *Persians* into *Thesaly*, and put them in to Winter Quarters, with a Design early in the Spring to invade the *Peloponessus* whither all the Grecian Land Forces had fled : For when the *Persians* forc'd the Pass at *Thermopyla*, and enter'd *Atica*, the Inhabitants of that Country, and the *Athenians*, took away their best Effects, and retir'd to the *Peloponessus*, fortify'd with a strong Wall, the *Isthmus* which joins that Land to the Continent, call'd in those Days the *Isthmus* of *Corinth* ; and resolv'd to defend this spot of Ground against the *Persians*. But being inform'd of the Defeat of the *Persian* Fleet, and of the return of *Xerxes*, with all his Land Forces, except those left under the Command of *Mardonius*, they took Courage, and prepar'd to take the Field the next Campaign. *Mardonius* mov'd early in the Spring, and having March'd thro' *Beotia*, came to *Atica*, where he thought to wait for the *Grecians* to give them Battle ; but finding that Country too rugged for his Cavalry to fight in, as also abandon'd by the Inhabitants, and destitute of Forrage and Provision, he burnt and destroy'd what remain'd of the Temples and Houses in *Athens* and over all the Country ; and then continu'd his March towards *Thebes* ; being arriv'd there, and receiv'd into that famous City, which open'd its Gates to him, he incamp'd his Army along the River call'd *Asope*, extending a great Way into the Land of the *Plateans*.

The *Grecians*, in the mean time, having met at the *Isthmus* of *Corinth*, making up in all 100000 choice Men, compos'd only of *Lacedemonians*, and *Athenians*, *Egnetes*, *Corinthians* and *Peloponessians* (for the *Thesalians*, *Thebeans*, *Phoceans*, *Macedonians*, and several other Nations submitted to the *Persians* and fought under their Colours.) March'd under the Command of *Pausanias*, who succeeded the brave *Leonidas*, and incamp'd over-against the *Persians*, who were four times their Number, near the City call'd *Plataea*, famous ever since for the Signal Victory gain'd in a few Days after by the *Grecians* over the *Persians*. The *Lacedemonians* made up the right Wing of the Army, and the *Athenians* the left. The Main Body or Center consisted of the Troops of the other Towns and Nations, who had join'd these two, in Defence of the common Cause. *Mardonius* having observ'd the Disposition of the *Grecian* Camp, which he cou'd very easily see, there being nothing between both Camps but the little River *Asope*, chang'd the Disposition of his own, and plac'd the *Persians* in whose Valour and Conduct he most confided, over-against the *Lacedemonians*, concluding that if these cou'd be born down, the rest of the *Grecians* wou'd soon take to their Heels ; and he was induc'd to hope, that this might be the more easily



filly effected, because the *Lacedemonians* were not acquainted with the *Persian's* manner of fighting : For, it seems, none of the *Lacedemonians* then in the Army had ever seen the Face of a *Persian* before. So having given Orders to all his Troops to be in a readiness, resolv'd to pass the River the next Morning, and give Battle.

There was at this time a certain Prince in the *Persian* Camp, call'd *Alexander*, the Son of *Amyntas* King of *Macedon*, who was forc'd to take party with the *Persians* to save the ruin of his Country ; but was however much concern'd for the welfare of *Greece*. This Prince so soon as it was dark took Horse, and rid alone to the *Grecian* Camp, desiring to speak to one of their Captains. The Sentinal to whom he spoke brought him immediately a Man of Distinction. Then *Alexander* told this Man the Disposition of the *Persian* Army, and charg'd him to let *Pausanias* know that the *Persian* Troops were to attack the *Lacedemonians* ; and that early in the Morning, the whole Army was to pass the River ; and having so said, he return'd to the *Persian* Camp, charging the said Man to tell no Body that he was *Alexander* the Son of *Amyntas*, but to *Pausanias*. *Pausanias* being straightway inform'd of what *Alexander* had said, call'd a Council of War, in which it was resolv'd, the *Athenians*, who were accustomed to the *Persian* Discipline, as having fought them at the Battle of *Marathon* and elsewhere, shou'd change Place with the *Lacedemonians*, and all the Army shou'd be in a readiness to receive the *Persians* the next Morning : Accordingly, when *Mardonius* began to move with his Army towards the River, he perceiv'd by the Colours and Standards of the *Grecians*, that the *Athenians* were in the Right Wing where he expected to meet the *Lacedemonians*. This put him to a Stand, so that he return'd to his Camp, and came not to a general Engagement in ten days after. In the mean while, he sent out several Parties of Horse, who very much infested the skirts of the *Grecian* Camp, and carry'd away many of their Convoys. One of these Parties consisting of a vast Number of Horse, rush'd in upon a quarter of the *Grecian* Camp, which they so entirely defeated, that the *Grecians* ran away, leaving many of their Men dead in the Hands of the Enemy ; and (which was of much worse consequence) abandon'd the only Well out of which all the Camp drew their Water, which the *Persians* fill'd up with Earth and Stones, so as to render it useless to the *Grecians*.

This put the whole Camp into such a Consternation, that they resolv'd to decamp that very Night, and retire to the Foot of the Mountain call'd *Cytheron*, in a little Island made by the concurrence of two Rivers : For, altho' the River *Asope* was nigh the Camp, yet the *Persians* extended so far above and below them upon the other side of it, and their Horse made such daily Excursions, that they cou'd scarce get any Water from that River. But there happen'd an unlucky Accident which was like to break all their Measures. When they struck their Tents, and sent most of their heavy Baggage before them, a certain *Lacedemonian* Captain call'd *Amompharetas*, who commanded the *Pitanetes*, cry'd out aloud, that he wou'd never fly away from before the Barbarians, alledging, that nothing cou'd be more dishonourable ; and that if all the World had abandon'd him, he would maintain his Ground to the last drop of his Blood. This rais'd such a Commotion in the Army, that notwithstanding all the Remonstrances and Menaces of *Pausanias* the General, and of all the *Athenian* Captains, *Amompharetas* would not be induc'd to stir a step, until it was day light. Then the Army retreated, leaving this cross-grain'd Man and his Band behind, who at last,



tho' too late, thought better on't, and follow'd them. The *Athenians* led the Van, and gain'd the side of the Mountain, but *Pausanias*, who led the *Lacedemonians*, and the gross of the Army, was not far gone when all the *Medes* and *Persians*, who it seems were ready by break of Day to give Battle, power'd down upon him and kill'd *Amompharetes*. *Pausanias* being then necessitated either to have all his Men cut off, shou'd he Retreat before the Enemy, or determin the Fate of Greece, shou'd he Face about, chose the Latter. He therefore sent an *Aid de Camp* to the *Athenians*, ordering them to come forthwith to his Assistance. The *Athenians* sent him word, they wou'd be with him immediately ; But before they cou'd come in sight of him, they were attack'd by *Mardonius* his Auxiliary Troops, by the *Thesalians*, the *Jonians*, the *Phoceans*, the *Macedonians* and by all the rest of his Army except the *Medes*, and *Persians*, who under his own Command set upon *Pausanias* and his *Lacedemonians*. *Pausanias* being thus separated from the *Athenians*, had only 53000 Men under his Command, whereas *Mardonius* had 300000 *Medes* and *Persians* to attack him. The *Medes* and *Persians* appear'd in bright Armour glittering with Gold and Jewels, which were not proof against the Darts and Arrows of the *Grecians* ; but the *Lacedemonians* wore only Rusty Steel, that was proof against all the *Persian's* Shot : So that at the first Onset, the *Persians* began to give Ground in both Wings. The main Body in which *Mardonius* Fought, Mounted upon a Gallant White Horse, easily distinguish'd by the Richness of his Furniture, made a deep Impression upon the Center of *Pausanias* his Army, killing many of his stout *Lacedemonians* : But a gallant Man nam'd *Arimistes* bent his Bow and shot *Mardonius* to the Heart, so that he fell down Dead to the Ground. The *Persians* seeing their General Drop, and the *Lacedemonians* resume their Spirits upon his fall, betook themselves to their Heels, their Horse treading their Foot to Death, and the *Lacedemonians* at their Backs slaughtering them, until they came to a place near *Thebes*, which they had Fortify'd with Wooden Palisades when they had Incamp'd in that place before. *Pausanias* having put to the Sword all the Stragling Troops, which cou'd not get into this Intrenchment, resolv'd to force the Palisades before the *Persians* cou'd recover of their Panick Fear : But being two or three times repuls'd with loss, he sent for the *Athenians*, who by this time had easily dispatch'd the Troops that were upon their Hands, most of the *Grecians*, who oppos'd them, Fighting but faintly, or not at all, as being better pleas'd to be vanquish'd than to overcome.

When the *Athenians* came up, the *Persians* were attack'd on every side, and after a Desperate Obstinate Resistance their wooden Works were forc'd, and such slaughter committed upon them, as was scarce ever seen or heard of in the World before or after, in so small a spot of Ground: For of three hundred thousand *Medes* and *Persians* whom *Mardonius* brought to the Field, there escap'd in all only three and forty thousand, that is, forty thousand under the Command of *Altrabafus*, who declar'd his Opinion against Fighting the *Grecians* in a pitch'd Battle, and therefore went off with his Men upon the first Defeat of the *Persians*, making the best of his way to the *Hellefpont* ; And three thousand more that Escap'd the fury of the *Athenians* and *Lacedemonians*, within the Palisades : And (which render'd this Victory the more memorable) the *Lacedemonians*, lost in all, if we believe our Author, \* but one hundred and five Men, and the *Athenians* only Fifty. Thus ended the famous Battle of *Plataea*,  
by

\* Herodotus.



by the Courage and Conduct of the Great *Pausanias* and his brave *Lacedemonians*, which put such a stop to the Insolence of the Haughty *Persians*, that they never after attempted to disturb the Repose of that famous Nation. 'Tis almost incredible, and seems to surpass humane Belief, what immense Treasures, *Herodotus* tells us the *Grecians* got by this Victory : Tables, Vessels, Horse-Trappings, all of massy Gold, nay, and Armour of the same Mettle, vast great Chests fill'd with Gold and Silver, Silks, Sattins and Velvet, beyond number. In a word, so much Plunder and Spoil, that the *Grecians* seem'd to become *Persians* for many Years after ; and (which was worse) fell into the Luxury and Effeminacy of that Nation, which cost them their Liberty, as we shall see hereafter.

While Affairs were carry'd on so successfully in *Greece*, *Leutychides* the other King of *Lacedemon*, (for they had always two Kings) and Admiral of the *Grecian* Fleet, was equally Successful in defeating the *Persian* Fleet, at the Promontory *Mycale* : By which Victory *Jonia* was once more snatch'd out of the *Persian* Hands and join'd to *Greece*. When the two Fleets began to engage, a Report was bandied about that *Mardonius* was defeated in *Beotia*, which News did so animate the Soldiers, that they fought with an undaunted Courage, and gain'd the Victory : Indeed it is unaccountable how the News of that Victory could fly so soon into *Asia* ; for, upon Subsequent Computations, it was found, that the Engagement happen'd in both places on the same Day : In so much, that some alledge the Rumour was spread on purpose to animate the Soldiers, and by good luck was confirm'd by the Event. The fight happen'd in the latter End of the Second Year after *Xerxes* invaded *Greece*.

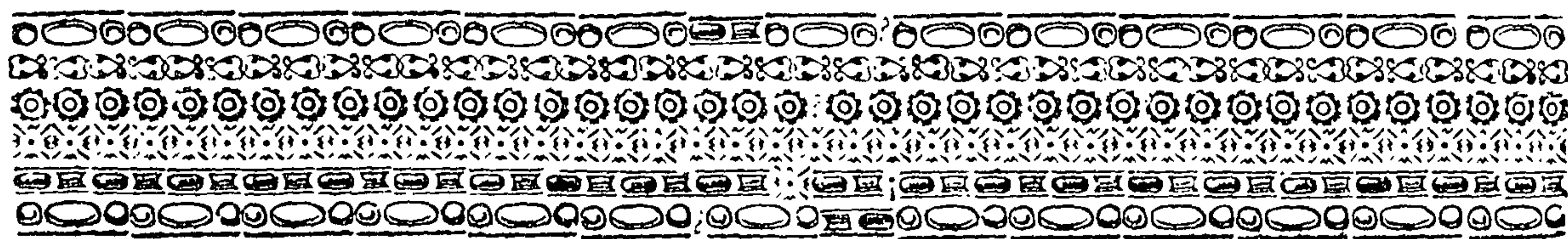
The *Jonians* by this Battle being set at Liberty, all the *Grecians* went Home, except the *Athenians* who besieg'd *Sestus*. This was a fortify'd Town over-against *Abydos*, between which two places *Xerxes* laid his Bridge over the *Helespont*, and had, at this Time, a *Persian* Garison in it. These the *Athenians* straighten'd and block'd up so close, that after consuming all things in the Town, even to their Leathern Straps and Girdles, they stole away by Night, abandoning the City, which immediately open'd its Gates to the *Athenians*.

Here *Herodotus* puts an End to his History. What I have further to say of *Xerxes* and of his Successors the Kings of *Persia* unto the Days of *Alexander* the Great, I shall borrow from *Diodorus Siculus*, *Justinus*, *Thucydides*, *Xenophon* and *Eusebius*.

*Xerxes* brought under great Contempt by his shameful flight, and the loss of so many Millions of his Subjects ; and being with all abominated by Mankind for his unnatural Incest, with his Brother's Wife, and with that of his own Son, seem'd to want nothing but the last Misfortune to compleat his Ruin ; which accordingly came upon him after this Manner. *Artabanus* the Captain of his Guards being ambitious to ascend the Throne, and knowing very well how much the *Persians* hated *Xerxes*, concluded, that if he could take him out of the Way, he might easily dispatch his three surviving Sons, *Darius*, *Artaxerxes* and *Histaspes*. In order hereunto he inveigl'd *Mitridates* the Gentleman of his Bed-Chamber, who let him, and several of his Sons into the King's Bed-Chamber as he slept. And having murther'd *Xerxes*, ran immediately to *Artaxerxes*, and told him, that his Brother *Darius* had kill'd the King his Father. *Artaxerxes* flies to the King's Bed-Chamber, and finding him cover'd all over with his Blood, and Dead, runs straightway to *Darius* his Bed-Chamber whom



he finds in Bed asleep ; and without staying to awake him, or ask any Questions runs him thro' with his Sword. *Artabanus* the wicked Regicide having accompanied *Artaxerxes* to *Darius* his Bedchamber, and seeing him busy in Mangling his Brother, for the pretended *Parricide* of the King his Father, struck him with his Sword thinking he might easily kill him, too, before his former Wickedness cou'd come to Light. But the stroke not being Mortal, *Artaxerxes* ran away to avoid a second Blow, and cry'd out for help, which coming seasonably to him, *Artabanus* was taken, and suffer'd the Punishment Due to his Crimes. Thus *Xerxes* ended his Days after a Reign of Twenty Years. He was the Proudest, and, next to *Cambyfes*, the Bloodiest Man that ever sat upon the *Persian* Throne. He had such a mixture of Good and Ill Nature, that it was not easy to know which of these two Qualities was the more Predominant ; intollerbly puff'd up in Success, and equally dejected upon any Disaster ; bold in undertaking, but Pusilanimous in Execution, grateful enough to those who serv'd him Well ; but revengeful to excess upon the least failure of Duty. Timorous in his Nature, Obstinate in his Temper, Impatient of contradiction or wholesome Advice, Luxurious in his Diet, Leacherous in his Pleasures, Inhuman to his own Family : In a word to finish the Character, I may say of *Xerxes* what *Dr. Heylin* said of a Certain King, *That he never spar'd Man in his Anger, nor Woman in his Lust.*



### C H A P. III.

*Of Artaxerxes, and his Successors, unto the Days of Alexander the Great.*



*Xerxes* being kill'd as aforesaid, *Artaxerxes* surnam'd *Daras-Dast* or *Longimanus*, *Long-Hand*, because his Right-Hand was longer than the Left, Took upon him the Rule and Government of the *Persian* Empire, his Elder Brother *Darius* being slain by his Hands, not out of Malice, or Ill Nature, but upon the False Report of the Villain *Artabanus*, who told him, that he had Murder'd the King his Father. *Artaxerxes* was an extraordinary handsome Man, and liberal to excess ; Free to give, but always loth to receive. Clemency and Mercy seem'd so natural to him, that he constantly Order'd Criminals to receive the Stripes upon their Clothes, which ought according to the Law to be given upon their Bodies ; and instead of cleaving their Heads, when the Crime requir'd it, he wou'd have their Caps or Bonnets only so us'd : Saying, *That such an Affront was Mortification enough to a Man of Honour for any*



any Crime. Being ask'd by one of his great Lords, how he took that Defect of his Left-Hand's being shorter than his Right : He answer'd, He was very much oblig'd to Nature for giving him a long Right-Hand to give, and a short Left-Hand to receive.

*Themistocles* the *Athenian* being banish'd by his ungrateful Contrymen, came to *Artaxerxes* his Court, And tho' *Xerxes* his Father had promis'd to give any Man two hunder'd Talents, that shou'd deliver *Themistocles* into his Hands ; yet *Artaxerxes* receiv'd him with so much Joy and Alacrity, upon account of his Extraordinary Parts, that he often cry'd out in his Sleep : *I have Themistocles the Athenian* : And as a mark of the Value and Esteem he had for him, he made him a present of two hunder'd Talents, telling him, *That since his Father Xerxes had Promis'd so much Money to any Man that wou'd deliver him into his Hands, it was but reasonable he shou'd Pay him that Sum, seeing he was so kind as to deliver himself up into the Hands of his Son.*

It was this *Artaxerxes* that sent *Esdras* to *Jerusalem* in the 7th Year of his Reign, and Publish'd an Ediēt by which he allow'd the *Jews* that were in his Dominions to go and Dwell in that City : And in the 20th Year of his Reign, permitted *Nehemias* his Cup-Bearer to go thither, and visit his Brethren, by whose help and counsel they built the Walls and Gates of *Jerusalem*, and restor'd it in a manner to it's former Glory. In the beginning of his Reign the *Bactrians* revolted, but were soon reduc'd. The *Grecians* indeed gave him more trouble : For they sent a great Fleet under the Command of *Cimon* that infested his Coasts, took *Cyprus*, and forc'd him to make Peace upon dishonourable Terms. But *Artaxerxes* was not much concern'd at that, being an Honest upright Prince, well satisfy'd that every Nation shou'd recover that which was unjustly taken from them. The *Egyptians* also revolted under the Command of *Inarus* King of *Lybia*, being assisted by the *Grecians*, who sent a Sqaudron of Men of War, and six thousand Land Forces to join them. But *Artaxerxes* was resolv'd to punish the *Egyptians*, as believing they had forfeited their Liberty by their false Dealings with his Predecessors ; he therefore sent a vast Army into *Egypt*, under the Command of *Artabasis*, and *Megabyfes*, who after many Skirmishes and Rancounters defeated the *Egyptians* in a pitch'd Battle, took their King *Inarus*, and Crucify'd him. As to the *Grecians*, who came to their Assistance, they recover'd their Ships : But before they cou'd set to Sea, the *Persians* drain'd the Branch of the *Nile*, in which they lay at Anchor, by turning the Water into a deep Canal which they had made for the Purpose ; so that the Ships lay upon dry Land. The *Grecians* seeing their Ships render'd useless, put fire to them, and resolv'd to force their Passage or die to the last Man. This Bravery in a handful of Men against two hundred thousand, was so much admir'd by the *Persian* Commanders, and probably by *Artaxerxes* himself, that they thought it great pitty to destroy such gallant Men ; And therefore when they wou'd not be induc'd to lay down their Arms and submit, upon any Terms, they not only suffer'd them to go away, but also furnish'd Vessels to carry them back to their own Country.

*Artaxerxes* having thus Quell'd the Revolt of the *Egyptians*, spent the rest of his Days in quietness, doing good to all that wanted, and died after an easy Reign of forty Years. He had one lawfully begotten Son call'd, after his own Name, *Artaxerxes*, and seventeen Bastards, among whom were *Sogdianus*, *Ochus*, and *Arsites*. *Artaxerxes* succeeded his Father, but was



kill'd by *Sogdianus* in the forty fifth day of his Reign. This Barbarous Act drew the Indignation of the great Lords and Captains of the Army upon *Sogdianus*; so that they came to *Ochus* and oblig'd him to take the Imperial Crown of *Persia*. *Ochus* being invested with the Regal Authority, chang'd his Name, and call'd himself *Darius*, surnam'd, by the *Grecians*, *Nothus*, or the *Bastard*; and having decoy'd *Sogdianus*, he caus'd him to be cast into a great heap of Ashes, where he was smother'd, a punishment usually inflicted by the *Persians* upon Princes of the Blood Royal. He was Marry'd to *Parisatis* Daughter to *Xerxes*, and his own Aunt; by her he had a Son in his private Capacity call'd *Arsaces*, and a Daughter, *Amistris*; and, after he was made King, *Cyrus*, with thirteen more.

In his Reign the *Medes* revolted, but were soon reduc'd: The *Egyptians* revolted also, and shook off the *Persian* Yoke, but were not reduc'd in his Days. He made his Son *Cyrus* Governour of the Sea Coasts, and order'd him to assist the *Lacedemonians* against the *Athenians*: For at this time the *Grecians* were engaged with one another in the *Pelopponesian* War; by whose Divisions and Animosities *Darius* was a great Gainer; the *Athenians*, who were his most formidable Enemies, as being the best skill'd in Naval Affairs, and great Favourers of the *Ionians* his second Rivals in Sea Affairs, being brought very low by this War.

*Darius-Nothus* had a Mistress or Concubine, whom he very much admired for her extraordinary Beauty and Complaisance: This Woman happening to Die, *Darius* was inconsolable. All that his Friends cou'd say to him was not capable to mitigate his Grief, or give him any Comfort. There was at this time in his Court the Philosopher *Democritus*, who, after having in vain exhausted all his Philosophy and Rethorick upon *Darius*, promis'd, that if he cou'd tell him the Names of three Men of Distinction, who had never in their Lives suffer'd any affliction, he wou'd raise from the Dead his fair Mistress, by laying the said Names written in a piece of Paper upon her Tomb. *Darius* having mused a while, answer'd, that he knew no Man, nor believ'd there ever was any, who had not one time or other in his Life some cause of affliction. Are not you asham'd then (reply'd *Democritus* with a smile) to lament, as if Fortune had frown'd upon you alone? and, since you cannot name me one Man, who has not met with some disgrace or affliction in his Life time, do you believe to meet with that in your own Person, which is not found in Nature? *Darius* was so touch'd with this seasonable Reproof, that he never thought any more of his Mistress, being convinc'd, out of his own Mouth, how much he was in the wrong to imagine that he alone should be free from Affliction; and so pass'd the rest of his Days in Peace and Quietness.

When he was upon his Death Bed, *Parisatis* the Queen, who lov'd *Cyrus* much more than any of the rest of her Children, earnestly solicited him to declare *Cyrus* his Successor, (alleging that he was his First born, after he had been King) as *Darius-Histaspes* had done to *Xerxes*. But *Darius-Nothus* wou'd by no means alter the Succession, and so died, leaving his Eldest Son *Arsaces* to succeed him, to the great mortification of *Parisatis* and *Cyrus*, who rais'd a great tumult, and left no Stone unturn'd to come to the Crown, as we shall see hereafter. Some Historians say *Darius-Nothus* reign'd only eight Years. *Philostratus* says, he reign'd sixty; but in my Opinion, *Thucydides* and *Diodorus-Siculus*, who affirm that he reign'd only nineteen Years, are more to be Credited.

*Arsaces* after the Death of his Father, chang'd his Name, or rather was call'd *Artaxerxes-Mnemon* by others. *Artaxerxes* in the *Persian* Language,



signifies a great *Warriour*, and *Mnemou* in the *Greek*, *Mindful*; it being usual with all Nations to give certain Characters or Surnames to their Princes, denoting their good or bad Qualities, which, in Process of time, Historians take for their true Names; which shews, by the way, that the different Names, frequently given to Persons by the Sacred Scripture, and by Prophane Authors, is no Argument that they are not the same Men mention'd by Both.

*Artaxerxes* (for so shall I call him after all other Historians) Marry'd three Wives, *Statira*, *Atossa*, and *Amestris*, by whom he had three lawful Sons, *Darius*, *Ariaspes*, and *Ochus*; he had besides three hundred Concubines, and by them, if we credit *Justinus*, one hundred and fifty Children, among whom three of the Daughters were very considerable. *Sisigambis*, *Rhodogune*, and *Apame*. *Sisigambis* was Marry'd to *Arsames* a Brother of *Artaxerxes*, who begot on her the famous *Darius Codomanus*. *Rhodogune*, to *Orontes*, and *Apame* to *Pharnabazus*. In some time after the Death of *Darius*, *Artaxerxes* was oblig'd to take a Journey to *Pasagarda*, in order to be Crown'd and Consecrated King in the Temple of *Minerva*, built there by *Cyrus* in memory of his Victory over *Astages*. Whilst he was taken up with this Ceremony, *Tissaphernes*, one of his Great Captains, came, and told him that *Cyrus his Brother had a design to Murder him in the very Temple*. *Cyrus* being taken, and the Treason prov'd upon him, did however escape the Punishment due to his Crime. For *Parisatis* his Mother ran to the King, with her Hair loose, and Imbrac'd him so close, tying her Hair so hard about his Neck, that the good Man, who was always very respectful to his Mother, cou'd not, without offering her Violence, which he wou'd by no means do, disentangle himself, until he had granted her *Cyrus* his Pardon; being content only to order him to go back to his Government in *Lydia*.

One wou'd have thought that such an Act of Clemency might have prevail'd upon *Cyrus*, to desist from any further Attempt upon a Brother who had treated him so mildly beyond Example: But, it seems this good Nature in his Brother serv'd only to prompt him to more desperate Designs. For finding that private Conspiracies wou'd not take, he resolv'd to set the whole Empire on Fire, or compass his Ends. In order hereunto, he gathers Auxiliary Troops from all corners upon various Pretences, especially under colour of reducing *Tissaphernes*, whom he accus'd to the King as if he had a design to Revolt; tho' nothing was more false. At this time, *Zenophon* the famous Historian, who wrote the continuation of the *Peloponnesian War*, from the time *Thucydides* ended, and wrote also the Book call'd *Cyropedia*, or the Institution of *Cyrus*, was at the Court of *Cyrus*; and *Clearchus* a famous *Lacedemonian* Captain. This latter being banish'd from his own Country, took party with *Cyrus*; but *Zenophon* came only, out of curiosity to see his Court, and was afterward so much taken with his Parts and Person, that he accompanied him in his Rebellious Expedition, and even wrote the History of it at large.

*Cyrus*, the better to cover his Rebellion, began with the Siege of *Miletus*, whose *Grecian* Inhabitants *Tissaphernes* had partly put to Death, and partly banish'd. While this Siege was a carrying on, *Cyrus* gave Money to *Clearchus*, and sent him into *Greece* to raise Men. He sent also to *Proxenus* the *Beotian*, *Socrates*, the *Achean*; and *Sophanetus* the *Stymphalian* to bring him as many Men as they cou'd raise; pretending his Design was only to make War upon *Tissaphernes*, and



to restore the *Grecian* Exiles, whom *Tissaphernes* had barbarously us'd. When these Captains came to *Sardis* with their new Levies, which together with the Troops brought by *Xenias*, made in all thirteen thousand *Greeks*, *Tissaphernes* judging right, that these Preparations were too great for such an Inconsiderable Enterprize as the taking of *Miletus*, hasted to Court to advise the King of it, who, on this Information, prepar'd for his Defence.

*Cyrus* having in like manner gather'd a vast Body of Strangers, March'd from *Sardis* with all his Forces thro' *Lydia*, and *Phrigia*, enter'd *Cappadocia* and *Cilicia*, and stay'd twenty Days at *Tarsus*, where the *Grecians* began to perceive that *Cyrus* was leading them against the King of *Persia*. They made a difficulty of engaging in this War. But *Clearchus* prevail'd upon them to follow *Cyrus*, who declar'd, when he was further advanc'd, that he March'd against the King of *Persia*, and encourag'd them to go on into *Mesopotamia*. When he came into the Province of *Babylon*, he drew up his Army in order of Battle, and took a view of it. He found it compos'd of ten thousand four hundred heavy Arm'd *Greeks*, two thousand five hundred others, an hundred thousand Strangers, and twenty Scyth'd Chariots. On the other side, *Artaxerxes* came to meet him with an Army of twelve hundred thousand Men, under the Command of four Generals, *Tissaphernes*, *Gobrias*, *Arbaces* and *Abrocomas*, and six thousand select Horse, as his own Life-Guard. The Armys being now met, soon came to Action. The *Greeks* put the *Barbarians* to flight, and in the pursuit were in danger of being surrounded by that Body of the Army, which the King Commanded. *Cyrus* hasted thither with six hundred Horse, and attack'd his Brother the King; and though not seconded by his Men, yet Fought valiantly, and wounded the King in the Shoulder; but was himself wounded under the Eye, and soon after kill'd in the Crowd with eight of his Principal Courtiers. Thus dyed *Cyrus*, a Man of a Princely Mind, and one that merited a Crown, beyond all those who derived their Original from *Cyrus* the Great, had he not been tainted with the Crime of Rebellion.

The *Grecians*, who thought of nothing but Victory, having routed all those who opposed them, were extreamly mortify'd by the sad News of *Cyrus's* Death. They invited *Ariæus* the *Persian*, who commanded his Troops to possess himself of the Kingdom, but he rejected the Proposal; so that they were oblig'd to think of returning into their own Country. *Artaxerxes* pursued them, but his Soldiers were struck with such a Consternation, that he was oblig'd to retire, and suffer them to get off. *Tissaphernes* took upon him the Task of Managing the *Grecians*, and having desir'd an Interview with their Captains, perfidiously kill'd them: But others were chosen in their Room, among whom *Zenophon* the famous Historian, who wrote the first account of this Battle, and of the long March of the *Grecians*, was One. At last, notwithstanding they were Foreigners in that Country, destitute of all Provisions, unacquainted with the Passages, and oblig'd to make their way over craggy Mountains, and almost impassible Places; in a Land where the unwholesomeness of the Air, the ruggedness of the Ground, and the watchful Spite of the Enemies did at once attack them; yet by an unparallel'd Courage and Bravery, and by the Ministry of *Zenophon's* singular Prudence, they got off clear. It is reckon'd that, in coming and going (for *Zenophon* it seems kept a Diary of this Expedition) they Encamp'd in two hundred and twelve Places, March'd a thousand one hundred and fifty *Persian* Miles, and took up in the whole Expedition one Year and three Months time. I must not here forget to make honourable mention of *Clearchus*



*stas* the *Cnidian*, who wrought the *Persian* History, and from whom *Diodorus Siculus*, *Berosus*, *Julius-Africanus*, *Eusebius* and all the Historians that succeeded him, borrow'd their Account of the *Assyrian* Monarchy; He was a famous Physician, and being in *Cyrus's* Court, at the time he undertook the Expedition against *Artaxerxes*, follow'd him; was taken in the Battle, brought to *Susa*, where he cur'd *Artaxerxes* of the Wound which *Cyrus* gave him; wrought many other great Cures in that City; and continu'd with *Artaxerxes* in great Esteem for seventeen Years, during which time he wrote the *Assyrian*, *Babylonian* and *Persian* Histories, taking his Account from the Registries and Records found in the *Archives* of these great Monarchies. 'Tis true *Ctesias* wrote a great many Fabulous things of the Beginning of the *Assyrian* Monarchy, as did indeed *Manetho* of that of the *Egyptians*, and the *Greek* Historians, of the *Grecians*; the Beginnings and Rise of most Nations before Letters and Learning flourish'd, being only grounded upon Fables, and fabulous Traditions of the simple People: But, methinks, *Aristotle*, *Antigonus*, *Caristius*, *Plutarch*, *Photius* and others, who often call *Ctesias* a great Liar, might have treated him more civilly, considering that he had taken what he wrote of these Monarchies from the most Authentick Records that were to be found at the *Persian* Court in those Days, or from the best Antiquaries, as he declar'd in the beginning of his Works. But be that as it will, the Learned World is very much oblig'd to *Ctesias*: For if it were not for the Extracts of his History transmitted to us by *Diodorus Siculus*, and *Photius*, we shou'd have no other account of the *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Monarchies, than that lame one, which *Herodotus* gives of them, for which, in my Opinion, he deserves the Character either of an Ignorant Historian, in this particular, or a Liar as much as *Ctesias*. But to return.

When *Parisatis* heard of the Death of *Cyrus*, whom she lov'd above all her Children, she left no Cruelty unpractis'd upon those who had a Hand in his Ruin: She poison'd the Queen *Statira*, caus'd the King's Valet de Chambre, who had cut off his Head, to be flead alive, and the Man, that boasted to have kill'd him, to be tortur'd in a most cruel manner. But after all, *Artaxerxes* behav'd himself very modestly towards his Mother; For, tho' he knew she always lov'd *Cyrus* better than him, and endeavour'd by all means to get him to succeed his Father; and that now she was the occasion of the Death of a Queen whom he tenderly lov'd: Yet he neither injur'd her by Word or by Deed; only when she told him, *she was going to Babylon*; he answer'd, *that he was very well satisfy'd with her Design*, but withal, *that he wou'd not see that Town while she liv'd in it*.

*Artaxerxes* having thus put his Affairs into a peaceable State, bent his Mind upon the Recovery of the Cities that had revolted. The charge of this Enterprize was committed to *Tissaphernes* and *Pharnabazus*. The *Ionians* perceiving his Designs, solicited the *Lacedemonians* to assist them, The *Lacedemonians* were so transported with their late Success against *Athens*, that they thought of no small matters; And being encourag'd by the Return of the *Grecians*, who had follow'd *Cyrus*, embrac'd the opportunity of Invading *Asia*, and began to entertain some hopes of Mastering it. They sent an Embassy to *Tissaphernes*, which he slighted; Whereupon they sent *Timbrones* with an Army against him; but *Timbrones* having ill success, was soon after degraded and banish'd. *Dercyllidas* succeeded him, who, by reason of his extraordinary Sagacity was surnamed *Silyphus*. He soon perceiv'd, that he had two Generals to Encounter; and therefore endeavour'd



red to gain one of them; by which means he rais'd such a Jealousy between the Two, that *Pharnabazus* went home to the King, and accus'd *Tissaphernes* of Treachery, as being brib'd by *Dercyllidas*. However the Truth or Falshood of this Accusation might be, *Agésilau*s the King of *Sparta*, who in some time after, was sent to Command the *Lacedemonians*, having defeated *Tissaphernes* in Battle; *Artaxerxes* sent *Titbraustes* to Command the Army, and order'd him to cut off *Tissaphernes* his Head, which he accordingly did.

*Conon* the great Admiral of the *Athenians*, after the *Peloponnesian* War, and the reduction of *Athens*, left *Greece*, and offer'd his Service to *Artaxerxes* against the *Lacedemonians*. *Pharnabazus*, who knew the Merit of this Great Man, prevail'd upon the King to give him the Command of his Fleet. *Conon* immediately set to Sea with the *Persian* Fleet, and having met that of the *Lacedemonians* near the City of *Cnidus*, the Birth-place of *Ctesias*, Fought, and defeated it, took some of their Gallies, and forc'd the rest to fly, restoring by this Victory, their Liberty to the *Athenians*, and to the rest of the *Grecians*, whom the *Lacedemonians* brought under Subjection. Which done, *Conon* return'd to *Athens*, repair'd the Walls thereof and the Port call'd *Pireus*. This put *Agésilau*s upon taking new Measures; and having got the Command of the *Lacedemonian* Fleet, together with that of the Land Forces, became so formidable to the *Persians*, that *Titbraustes* their General, saw there was no other way of diverting the Storm, but that of giving the *Lacedemonians* so much trouble at Home, as might oblige them to recal their King for the relief of his Country.

In pursuance of this Project, he sent *Timocrates* the *Rhodian* with fifty Talents of Gold into *Greece*, in order to bribe the Heads of the Factions, and tempt them to make War upon the *Lacedemonians*. This took so well, that, in the space of one Year, a great Conspiracy broke out against the *Lacedemonians*, which occasion'd so great a War, that they were oblig'd to recal their King. He was mightily troubl'd for being oblig'd to return, just when he was setting out for the upper Provinces, whom the glory of his Name would have intimidated; and was hugging himself upon the happy Issue of all his Labour and Hopes. However, his Regard to his Country outweigh'd all other Considerations, and his steadfast Opinion, that a General was oblig'd to obey the Laws and the Magistrates, made him deaf to the Prospect of future Glory. Upon his Departure from *Asia*, he said in a merry humour, that *thirty thousand Archers had beat him out of Asia*, alluding to so many Pieces of Gold bearing the Effigies of an Archer, with which *Timocrates* had purchas'd the War against the *Lacedemonians*.

Notwithstanding that *Agésilau*s was recall'd, the *Lacedemonians* were so routed by *Conon* at Sea, and so much oppress'd at Home, that they began to fear the *Athenians* might recover their former Power; and thereupon made Peace with *Artaxerxes* by the Ministry of *Antalcidas*; whence it was call'd *Pax Antalcida*. *Artaxerxes* by this means being free of the *Grecian* War, and having put his Affairs in pretty good Order, turn'd his Arms towards *Cyprus*, which *Evagoras* the King of that Island, had by this time almost quite recover'd. *Artaxerxes* fitted out a good Fleet, and gave Battle to *Evagoras*, defeated and scatter'd his Men of War; so that he was upon the brink of losing all again, when an unforeseen accident retriev'd him. The *Persian* Sea Captains being flush'd with their Victory, quarrel'd among themselves, some ascribing the Honour of the Defeat of the Enemy to themselves; and others as stiffly opposing them. *Evagoras* who knew very well



well how to make advantage of these Dissentions, play'd his part so well, that he forc'd the *Persians* to make Peace, and to leave him in Possession of the better part of his former Acquisitions. After this, *Artaxerxes* wag'd War with the *Cadusians*, but with little success. Then turning his Arms against the *Egyptians*, who had revolted several Years before, he carry'd on his Designs against them pretty happily, 'till a private Quarrel between *Pharnabazus* and *Iphicrates* ruin'd all.

In the mean time the *Grecians* were mutually engag'd in Civil Wars, which *Artaxerxes* endeavour'd to adjust, thinking to get Assistance from them against the *Egyptians*. But the *Lacedemonians* were so angry with him for including *Messene* in the Confederacy, that they sent Relief to *Achoris*, King of *Egypt*. Besides the *Grecian* Towns in *Asia* made Head against him, and occasion'd the Revolt of several *Satrapæ*. Indeed the *Satrapæ* were soon after betray'd by *Orontes* their Head. However *Artaxerxes* was not able to recover *Egypt*, notwithstanding the Divisions it lay under, which were occasion'd by various Pretensions to the Crown.

I had said before, that *Artaxerxes* had but three Sons in lawful Wedlock, namely *Darius*, *Ariaspes*, and *Ochus*; and a hundred and fifty Children by Concubines, of whom he had three hundred, tho' even that number did not seem to satisfy him. For he added unto it, by the Incestuous Pollution of his own Daughters. In his old Age he check'd *Ochus* for aspiring to the Kingdom, and took in *Darius* the eldest, then fifty Years old, as Partner with him. But *Darius* Courted a certain Lady call'd *Aspasia*, *Cyrus's* Mistress, whom the King had taken to himself, and being rejected took that for an Affront, and enter'd into a Conspiracy with fifty of his Brethren against his Father. The Plot being discover'd, he and all his Complices were punish'd with Death. Upon the Death of *Darius*, *Ochus* aspir'd to the Crown more eagerly, but was much affraid of two of his Brethren, namely *Ariaspes*, the Eldest Lawful Son, and *Arsamis*, a Bastard, whom the Father doated on for his Wit and Spritelyness. He continually gave out, that *Ariaspes* was quickly to be put to Death, by his Fathers Orders, and by this means provok'd him to Poison himself; and at the same time took care to see *Arsamis* kill'd by *Harpates*, the Son of *Terebazus*, who lost his Life in *Darius's* Plot. *Artaxerxes* was acquainted with all these things, but being worn out with Age, could not prevent them. His grief and trouble of Mind was such, that he sunk under the weight, and died in the ninety fourth Year of his Age, and the fortythird of his Reign. His Subjects reckon'd him the meekest of Men, especially upon the account, that the Cruellest of *Parricides* was his Successor.

*Ochus* Succeeding his Father, in Memory of whom he was Surnam'd *Artaxerxes*, is said to have conceal'd his Fathers Death for ten Months, till all the People were satisfy'd, by sending about the Royal Seal, that *Artaxerxes* had nominated *Ochus* for his Successor. Having purchas'd the Kingdom by wickedness, he resolv'd to establish it by more of the same Stamp: Accordingly he fill'd the Palace with barbarous Murders, without any Regard to Dignity, Blood, Affinity, Sex or Age. *Ochus* had three Children, *Arsamis*, *Bistham*, and *Parisatis*, which consulted their Safety by Flight, and escap'd the bloody Hands of their Father; who would have all his Children murder'd, lest they should use him, as he had his own Brethren.

Soon after these inhuman Massacres he made War upon the *Cadusians*, who inhabited the Land between the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas; and triumph'd over them, by the help of *Codomanus* the Son of *Sisigambis*. For when



the *Persians* and *Cadusians* drew near, and were ready to join Battle, a certain great Champion of the *Cadusians* step'd out, and bid defiance to any of the *Persians* in single Combat, declaring (as *Goliath* had done in the days of *Saul*) that, in case he was overcome, the *Cadusians* would submit to the *Persians*. *Codomanus* accepted the Challenge, fought the *Cadusian* and slew him. The death of this Champion struck such a terror into the rest of his Brethren, that they laid down their Arms, and submitted to the *Persian* Yoke. *Ochus* flush'd with this Victory turn'd his Arms against the *Phenicians* and *Cyprians*, who had a little before revolted, and enter'd into a Confederacy with the *Egyptians*; and having drawn together an Army of 300000 Foot, and 30000 Horse, and fitted out a Fleet of 300 Ships, March'd into *Phenicia*, and sat down before *Sidon*. *Tennes* the King of this City call'd to his Assistance *Mentor* the Prince of *Rhodes*: But perceiving how unequal he was to the great Power of the *Persians*, resolv'd to give up the City to *Ochus*. *Mentor* to whom he had communicated his Design, having no great regard for the welfare of the *Sidonians*, and seeing all the Resistance they cou'd make wou'd only exasperate *Ochus*, and render him more Cruel, sent his Trusty Friend *Thessalon* to tell him, That if he pleas'd he wou'd soon make him Master of the City.

While *Tennes* and *Mentor* were thus concerting Matters for their own safety, the *Sidonians* (who it seems finelt their Design) sent five hundred of their chief Citizens to *Ochus* with Olive Branches in their Hands, praying him to give them Peace, and to accept of their Submission. But bloody *Ochus* caus'd them all to be Shot to Death with Arrows, in his presence. Nor did he treat *Tennes* their King better: For when he had betray'd the Town to him, he caus'd him to be, in like manner, put to Death as the reward of his Treachery. The poor *Sidonians* seeing the Gates of their City given up to *Ochus*, put Fire to the Town in every Corner, and reduc'd it to Ashes, forty Thousand of themselves perishing in the Flames. The Reduction of *Sidon* was immediately follow'd by that of *Cyprius*, which *Aldriens* Prince of *Caria* easily brought under Subjection. This *Aldriens* succeeded *Mausolus*, who dying two Years before without Issue, had a Tomb built for him, by his Wife *Artemisia*, so great, and of such noble and exquisite Workmanship, that the *Romans* dignify'd their own Magnificent Buildings with the Name of *Mausolea*.

*Ochus* animated by these Successes Invaded *Egypt*, which had for some Years before shaken off the *Persian* Yoke. *Mentor* was very serviceable to him in this Expedition. For by his prudent Conduct and Courage, the chief Cities of *Egypt* submitted to *Ochus*; some opening their Gates freely, and others Capitulating upon promise of Life and Liberty. *Nectanebus* the then present King, and indeed the last that was of the *Egyptian* Race, being overcome in Battle, and seeing all his Cities Taken and Plunder'd, retir'd with his best Effects into *Ethiopia*, and was never heard of since. Then *Ochus* plunder'd the *Egyptian* Temples, and set them on Fire; kill'd their god *Apis*, and, in derision, set up an Ass in his stead; carry'd off great Spoil, and return'd Home Crown'd with Glory and Renown, I mean such as Flatterers give wicked successful Princes; but did not live long after to enjoy the Fruit of his Victories. There was at this time a certain Eunuch in *Ochus's* Court call'd *Bagoas* an *Egyptian*: The Eunuch had the Address to insinuate himself into *Ochus's* Favour so well, that he dispos'd of all things according to his Pleasure; and being griev'd to see his god *Apis* kill'd, or rather ambitious to enlarge his own Authority and Power, he Suborn'd

*Ochus's*



*Ochus's* Physician to Poison him, in the twenty third Year of his Reign; and not content herewith, expos'd his Corps to be devour'd by Cats, and bury'd another Carcass in the Royal Tomb; and for an Emblem of the King's cruel Temper, caus'd Sword Hilt to be made of the Bones of his Legs.

He set *Arsames*, *Ochus's* eldest Son, upon the Throne, and kill'd all the rest of his Children, at least as many as had not escap'd his Hands; to the end, that the new King being destitute of Friends, might depend upon him for support. In effect *Bagoas* was the Man that Reign'd, and Usurp'd every thing that belong'd to the Crown, bating the Name. When he perceiv'd that *Arsames* took more than ordinary Notice of Things, and would enquire into the cause of the Murders that were committed upon his Brethren, and the Royal Family (for it seems *Bagoas* pretended to be a Stranger to all these Massacres) he apprehended the Danger of being call'd to an account, and in order to avoid it, slew him and all his Children, about the end of the third Year of his Reign. Then he heap'd up Wickedness upon Wickedness, and added Parricide to Parricide, 'till the Royal Family became so thin, that scarce any one remain'd to possess the Crown. Things being brought to this pass, he pitch'd upon *Codomanus* the Son of *Sisygambis*, who was his trusty Friend, and Confederate in all his Wickedness, and who, having got the repute of a very Brave Man, by the Death of the great Champion in the *Cadusian* War, was mightily esteemed by the *Persians*, *Ochus* himself, however cruel to all others, highly Complementary him upon that Action, and making him chief Governour of *Armenia*.

*Codomanus* being thus rais'd to the Throne, by the common consent and approbation of all the People, chang'd his Name, calling himself *Darius*, as being a Name, or Title of greater Majesty and Honour. *Bagoas* perceiving by the behaviour of *Darius*, that he wou'd not admit of a Competitor, and that tho' he lov'd the Treason, yet hated the Traytor, quickly repented of what he had done; and therefore resolv'd to add him to the number of the Murder'd Princes: But *Darius* was too quick for him; for as he perceiv'd him one Day over-busy in bringing him a Cup to Drink, which he had mixt with rank Poison, he oblig'd him to Drink it himself, and so made an End of one of the greatest Villains that ever the World produc'd.

*Darius* had the misfortune to fall into such Times, and untoward Circumstances, that the wisest of Men wou'd have found great Difficulty to get clear of; and if we compare the temper of this Prince, with the Genius of the Adversary he was oblig'd to encounter, we'll find it a hard matter for him to escape the Disasters into which he fell.

The Kingdom of *Macedonia* was, at this time, advanc'd to the highest pitch of Grandeur the Limits of *Greece* cou'd afford. *Philip* the Father of *Alexander* the Great, had then all *Greece* at his Beck, and under his Authority: And by the means of *Schools* for War and Sciences, had in a manner entertain'd both *Mars* and *Pallas* in his Camp: Whereas the Monarchy of the *Persians* was almost worn out with Age, and Bent under its own Weight. In it the Juice and Blood of Sciences and Virtue dwindle'd, and vanish'd into the Vapour of Luxury, which was, in those Days, so excessively great, that it is hardly creditable.

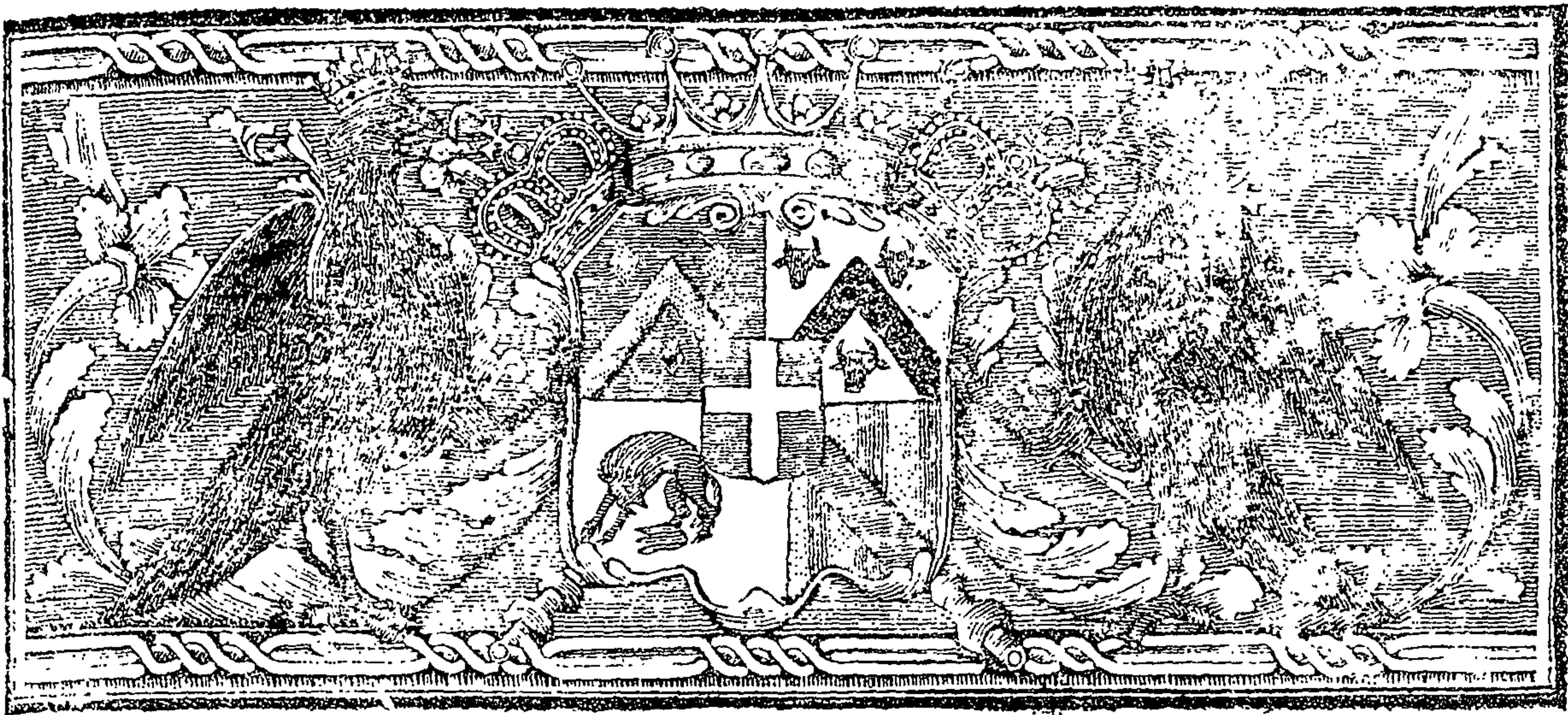
*Darius Codomanus*, after the barbarous Custom of some of his Predecessors, Marry'd his own Sister *Statira*, and had by her a Son named *Ochus*, and four Daughters, the eldest of which was call'd *Statira*; besides, if we believe *Quintus Curtius*, he had three hundred Concubines; and as to the Luxury of his Palace and Table, it is altogether impossible to find, or hear



of any thing that cou'd pallel it. In his Bed-Chamber, at the Head of his Bed, there was always, for a Reserve, a Treasure of Gold consisting of five thousand Talents, which made one hundred and twenty Millions of Livers; At the Bed's Feet three thousand Talents of Silver, or eighteen hundred thousand Crowns; Near this, a Golden Vessel made by *Theodorus* the *Samian*, valu'd at Six Score Millions of Crowns; over the Bed hung a golden Vine with Clusters of Grapes, made of Jewels and precious Stones: And as to his *Bakers*, *Cookes*, *Confectioners*, *Catherers*, and other Ministers Employ'd in the Luxury of his Table, they were numberless, as were also the Expences bestow'd upon the same. There were many Quarrels between the *Persians* and the *Grecians* besides the Inveterate Feuds that the Ravishing of Women in Ancient Times occasion'd. The Expedition of the *Athenians* against *Sardis*, started new Grudges, which the Adventures of *Xerxes* inflam'd. Besides, the Riches of *Asia* were a great Temptation to the *Grecians*. They thought it a shame that such great Possessions shou'd continue in the Hands of so barbarous a People. After *Xenophon's* return with a handful of Men thro' so many Provinces, they always prefer'd in the Day of Battle the *Grecian* Steel to the *Asiatick* Gold. In short the *Grecians* were smitten with an insatiable Itch to pillage the Riches of those Countries. *Cimon*, indeed was the last of the *Grecian* Generals; But *Philip* King of *Macedon*, a Man equally Entitul'd to Prudence and Military Virtues, seem'd to excel the most renown'd Captains; and, at this Time kept *Greece* in Bondage, under the Pretence of Liberty. When this great Prince divulg'd his purpose of making War upon the *Persians*, the *Grecians* almost unanimously elected him to be their Head, and Soldiers were levied in Every City. The next Spring he sent *Parmenio*, *Amyntas* and *Attalus* before him into *Asia* under pretence of rescuing the *Grecian* Cities; He himself designing to follow the next Spring, was Murder'd by one *Pausanias*, at his Daughter's Wedding. Upon his Death *Darius* thought himself secure, and slighted *Alexander*, the Son and Successor of *Philip*, who was then a Youth of Twenty Years of Age. But before I proceed any further, it will be requisite to give a Brief account of the Origin, Rise and Progress of the *Grecians*, who under the Conduct of this *Alexander*, ran like a Torrent, over all *Asia*, and possess'd themselves of the Universal Monarchy.







A  
New HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD.

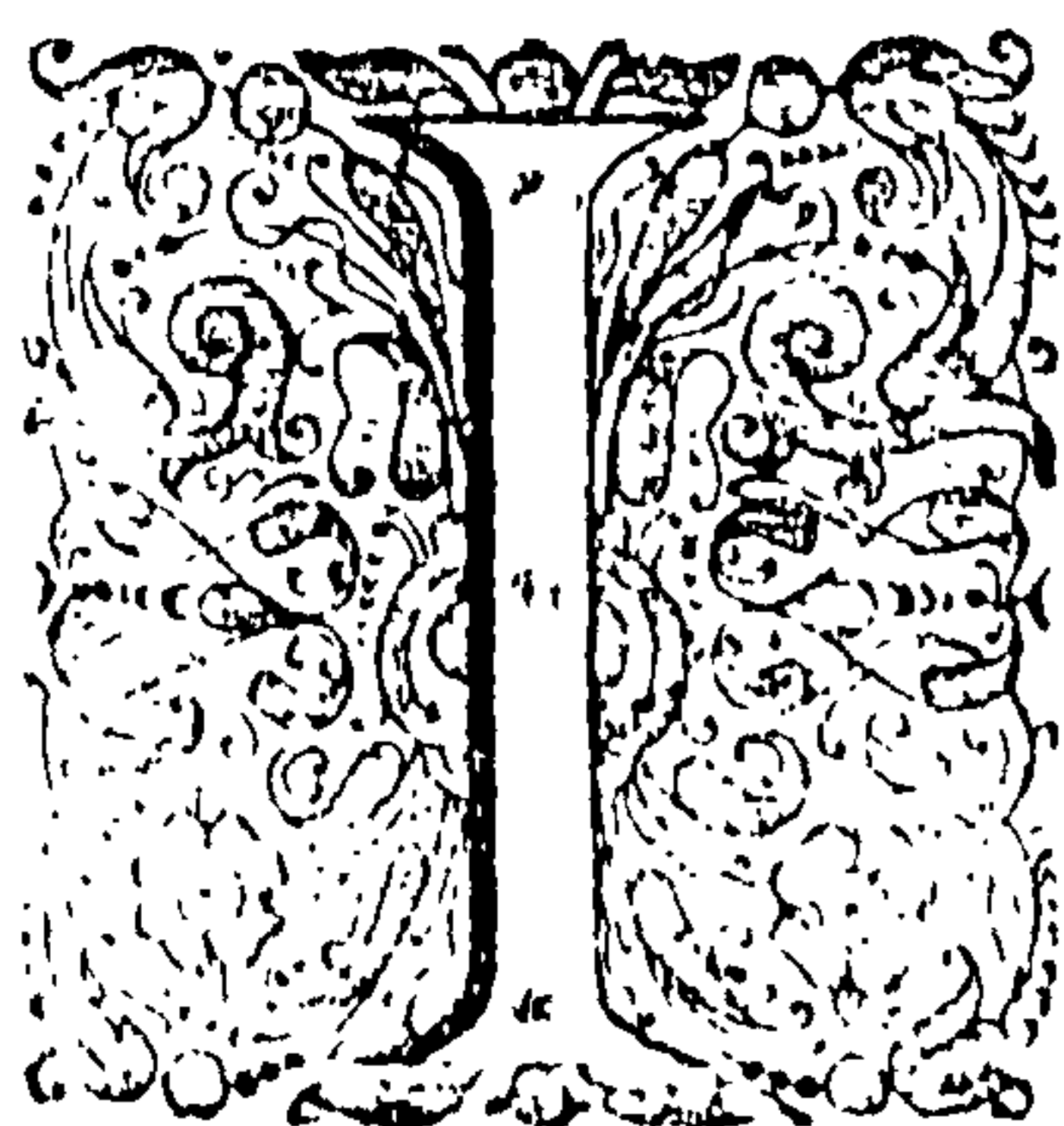
BOOK VI.

CHAP. I.

*Of the Origin, Rise and Progress of the Grecians, together with  
a particular Account of their Kingdoms and Republicks.*

SECT. I.

*Of the Origin, Rise and Progress of the Greeks in General.*



It is agreed upon by all the Learned, that the Descendants of Japhet the third Son of Noe, were the first Inhabitants of Greece. But under whose Conduct the first Colonies were led thither, is a matter not yet determin'd. When the Natives of this Country came first under one Common Denomination, they were call'd *Græci* or *Utiæci*, that is *Ab-ent*, being so, in regard of the Colonies which they sent *Westward* and *Northward* of themselves; but were after call'd *Hellenes*, and the Country *Hellas*, from *Hellen* the Son of *Deucalion* King of *Thessaly*.



We have no true Account of any thing in *Greece*, before the time of *Inachus*; He founded the Kingdom of the *Argians*, not in the Days of *Abraham* as most of our Modern Historians affirm; But in the time of *Moses*, as I observ'd before, from *Tertulian* and other Ancient Writers. His name discovers his being a Stranger: For *Inachus*, *Anach* or *Enach* are the same, and seem to be deriv'd from the *Hebrew* or *Chaldean* Language. The Account which the Ancient Pagan Historians have Transmitted unto us concerning the Rise and Progress of this Nation is so intermix'd with Fables, that it is impossible to discern the Truth from them for many Centuries. *Varro* divided the whole series of time into three Ages. The first from the Beginning of the World to the Deluge, which happen'd in the Reign of *Ogyges* King of *Thebes*, which is a space of Time wholly unknown with Respect to Pagan Authors; and probably was meant by him of the time that pass'd from the Creation to the Flood of *Noe*. The Second, from the time of *Inachus* to that of the first *Olympiad*, which is call'd the Fabulous Age; because it's History is intermix'd with Fables; And the last, that since the First *Olympiad*, which is the Historical Time. *Dionysius Siculus* extends the Fabulous Age no farther than the *Trojan* War; And Indeed, from that time forth things began to clear up, and Truth might more easily be discover'd: But all that preceded this *Æra* is so interwoven with Fables in our Pagan Writers of the *Greek* History, that it is utterly impossible to distinguish what is True, from what is not so.

*Asiander*, an *Athenian* Grammarian, who liv'd in the Reign of *Ptolemaeus Evergetes*, collected this Fabulous History, in a Book intitul'd the *Bibliothèque of the Gods*; The Abridgment of which reduc'd into three Books, is still extant. And for as much as *Greece* was the great Nursery of the most exquisite Arts and Sciences, and that the Knowledge of its very Fables are of no small Improvement to our Youth, I shall give a Brief Account of those Fabulous Times, and of the beginning of the six famous Kingdoms whereof that Mother of Learning formerly consisted, (*viz*) *Sidon*, *Agæ*, *Athens*, *Sparta*, *Corinth* and *Thebes*.

*Æpitholus* tells us, *Cæus* was the first, who had the Empire of the World. He married the *Earth*, by which he had Children who were nam'd *Centimani*, or *Hundred-hands*, *viz*. *Briareus*, *Gyges*, and *Cæus*, Men of a larger Size, and Stronger than ordinary. He had also by her, other Sons call'd the *Cyclopes*, *Harpies*, *Steropes* and *Brontes*: These *Cæus* caus'd to be bound, and thrown into *Tartarus*, or *Hell*, that is, I suppose, cast them into *Prison*. Besides he had by his Wife the *Titans*, who were *Oceanus*, *Cæus*, *Hyperion*, *Japetus* and *Saturn*, as also several Daughters, Namely *Tethys*, *Rhea*, *Themis*, *Mnemosyne*, *Phæbe*, *Dione* and *Thea*. *Cæus*'s Wife enrag'd at his destroying the *Cyclopes*, set up the *Titans* against him, who attacking their Father, drove him out of the Kingdom, deliver'd their Brethren the *Cyclopes*, and plac'd *Saturn* on the Throne. *Saturn* getting the Power into his Hands, ungrateful to the good Offices the *Titans* had done him, imprison'd them, marry'd his Sister *Rhea*, and for fear his Children shou'd Dethrone him, devour'd them as fast as they came to the World: *Rhea* seeing most of her Children destroy'd, conceal'd three of her Daughters, and two Sons, *Pesta*, *Ceres*, *Juno*, *Pluto* and *Neptune*; and being with Child of *Jupiter*, and despairing of being able to conceal him, fled to *Crete*, where she was deliver'd of him in the *Dædalan* Cave, gave him in Charge to the *Cirates*, and appointed *Alphæa* and *Ida*, two Women of that Country to be his Nurses.

*Jupiter*

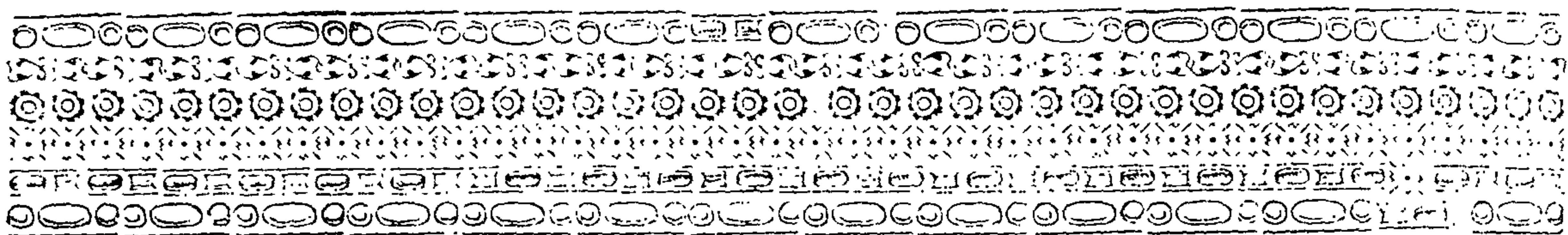


*Jupiter* being grown up married *Thetis* the Daughter of *Oceanus*, who found *Saturn's* Children; by whose Assistance he made War upon his Father and the *Titans*, and Vanquish'd them. After this Victory, the three Brothers divided the Empire of the World betwixt them: *Jupiter* had the High Places, *Neptune* the Waters, and *Pluto* the Low Places; that is, as the Fable has it, Heaven, the Sea and Hell. The *Titans* had several Sons and Daughters, among whom *Japetus* had by *Asia* the Daughter of *Oceanus*, *Atlas*, *Prometheus* and some others. As for *Jupiter* he married his Sister *Juno* also, and convers'd with several other Women, by whom he had a great many Children: By *Themis* the Daughter of *Cælus*, *Irene*, *Eumen*, *Dice*; and *Clotho*, *Lachesis* and *A'ropos*, who are call'd the *Dæ*, or *Destinies*; by *Diene*, *Venus*; by *Eurynome* the Daughter of *Oceanus*, *Aglaia*, *Euphrosyne*, and *Thalia*, the three *Graces*; by *Styge*, *Proserpina*; by *Mnemosyne*, the nine *Muses*, viz. *Calliope*, *Clio*, *Melomene*, *Euterpe*, *Erato*, *Therpsycore*, *Urania*, *Thalia*, and *Polyhymnia*. *Linus* and *Orpheus* were the Sons of *Calliope* and *Oeagrus*; the first kill'd was by *Hercules*, and the latter is said to be so excellent a Musician, that, at the Sound of his *Har*, Mountains and Trees us'd to move or Dance. He was cut to pieces by the *Menades* out of Envy, because they cou'd not come up to the perfection of his Skill in Musick, and was interr'd near *Pieria*, whence the *Muses* were call'd *Pierides*. *Clio* falling passionately in love with *Pierus* the Son of *Magnes*, had a Son by him nam'd *Hyacinthus*, with whom *Thamyris* was in love to Distraction. *Hyacinthus* was kill'd by *Apollo*, and *Thamyris* blinded by the *Muses*. *Juno* had a Son nam'd *Vulcan*, but who was his Father is uncertain. *Jupiter* drove him into the Isle of *Lemnos*. He had a Daughter nam'd *Pallas* by *Thetis*; and by *Latona* two Children, *Apollo* and *Diana*. *Apollo* kill'd the Serpent *Python*, as he did also *Pityus* the Son of *Jupiter* by *Elera* the Daughter of *Orbomenus*, and *Marsus* the Son of *Olympus*. *Diana* kill'd at *Delphi* *Orion* the Son of *Neptune* and *Euriale*. *Neptune* married *Amphitrite* the Daughter of *Oceanus*, and *Pluto* stole *Proserpina* the Daughter of *Cere*.

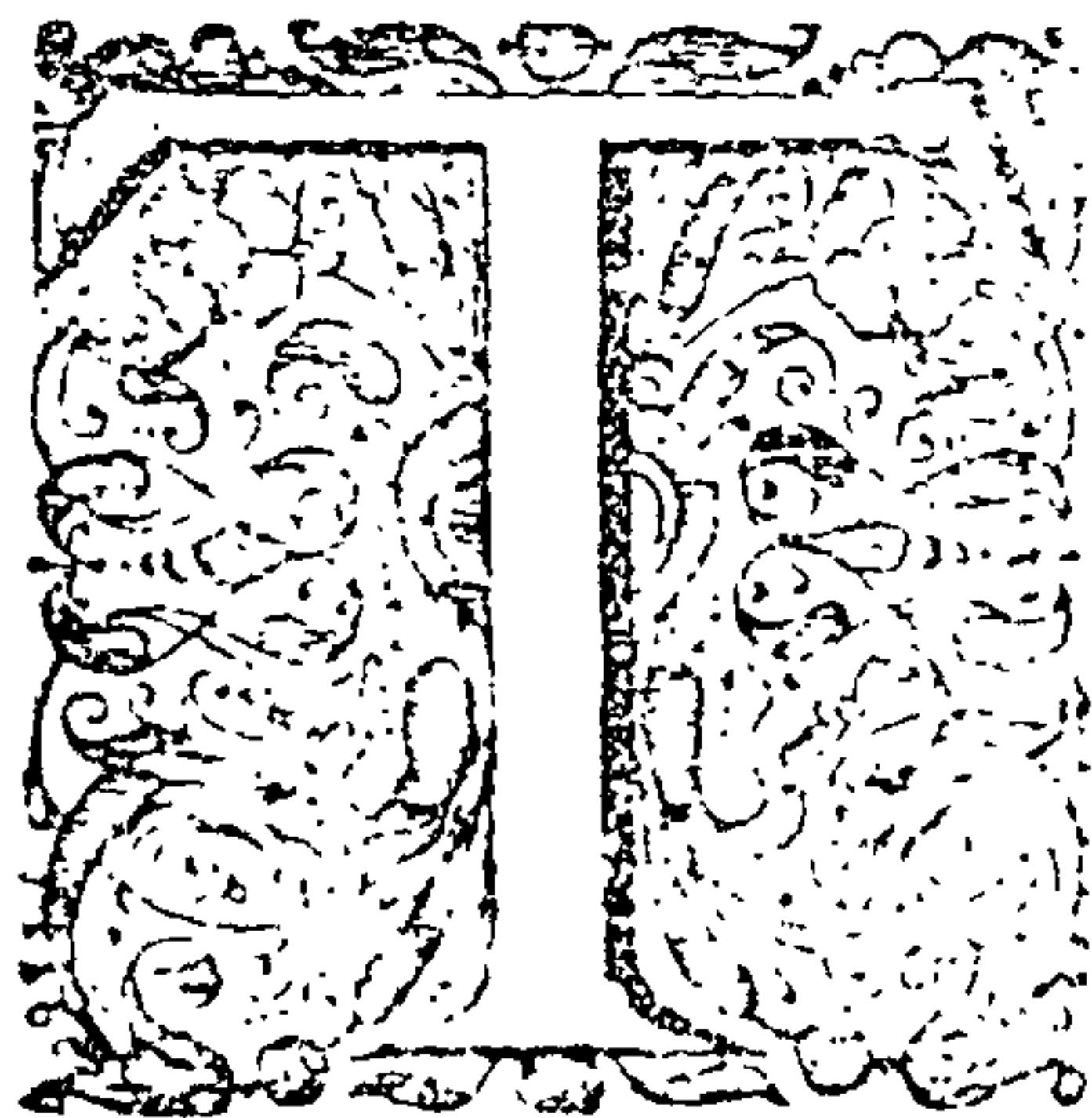
Now all, or most of these were *Deified*, had Temples and Altars erected for them; Solemn Sacrifices offer'd to them, gave Oracles and Responses in many of their Temples, had Priests and Priestesses consecrated to their Worship; some of them suppos'd to be carry'd to Heaven after their Death; and others to be only Translated, or withdrawn from the Commerce of Mortals, but so as to appear very often upon Occasion, as *Jupiter*, *Juno*, *Venus*, *Apollo*, *Diana*, and others, who serv'd the Women of Intrigue in great stead: For when they had the Misfortune to prove with Child, out of the State of Wedlock, they were sure to father their Off-Spring upon some of the Gods. In those days, the Giants made War upon the Gods, threw up one Mountain upon another in order to reach Heaven with their Hands; but *Jupiter* assisted by *Hercules* and the *Titans* exterminated them, and pursu'd *Typhon*, the most formidable of them all, to the farthest part of *Syria*, whither he had fled. From thence he led him fighting as far as *Cilicia*, and having receiv'd a fresh Reinforcement, drove him to the Mountain *Nissa*: From this he escap'd into *Thrace*, whither *Jupiter* follow'd him, and beat him near Mount *Hæmus*. *Typhon* then fled into *Sicily*, where *Jupiter* compleatly conquer'd him: Whence comes the Fable, that he cover'd *Typhon* with Mount *Ætna*, and, when its Flames issue out, that they are thrown up by this Giant. Thus much concerning the Fabulous History of the *Greeks* in General. I shall now proceed to



give an Account of the several Kingdoms whereof that Nation formerly consisted, whose Beginnings are, indeed, stuff'd with a great many Fables, yet not so obscure, but that Historical Truth may easily be discover'd, especially, as to the Names and First Founders of them, which I shall borrow from *Herodotus*, *Thucydides*, *Xenophon*, *Apollodorus*, *Eratosthenes*, *Diodorus*, *Pausanias*, *Varro* and *Ensebius*.



## S E C T. II.

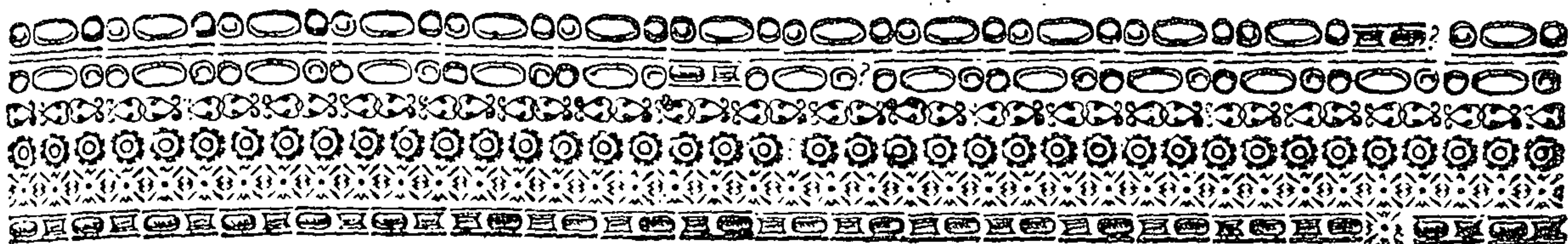
*The Kingdom of the Sicyonians.*

THE First King whom History Records to have Reign'd in *Sicionia* was *Egialeus*; He Dwelt near the Bay of *Corinth*, upon the Confines of *Achaia*, about the time (if we Credit some Historians) that *Ninus* govern'd the *Assyrian* Monarchy; Which cannot reasonably be suppos'd to be true, except we allow a much more considerable Space of Time between *Mimrod* and *Ninus*, than our Modern Historians do. The Country was first call'd *Egialca* after his Name, as was also a part of the *Peninsula*, which was afterwards nam'd *Peloponnesus* from *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus*. Fifty two Years after, his Son *Europa* succeeded him; next to *Europa* was *Teichines*, then *Apis*; from whom the *Peninsula* was call'd *Apis*, then *Thelexion*, in whose Reign the People were so happy and flourishing, that when he Dy'd they worship'd him as a God, offering him Sacrifices, and Celebrating Games, which were first instituted to his Honour. There were eight others between him and *Corax*, who Dy'd without issue: Upon which occasion *Epopeus* King of *Thessalie* posses'd himself of the Kingdom. This Prince Ravish'd *Antiope*, Daughter to *Nycteus* King of the *Thebans*; Whereupon a War ensu'd, in which both the Kings were mortally wounded. Then the Kingdom came into the Hands of *Lamedon* Brother to *Corax*, who deliver'd *Antiope* to the *Thebans*. *Antiope* upon her Journey brought forth *Twin*. Namely *Amphion* and *Zethus*, whom she expos'd in a Desert, but were found by a Shepherd and brought up. *Amphion* a famous Musician, and *Zethus*, who was bred a Shepherd, did afterward resent the Affront done to their Mother.

*Lamedon* being engag'd in a War sent for *Sicion* the Son of *Meton* and Grandson to *Teichines* by his Daughter *Attica*, whom he made his Son-in-Law and Successor. From him the City *Egialca* was call'd *Sicion*, and the Country *Sicionia*. He was follow'd in order by eight Kings, and then the Kingdom fell into the Hands of the Priests of *Apollo*, as some will



will have it; but *Pausanias* writes, that, in the Reign of *Lacestades* Son to *Hippolitus* at *Sicyon*, *Temenus* the Son of *Phalx*, who had been King of the *Argives*, surpriz'd the Town with the *Dorians* in the Night time. But by reason *Lacestades*, (as well as *Temenus*) was descended from the *Heraclide*, *Temenus* made him joint Partner with himself in the Government. By this means the *Sicyonians* became *Dorians*, and were reckon'd as part of the *Argives*.



## S E C T. III.

*The Kingdom of the Argives.*

His Kingdom held always the first Rank in Antiquity, and probably was founded before that of *Sicyon*; at least, if we consider Power, Riches and the Glory of great Atchievements, it far out-stript it. The *Argolick* Bay lyes near the *Scyllean Promontory* and *Myrtoan* Sea; near to that where stood the Cities *Argos*, and *Mycene*, which gave Names to the Country, tho' built long after. *Inachus* was the first that reign'd in this Country, about the time that *Moses* led the *Israelites* out of the Land of *Egypt*. His Antiquity gave rise to the Proverb, *Inacho antiquior*. *Melissa* his Sister and Wife bore him a Son nam'd *Phoroneus*, and a Daughter call'd *Io*, which is not to be confounded with *Io* the Daughter of *Jasus*, as the *Mythologists* do. After fifty Years Reign *Inachus* Dy'd, and *Phoroneus* succeeded him. *Phoroneus* made himself Master of the whole *Peninsula*, and by the Nymph *Laodice* (I suppose so call'd for her great Beauty, as surpassing Mortal Women) begat a Son call'd *Apis*, and a Daughter whose Name was *Niobe*. This Woman is said to have been so great a Beauty that *Jupiter* fell in love with her, or rather she was the first Woman that he lov'd. However she was got with Child of *Argus*, and Father'd him upon *Jupiter*, who is said to have Reign'd in *Crete* at this time; as indeed he or some others of the same Name did in most Countries, if we believe our Ancient Poets and Historians, not as Mortal Men but as Gods. For the *Assyrians* had their *Jupiter-Belus*, the *Egyptians*, their *Jupiter-Hammon*; The *Romans*, their *Jupiter Indigetes*, *Stator*, *Peretrius*, &c. It being usual, in former Times, with every Nation to have a *Jupiter* of their own, whom they own'd for a Common Father; Besides, the Ancients had a Custom of calling the Ancientest of their Kings, *Saturn*; the Eldest of his Sons, *Jupiter*; and the strongest of them, *Hercules*. Hence came, that, after their Death, they were suppos'd to be gone to Heaven to Reign there as Gods, and were worship'd as such by their Children and Successors, 'till the whole Earth was fill'd with *Idolatry*. So proceed,



*Phoroneus* reign'd sixty Years, and then died. *Apis* his Son and Successor chang'd the Name of his Country, and call'd it *Apia* after his own Name: He reign'd thirty four Years, but left no Issue. Historians are not agreed about his End. Some say he was betray'd by two of his Subjects call'd *Thelexion* and *Thelechine*, and Murder'd. *Apollodorus* says, he was kill'd for his Tyranny; and others, that he went into Egypt, and was worship'd there as a God, under the Name of *Serapis*. But however *Apis* ended his Days, it's certain the Egyptians worship'd a god call'd *Serapis*. *Apis* being Dead or gone away, *Argus* his Sister *Niobe*'s Son by *Jupiter* succeeded him. The City *Argos* was so call'd after his Name, and the Inhabitants of the Peninsula, which was afterwards call'd *Peloponessus*, and now *Morea*, were Christen'd *Argi*, or *Argivi* from his Name. *Argus* had a Brother call'd *Pelasgus* (the Father of *Lycan*) from whom sprung the *Pelasgi*, who first Inhabited *Arcadia*, from them call'd *Pelasgia*, and afterwards planted Colonies in several other Countries.

*Argus* had four Sons by *Evadne*, the Daughter of *Strymon*, namely *Jasus*, *Peiranthus*, *Epidauros* and *Criasus*; to which Number *Pausanias* adds *Phorbas*. *Peiranthus* was the first who Consecrated a Temple to *Jove*, and Appointed his own Daughter *Callithya*, or *Callirroe*, or *Io* (for by so many different Names was she call'd) to be her Priestess; and the Women of that Order became so Famous, that the Grecians Recorded the publick Account of the Times by the Years of their Priesthood. *Pausanias* says, *Peiranthus* succeeded *Argus*; but others say, *Criasus*; then *Phorbas*, and after him *Triopas*. The same Historian writes, that *Triopas* had two Sons, *Jasus* and *Agenor*, and that *Jasus* was King of the *Argivans*. The Daughter of this Prince was the famous *Io*, who is said to have been ravish'd by *Jupiter*, and thereupon to have been Metamorphos'd into a Cow by Jealous *Juno*; and in passing the *Thracian* streight Christen'd it *Bosphorus*, that is, the Cow's Passage, which Name it retains to this Day. Afterwards she went into Egypt, recover'd her human Shape, bore *Epaphus* the Builder of *Memphis*, and was worship'd as a Goddess under the Name of *Isis*. *Herodotus* writes, that this Woman, (whom he confounds with *Io* the Daughter of *Inachus*) was ravish'd by Phœnician Merchants, and that this was the cause of the Feud between the People of Greece and those of Asia.

*Jasus* was succeeded by *Crotopus* his Brother *Agenor*'s Son; to *Crotopus* succeeded *Sthenelus*, after whose Death *Danaus*, Brother to the famous *Sesostris*, alias *Egyptus*, whence Egypt borrow'd its Name, came to *Argos*, and claim'd the Crown of the *Argivans*, as descending from *Epaphus*, the Son of *Io*, the Daughter of *Jasus*, King of *Argos*. *Danaus* soon possess'd himself of the Crown, being assisted by the People who were since call'd *Danai*, after his Name. He had fifty Daughters, and his Brother *Sesostri*, or *Egyptus*, as many Sons. *Egyptus* being apprehensive his Brother might make too great Alliances by the Marriages of his Daughters, dispatch'd his Sons with an Army to *Argos*, with Orders either to Marry the Daughters, or kill the Father. *Danaus* seem'd to comply with his Brother's Demands; but underhand provided a Dagger for each of his Daughters, and order'd them to Murder their respective Husbands the first Night. Which accordingly they all did, except *Hypermnestra*, and as some say, *Bebryce*. *Hypermnestra* was charg'd by her Father with the neglect of her Duty, and brought to a Tryal; but the *Argives* clear'd her. The rest, by so black a Crime, drew upon themselves eternal disgrace, and as the Fable goes, were Condemn'd in Hell to fill leaky Vessels with Water, which let it out as fast as they receiv'd it.

*Danaus*



*Danaus* having reign'd fifty Years was succeeded by *Lyncæus* his Nephew and Son-in-Law, Husband to *Hypermnestra*. *Lyncæus* his Successor was *Abas*, to whom *Ocalia* bore Twins, *Acrisius* and *Prætus*. These two are said to have struggled for preference in the Womb. However they disputed the Kingdom with one another, and after many bloody Battles, came at last to a Composition, by which the Patrimony was equally divided. *Acrisius* got *Argos*, and *Prætus* got *Hiræum*, *Meda*, *Tyrus*, and the Sea-Coasts. And thus was the Kingdom of the *Argives* split into two Parts. *Acrisius* Marry'd *Eurydice*, and had by her *Danae*, whom he shut up in a Tower together with her Nurse, because the Oracle foretold him, that *this Grandchild wou'd certainly be the Author of his Ruin*. But, as the Fable has it, *Jupiter transform'd into a golden Shower got in to her, and begat Perseus*. By the bye, these *Jupiters* and Letcherous Divinities were very commodious to help out the Ladies at a dead Lift: For when their big Bellies discover'd their Intrigues, they were sure to Father the Fact upon some God, who sanctify'd the Birth, and dignify'd the Woman beyond what any lawful mortal Husband cou'd pretend to. To proceed.

When *Danae* was deliver'd of the Child, she and the Infant were put into a Chest and committed to the Sea; but they were driven upon the Island *Serphus*, where *Dictys* sav'd, and brought up *Perseus*. The first Expl. it we read of *Perseus* is the killing of *Medusa*, one of the three *Gorgons*, the Daughters of *Orcus*, and a Sea-Monster, whose Names were *Medusa*, *Steno*, and *Euryale*. Then he Marry'd *Andromeda* the Daughter of *Cepheus* by *Cassiopeia*, after he had snatch'd her out of the Jaws of a Whale. At length when he was in *Pelægia* or *Thessaly*, so call'd by the *Pelægiæns*, a wandering and vagabond People, he invented the Game of the Quoit; and while *Teutamias* King of the *Larisseans* was celebrating Games to the Honour of his deceas'd Father, he unfortunately threw a Quoit that kill'd his Grandfather *Acrisius*. Some Authors are of Opinion, the Council of the *Amphictyones*, that met commonly at *Delphi*, was rather Instituted by this *Acrisius* than by *Amphictyon* the Son of *Deucalion*, who reign'd in *Athen* a hundred Years before. But it is not improbable that *Amphictyon* did first institute this Council at the *Thermopylae*, and that *Acrisius* translated it from thence to *Delphi*. This Place was reckon'd the Center of *Greece*. It was the Seat of that famous Oracle of *Apollo Pythius*, and of the publick and universal Council of *Greece*, which met twice a Year to adjust Differences between the Cities of that Nation; and which consisted of certain Commissioners call'd *Pylagoræ*, delegated by each City, not unlike our Members of Parliament. This Council continu'd long in its Primitive Constitution, 'till *Philip* King of *Macedon* cut off the *Phocians* from Voting, and join'd 'em to his own Kingdom. A long time after that, *Augustus Cæsar* made some Alterations in it; and in the Reign of *Antoninus Pius* it still had a Being, and consisted then of thirty Members.

*Perseus* having kill'd his Grandfather return'd to *Argos*, to avoid the detestable Imputation of Parricide; and perswaded *Megapentes* the Son of *Prætus* to exchange Kingdoms with him. After this, he built *Mycenæ*, so call'd, because the Pummel of the Hilt of his Sword fell off in that Place. *Perseus* had five Sons by *Andromeda*, namely *Perfes*, *Alceus*, *Sthenelus*, *Electryon* and *Mesfor*. *Alceus* begat *Amphitryon*. *Sthenelus* succeeded his Father *Perseus* in the Kingdom of *Mycenæ*, after a Reign of fifty eight Years. *Electryon* begat *Aicmena*, Wife to *Amphitryon*. About this time the Kingdom of the *Argives* was divided into three Parts: For *Anaxagoras* the Son



of *Megapentes*, contenting himself with a third Part of his own Kingdom, gave the other two to *Melampus* and *Bias*, the Sons of *Amythaon*; because *Melampus* the first Inventor of Artificial Purgation, cur'd the Daughters of *Prætus* (who were *Anaxagoras's* Aunts) of their Madness; or else, because he found out a Remedy for checking an Epidemical Madness that reign'd among the Women of the Country. *Bias* was follow'd by five Successors in a Direct Line, till the Days of *Cyanippus*, Son to *Ægialeus*, who Descended, all of them, from *Nileus* by the Mothers side. *Melampus* had six direct Successors for many Ages, till the Reign *Amphilocus* Son to *Amphiaræus*. But the Native Line, the Race of *Anaxagoras* continu'd to Reign much longer: For *Iphis* the Son of *Alector*, and Grandson to *Anaxagoras*, left the Kingdom to *Sthenelus* the Son of *Capaneus* his Brother. Not long after *Cyanippus* the Son of *Ægialeus* Dy'd without Issue; So that the Kingdom fell again to *Cylarabes* the Son of *Sthenelus*, *Cylarabes* likewise Dy'd without Children: Whereupon *Orestes* the Son of *Agamemnon*, being outted of his Father's Kingdom, possess'd himself of the Kingdom of the *Argives*, and then of that of *Sparta*. *Sthenelus* the Son and Successor of *Perseus*, begot *Eurystheus* Heir of the Kingdom; And in seven Months after his Birth, *Alcmena* the Wife of *Amphitryon* brought forth a Son, and in seven Days after another.

The first of these was call'd *Alceus*, and for his mighty Exploits Surnam'd *Hercules*; The Second was call'd *Iphicles*: And for as much as the Birth of *Hercules* did precede that of *Iphicles* by seven Days, *Amphitryon* was esteem'd the Father of *Iphicles*, and *Jupiter* that of *Hercules*. There being several Persons of this Name, which signifies *Fame diffus'd thro' the Air*; And that the *Grecians* seem'd to attribute the Exploits of several Persons to their *Hercules*, it will not be improper to insist a little upon that Subject.

*Cicero* says, *there were six of that Name*: The First and Ancientest begot of *Jupiter* and *Lepitus*, who, they say, *disputed with Apollo for the Tripos*: The Second begot of *Nilus* in *Egypt*: The Third, *Hercules Indigetes* sprung from the *Ideans*, to whom they offer'd Sacrifices for the Dead: The Fourth, Son to *Asteria*, Sister to *Latona*, whom the *Tyrians* worship'd very religiously, taking *Carthago* to be his Daughter: The Fifth *Belus* in *India*; and the Last the Son of *Alcmena*. *Diodorus-Siculus* says, *there were three Hercules's*; *Servius* mentions Four; and *Varro* recounts forty four. *Tacitus* writes that the *Lybians* said, *The ancientest Hercules was born in their Country, and those who equal'd him in great Exploits, were honour'd with his Surname*. The Author of the Book call'd *Æquivoca* commonly ascrib'd to *Xenophon*, likewise observes, *that the ancientest Kings of noble Families were wont to be call'd Saturns, their eldest Sons Jupiters; and the bravest of their Grandchildren Hercules's*. Among all these, he who carry'd the Club and the Lyon's Skin, who kill'd Monsters, and as the Story has it, assisted the Gods against the Gyants; is rather to be reckon'd an *Egyptian* than the *Grecian*, the Son of *Alcmena*, who preceded the Trojan War by one Generation. But he, who erected the Pillars with the Inscriptions translated *Non plus ultra*, near *Gades*, now call'd *Cadiz* in *Spain*, and was then thought the utermost Boundaries of the World, was certainly a *Tyrian*, the Leader of the *Phenicians*, who made an Irruption into *Spain* as far as *Gades*. And the ambitious Plea of the *Grecians* is sufficiently balt'd by this single Remark, *that in that Island of Gades there stood formerly an ancient Temple, in which Hercules was worship'd in the Tyrian, and not in the Grecian way*.

*Sancho-*



*Sanhoniathon* the ancientest Writer of the *Phenician Annals* says, that *this Hercules was the Son of Demacoon, and that his proper Name was Melcarthus*, which signifies *King of the City*; the *Grecians* calling him *Melicertes* and *Palemon*. In his own Country he was likewise call'd *Diodas*, as being invoked by Lovers. Some will have him to be the same with that *Lybian* or *Egyptian* Person, whom *Pausanias* calls *Maceris*, who went to *Deiphi*, and whose Son *Sardus* carry'd a Colony to *Ichnusa*, and Christen'd the Island *Sardinia*.

However, *Amphitrion* the suppos'd Father of *Alcaeus* or *Hercules*, seems to have been Governour of *Tiryns*, having kill'd *Electryon* his Uncle and Father-in-Law, was oblig'd to flee to *Thebes*. *Hercules* being Educated at *Thebes*, gave many wonderful Specimens of his Valour, and when he was twenty Years of Age, sail'd to *Colchis* in Company of the *Argonautæ*, so call'd from the Ship *Argos* in which they Sail'd, in order to take away the Golden Fleece. The Projector and Head of this Adventure was *Jason* the Son of *Æson*, of the Race of *Æolus*, whom fifty three Noble *Grecians* of the first Rank accompanied. After four Months they return'd Home. *Medea* the Daughter of *Æetas* King of *Colchis* having fallen in Love with *Jason*, betray'd the Golden Fleece into his Hands, and came with him to *Corinth*. In their Voyage to *Colchis* they met with a Storm off of *Sigeum* a Promontory of *Troas*, where *Hercules* kill'd a Whale, and rescu'd *Hesione* the Daughter of *Laomedon* King of *Troy*, out of it's Monstrous Jaws. Afterwards *Laomedon* refus'd to give *Hercules* the Reward he had stipulated; whereupon *Hercules* took *Troy*, slew *Laomedon*, and set his Son *Priamus* upon the Throne.

*Hercules* upon his return to *Greece*, instituted Games to the Honour of *Jupiter-Olympius*. Afterwards, *Eurystheus* being Jealous of his greatness and Plotting his Ruin, press'd him to undertake the twelve famous Exploits, ever since call'd the twelve Labours of *Hercules*. These *Hercules* undertook, and happily accomplish'd. 1. He kill'd the Lyon of *Nemea*. 2. The Serpent of *Lerna*, that had an hundred Necks and as many Heads growing out of one Body; of which when one was cut off, two started up in the room on't. 3. He brought off the Wild Boar of *Erymanthus* alive, and in the same Expedition defeated the *Centaurs*. 4. He catch'd an Hind with Golden Horns, notwithstanding its extreme swiftness, and brought it to the King. 5. He scar'd away the Birds of the Lake *Stymphalis*. 6. Clean'd *Augea's* Stable without Assistance, by bringing up the River *Peneus* to it. 7. Brought the Bull out of *Crete*, That *Pasiphae* is said to have been in Love with. 8. Brought *Diomedes's* unruly Horses out of *Thracia*. 9. He made War with the *Amazons*, and carry'd away the Girle of *Hipolyta*. 10. Drive away *Geryon's* Oxen. 11. Brought the furious Dog *Cerberus* out of Hell. 12. Cross'd over to *Affrica* and brought off the Apples belonging to the *Hesperides*.

At last, after many Noble Atchievements, his Wife *Deianira* being possess'd with a furious Jealousy put upon him a Garment tainted with Poison, which *Nessus* the Centaur recommended to *Hercules* (with a design to Kill him for offering to ravish his Wife) as an excellent Thing for creating Love. The Poison of this Garment soak'd thro' to his Skin, and eat away the Flesh all over his Body, whereupon in the extremity of his Torment, he threw himself into a Fire upon the Mountain *Oeta*, and was burn'd to Death. *Hercules* had many Sons call'd, ever since, the *Heraclidae*, famous in History for their Bravery, and the many Kingdom's they possess'd.



possess'd. *Eurystheus* being apprehensive that the *Heraclidae*, or the Sons of *Hercules*, wou'd create him trouble upon Account of all the Dangers to which he had expos'd their Father, made War upon them; and endeavour'd to drive them out of his Kingdom; but the *Heraclidae* flew him and all his Children: However they were not able to possess themselves of the Kingdom: For *Atræus* the Son of *Pelops*, who, at this time, Govern'd *Argi*, seiz'd upon *Mycenæ*, the Country of *Eurystheus*. This *Pelops* was the Son of *Tantalus* the *Phrigian*, who about an hundred Years before being beaten by *Ilus* King of *Troy*, fled to *Greece*, and marry'd *Hyppodamia* the Daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*. Having got *Pisa* with her as a Dowry, he afterwards Master'd almost all the *Peninsula*, which deriv'd from him the Name of *Peloponnesus*.

*Pelops* had several Children by *Hyppodamia*, by the Marrying of whom, or rather by the vast Sums of Money which he brought into *Greece*, he insinuated himself into several Cities. The most Noted of his Sons were *Atræus*, *Thyestes* and *Plisthenes*. The first two succeeded their Father, who reign'd fiftyfour Years. *Plisthenes* dy'd Young, and left his two Sons *Agamemnon* and *Menelaus* to the Charge of *Atræus* their Uncle. *Atræus* marry'd *Aerope* the Mother of these Children, and the Daughter of *Minos*. *Thyestes* being found guilty of Adultery with her was first banish'd; but afterwards recall'd, and entertain'd with the Flesh of his own Children at Table. After the Death of *Eurystheus*, *Atræus* having master'd all the *Peloponnesus*, put the *Heraclidae* to flight. He was reckon'd a Famous Astrologer. He Adopted his two Nephews *Agamemnon* and *Menelaus*, who succeeded him eighteen Years before the *Trojan War*. *Agamemnon* being a Man equally Noted for Valour and Prudence, master'd not only *Micenæ* and *Argi*, but the whole Country as far as *Sicyon* and *Corinth*, and that part of the Country which was then call'd *Ionia*, *Egialea*, and afterwards *Achaia*. *Menelaus* reign'd in *Lacedemon*, having marry'd *Helena* the Daughter of *Tyndareus* the *Lacedemonian* King. *Paris Alexander*, the Son of *Priamus* King of *Troy*, stole away this *Helena*, which was the Cause of the *Trojan War*. In order to present the Reader with a brief Account of this War, it will be requisite to premise a succinct Scheme of the Kingdom of the *Trojans*. *Dardanus* the Son of *Jupiter* and *Eleëtra*, having left *Arcadia*, planted a Colony in *Phryia* in *Asia Minor*; and having marry'd *Batea* the Daughter of *Teucer*, and Grandchild of *Scamander*, settl'd in that Country; and there built a City which was call'd *Dardanium*, after his Name, about the Time that *Sibynelus* reign'd at *Argi*. *Erichthonius* his Son and Successor was exceeding Rich, and marry'd *Calirrhoe* the Daughter of *Scamander*, by whom he had a Son call'd *Tros*, from whose Name the Country was call'd *Troas*, and the Inhabitants *Trojans*. *Troas* had three Sons namely *Ilus*, *Assaracus* and *Ganymedes*. *Ilus* Succeeded his Father, and begot *Capsys* the Father of *Anchises*, and Grandfather of *Aeneas*. *Ganymedes* being a Beautiful Boy was ravish'd by *Tantalus*, Whereupon a War broke out in which *Tantalus* was outted of *Paphlagonia*, and (if we believe the Poets) punish'd in Hell with perpetual Hunger and Thirst, being dipp'd in Water to the Neck, and having five Fruit hanging on Boughs bending almost to his Mouth, but, as he reaches his Hands to them, they go back, and as he Sinks Down, the Water Sinks also from him. King *Ilus* built a City upon a plain Piece of Ground, which being the Metropolis of the Country was call'd by the *Grecians*, *Ilium*; and by the *Latins*, *Troja*. *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus*



was also worsted in the War which he wag'd with *Ilus*, and being driven out of *Paplagonia* brought a Colony of *Asiatics* to *Argi*, possess'd himself of the *Peninsula*, call'd ever since *Peloponnesus* after his Name, as I observ'd before. *Laomedon* the Son of *Ilus* was at once strip'd of his Kingdom and Life by *Hercules*, for offering to cheat him of the Reward he had stipulated for saving his Daughter who set his Son *Podarces* Surnam'd *Priamus* upon the Throne.

*Priamus* was very famous for his Riches and the Largeness of his Kingdom. He begat fifty Sons, seventeen of them were by Lawful Marriage; one of whom call'd *Paris Alexander* came to *Lacedemon* and stole away *Helena* the Wife of *Menelaus*: Upon Notice whereof the Princes of *Greece* join'd together, and resenting the Affront as offer'd to them all in the Person of this Princess, chose *Agamemnon* for their Head, and declar'd War against *Priamus*, obliging themselves by an Oath never to return till they had taken *Troy*. The Heads of this Expedition were *Nestor*, the two *Ajax's*, *Achilles*, *Ulysses*, *Thoas*, *Podalirius*, *Machaon* and *Tlepolemus*. It's said one hundred and twenty thousand Men were Transported thither in a Fleet of a thousand Ships. As soon as they arriv'd in *Troas*, they had a slight Skirmish, and then sent their Ambassadors to Demand *Helena*: But *Priamus* was so far influenc'd by the Counsel of young Men, and so Indulgent to *Paris*, that he rejected their Demands. Then the War broke out on both Sides, and lasted for ten Years. Upon the *Grecian* Side *Protesilaus*, *Patroclus*, *Euphorbus*, and *Achilles* were slain. In the *Trojan* Army, *Hector*, *Troilus* and *Paris*, Sons to *Priamus*; *Memon* Son to *Tithonus* the King's Brother, and *Penthesilea* the *Anazon*, had the same Fate. At last the Town was taken by Stratagem: (By the means of the Wooden Horse if we believe our Poets) *Menelaus* recover'd his Wife *Helena*, and slew *Deiphobus*, who marry'd her after the Death of *Paris*, *Priamus* was kill'd by *Pyrrhus*, or *Nesptemus* the Son of *Achilles*. But *Aeneas* and *Antenor* with some others escap'd out of the *Grecian's* Hands.

Among the *Grecians* who surviv'd the War, the two *Ajax's* dy'd before their Return; one of them (*viz.*) the Son of *Telamon* laid Violent Hands upon himself for being balk'd by *Ulysses*, in the Contention about *Achilles's* Armour; the other, the Son of *Oileus*, was lost at Sea. *Ulysses* is said to have been toss'd too and again at Sea for several Years: *Menelaus* was missing for eight Years after the Siege: *Agamemnon*, indeed return'd Home soon after the Siege, but was presently Murder'd by *Aegisthus* the Son of *Thyestes*, with whom *Clytemnestra* his Wife not only committed Adultery, but even conspir'd to bring about that detestable *Parricide*. *Agamemnon* had by *Clytemnestra* one Son, Namely *Orestes* and three Daughters. *Orestes* was with some Difficulty sent out of the Way by *Electra* his Sister, for fear of *Aegisthus* before his Father's Return. About eight Years after his Father's Death he recover'd his Kingdom, and put *Aegisthus* and his Mother to Death. Being seiz'd with a furious Remorse for killing his Mother, he Submitted his Case to the *Areopagites*, whose Decision clear'd him, there being just as many Voices for, as against, him. *Cylabus* the Son of *Sthenelus* being dead without Issue, this *Orestes* obtain'd the Kingdom of the *Argives*; and afterwards upon the Death of *Menelaus* came to that of *Lacedemon*.

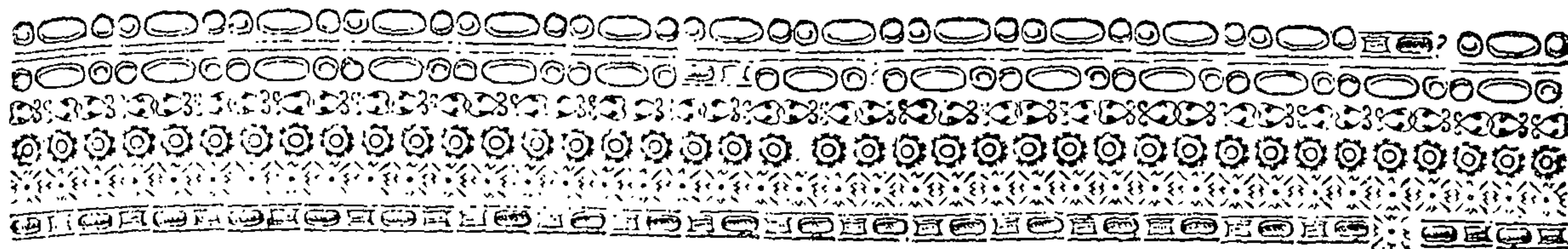
By this means the Kingdom of the *Argives* was once more united, about one hundred and forty Years after its Division into three parts as we



said before. *Orestes* Transported a Colony of *Eolians* into *Asia* about four Ages before the *Jonians* went thither, and at last dy'd in *Arcadia*, after a prosperous Reign of seventy Years. He left two Sons, one *Tisamenus* by *Hermione* the Daughter of *Menelaus*; the other a Bastard by the Daughter of *Ægisthus*. *Tisamenus* Succeeded his Father, but was soon after expell'd his Kingdom by the *Heraclidæ*. These Sons of *Hercules* did often before attempt the Recovery of the *Peloponnesus*, but were as often repuls'd. *Hyllus*, one of them attempted it twice, and *Clodeus* and *Aristomachus*, two more of them, once; but were all equally unfortunate. *Aristomachus* left three Sons, *Temenus*, *Cresphontes*, and *Aristodemus*. These chiefly laid claim to three Parts of the *Peloponnesus*, namely First, *Argi*, as being the Posterity of *Perseus*; whereas *Tisamenus* the present Possessor Descended of *Pelops* who had no Title to that Country. Second, *Lacedemon*, because *Hercules* restor'd *Tyndareus* when he was outted by *Hyprooon*, upon this Condition, that he shou'd hold the Kingdom as a Depositum. Third, *Messenia*, grounding their Title upon this Plea, that when *Hercules* Destroy'd *Pilus*, he likewise deposited this Country in the Hands of *Nestor*. So having built a Fleet upon the Coast of *Ætolia*, from whence the Place was call'd *Naupactus*, they pretended to go by the *Isthmus*, but in effect were bound for *Molycrium*. Upon their arrival in the *Peloponnesus* they gain'd a great part of that Country without much Difficulty. *Temenus* got *Argi*, *Cresphontes* hook'd in *Messenia* to himself; But *Lacedemon* fell to *Proclis* and *Eurysthenes* Sons to *Aristodemus* who had been slain by the Sons of *Pyladas* and *Electra*.

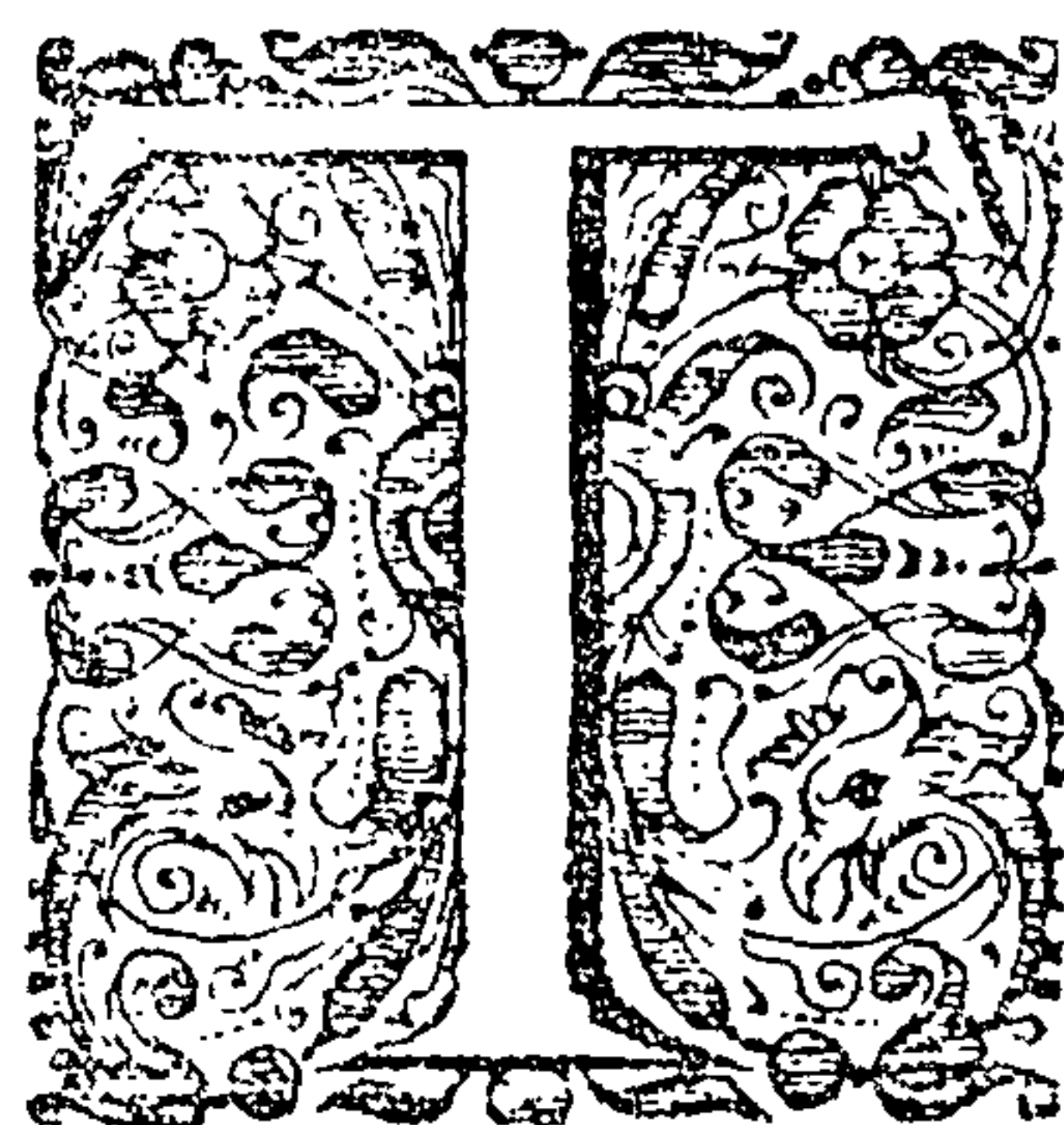
*Tisamenus* and the *Achaïans* being thus driven out of *Argolis* and *Lacedemon* by the *Heraclidæ* and *Dorians*, were upon certain Terms entertain'd by the *Jonians* then Inhabiting the Rest of the *Peloponnesus*. But afterwards the *Jonians* grew Jealous, that the Valour and Quality of *Tisamenus* might Induce both People to choole him King; Whereupon a War broke out and *Tisamenus* was kill'd in Battle. However the *Achaïans* drove the *Jonians* to *Attica*, where the *Athenians* by the Advice of their King *Melanthus* receiv'd them into their City; Not so much out of Deference to their former Friendship, as out of Fear of the *Dorians*. *Temenus* being possess'd of *Argi*, his Sons out of envy to *Deiphontes* his Son-in-Law, whom he too much respected, made away with him. *Cisus* the Eldest succeeded his Father: But the People was so much at *Deiphontes* his Beck, and so fond of their Liberty, that the Regal Power was confin'd to a very narrow Compass, and the Posterity of *Cisus* had little else but the Name of a King. So that this Kingdom was converted into a Democracy, about forty Years after the Restoration of the *Heraclidæ* and eight hundred and ninety Years after the Reign of *Inachus*.





## S E C T. IV.

## The Ancient State of the Kingdom and Republick of Athens.



THE Kingdom of the *Athenians* was founded by *Cecrops*, who began first to Reign in *Attica*, then call'd *Acte*, and made *Athens* the Seat of his Empire; but whether he was a Foreigner, who brought a Colony thither, or a Native of the Land, and rais'd his Country to the Dignity of a Kingdom, is not agreed upon by the Historians of Old Times. While *Cecrops* Reign'd at *Athens*, *Deucalion* the Son of *Prometheus* sway'd the Scepter in *Thessaly*, whose History must necessarily be briefly Hinted at; since his Posterity gave Names to the *Grecians*. *Japhet*, an Inhabitant of this Land, had three Sons *Atlas*, *Prometheus*; and *Epimetheus*. *Atlas* Dwelt near a great Mountain, which was ever since call'd after his Name *Atlas*; And for as much as *Atlas* had more than ordinary Skill in Astronomy, he was said to bear up the Heavens upon his Shoulders. *Prometheus* is said to have form'd Men out of Clay, because he was an excellent Teacher of Wisdom; *Prometheus* had a Son call'd *Deucalion*, who took to Wife *Pyrrha* the Daughter of *Epimetheus*. In his Reign there happen'd a Deluge which overflow'd his Country, the proper Name whereof was then *Hellas*. We Read of three Deluges in *Greece*. One in the Reign of *Ogiges* King of *Thebes*. The Second was this of *Deucalion*, which happen'd about two hundred and forty eight Years after the First. The Third came to pass in the Reign of *Dardanus* and *Cadmus*, eighty six Years after the Second.

*Deucalion* had by *Pyrrha* two Sons, Namely *Hellen* and *Amphictyon*. From the former his Subjects, who before went by the Name of *Grecians*, were call'd *Hellenes*, and the Country it self *Hellas*, which formerly had been call'd *Pelassia* from *Pelassus*, and *Hamonia*, from *Hamone* the Daughter of *Pelassus*, and *Pyrrhea* from *Pyrrha*. *Hellen* had three Sons, *Xuthus*, *Æolus*, and *Dorus*. He left his Kingdom to *Æolus*, and sent the rest to shift for themselves. *Æolus* was so much respected by his Subjects, that he was Surnam'd *Jupiter*, and Deified with the title of the God of the Winds. *Dorus* settled in the Country which lies about the Mountains *Ossa*, and *Olympus*, whence the Inhabitants were call'd *Dorians*. *Xuthus* went to *Athens*, and *Erectheus* gave him his Daughter in Marriage, by whom he had two Sons, *Archaeus* and *Ion*; but was afterwards expell'd the City, because being chosen



*Arbiter* by the Sons of *Erechtheus*, he adjudg'd the Kingdom to *Cecrops* the eldest; whereupon he remov'd to *Egialea*. *Acheus* one of his Sons, came with Auxiliary Troops from *Egialea* and *Athens* to *Theffaly*, and recover'd his Father's Kingdom; but afterwards upon the Casual killing of a Man was oblig'd to flee to *Lacedemon*, where his Posterity remain'd till they were turn'd out by the *Dorians* and *Heraclide*.

*Archander* and *Architeles* the Sons of *Achæus* remov'd to *Argi*, where the former marry'd *Scaæ*, and the latter *Antomate*, *Danaus's* Daughters. The Sons of *Achæus* became so powerful in *Argi* as well as in *Lacedemon*, that the Inhabitants of both Places were call'd, under one general Name, *Achæi*; tho' the peculiar Title of the *Argives* was *Danai*. Ion the other of *Xuthus's* Sons was about to make War upon the People of *Egialea*, when *Selinus* their King pacified him by giving him *Helice* his Daughter in Marriage. He succeeded *Selinus* in the Government, and built a Town which he call'd *Helice* after his Wife. He likewise Christen'd the People *Jones*. Thus much concerning the Posterity of *Deucalion*.

Some Historians are of Opinion that the famous Council of the *Areopagites* commenc'd in the Reign of *Cecrops*. Others date its Beginning from the Time of *Solon*. Neither are Authors better agreed upon the Original of the Name, tho' they all agree that *Arcopagus* has an Allusion to *Mars*, which in Greek is call'd *Ares*. However *Cecrops* dying about fifty Years after, *Cranaus* the richest of all the Citizens succeeded him, who continued only seven Years in the Empire, at which Period *Amphiſtion* the Son of *Deucalion* turn'd him out of his Kingdom. In ten Years after, *Amphiſtion* himself was serv'd at the same Rate by *Erichthonius*. This Man was reckon'd the Son of *Vulcan* and the *Earth*. He instituted Games to the Honour of *Apollo* and *Minerva*, and after fifty Years left the Kingdom to his Son *Pandion*, who reign'd forty Years, and then was follow'd by his Son *Erechtheus*. This was a famous Prince. He wag'd War with the *Eleusians*, and made *Ion* his Son his General. The King of the *Eleusians* being kill'd in the Field, he himself fell in the fiftieth Year of his Reign. 'Twas under his Reign the Citizens, who formerly were call'd *Cecropidae*, got the Name of *Athenians* from the Town it self. He left three Sons, *Cecrops*, *Metion*, and *Pandorus*. This was the *Cecrops* to whom *Xuthus* (as was said before) adjudg'd the Kingdom upon the difference between him and his Brethren concerning the Succession. He reign'd forty Years, and left a Son call'd *Pandion*, who being turn'd out of his Kingdom by the Sons of *Metion*, fled to *Megara*, where he obtain'd the Principality of *Pilas* his Father-in-Law. During his Exile he begat four Sons, namely *Ægeus*, *Lycus*, *Pallas*, and *Nisus*; who after the Death of their Father, turn'd the Posterity of *Metion* out of *Athens*, and divided the Kingdom into four parts, pursuant to the Orders of their Father to that Effect. *Megara* was allotted to *Nisus* who reign'd there a long Time.

Notwithstanding the above mention'd Division, *Ægeus* was the Head that Govern'd all. *Pallas* had fifty Sons: These laid wait for *Ægeus*, as contemning him for want of Children. At last *Pitheus* the Son of *Pelops*, who reign'd at *Tracene*, oblig'd him to embrace his Daughter *Æthra* of whom the famous *Thescus* was born. *Thescus* coming to *Athens*, and being own'd by his Father, crush'd the Family of *Pallas*; and to ingratiate himself with the People, tam'd the Bull of *Marathon*, that was so very troublesome to the Inhabitants of *Tetrapolis*, shew'd him alive up and down the



the Town, and then Sacrific'd him to *Apollo* at *Delphi*. In some time after, he sail'd to *Crete*. The Occasion of his going thither was this: *Minos* King of *Crete* had a Son call'd *Androgeus*. This young Prince came to *Athens* at the time the *Athenians* celebrated the *Panathenæan* Games, and carried the Victorious Prize from all the *Atheletes*. This, together with his having contracted a Friendship with the *Pallantidæ*, who, were *Ægeus* his Enemies, upon account of their Pretensions to his Crown, gave him Umbrage, as fearing they shou'd by the help of the *Cretans* Dispossess him of his Crown; to prevent which, he caus'd *Androgeus* to be kill'd in his Passage from *Athens* to *Thebes*. *Minos* hereupon declar'd War against *Ægeus*, took *Megara* and *Nisea*, and then invested *Athens*, which he reduc'd to such Extremity that *Ægeus* was forc'd to submit to the Discretion of *Minos*, who impos'd upon the *Athenians* (as a Penalty,) to send every ninth Year seven young Men, and as many Virgins to *Crete* to be devour'd by the Minotaur. This Minotaur is said to have been one of the Sons of *Minos*, and had partly the Shape of a Bull, and partly that of a Man. He was shut up in a *Labirynth* (with so many Windings and Turnings, that it was very difficult to find the Way out when one was once got in) which was built by the famous Architect *Dedalus*, whom the Poets feign'd to have flown with Wings, because he invented Sails for Ships, which before were mov'd only by Oars.

*Theseus* being a Man of great Strength and Valour, was sent by his Father *Ægeus* to *Crete* when the Time of paying the third Tribute began; hoping that by his Courage and Conduct he might Kill the Minotaur. When *Theseus* set to Sea, *Ægeus* charg'd the Master of the Ship to set up a white Flag upon his Return, in case *Theseus* came off with Victory; but in case he were Dead to set up a black one. When *Theseus* arriv'd in *Crete*, *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* fell in Love with him, and by the help of a Clew of Thred which she gave him, he found his Way out of the *Labirynth*, having fasten'd an End of the Thred at the Entrance into it, and letting the same run as he went along; and having fought and kill'd the Minotaur, he follow'd the Thred back. Being come out thus Conqueror, he took away *Ariadne* and set sail for *Attica*, where his Father *Ægeus* waited with Impatience upon an high Promontory, and seeing the Ship making to the Shoar, but not observing the white Flag as he had order'd, which both *Theseus* and the Master of the Ship had forgot to set up, he cast himself down the Rock, (concluding that *Theseus* was lost) and so drown'd himself in the Sea, which was ever since call'd after his Name the *Ægean* Sea.

*Theseus* upon his Arrival at *Athens* understood that his Father was Dead; whereupon he took up the Reins of the Government, and instituted a sort of mixt Monarchy, gathering together all the People that were in the twelve Towns of *Attica* into one City. Then he rank'd them into three States, viz. Noblemen, Husbandmen and Artificers. *Theseus* accomplish'd many noble Exploits. He Instituted the *Isthmian* Games to the Honour of *Neptune*. He sail'd to the *Euxine* Sea against the *Amazons*, and brought his Wife *Antiope* from thence, by the help of *Pirithous* the Son of *Tyndareus*. But when he on his part assist'd *Pirithous* in ravishing the Daughter of *Aidoncus* King of the *Molossi*, he had the Misfortune to be taken and put into Prison. His Associate was put to Death being devour'd by a great Dog, but he was at last set at Liberty, thro' the Intercession of *Hercules*. That King is call'd *Pluto*, his Daughter *Proserpina*, and the



Dog that devour'd *Pirithous*, *Cerberus*. Whence the Poets borrow'd the Fable of *Theseus* and *Pirithous's* going to Hell, where the latter was devour'd by *Cerberus* the Dog of Hell.

While *Theseus* was detain'd in Confinement, *Castor* and *Pollux* took that Opportunity of rescuing their Sister *Helena* ; and *Mnestheus* the Grand-Son of *Erechtheus* excited the People of *Athens* against him, and brought his Design to bear so far, that when *Theseus* return'd he was oblig'd to retire to the Island *Scyros*, where he was precipitated from a steep Rock, which ended his Days, after a Reign of thirty Years.

*Mnestheus* Reign'd after him for the space of twenty three Years. In this King's Reign happen'd the Siege of *Troy*, the most famous Event in prophane Antiquity. After the Death of *Mnestheus*, *Demophon* the Son of *Theseus* by *Phedra* recover'd the Kingdom of his Ancestors. He was educated by *Elpenor* the Son of *Chalcedon* together with his Brother *Achames*. *Demophon* snatch'd the Image of *Pallas* from the *Argives* who upon their return from *Troy* were forc'd in by a Storm upon the Coasts of *Attica*. After thirty four Years he left the Kingdom to his Son *Oxantas*, who after twenty two Successions was follow'd by *Aphidas*. He having reign'd one Year was follow'd by *Thymetes*, who being a Bastard, is, said, to have kill'd his Brother *Aphidas*. After eight Years, this Prince lost his Kingdom, and concludes the List of the Kings of the Posterity of *Erechtheus*.

There arose a difference between the *Athenians* and *Beotians* about *Calene*, which lay in their Neighbourhood : And it was mutually agreed upon, that the two Kings shou'd decide the matter in a Duel. But *Thymetes* refusing to Fight, was thereupon outted of his Kingdom. *Melanthus*, whom the *Heraclidae* had expell'd his own Country, took up the Quarrel, and by a Stratagem defeated *Xanthus* the King of the *Beotians* : By which means he obtain'd the Government of *Athens* by way of Reward. After *Melanthus*, his Son *Codrus* succeeded, who was the last King of *Athens*. The *Heraclidae* being engag'd in a War with the *Athenians*, were advis'd by the Oracle that the only way to obtain a Conquest was to avoid hurting the King of their Enemies. *Codrus* being inform'd hereof, put on the Habit of a Common Soldier, expos'd himself to the Enemy's Shot, and was kill'd. Upon the News of his Death the *Heraclidae* broke up the Siege, and march'd off, tho' some of their Army had already enter'd the Town, whom the *Athenians* sent safe Home.

After *Codrus* there was no King at *Athens*. The Administration was then put into the Hands of Men whom they call'd *Archontes*, that is, Chief Rulers, who possess'd the Government for Life. But were Subject to the People, as being oblig'd to give them an Account of their Administration. This memorable change happen'd four hundred and eighty six Years after *Cecrops*, one hundred and fourteen Years after the Destruction of *Troy*, two hundred and ninety three Years before the first Olympiad. *Medon* the Son of *Codrus* was the first *Archon* ; tho' he was bred up in hopes of being King. *Nileus* his Brother was very troublesome to him. He refus'd to obey *Medon* whose Government was *Lame* and *Limited* : But at last, the Affair was remitted to the *Delphick* Oracle, which made Answer, that the Government of the *Athenians* belong'd to *Medon*. After this *Nileus* and the other Sons of *Codrus* were sent into *Asia* with a Colony of *Athenians*, *Jonians*, *Thebans*, *Phocians* and *Eubeans*. This Colony built the twelve *Jonian* Cities in *Asia*, namely *Miletus*, *Ephesus*, *Priene*, *Colophon*, *Myus*, *Theos*, *Lebedos*, *Clazomenae*, *Erythrae*, *Phocaea*, *Chius*, and



and *Samus* ; the Original of which Cities is accounted for at large by *Pausanias*.

*Medon* was follow'd by twelve successive Princes, who were call'd *Medontidae* after his Name. The last of these was *Alcmæon* the Son *Æschilus*, who dy'd before the end of the second Year of his Government. Then the People being uneasy under the perpetual power of the *Archontes* confin'd it to the Compass of ten Years. This change was decree'd about the Beginning of the *Olympiads* ; and *Charops* was the first that was invested with this ten Years Government. That Form of Government lasted seventy Years. The last of that sort of *Archontes* was *Erixias*, who after a six Years Reign either dy'd or was degraded ; and then the Republick put on a new Face : For the People being proud of their Power, and possess'd with an insatiable itch for Liberty, did quite abrogate the Monarchical Constitution, and put the Administration of Affairs into the Hands of nine *Archontes* to be elected Yearly. The first of these was President, and call'd *Eponymus*. The second was call'd King, being Judge of all Civil and Criminal Causes. The third *Polemarchus*, or supreme Judge of Military Affairs. The other six were call'd *Thesmothetæ*, or Defenders of their Laws and Customs. The whole Body of the nine joyn'd together had power to call a Meeting of the People, and propose their Opinion in Matters of Importance, as the King and the *Archontes* did before.

So great was this Superstructure of Liberty, that they inhauc'd upon the Foundation which *Theseus* laid. But the People having once the Reins in their Hands, did not know where to stop or fix. The Harangues of popular Orators turn'd and tofs'd them to and again ; being one Day for one Thing, and another Day for another. The Power of the Nobility was exceedingly depress'd, and their Persons contemn'd, especially in this, that the Sentiments of the Judges were look'd upon as Laws, there being no certain Statutes, as yet to walk by. About fifty Years after, a Complaint was given in upon this Head, which seem'd to carry Justice along with it. Whereupon they employ'd one *Draco*, a Wise but bloody Man, to make Laws for them. He abrogated many Laws, or rather Customs, and reform'd their Courts of Justice, chiefly that call'd the *Ephetæ* which was order'd to consist of fifty one Members, each of them fifty Years Old or upwards. He made Laws entailing Death upon the slightest Crime ; and being ask'd, by one of his Friends, Why he would have small Faults punish'd with Death ? Answer'd, *That the least Crime deserv'd Death ; but that there was no greater punishment than Death for the greatest Crimes*. But these bloody Laws did so exasperate the Common People, who were every day a slaughtering for their petty Faults, that they became Turbulent and Daring, and their Divisions and Animosities rose to a dismal Degree. At last all their hopes were pointed at *Solon*, a Man of Prudence and known Integrity. They intreated him to act the part of a Physician to the Republick ; and, in order to furnish him with suitable power for that End, they offer'd him of their own accord an Arbitrary One.

Tho' *Solon* was sensible he had ingratiated himself with the People, by the Fame of his Wisdom, and the Stratagems with which he recover'd the Island *Salamina* ; yet he had no mind to meddle with the Government : For he dreaded the Avarice of the Poor, and the Pride of the Rich : However he took upon him the offer'd Charge of Setting the Government to Rights. But before he set about it, he enacted a general Remission of Debts call'd *Sisachthea*, by which means he ingratiated himself into the



Affection of all *Parties*. He was elected *Archon* immediately after *Philo-  
lombrotus*; and his first Business was to abrogate all the Laws of *Draco*.  
Then he review'd the People, and drew them up in four *Tribes*, allotting  
Offices to every one suitable to their Station; the poorer sort being exclu-  
ded from the Magistracy, and allow'd only to have a Place in the publick  
Meetings. And in order to curb the growing Power of the *Plebs*, he in-  
stituted a Senate, (besides that of the *Areopagites*) consisting of four hun-  
dred Members (that is, one hundred out of each *Tribe*) who were to  
moderate the General Conventions, and to examin, and Judge of all  
things belonging to the People: Their Decrees were to be look'd upon as  
Definitive, if the Matter was only of small Consequence; but if it was  
a Business of great Moment, they were to be remitted to the Censure of  
the People.

Tho' the Power of the Society of the nine *Archontes* was, by this  
means, much impair'd, yet he allotted them the same Offices as they had  
perform'd before, with the Addition of a more Solemn Institution, and a  
Reward for their good Services, after a severe Tryal before the *Areopagites*.  
For he suppos'd the Senate of the *Areopagites* to be Venerable and of un-  
tainted Integrity; and invested them with the Supreme Authority in the  
City, and with a Right to inspect into, and censure the Lives and Con-  
versations of the Citizens, especially those of the younger Form. He  
gave the general Conventions of the People power to make Peace and  
War, to send out Ambassadors and to naturalize Foreigners. The Place  
of their Meeting was either the *Forum*, or a Place of Judicature just by,  
call'd *Pnyx*; and sometimes the Theatre of *Bacchus*. The Set Time of  
sitting was three Days, to be renew'd every thirty five Days. The extra-  
ordinary Times were determin'd by Occasional Occurrences. There were  
several Courts for Law-Suits besides that of the *Areopagites*: The most  
remarkable was that of the *Ephetae*, instituted by *Demophoon* the Son of  
*Theseus*: The next was that of the *Heliastæ*, so call'd from sitting in an  
open Place expos'd to the Sun which consisted of five hundred, or one thou-  
sand, and sometimes fifteen hundred Members, chosen by Lot, all of  
them being at least thirty Years Old. There was likewise a Court of *Ar-  
biters* to whom two hundred and twenty Men chosen equally out of the  
*Tribes* were join'd. These took Cognizance of *Affairs* belonging to the  
*Tribes*. Besides a Court of thirty, and afterwards forty Members who  
went round the *Tribes*, and determin'd their *Differences* about small Sums  
of Money and trifling Concerns.

After *Solon* had made an End of his *Task*, he obtain'd Leave of the  
*Athenians* to Travel for ten Years, in order to avoid the Calumnies and  
Reproaches of the Citizens; thinking that in ten Years Time they would  
be tam'd and inur'd to the Laws: But upon his Departure, the Common-  
ality split into divers *Factions*. *Lycurgus* headed the *Faction* call'd *Pedæi*,  
*Megacles*, the Son of *Alcmaon*, the *Paralij*, and *Pisistratus*, the *Diacrij*;  
who were join'd by a Body of *Hirelings* that hated the Richer sort, tho'  
the Laws continued still in Force, yet the People were all in a Ferment,  
and eager for changing the Form of the *Republick*. For every *Party* made  
account, that by a *Revolution* they would advance themselves. When  
*Affairs* were at this *Pass*, *Solon* having travel'd through *Egypt*, *Lydia*  
(where he had a long Conference with *Cresus*) and several other Coun-  
tries, return'd Home, and finding the City in Confusion, endeavour'd to  
bring the *Factions* to an Accommodation by separate Interviews with their  
respective



respective Heads. *Pisistratus* seem'd to listen to his *Proposals*. He was a fair spoken Man, proud of assisting the Poor, moderate in Revenge, and one that gloryed in having such Qualities as Nature had denied him. *Solon* saw through the Humour and Deceit of the Man, and endeavour'd to reclaim him. But *Pisistratus* had insinuated himself so much into the Affections of the People, that he expected to be made King, and contemned all the Remonstrances that were offer'd him. At last he wounded his Body in two places, and expos'd himself thus wounded in a Chariot riding along the Streets, as if his Enemies had laid in wait, and treated him after that Manner. By this Stratagem, notwithstanding all *Solon's* Remonstrances to the contrary, he got the People to make a Law empowering him to hire and maintain fifty Men to guard his Person. By the means of these Guards he possess'd himself of the Castle, and usurp'd the Government.

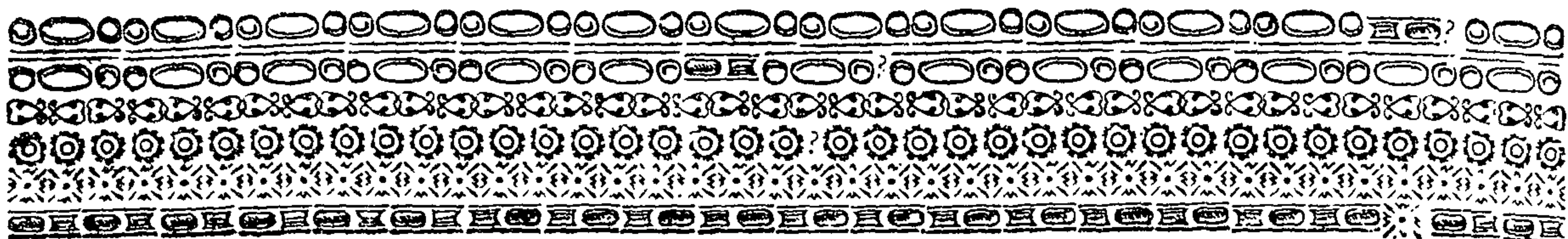
He sat at the Helm of Affairs three Years: At the End of which *Megacles* and *Lycurgus* conspir'd against him, and expel'd him. But afterwards the Conspirators disagreed among themselves; whereupon *Megacles* brought him back upon Condition he shou'd Marry his Daughter. The Stratagem by which he was restor'd was very Comical. There was a Strapping handsome young Woman in the Tribe call'd *Pæaniæa*, whose Name was *Phya*: She was four Cubits high. This Woman was set out with all sorts of Armour, and plac'd in a Coach in a very becoming Habit. In this Fashion she rode through the City with some Athenians going before her, and calling upon the People to give a welcome Reception to *Pisistratus*, whom the Goddess *Minerva* herself honour'd above all Men, and was then conducting to her own Palace. By this means the Report was spread among the Tribes, that *Pisistratus* was brought back by *Minerva*; and those who were in the Town, being perswaded that 'twas the Goddess herself, fell down before the Woman and receiv'd *Pisistratus*.

*Pisistratus* being thus restor'd, marry'd the Daughter of *Megacles* pursuant to his Promise. His Wife after some time complain'd that her Husband us'd her unkindly: Whereupon her Father was again incens'd against him, and brought things to such a pass that *Pisistratus* was forc'd to retire to *Eretria*, in the tenth Year after his Restoration to the Government of *Athens*. He continued in Exile other ten Years without attempting any thing: At the End of which, his Son *Hippias* push'd him on to attempt something. Accordingly he Hires some *Theban* and *Argivan* Troops, Masters *Marathon*, routs the *Athenians*, and possesses himself of *Athens*, without much Opposition. Being thus a second time restor'd to his Government he fortified himself in it, only by making Friends and Alliances; and by taking up his Enemies Sons as Hostages. The *Athenians* cou'd charge *Pisistratus* with nothing else but the Usurpation of the Government. They felt no other Yoke but that of thwarting their Humour, which could not brook a Monarchical Government, He exacted no Tribute but the *Tythes*, that the Kings us'd always to have.

He put none to Death; He banish'd none; He turn'd no Man out of his Estate. He left the Laws of *Solon*, and the order of the Magistracy unviolated; and although *Solon* was his Enemy, yet he honour'd and respected him in a distinguishing Manner. He was discreet and cautious, and did considerable Service to the Commonwealth of Learning. He was the first Institutor of the Grecian Library, and drew up the scatter'd Poems of *Homer* in the order in which they now appear. He left the Government to his Sons *Hippias* and

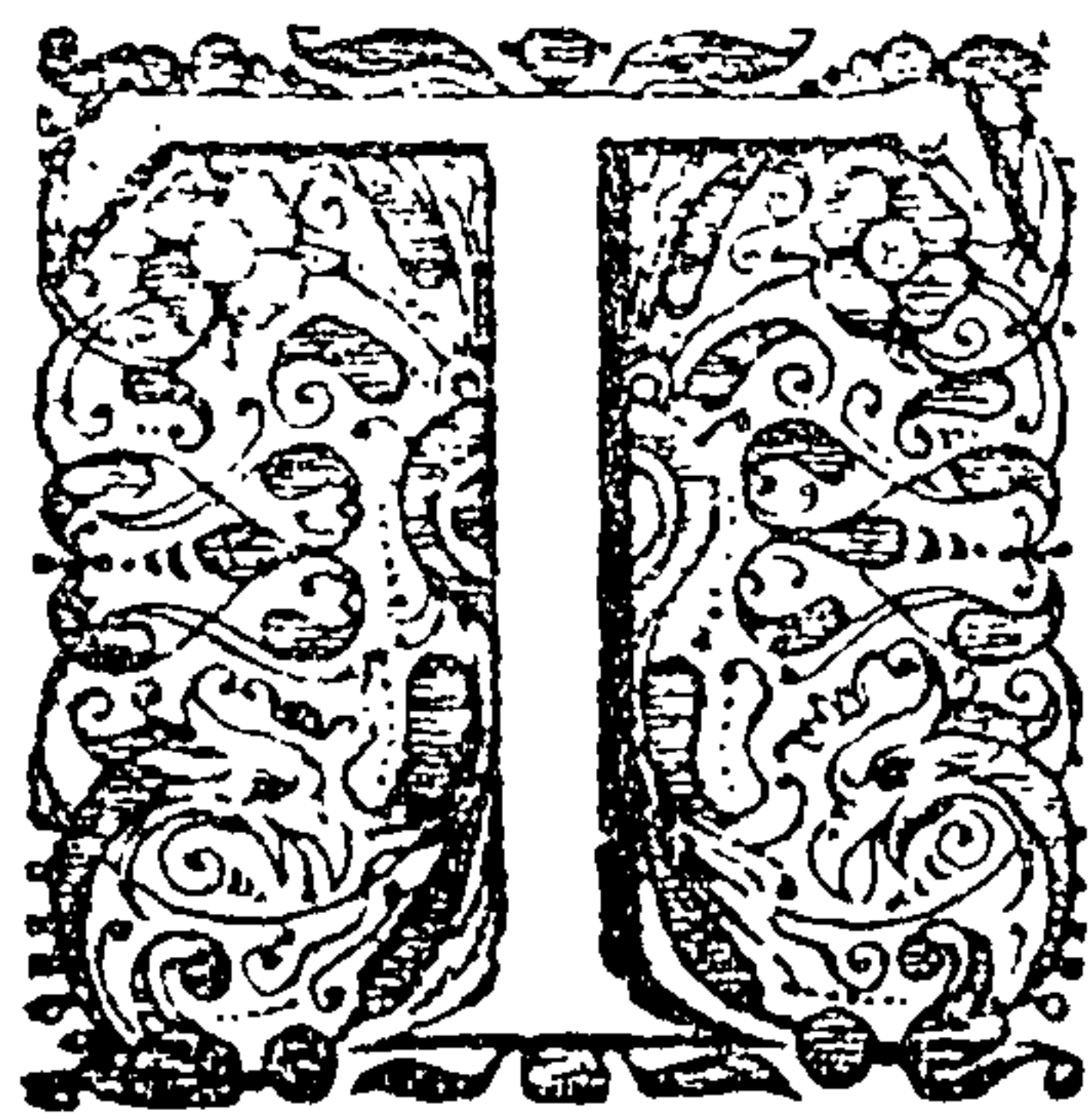


and *Hipparchus*, who us'd their Power with a great deal of Moderation, and manag'd the Administration of Affairs incomparably well, till *Hippias* being fretted by the Death of *Hipparchus*, lost his Government, which happen'd in the Reign of *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspes*.



## S E C T. V.

## *The Ancient State of the Kingdom and Republick of the Lacedemonians.*



**L**HIS Country was in the Begining call'd *Lelegis* and *Lelegia* from *Leleges*, who was the first considerable Native of it. Afterwards it was Christen'd *Lacedæmon* from *Lacedæmon* the Son of *Jupiter* and *Taygeta*. *Lacedæmon* Marry'd *Sparta* the Daughter of *Eurotas*, Grandson to *Miles*, and great Grandson to *Leleges*, whence the City was call'd *Sparta*, and the Citizens *Spartiatæ*, the Inhabitants of the Country still retaining the Name of *Lacedæmonij*. This City was built while *Crotopus* Reign'd at *Argi*, and *Amphytrion* at *Athens*, three hundred and four Years before the Destruction of *Troy*. *Lacedæmon* was follow'd by *Amyclas*, and he by *Agalus* who left the Kingdom to *Cynortas* his Brother. Next to *Cynortas* succeeded *Oebalus*, from whom the Country was call'd *Oebalia*, whence *Statius* uses *Oebalidæ-Fratres* for *Castor* and *Pollux*. *Oebalus* by his first Wife had *Hypocoon* and *Icarius*; by his second, namely *Gorgophone* the Daughter of *Perseus*, *Tyndareus*, who disputed with his Elder Brother for the Kingdom: *Hercules* assisted *Tyndareus*, kill'd *Hypocoon* with his ten Children, and gave *Tyndareus* the Kingdom for his Life only, securing the Reversion to his own Children.

*Tyndareus* by *Læda* the Daughter of *Thestius* King of *Ætolia* had *Castor* and *Pollux*, who were call'd *Dioscouri*, or *Jupiter's* Sons; and either by her, or some other Woman, a Daughter call'd *Helena*. *Menelaus* Marry'd *Helena*, who was ravish'd by *Theseus*, and afterwards by *Paris*. *Helena* bore to *Menelaus* *Hermione*, whom he first Marry'd to *Orestes* the Son of *Agamemnon*, and afterwards took her away from him, and gave her to *Pyrrius* the Son of *Achilles*. But *Orestes* slew his Rival, and so recover'd his Wife. *Menelaus* had two Sons by a Servant Maid, namely *Nicostratus* and *Megapenthes*; but, by reason of their spurious Birth, the *Lacedæmonians* gave the Kingdom to *Orestes*. *Tisamenus* the Son of *Orestes* succeeded him; but was driven out of his Kingdom by the *Heraclidæ*, as I intimated above. *Lacedæmon* fell by Lot to *Procles* and *Euristhenes* the Sons of *Aristodemus*, one of the *Heraclidæ*. *Procles* and *Euristhenes* being Twins, and it being doubt



doubtful which of them came first into the World, they reign'd jointly. They differ'd very much one with another, and the Emulation and Discord was transmitted to their Posterity, who were call'd *Euristhenidæ* and *Proclidæ*. *Agis* the Son of *Euristhenes* succeeded him, from whom his Posterity were call'd *Agidæ*. And *Sous* succeeded *Procles*. *Agis* turn'd the *Helotæ* out of the City which they inhabited, and was built by *Helius* the youngest Son of *Perseus*; whence they borrow'd the Name of *Helotæ*, and afterwards depriv'd them of their Liberty; because they refus'd to pay the Tribute which he requir'd. This famous Exploit of reducing the *Helotæ* to Bondage gave occasion to the ordinary way of calling the *Lacedæmonian* Slaves, *Helotæ*.

*Echestratus* the Son of *Agis* succeeded him, and *Eurypon* succeeded *Sous*. *Echestratus* was follow'd by *Labotas*, and *Eurypon* by *Prytanis*, in whose Reign the Discord between the *Lacedæmonians* and the *Argives* had its Rise. *Labotas* was follow'd by *Doryssus*, and he by *Egesilaus*. *Prytanis* left the Kingdom to his Son *Eunomus*. This Prince got, by his first Wife, *Polydectes*, and by his last, *Lycurgus*. From the Reign of *Eurypon*, (who it seems had Voluntarily quitted part of the Regal Prerogatives for to ingratiate himself with the People) there were a great many Distractions and Disorders in the Kingdom. During these Confusions, *Eunomus* offering to adjust some Differences, was run through with a Butcher's Knife and died, leaving the Kingdom to his eldest Son *Polydectes*. Not long after, *Polydectes* dy'd without Issue, and *Lycurgus* his second Brother succeeded him. But so soon as it was known that the Widow of *Polydectes* was with Child, *Lycurgus* protest'd, that, in case it prov'd a Boy, he would only Govern the Kingdom as Guardian to the Pupil during his Minority. In the mean while the Mother offer'd him to make away with the Child, in Case he kept the Kingdom and Marry'd Her. *Lycurgus*, however he Detested both the Mother and so barbarous a Fact, being apprehensive she wou'd be as good as her Word, Promis'd her to comply; but charg'd her not to meddle with the Child, only to leave the matter to his management, and that he would make it away so as that her Credit shou'd not suffer. But as soon as she was brought to Bed, it proving a Boy, *Lycurgus* took him away, and when he was carefully Nurs'd resign'd the Government and plac'd him upon the Throne.

The Royal Child was call'd *Charilaus*, alluding to the Joy the People conceiv'd upon the Integrity and Justice of *Lycurgus*. But this Virtue, which merited Love and praise, met with hatred and Invective. For the Child's Mother thinking herself affronted, together with her Relations, bespatter'd him with Calumnious Imputations, as if he had a Design upon the Child's Life. This he took very ill; and fearing the uncertainty of Events, resolv'd to travel till his Nephew came of Age, and begot an Heir to the Crown. He visited many Places and Countries, and acquir'd a great deal of Experience in his Travels. But the *Lacedæmonians* did often miss and call upon him in his Absence, all Things being in horrible Confusion: For the People not only refus'd Allegiance to their Kings, but wanted further to feed an insatiable Appetite for Liberty. *Lycurgus*, upon his Return, being very well acquainted with the Nature of their Distemper, like a Skilful Physician resolv'd first to evacuate, and purge the Body that was Stuff'd with Foul and Gross Humours, and then to enjoin a New Diet. However being sensible what Influence Religion had on Men's Minds, he went to *Del-*  
phi;



*phi* ; and it is given out, that he fetch'd from thence the *Rethra*, that is, (Laws dictated by the Gods, if we believe him) as a model for the Republick.

He propos'd that the Common-Wealth shou'd be govern'd by two Kings, as they had ever since the Reign of *Euristhenes* and *Procles* ; but that these Kings shou'd be devested of all Majestical Power, and incapable of doing any thing at Home, other than by the Orders and Directions of the Senate to which they were to be Subject in all things. Abroad indeed, the King was allow'd the Command of the Army. The Senate consisted of Elders sixty Years of Age or upwards, besides the Kings. This Senate he set up in Opposition to the Kings as being a Barrier between them and the People, in order to confine both within the Bounds of their Duty.

Whatever the Kings lost, the People got but little for Shifting two Masters for thirty : For there was no Appeal from the Convention of the Senate and Kings. All the Priviledge they had was to Enact such Things as the Kings and Elders propos'd. However in order to make this Form of Government lasting, there was a necessity of sinking the Occasions of Sedition. Now to compass this, it was proper to reduce their Estates to an equal Standard. With which View *Lycurgus* took away all their Gold and Silver, and coin'd Iron Money for them. He order'd the Citizens to feast together at their *Publick Meetings*, call'd *Andria*, *Phyditia* and *Sisyfitia*. He order'd the Boys to be educated and instructed upon the *publick Charge*, under the Hands of the *Pedonomij* and *Irenes* : And as they were to be exercis'd in Harsh and Dangerous *Adventures* ; so he order'd the Girls to be exercis'd in *Running*, *Wrestling*, *Throwing of Quoits* and *Darts*. In effect, he remov'd all the wonted *Tenderness* and *Softness* that us'd to attend the Education of Women.

In order to put a stop to Luxury and the overflowing of Vice, he prohibited any Man to Travel ; and all those who repair'd to *Lacedemon* without some good and useful Errand, were expell'd the City ; He would not have the Town surrounded by Walls, as taking the Valour and Watchfulness of the Citizens, who minded nothing but the good of their Country, to be the best Walls and security of the City. For he wou'd not allow any of them to meddle with Illiberal Arts. The *Helotæ*, or *Slaves* manur'd the Lands, and paid the Landlords the Stinted Rents which was but little : And having thus model'd the Republick, and Settled all their Affairs, he call'd together the Kings, Senate and People, told them he was going to consult the Oracle upon one of the greatest Points he had yet to manage, and oblig'd them by a Solemn Oath to keep up the same Form of Government till he return'd. Being come to *Delphi*, the Oracle made Answer, That his Laws were well concerted, and that the City wou'd continue its Glory so long as it shou'd hold to that Model. Whereupon, as *Plutarch* tells us, *Lycurgus* resolv'd never to free the Citizens from the Obligation of their Oath ; and to that End starv'd himself to Death.

Some say he died in *Crete*, and order'd his Body to be burnt, and the Ashes to be thrown into the Sea, to the End the *Spartans* shou'd not gather them together, and pretend to free themselves of their Oath by carrying them back to *Lacedemon*.

But however the Death of *Lycurgus* happen'd, or in what manner the *Lacedemonians* pretended to have freed themselves of the Obligation of their Oath, 'tis certain they did soon after his Death renew the War with the *Argives*, and took up Arms against the *Tégeatæ* a People of *Arcadia*, and the *Achaians*. The *Tégeatæ* took *Charilaus* their King, but quickly dismiss'd



dismiss'd him. This King was follow'd by his Son *Nicander*, and *Teleclus* his Colleague, by *Alcames*. In the thirtyfourth Year of *Nicander*, *Iphitus* King of *Elis* restor'd the *Olympick Games*, which were formerly celebrated by *Hercules*, *Pelops*, *Endymion*, *Neleus*, *Peliades*, *Lycurgus* and several others, and were so famous in *Antiquity*; all *Historians* and *Chronologers* from the Days of *Polibius* unto the Christian *Æra*, marking the date of all Events from such or such an *Olympiad*.

After the Return of the *Heraclidae*, *Oxylas* restor'd these Games, and got *Elis* as the *Prize* of his *Victory*: But afterwards they were forgot for three hundred and three Years, till *Iphitus*, in the Time of the Divisions of *Greece*, being of the Posterity of *Oxylas*, restor'd them, upon Advice from the Oracle. They were call'd *Olympick* from the City *Olympia*, so call'd because it was near Mount *Olympus*, and were celebrated in the Beginning of every fifth Year, at full Moon, in the Month *Hecatombæon*, a little before the *Summer Solstice*. They consisted of *Wrestling*, *Leaping*, *Running with Chariots*, *Throwing of Quoit*s and *Fencing with Sticks*, call'd by the Romans, *Cestus*; by the Greeks, Ποντας. From these five Exercises they were call'd Πενταθλοι, and *Quinquertiones*. But it is to be remark'd, that the Vulgar Computation of the *Olympiads* is not taken from the first *Olympiad* in the Days of *Iphitus*, but from the twenty eighth in which *Corebus* carry'd the *Prize*, seven hundred and seventy six Years before the Christian *Æra*.

In the End of the seventh *Olympiad*, there happen'd a great Alteration of Affairs in *Lacedæmon*, upon the Institution of the *Ephori*, about one hundred and thirty Years after the commencing of *Lycurgus* his Laws. The Number of the *Ephori* was five, to be chosen every Year out of the Commons. *Elatus* was the first that got this Office. Most Writers say, these Officers were created in the Reign of *Theopompus* Son to *Nicander* and Grandson to *Charilaus*. But we are at a Loss to know what was the End of their Institution, many alledge they were appointed for a Ballance to the Regal Power: But others say, they were created by the Kings themselves; when engag'd in an Expedition against the *Messenians*, which oblig'd them to nominate some of their Friends to manage Affairs in their Absence, and were call'd *Ephori* from inspecting the Publick Affairs. So that at first they seem'd to be only the Kings Officers, but afterwards gradually arrogated to themselves a Magistratical Power when no Body was aware of it. But whatever the End of their Institution was, 'tis certain their Power in a short time became Tyrannical, and put their Kings in Danger of their Lives.

In the second Year of the ninth *Olympiad*, the *Lacedæmonians* embark'd in an open War with the *Messenians*; tho' before the Institution of the *Ephori* they had Jealousies of one another. For the *Lacedæmonians* took it very ill that *Cresphontes* over-reach'd his Grandsons, and possess'd himself of the *Messenian* Ground: And their Anger was inflam'd by the Battle fought at *Diana's Temple* in the Confines of *Messene*, in which *Teleclus* Father to *Alcmenes* then King, was kill'd. At last their mutual hatred broke out into an open War, by means of an horrid piece of wickedness committed by one *Evæphrus* a *Lacedæmonian*. This Fellow endeavour'd to cheat *Polychares* the *Messenian* of some Oxen that were hired to him; and when he found the Design was discover'd, he desir'd his Son might be sent to receive their Price, and, when he came, kill'd him. *Polychares* was justly incens'd at the heinousness of this Action, and demanded the Criminal shou'd be deliver'd up in order to be punish'd: But



finding his Solicitations were not regarded, he slew every *Lacedæmonian* he met with. Whereupon the *Lacedæmonians* were exasperated, and demanded that *Polychares* shou'd be brought to condign Punishment. The *Messenians* were divided upon the Matter; but the Majority carried that *Polychares* shou'd be defended by Force of Arms if there was Occasion. When the *Lacedæmonians* heard this, they refus'd to remit the Case to the Judgment of the *Amphyctiones* or *Areopagites*, and prepar'd for an Expedition, engaging in a mutual Oath never to return till *Messene* was taken.

The War was carry'd on for several Years with Various Success. At last, the *Messenians*, whose Country was the Seat of the War, were hard put to it, and in fine resolv'd to abandon all the Towns that lay remote from the Sea, and to remove to the Mountain *Ithomes*. Upon this removal, there follow'd a Cessation of Arms on both sides for some Years: And in the Interval, the *Lacedæmonians* wag'd War with the *Argives*, occasion'd by a Dispute concerning *Thyrea*, which lay in the Confines of *Argos*. Both Parties agreed to leave the matter to the Decision of the *Amphyctiones*, and their sentence was, that the Controversy shou'd be decided by thirty Men on each side, adjudging the rightful Title to the Victors. And Indeed the Senate adjudg'd the Victory to the *Lacedæmonians*; but the *Argives* pretended they were Victors, and thereupon renew'd the War, but with small Success. About eight Years after the removing to *Ithomes*, the *Messenians* and *Lacedæmonians* return'd to their former War, and had several Engagements, with Various success. In the first Engagement the *Messenians* lost their King *Euphaes*, and chose *Aristodemus* for his Successor: In the second, being fortify'd by Auxiliary Troops from the *Arcadians*, *Argives* and *Sicyonians*, they had better Success, whereupon the *Lacedæmonians* seem'd to be doubtful of the Event, and both the one and the other sent to *Delphi*, to enquire into the Event of the War. The *Lacedæmonians* observ'd the Oracle's Orders, in doing what it gave for an Omen of the Victory; and at last besieg'd the frightened *Messenians*, and took the Mountain *Ithomes* in the end of the twenty eight Year of the War, in the first Year of the fourteenth *Olympiad*.

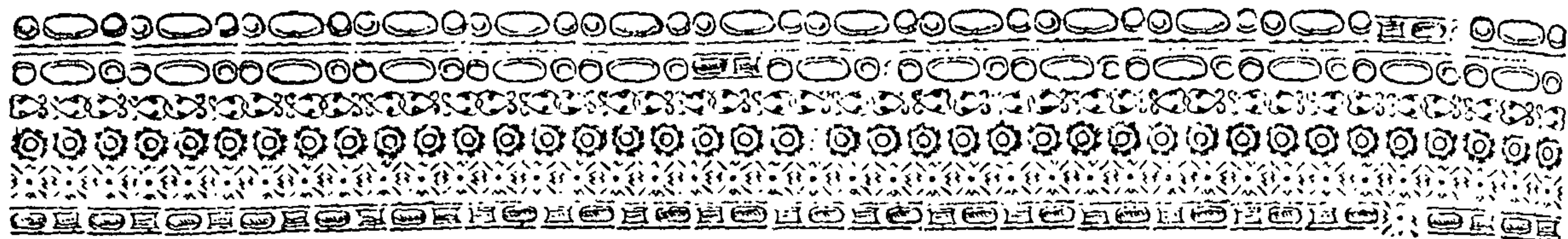
The Conquerors destroy'd *Ithomes*, and Master'd all the other Places of *Messene*, and oblig'd the *Messenians* to manure the Ground, and bring one half of the Produce every Year to *Lacedemon*. They bound them also by an Oath to remain ever true to them, and to appear in Mourning, both Men and Women, at the Funerals of the *Lacedæmonian* Kings. The *Lacedæmonians* being yet absent from home, and being under the Obligation of an Oath, never to return till they had reduc'd the *Messenians*, were in great pain concerning their future Off-spring, fearing the People shou'd revolt, during the absence of the Husbands from their Wives. To prevent this Evil they sent home, some Years before the Conquest of the *Messenians*, fifty of their stoutest young Men, who were so young at their setting out, that they were not engag'd in the Oath, and order'd them to lie promiscuously with the Women. From these sprung an Off-spring call'd *Parthenij*, who when they grew up were own'd by none, and had no Heritages allotted them; Whereupon they enter'd into a Conspiracy together with the Slaves or *Helotæ*: But the Conspiracy being discover'd they were expell'd, and as they wander'd in quest of a new seat, happen'd to fix in *Italy*, where they expell'd the *Barbarians* and *Cetians* that liv'd near *Tarentum*.



The *Messenians* were impatient of Bondage, and having no hopes that the *Lacedæmonian* Yoke wou'd become easier, thought it better for them to Dye in Battle than to depart the *Peloponesus*; In order hereunto they enter'd into a Conspiracy under the Conduct of *Aristomenes* a youth of noble Extraction. Accordingly when all things were got in readines for War, they revolted in the thirty ninth Year after the Overthrow of *Ithomes*. *Aristomenes* being a Man equally admir'd for the accomplishments of his Body and the Endowments of his Mind, govern'd the *Messenians* very happily, and routed the *Lacedæmonians* oftner than once; so that they began to entertain some Thoughts of Peace; but the Poet *Tyrtæus* unhing'd their Resolutions by advising them to make up the loss of their Men by Recruits of the *Helotæ*. For about a Year or two before, they had sent to consult the *Delphick* Oracle about the Event of the War; and the Goddess made answer, that a Counsellor must be sent for from Athens. The *Athenians* being desir'd to give them a Counsellor, were indeed unwilling to assist them, but dreaded to disobey the Oracle; Wherefore they sent them this *Tyrtæus* a Poet and Schoolmaster, lame in his Feet, and not over sound in his Intellectuals, who gave them however, that wholesome advice.

In the third Year of the War, the *Messenians* being deserted by the Auxiliary Troops of *Arcadia*, were almost cut off at a Place call'd *Fossa-Magna*: Then by *Aristomenes*'s advice, they abandon'd all their Towns, except *Pylus* and *Methene*; and retir'd to Mount *Ira*, where they were soon after block'd up: The Siege lasted ten Years; At length, *Aristomenes*, who had frequently gall'd the *Lacedæmonians* in sallying out upon them, was wounded; Whereupon the Guards were but carelessly kept, and the Enemy got access into *Ira*; but with a hot Engagement, which gave *Aristomenes* the Opportunity of getting off. Thus the War ended, and the slavery of the *Messenians* was compleated in the sixteenth Year of the War, the first Year of the twenty eight *Olympiad*. While the *Lacedæmonians* were pulling *Messene* to pieces, *Aristomenes* resolv'd to attack *Sparta*: But unfortunately discover'd the Design to the *Arcadians* and their King *Aristocrates*, who (as he had formerly betray'd them at *Fossa-Magna*) reveal'd it to the *Lacedæmonians*: By which means *Aristomenes* was indeed baulk'd; but *Aristocrates* was brought to condign punishment, being Ston'd to Death by his own Subjects. Next Spring several *Messenians* sail'd to Italy, being invited thither by *Anaxilaus* Tyrant of *Regium*, who was a *Messenian* Born. By the advice of this Man they besieg'd *Zancle* a City in *Sicily*, and having at last forc'd it to surrender, Christen'd it *Messena* or *Messina*, which Name it retains to this Day. *Aristomenes* gave his Virgin Daughters to the Men of the biggest Character in this City, and soon after went to *Rhodes* to his Son-in-Law *Demagetus* where he Dy'd. Such of the *Messenians* as had not the Courage to leave their Country, were added to the Number of the *Helotæ*, and oppress'd with the Highest Degree of slavery; not so much for being Enemies, as Rivals in Power; and indeed the War they wag'd was not carried on out of any Design to affect the *Lacedæmonian* Government, but to shew themselves a Gallant People. The *Lacedæmonian* Interest was considerably strengthen'd by the Addition of *Messene* to their Dominions. It continued two hundred Years in their Hands, till at length the Old Inhabitants return'd. But of the Ancient State of the *Lacedæmonians*, enough.





## S E C T. VI.

## The Ancient State of the Kingdom of Corinth.



**C**ORINTH, a City in the *Isthmus* of *Peloponnesus*, famous for its Situation, and the Valour of its Inhabitants; but much more for the *Christian Religion*, and the Epistles of *St. Paul*; was built by *Sisyphus*, under the Reign of *Cecrops* King of *Athens*, a little before *Deucalion's* Deluge.

*Sisyphus* was a Wise Man. He marry'd *Merope* the Daughter of *Atlas*, and begot *Glaucus*, *Ornytion*, *Therjander* and *Olmus*; and was the first that celebrated Games in the *Isthmus*. *Glaucus* begot *Bellerophon*, who, upon the Murder of a certain Man, fled to *Argi*, where he was entertain'd by the King *Prætus*; but having deny'd to Satisfie the Queen, who, it seems, fell in Love with him, was charg'd with offering Violence to her: Whereupon the King sent him away to *Lycia* to *Jolus* the Queen's Father with private Directions to make away with his Guest. Accordingly *Jolus* engag'd him with the Monster *Chimera*, whom he defeated and kill'd, being mounted on *Pegasus*, the Horse whom the Poets feign'd to have Wings, because of his Swiftnes. Then he sent him against the *Solyimi* and *Amazons* whom he likewise Conquer'd. At last several Stout young Fellows lay in Wait for him; but these he also flew. *Jolus* surpriz'd at the Greatness of his Exploits, and the Comeliness of his Person, turn'd his Revenge into Affection, gave him his Daughter *Philonoa* to Wife, and instituted him his Heir after his Death.

When *Bellerophon* fled from *Corinth*, *Thoas* the Son of *Ornytion* got the Kingdom, *Demophoon* succeeded him, and after him *Propodas*; whose two Sons *Doridas* and *Hyanthidas* reign'd Jointly, when *Aletes* the Son of *Hypotas*, Grandson to *Antiochus* and Great Grandson to *Hercules* Conquer'd *Corinth*.

It is not certain from whence this City was call'd *Corinth*; but thus much we know, that *Aletes* Christen'd it *Corinthus Jovis*, in honour of *Jupiter-Dodonaus*, whose Oracle (if we believe our Author) foretold his Accession to the Crown. Hence the Vulgar People took Occasion to Boast, that one *Corinthus* the Builder of their City was descended of *Jupiter*; and so proud of the Fancy were they, that all the rest of Greece ridicul'd them for it. After *Aletes*, the eldest Sons of the *Heraclide* reign'd for several Ages. The first was *Ixion*, the second, *Algelas*; the third, *Prumnus*;



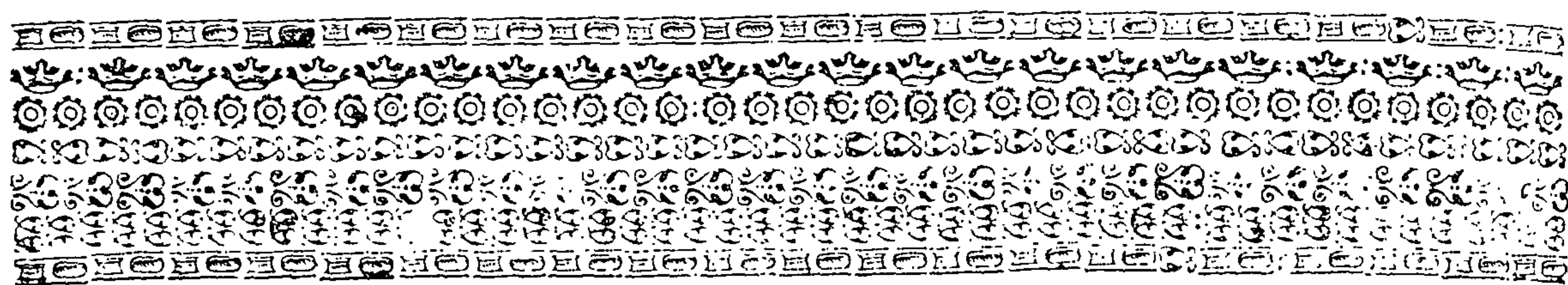
nis; the fourth, *Bacchis*; whose Posterity were call'd *Bacchiadae*. He was follow'd by eight Successors in order, the last of whom, *Antomenes*, had reign'd just one Year, when above two hundred *Bacchiadae* possess'd themselves of the Kingdom, and continued an *Aristocratical Government* for ninety Years, chusing every Year a *Prytanis* or *Superintendant* over the Rest. While the *Bacchiadae* were thus possess'd of the Government, the *Corinthians* were Lords of the Sea, and carry'd a Colony to *Sicily*, under the Conduct of *Archias*, who built the City *Siracusa*. About the same Time they sent another Colony to the Island *Phaeacus*, which built the City call'd *Corcyra*, from whence the Island deriv'd its Name.

The *Bacchiadae* admitted no Body else to share with them in the Government, or to join with them in Marriage; but one *Labada* slighted by her own Family, because she was *Lame*, marry'd *Eetion* Son to *Echeocrates*, who consulted the *Delphick Oracle* concerning his Issue, and receiv'd this Response: That he wou'd have a Son, who shou'd fall like a Stone upon the Oligarcy and Crush it to pieces. The *Bacchiadae* being aware of the Prophecy, resolv'd to make away with the Infant so soon as it was born; and accordingly sent ten of their Family to put the Design in Execution, under pretence of congratulating *Eetion* upon the Birth of his Son. But when they took the Child in their Arms, it smil'd so prettily upon them, that they were mov'd with Compassion, and went away without hurting it. Being gone as far as the Door they chid one another for their fond Compassion, and return'd to put the Murder in Execution; but the Mother overhearing their Conference, hid the Child under a Bushel, which in *Greek* is call'd *κυψελη*, whence the Child was nam'd *Cypselus*; and by this means saved his Life. When *Cypselus* came of Age, he blinded the People with his Bounty, and then invaded the Government. At first he establish'd himself by the Slaughter of a great many of the *Bacchiadae* and of the Citizens; but afterwards behav'd himself so *Civilly* and *Bountifully*, that he made use of no Guards. After thirty Years Reign he died, and his Son *Periander* succeeded, who was so Timorous that he kept a Guard of three hundred Men, and chose rather to be fear'd than belov'd. Authors tell us, that at first he demean'd himself pretty moderately, and gradually degenerated into a *Cruel* and *Barbarous Temper*. He married *Melissa* the Daughter of *Procles* or *Patrocles* King of *Epidaurus*, by whom he had two Sons *Cypselus* and *Lycophron*; but upon the Sollicitations of his Whores, kick'd her to Death when she was with Child.

*Lycophron* was mightily troubled at the Death of his Mother, and prov'd so disobedient to his Father, that he banish'd him to *Corcyra*. But after some Years *Periander* being worn out with Age, and *Cypselus* naturally unfit for Business, he call'd him Home again, and purchas'd his Return at no less Rate, than that of divesting himself of the Power, and exchanging Places of Residence with him. But after all, when every thing was agreed upon, the *Corcyreans* being resolv'd to undergo any Difficulties, rather than to admit *Periander* among them, made away with the young Prince. *Periander* took the Murder of his Son so much to Heart; (and with all, his not being able to Revenge it upon the *Corcyreans*,) that he sunk under it in the eightieth Year of his Age, and the fortieth of his Reign. He was reckon'd, by some, one of the seven Wise Men of *Greece*. He was a most cruel Tyrant, famous for his Skill in Military Affairs, as having pass'd all his Days in Arms; and redoubted for his Power at Sea, being furnish'd with the most Commodious Harbours both in the *Jonian* and *Egean* Seas.

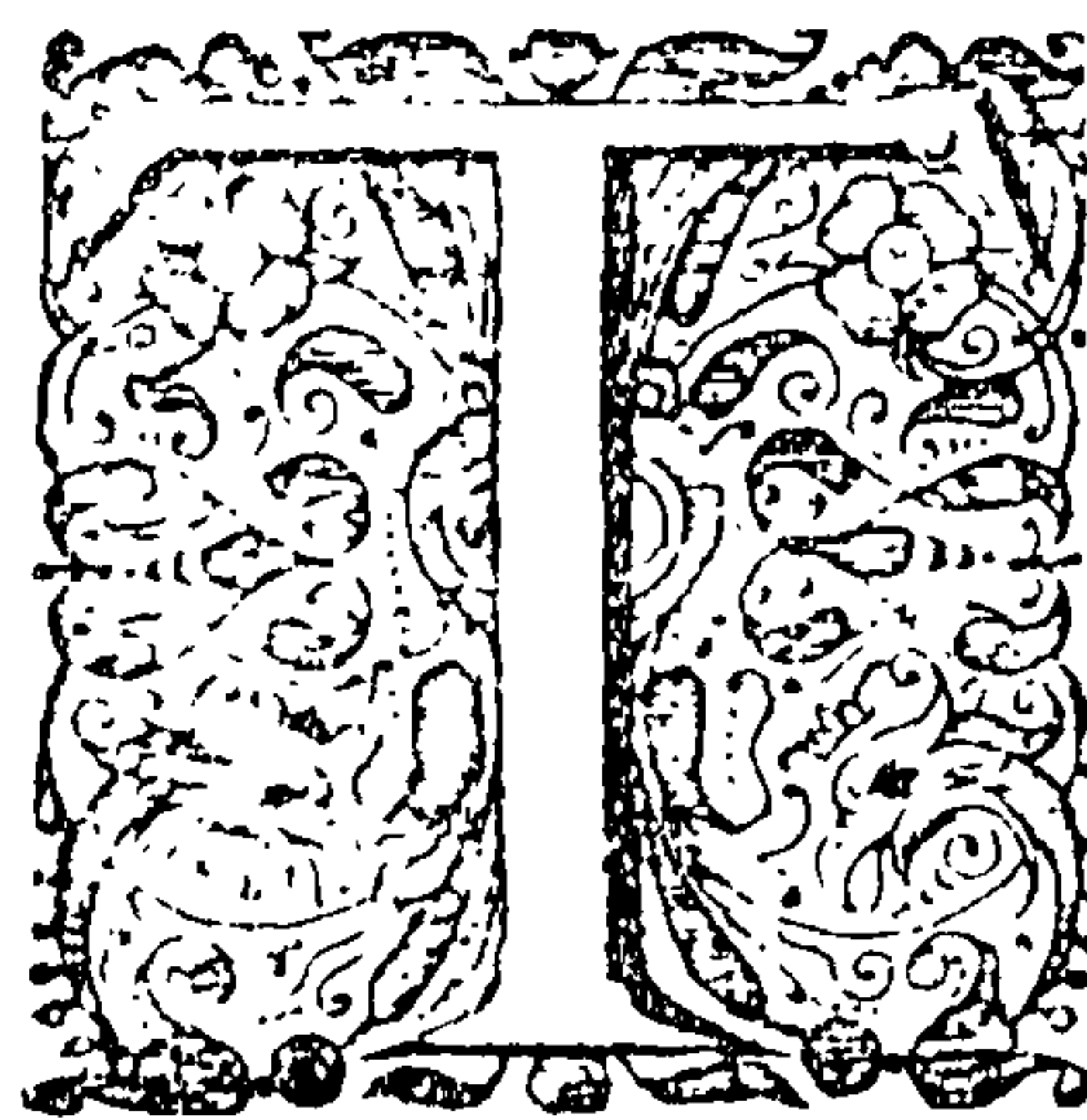


The *Tyranny* did not last much longer than *Periander*, for *Psammeticus*, Son to *Gordias* his Brother, or else to *Periander* his Kinsman, possess'd it only for three Years and six Months. After which time the Monarchy was abrogated, and a Popular Government erected, which continued as long as the Liberty of *Greece* it self. We are at a Loss to tell what was the particular Form of this *Republick*; but it is plain from *Plutarch*, that the Power of the *Commons* was not so Extensive as in that of *Syracusa*. However the Government was all over popular; for nothing of Importance was determin'd without the Consent of the People. The *Corinthians* were Mortal *Enemies* to Monarchy; upon which account they frequently Embark'd in Heavy Wars, and a *Corinthian* General was always look'd upon, as a fit Instrument for extirpating *Tyranny*.



## S E C T. VII.

## *The Ancient State of the Kingdom of Thebes.*



**T**HEBES was the Capital City of *Bæotia*, but by whom it was built is uncertain. *Cadmus* is said to have Reign'd there first, and next to him *Ogyges*, in whose Reign the Ancientest Deluge, Recorded by Pagan Historians, happen'd in *Greece*. From this Prince's Name the Kingdom was call'd *Ogygium* in the Reign of *Phoroneus* at *Argi*. At length *Cadmus* came to the Government, while *Corax* Reign'd at *Sicyon*, and *Danaus* at *Argi*, about three hundred and forty seven Years after the beginning of *Ogyges* his Reign. According to the *Greek* Historians, *Cadmus* was the Son of *Agenor* Brother to *Belus* and Cousin German to *Danaus* and *Egyptus*. Besides *Cadmus*, *Agenor* begat upon *Telphussa* two Sons, *Phanices* and *Clices*; and a Daughter call'd *Europa*. which is said to have given Name to *Europe*. This young Lady (if we believe the *Grecian* Authors) was Ravish'd and carry'd away by *Jupiter*. Whereupon *Agenor* commanded *Cadmus* and his Brethren to go in Quest of their Sister, charging them never to return till they had found her. *Cadmus* wander'd up and down along while, and when he despair'd of finding his Sister, came at last to *Bæotia*, where by Advice of the Oracle, he either built or restor'd *Thebes*, and added a Castle to it, which from him was call'd *Cadmea*. He Marry'd *Harmonia* the Daughter of *Mars* and *Venus*. He was the first that introduc'd Letters from *Phœnicia* to *Greece*, which were thence call'd *Phœnician*, and afterwards, *Pelasgian* because the *Pelasgi* were the first acquainted with them.

By



By *Harmonia*, *Cadmus* had one Son, namely *Polydorus*, and four Daughters, (*viz.*) *Semele*, *Ino*, *Antonoe* and *Agave*. *Semele* bore to *Jupiter*, *Dionysius* or *Bacchus*, the Inventor of Wine ; *Ino* bore to *Achamas* the Son of *Æolus*, and Grand-son to *Hellen*, *Acteon* ; whom his own Dogs devour'd ; and *Agave* bore *Pentheus* to *Eetion*. *Cadmus* being invited to Head the *Enchiloi* against the *Illyrians* left *Thebes* to *Polydorus*, conquer'd the *Illyrians*, and reign'd over them. Having establish'd himself in the Government he begot his Son *Illyrius*, who either gave that Name to the People, or else Deriv'd it from them. The Poets fabulously represented *Cadmus* and *Harmonia* as being at that time, Converted into *Snakes* ; because they laid aside their former Goodness, and took up a Barbarous Temper. *Polydorus* succeeded his Father *Cadmus*, and begat *Labdacus*, by *Nycteis* the Daughter of *Nycteus*, and at his Death, recommended his Son to the Care of his Father-in-Law. *Epopeus* King of *Sicyonia* Ravish'd *Antiope*, *Nycteus*'s other Daughter ; whereupon a War broke out, and both the Kings being wounded in Battle Died of their Wounds. So that *Lycus* the Brother of *Nycteus* became Guardian to *Labdacus*, who manag'd every thing so faithfully, that when *Labdacus* Dy'd, he committed the Education of his Son *Laius* to his Care. But *Lycus* having punish'd *Antiope* in pursuance of the Orders left by *Nycteus*, was kill'd in an Engagement with *Zethus* and *Amphion* her Sons ; So that *Thebes* was taken, and the Infant *Laius* escap'd very narrowly.

By this means *Amphion* and *Zethus* the Sons of *Antiope* Possess'd themselves of the Kingdom of *Thebes*. *Amphion* was so noted a Musician, that he is said to have been able by his Art to draw up Stones for the building of Towers. He Marry'd *Niobe* the Daughter of *Tantalus* and Sister to *Pelops*, who being the Mother of a numerous Issue, ruin'd herself by boasting that she was more fruitful than *Latona* herself. For, as the Fable has it, this, Vindictive counterfeit Goddess got *Apollo* to Destroy all her Male Children, and *Diana* to do the same to those of the other Sex ; Whereupon *Niobe* was so stupify'd with sorrow, that she was Fabulously represented, as being turn'd into a Stone. Afterwards *Amphion* and all his Family Dy'd of the Plague, and *Zethus* had no less Misfortunes ; for his own Wife did causally kill all his Sons. The loss of which brought him to his Grave. The two Brethren being thus cut off, the *Thebans* restor'd the Kingdom to *Laius* the Son of *Labdacus*. *Laius* Marry'd *Jocasta* the Daughter of *Menaceus*, who bore him a Son, whom he bound in Fetters, and expos'd on a Mountain, because the Oracle had Advertis'd him to beware of his Son. The Infant, whose Feet were mightily swell'd by the Fetters, (from whence he was call'd *Oedipus*,) was found by a Shepherd and carry'd to *Polybus* King of *Corinth*, who cur'd him, and brought him up. Long after this, *Laius* having heard some uncertain Rumours of his Son *Oedipus*, and *Oedipus* of his Father ; both went different ways at the same time to consult the Oracle ; and meeting accidentally in *Phocis*, *Laius* imperiously commanded *Oedipus* to get out of his way ; but *Oedipus*, who was not of a humour to bear an Affront, and not knowing the Person that offer'd it, kill'd his Father upon the Spot.

After the Death of *Laius*, *Creon* the Brother of *Jocasta*, possess'd himself of the Kingdom, and continu'd Possessor till *Oedipus* unfolded the Riddle of the famous *Sphinx*. The Story is, That this Monster had a Woman's Head and Face, with lower Parts resembling those of a Lion, and Wings besides. It us'd to Sit on Mount *Phiceon*, and propose Riddles to Strangers, which



which whoever could not unfold was Slain, and whoever could was to have *Jocasta* and her Kingdom as a Reward. The Riddle propos'd to *Oedipus* by the *Sphinx* was this: *What is it, that walks upon four, two, and three Feet?* *Oedipus* answer'd that it was Man, who in his Infancy Creeps upon all four; in his Youth stands strait, and walks on two Feet; and in his Old Age, leans upon a Staff as a third Foot. The *Sphinx* enrag'd to hear her Riddle unfolded, cast herself down the Rock and Dy'd. This is the usual account given of *Oedipus* and the *Sphinx*: But *Pausanias* says, she was a Bastard Daughter of *Laius*, and upon that Account some think that, by reason of her extraordinary Wisdom, she was empower'd to determin the Debates of those who were Competitors for the Kingdom, and punish with Death, such as were Convicted of Falsity. But be that as it will, it is Story'd that *Oedipus* Marry'd his Mother *Jocasta*, and obtain'd the Kingdom of *Thebes*. He had two Sons by her, namely *Eteocles* and *Polynices*. Soon after, the Parricide of his Father, and his Incest with his Mother came to Light; whereupon *Jocasta* hang'd herself, and *Oedipus* was banish'd to Athens to the Court of *Theseus*, where he Dy'd.

*Eteocles* the eldest of *Oedipus*'s Sons promis'd to share the Government with his Brother *Polynices*; but was not so good as his Word. *Adrastus* King of *Argos*, whose Daughter *Polynices* had marry'd, resolv'd to resent the Injury *Eteocles* did to his Brother, and accordingly drew together a Company of the most War-like Youths of his Country in order to attack *Thebes*. Seven great Captains engag'd themselves in this War, under the Obligation of an Oath to die or Conquer; among whom was *Amphiaras*, who marry'd *Eriphile* the Sister of *Adrastus*. After several doubtful Skirmishes it was agreed upon, that the two Brethren shou'd decide the Quarrel in a Duel, but to no purpose; for they kill'd one another, and a bloody Engagement ensued, in which most of *Adrastus* his Companions were cut off, he himself very narrowly escaping by the Swiftness of his Horse. But the *Thebans* lost so many Men, and purchas'd this Victory so dear, that *Victoria Cadmea* became a Proverb among them, to express a Victory dear bought. This *Theban* War happen'd twenty eight Years before the Destruction of *Troy*.

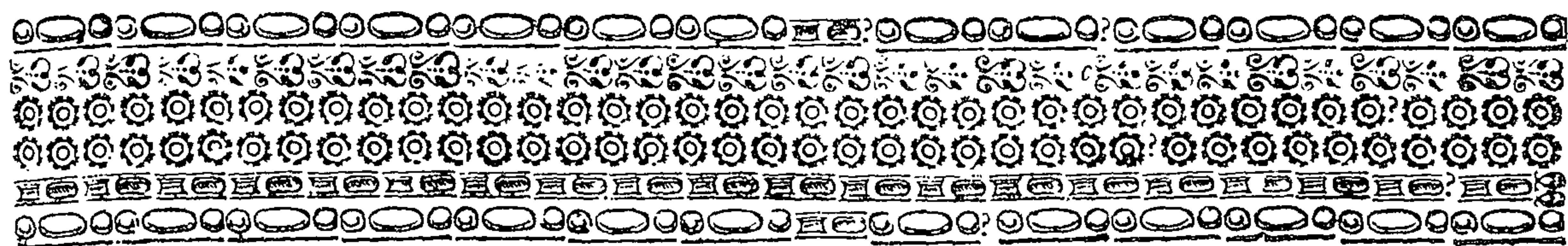
*Eteocles* left a young Son after him, nam'd *Laodamus*, and *Creon* *Jocasta*'s Brother undertook his Guardianship. *Creon* prohibited the Burial of the *Argives*, till *Theseus* obtain'd it by his Intreaty. About ten Years after the War, *Laodamus* came of Age; at which time the Off-Spring of those, who were kill'd in the War, and were call'd *Epigoni*, resolving to be reveng'd upon the *Thebans*, engag'd in another War, in which *Laodamus* and the City were taken. The *Epigoni* being Masters of the Town, set *Thersander* the Son of *Polynices* upon the Throne, who afterwards headed the *Beotians* in their Expedition against *Troy*, and was kill'd by *Telephus* in *Mysia*. *Tisamenus* his Son being then a Child, the *Beotians* chose *Peneleus* to be their Head, who died in an Engagement with *Euripylus* the Son of *Telephus*.

After the Death of *Peneleus*, *Tisamenus* the Son of *Thersander* reign'd in *Thebes*. *Antesion* his Son went over to the *Dorians*, and his Place was fill'd by *Damascithon* the Son of *Opheltas*, and Grandson to *Peneleus*; and he again was follow'd by *Ptolomy*. The last in the Roll was *Xanthus*, whom *Melanthus* the *Messenian* kill'd in a Duel; at which Time the War broke out between the *Thebans* and *Athenians*, upon the account of *Celeus* which lay in their Confines; of which elsewhere. This War happen'd fifty



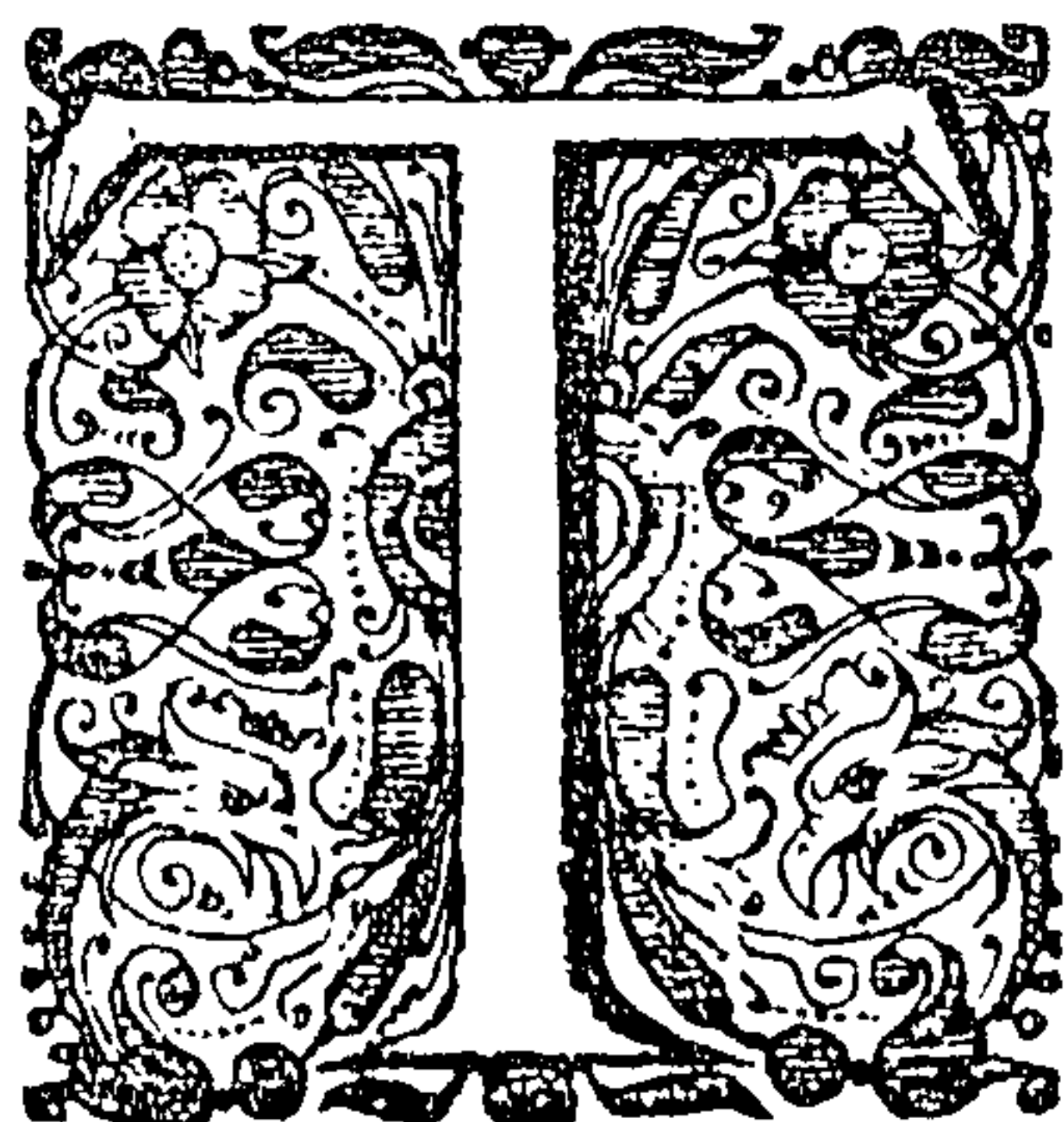
fifty six Years after the Destruction of *Troy*, twenty four Years before the Return of the *Heraclidæ*, fifty seven Years before the Death of *Codrus*, two hundred and fifty two Years before the Restoration of the *Olympick Games* by *Iphitus*.

After the Death of *Xanthus*, the *Thebans* together with the *Celenians* renounc'd *Monarchy*, preferring the Government of many to that of one, as *Pausanias* informs us; but what sort of *Republick*, whether an *Oligarchy* or a *Democracy* prevail'd among them, he no where Relates. However the *Thebans* continued in that State, till the *Persian Monarchy* began to Flourish.



## C H A P. II.

Of the *Grecian* Affairs, from the Battles of *Platea* and *Mycale* unto the End of the *Peloponnesian* War.



THE History of the *Peloponnesian* War is accurately written by *Thucydides* and *Xenophon*, two great Captains as well as Historians, who were Eye-Witnesses for the most part of what they wrote, and bore a great Share in the Transactions of those Times: And for as much as this War makes a great part of the *Greek History*, and was fam'd for the Greatness of the Captains which it produc'd; the Ruin and Desolation of *Kingdoms* occasion'd by it, and the Oceans of *Blood* spilt therein; It will be requisite to give an *Abstract* of it from the said *Authors*, as also of what gave Occasion to so Cruel and Bloody a War, which arm'd all *Greece*, and caus'd them to Sheath their Swords in one another's Breasts.

The *Persians* being expell'd *Europe*, both by *Sea* and *Land*, as we observ'd before, in the Days of *Xerxes*; and those few, who fled to the Promontory of *Mycale*, being quite cut off. *Leutychides* the *Lacedæmonian* Admiral of the *Grecian* Fleet return'd Home with the Confederate *Peloponnesians*. The *Athenians*, together with the *Jonians*, and those of the *Hellespont* besieg'd *Sestus*, and after they had taken it, return'd likewise Home. The *Athenians*, after the Defeat of *Mardonius*, brought back their *Wives* and *Children* to the City, and by the help of *Aristides* set up a *Democratical* Government. By the Advice of *Themistocles* they set about repairing of their Walls, which the *Lacedæmonians* warmly oppos'd; but were eluded by the Industry and Management of *Themistocles*. Soon after *Pausanias* the *Lacedæmonian*, who gain'd the Victory at *Platea*, made himself Master of several *Persian* Cities; but having an Eye upon the Kingdom of *Greece*, did privately enter into a League with *Xerxes* who gave him his Daughter to Wife, as a Reward of his Treachery. When he return'd being charg'd



charg'd with this *Treachery*, and with engaging the *Helotæ* in the same *Seditious Design*, he took Shelter in the Temple of *Minerva*, and the Gate being shut up, was starv'd to Death. At the same time *Themistocles*, whom the *Ingratitude* of the *Athenians* forc'd to retire to *Sparta*, and whom the *Lacedæmonians* through Envy of his parts banish'd their Country, died at the Court of *Artaxerxes-Longimanus*, who though *Themistocles* was the Man that contributed most to the *Ruin* of the *Persians* in *Greece*; yet for the Esteem he had of his Merit, allow'd him some Cities to maintain him in his Exile suitable to his Quality. Fives Years after his Banishment, *Aristides* died, whose *Integrity* and Love for his Country was such, that after his Death, there was not Estate enough left in his Family to maintain his Daughters, but the publick was oblig'd to take the Charge of them.

The meek Temper of *Aristides* together with the haughty Humour of *Pausanias*, occasion'd the transferring of the Administration of the *Grecian* Affairs, both by Sea and Land, from the *Lacedæmonians* to the *Athenians*: For the Allies of *Sparta* were so disoblig'd by the Pride of *Pausanias* that they all ran over to *Aristides*, who, under Pretence of making Reprisals upon *Xerxes*, impos'd Taxes on every City. Some were Order'd to fit out such a Number of Ships, and others to advance certain Sums of Money. The Island *Delos* was the Place appointed for the Treasury, the gathering and disposal of which was solely left to the *Athenians*. *Aristides* laid on a Tax of four hundred and sixty Talents, *Pericles* rais'd it to six hundred, but after his Death it was screw'd up to one thousand three hundred. The *Athenians* converted to their own use what was design'd for the Publick Good, and laid out that Money which was gather'd for the Common Benefit of all *Greece*, in opposing the Cities that had liberally contributed towards it, which gave no small occasion of Jealousy to the *Lacedæmonians*.

The *Athenians* being transported with their new Power, possess'd themselves of *Thassus*, as taking it ill that the People of that Island shou'd be Masters of Silver and Gold Mines. The *Thassians* desir'd Assistance of the *Lacedæmonians*, but they were so busy at Home, being engag'd with the *Helotæ*, who rebell'd and possess'd themselves of *Ithomes* after a great Earthquake, that they cou'd send them no succour: So that the People of *Thassus* were left to the Discretion of their Enemy. On the contrary, the *Lacedæmonians* having lost three thousand Men, and several Houses by the Earthquake, sought help from the *Athenians* in order to reduce the *Helotæ*. The *Athenians* sent them Auxiliary Forces: But the *Lacedæmonians* upon some sinister Construction sent them immediately Home again. This the *Athenians* look'd upon as a great Affront, and thereupon enter'd into a League with the *Argives* their Enemies. After a War, which lasted ten Years they expell'd their slaves the *Helotæ* out of *Ithomes*, and possess'd themselves of *Megara*, which had sided with the *Lacedæmonians* against the *Corinthians*. This was the Original of the Jealousies between the *Athenians* and *Spartans*, as also between the Former and the *Corinthians*. At the same time *Mycene* was taken and destroy'd by the *Argivans*, because the Citizens wou'd not bear their Yoke. The War between the *Athenians* and the *Corinthians*, upon the account of *Megara*, broke out again; but the *Athenians* came off with Victory. The *Athenians* likewise assisted the *Phocians* against the *Dorians* and *Lacedæmonians*, but were not so successful; and besides sustain'd several losses in *Egypt* and Elsewhere: So that they were forc'd to make Peace with the *Peloponnesians*, and to part with *Bœotia*, at the same time that the Island *Eubœa* revolted from them.

However,



However, *Pericles* the son of *Xanthippus*, recover'd *Eubæa* to them, and did so bribe the *Peloponnesian* Officers, that they return'd Home and left *Attica*, when they had just Invaded it. This Success dispos'd both Parties to a Peace of thirty Years. Soon after *Pericles* subdu'd the Island *Samos*, and the *Byzantins* were so apprehensive of the like Fate, that they surrender'd their City to the *Athenians*. In the second Year of the fifty fifth *Olympiad*, and in the twenty fifth of *Artaxerxes-Longimanus*, these Comotions happen'd, which not only occasion'd the *Corinthian* War, but laid the Foundation of the *Peloponnesian*. The People of *Corcyra* were a Colony of the *Corinthians*, and those of *Epidamnus* were another of *Corcyreans*. The *Epidamnians* were oppress'd with Seditions at Home, and finding the Men whom they had banish'd too hard for them, had recourse to the *Corcyreans* as their Patrons. But the *Corcyreans* either favour'd the Exiles, or were so taken up with other things, that they cou'd not mind their Concerns. The *Corinthians*, who always complain'd of the Haughtiness and Pride of their Colonies, embrac'd this Opportunity of Chastising them. At the same time the *Corcyreans* alledg'd, that the business of *Epidamnus* belong'd wholly to them, as being a Colony belonging to their Plantation ; and that the *Corinthians* did amiss in offering to meddle with them.

The Town being defended by a *Corinthian* Garrison was taken by the *Corcyreans*, who finding themselves not able to Cope with the *Corinthians*, enter'd into an Alliance with the *Athenians*. The *Athenians* indeed thought to find their Account in possessing themselves of the Island of *Corcyra*, from whence they might be able to annoy the *Peloponnesians*, with whom they saw a War unavoidable. The *Corcyreans* by the Assistance of the *Athenians* defeated the *Corinthians* in a Sea Fight. The *Athenians* fearing the *Corinthians* might prejudice them in *Thracia* by inveigling their Cities, endeavour'd to perswade the *Potidaæa*, a Colony of the *Corinthians* planted in the *Isthmus* of *Palenæ*, to reject the Magistrate that was sent every Year from *Corinth*, and to take an *Athenian* Garrison ; But the *Potidaæa*, refusing to comply with the motion, were block'd up by Sea and Land. This incens'd the *Corinthians*, and mov'd them to desire the Assistance of their Neighbours, who sent Ambassadors to *Lacedæmon* to arraign the *Athenians*. There a War was agreed and concluded upon, and an Embassy was sent to demand such things of the *Athenians*, as they knew wou'd never be granted. *Sthenelaidas* the *Ephorus* perswaded the *Lacedæmonians* to engage in this War ; and *Pericles* on the other Hand stirr'd up the *Athenians*, to the end the publick Business might Divert the People from inspecting the Accounts of the Money given for Publick uses, which he had laid out upon his private Concerns.

The *Lacedæmonians* Drew to their side the *Magarcans*, *Phocians*, *Locrians*, *Ambracians*, *Leucadians*, *Anactrians*, in a Word all the *Peloponnesus*, and the Kingdoms adjacent to it, except the *Argives*. On the other side, the *Athenians* were join'd by the People of *Chios*, *Lesbos*, *Platea*, *Messene*, *Neupaclim*, *Acarmania*, *Corcyra*, *Zacynthius*, the *Carians* towards the Sea side, with the *Dorians* their Neighbours, the *Jonians* who liv'd towards the *Hellefpont*, several *Thracian* Cities, and many other Towns, besides the Islands lying to the East between *Crete* and the *Peloponnesus*, together with all the *Cyclades*, except *Melus* and *Thera*.

This memorable War broke out in the forty eight Year of the Priesthood of *Chryses* the *Argivan* (for in those Days the Publick Account of



the Time was kept by the Years of the *Priestesse's* not by those of the *Olympiads* in the thirty third Year of the Reign of *Artaxerxes-Longimanus*; in the first Year of the eighty seventh *Olympiad*, as time was afterwards computed, *Æneſias* being *Ephorus* in *Sparta*, and *Euthodorus* *Archon* at *Athens*. It was call'd the *Peloponnesian War*, because that *Peninsula*, and the Kingdoms adjacent to it, were the chief Actors in it; tho' indeed all *Greece* was engag'd in the Quarrel. At this time *Athens* and *Sparta* abounded with great Captains, and Men renown'd for all sorts of Litterature; as *Æschylus* the *Tragedian*, *Iccus* the *Phylitian*, *Anaxagoras* of *Clazomene*, and *Pericles* his Disciple, two great Captains; *Panyasis* the Poet; *Pericles* the incomparable *Athenian General* and Orator, whose Harangues, says *Aristophanes*, were like *Thunder and Lightning* capable of setting all *Greece on Fire*: *Charondas* Law-giver to the *Thurij*, and *Zaleucus*, Law-giver to the *Locri*, both of them Disciples to *Pithagoras*; *Melissus*, *Protagoras*, *Empedocles*, *Herodotus Halicarnassensis* the Famous Historian; *Æuripides*, the *Tragedian*; *Sophocles*, the *Athenian General*; *Phrynicus* the *Comedian*, and *Pindarus* of *Thebes*, the Prince of *Lyrick Poets*. To proceed.

The *Lacedæmonians* and their *Confederates* being come in one Body to the *Isthmus*, invaded *Attica* under the Command of *Archidamus* King of *Lacedæmon*. The *Athenians*, in order to divert them, sent Forces to plunder the *Peloponnesus*; turn'd out the Inhabitants of *Ægina*, and put a Colony of their own into it. This hinder'd *Archidamus* of doing any thing Memorable the first Campaign. In the next, when he return'd to *Attica*, the Country was mightily Dispeopl'd by a horrible *Plague*, which Swept off an infinite Number, and among the rest *Pericles*. However *Potidæa* was surrender'd to the *Athenians* in the midst of all their Distress. The *Peloponnesians* continu'd to renew their Incurſions into *Attica* every Year, for six Years together; in which Space *Mitylane* was surrender'd to the *Athenians*, and *Platæa* to the *Lacedæmonians*.

In the sixth Year, while *Agis* the Son of *Archidamus* was yet in *Attica*, *Demosthenes* the *Athenian* sail'd towards *Sicily*, possess'd himself of *Pylus* a *Promontory* in *Laconia*, which he fortify'd and left a good Garrison in it. The *Lacedæmonians* were so much disturb'd at this Adventure, that they recall'd their Army from *Attica*, and bent all their Forces, both by Sea and Land, upon the Re-taking of *Pylus*. In the first place, to carry on the Attack more conveniently, they possess'd themselves of *Sphacteria*, an Island over-against the *Promontory*. But the *Athenian Navy* came up with them, and being much the Stronger, and more Numerous shatter'd the *Lacedæmonian Fleet* in the Harbour, and block'd up the Besiegers in the Isle of *Sphacteria*. The *Lacedæmonians* upon this Disaster, sent Ambassadors to *Athens* to treat of Peace, but one *Cleon* a Crafty Turbulent Fellow render'd their Embassy ineffectual; so that the besieg'd were oblig'd to surrender, and the *Athenians* resolv'd to put them all to the Sword, so soon as the *Lacedæmonians* invaded *Attica*. By this means the *Athenians* became so great, that they reject'd the most honourable Terms of Peace.

But soon after in assisting a Party of *Beotians*, who endeavour'd to introduce a Popular Government, they were Defeated at *Delos*; and again routed at *Amphipolis* a City in *Thrace*, where *Brasidas* the *Lacedæmonian* maul'd them Sadly. Then they began to repent of their Stiffness, and were not against Proposals of Peace. On the other Hand, the *Lacedæmonians*, who, however they made account to make good their Design by invading



invading *Attica*, saw notwithstanding through the Vanity of their Hopes, and always call'd to Mind the Defeat they got at the Isle of *Sphaëteria*, and how they were gall'd by the Excursions of the *Athenians* from *Pylus*, and the Island *Cithera*, whereof the *Athenians* were Masters and which lay just by *Laconia*; seem'd to be no less inclined thereunto. Besides they were possess'd with fears, lest *Argos*, a Potent City, that always hated the *Lacedæmonians*, shou'd now join with their Enemies, the Year of their Truce being then expir'd. But after all, they cou'd not tamely sit down with the Captivity of their Men, who were taken in the Isle. However a Peace was struck up for five Years; chiefly upon these Terms, that all Places and Prisoners taken on either side shou'd be given up, excepting a few Cities. But several Cities complain'd of the Injustice of this Peace, and instead of continuing their hatred to the *Athenians*, their known Enemies, Transfer'd it upon the *Lacedæmonians*, as being guilty of flaming Injustice. Above all, the *Corinthians* cried out, that *they were much injur'd, and join'd with the other Peloponnesians and the Argives; upon the Consideration that the Lacedæmonians had so lately struck up a Peace with the Athenians, and that it was to be fear'd the Athenians, might be brought to side with the Peloponnesians; which if they did, Corinth must unavoidably be undone.*

The *Lacedæmonians* deprecated the Resentment of the Cities; but in avoiding one Inconvenience, they fell into another. They endeavour'd to comply with all the Demands of the *Athenians*; but did nothing to the Purpose. For the Places which ought to be restor'd, were not in their Hands; but in those of their *Allies*. The *Athenians* charg'd them with many Failures upon this Score, and absolutely refus'd to give up *Pylas*. The *Lacedæmonians* were eager to have it; and in order thereunto, got *Panaetum* from the *Beotians* to be deliver'd to the *Athenians*, but upon these Terms, that *the Town shou'd be dismantled, and that the Lacedæmonians shou'd enter into an Alliance with the Beotians. So that the Athenians whom they endeavour'd so much to oblige, had two Reasons to be angry with them: First, for dismantling the Town, and then for making a League with the Beotians their Enemies, which was contrary to the Rules of a Close Alliance.*

While the angry *Athenians* continu'd in Suspence, whether they shou'd think of Peace or War; *Alcibiades* a Youth of Noble Descent and *Pericles's* Sister's Son push'd them on to War. On the other Side, the *Ephori* of *Sparta* were so far against Peace, that they rejected all Proposals of Accommodation. So that the *Athenians* enter'd into a Confederacy with the *Argives*, and some other *Peloponnesians*, and employ'd *Alcibiades* to make a Descent into the *Peloponnesus*. Next Summer the *Lacedæmonians* sent their King *Agis* against the *Argives*; and in the Winter check'd him severely for his ill Success: But he having obtain'd his Pardon for some oversights, march'd against them a second time, and retriev'd his Fame by Defeating them in an obstinate and bloody Battle. Notwithstanding this *Victory*, the *Lacedæmonians* still courted the Alliance of the *Argives*, and indeed a League was brought about by the Ministry of their Chief Noblemen, who were for an *Oligarchy*: But soon after, the People getting the upperhand, look'd upon it as Illegal, and renew'd their Alliance with the *Athenians*, who were under the same *Republican Government*. Hitherto the *Lacedæmonians* thought themselves at so low an Ebb, that, though the *Athenians* attack'd *Melus* their Colony (which they afterwards master'd and us'd very Cruelly) and made Incursions from *Pilus* into *Laconia*; yet they did not complain



complain of the Violation of the Treaty ; but only allow'd their Subjects underhand to plunder the *Athenians* when they cou'd conveniently do it. And these were the Transactions of the Summer of the tenth Year.

In the fourth Year of this War, the *Athenians*, though at the same time otherwise engag'd, had fitted out a Fleet for *Sicily* ; and gave out, as if they design'd to assist the *Leontini* against the *Syracusans* ; but the real Project was to make themselves Masters of the Isle, by Virtue of which they might gall *Greece* more sensibly. They continu'd now and then to send Forces thither and foment their *Divisions*. Whereupon *Hermocrates* the *Syracusan* endeavour'd to perswade his Country-men to lay aside all their Animosities, and joyn unanimously in a Vigorous Opposition to the *Athenians*, who carried on a *Design* against their Liberties. But all *Hermocrates's* Remonstrances cou'd not keep the Citizens of *Egesta* from falling by the Ears with those of *Selinus*, whom the *Syracusans* sided with. *Egesta* had enter'd into a Confederacy with the *Athenians*, and desir'd Auxiliary Troops from them, offering to pay the Troops themselves. The *Athenians*, who were fond of any Opportunity of enlarging their Dominions, sent some Deputies to *Egesta*, to enquire into the Riches and Strength of the City. The Deputies return'd and magnified their Riches beyond their *Due Extent* : Then the *Athenians* resolv'd to send them Auxiliary Troops under the Conduct of *Nicias*, *Alcibiades* and *Lamachus* ; and great Preparations were made for War.

When the Fleet was just ready to Sail, the Statues of *Hermes* or *Mercury*, which stood at the Gates of the City were main'd (in the Night-time) of their Arms. This mightily incens'd the People, and inflam'd their suspicion of *Alcibiades*, who was a Man of an aspiring Temper, and seem'd to dislike the popular Government. *Alcibiades* dreaded his Enemies shou'd get him Condemn'd in his absence ; and therefore desir'd a Tryal before his Departure. But those who knew his Interest with the Soldiers, had no mind to start the Quarrel before he set out. Yet when the Fleet came upon the *Sicilian* Coasts, was recall'd ; and being conscious to himself, and sensible of the danger, he fled to *Lacedemon* ; whereupon he was Condemn'd, and some of his Friends were put to Death. In the mean time, the *Lacedemonians* and *Corinthians* assisted *Selinus* and *Syracusa* ; and *Gylippus* the *Lacedemonian* prov'd a great Obstacle to the Projects of *Nicias*, who, indeed, was not wanting in serving his Country to the best of his power ; but being blam'd by *Demosthenes* for not attacking *Syracusa*, which was the Bulwark of the War, was influenc'd by his Authority to attack *Epipolæ*, a very inaccessible Place ; and when he had done his utmost was oblig'd to retire with Loss.

*Demosthenes*, being cast down by this Disaster, had a mind to be gone. But *Nicias* knowing the humour of the People, who always Measure things by the Event, was unwilling to put his Life and Fortune in so much Danger ; But afterwards, upon the News that *Gylippus* advanc'd with fresh Troops, he chang'd his Mind, and was just making ready to get off when the Moon happen'd to be Eclips'd. *Nicias* was so sway'd by Superstition that he wou'd not stir till the twenty seventh Day : Upon the glad News of their delay the *Syracusans* resolv'd to cut off their Retreat, or at least to oblige them to take another Way. First of all they attack'd their Camp, and the next Day forc'd them to an Engagement both by Sea and Land. And *Eurymedon* *Nicias's* Collegue Dy'd in a very sharp Engagement in the Mouth of the Harbour.



The *Syracusans* having determin'd to secure the Mouth of the Harbour with a Wall in order to prevent the Retreat of their Enemies ; The *Athenians* resolv'd upon another Sea Engagement, and in case it prov'd unfortunate, design'd to burn their Ships, and March off by Land to *Eesta*. In pursuance of this Resolution they endeavour'd to join their Camp to their Fleet, but the *Syracusans* oppos'd the Enterprize so vigorously, that the two Navies fell in with one another, and had a very bloody Engagement. After the Engagement, the Land Forces refus'd to board the Ships, and therefore, there was a necessity of pushing on a Land Fight, which, if put in Execution, wou'd have done better ; but *Hermocrates* the *Syracusan* manag'd them so dexterously that they linger'd till the third Day. Then as they endeavour'd to Force their way, their Flight presented the World with a memorable spectacle of Howlings, Sorrow, Misery and the uncertainty of human Affairs. *Gylippus* took one hundred and thirty of their Ships in the Harbour, and oblig'd the rest to strike, who had fled and divided themselves into two Squadrons. In one Day one thousand eight hundred of them were kill'd, and seven hundred taken and Condemn'd to the Mines, who were afterwards Sold. *Nicias* and *Demosthenes* either Dy'd in Prison or laid Violent Hands on themselves. And this was the upshot of the Ambition of the Athenians, who by grasping at all, were mortify'd with the Loss of almost every thing.

The more the *Athenians* were mortify'd in seeing themselves baulk'd, the greater was the Joy and Mirth of the Rest of the *Greeks*. Such of them as wag'd War with the *Athenians* seem'd to triumph over their most cruel and haughty Enemies, and such as serv'd under them were glad to be Rid of the Yoke of their Bondage. *Alcibiades* ; then in Exile, was busy in projecting against his Country ; but soon after he became suspected to the *Peloponnesians*, and *Agis* the King, whose Wife he had Debauch'd, gave Orders to *Astiochus* his General to kill him. Whereupon he fled to *Tissaphernes*, whom he alienated from the *Peloponnesians* by suggesting such things to him, as were very much to the Interest of the Persian King his Master. For he open'd to him the whole Case of the *Lacedemonians*, and perswaded him to change the Soldier's Pay from a *Drachma* to three *Oboli* ; and told him he ought to stop even part of that, in order to make them the more obedient, it being certain that Poverty is the best Means of keeping Men humble. He also told him, that he ought by all means to take care that the *Athenians* shou'd not be crush'd by the *Lacedemonians*, that it was his Interest to keep these two Cities upon a Ballance, in order to waste one another ; that he ought rather to have most regard for the *Athenians*, who contented themselves with being Masters of the Sea, without extending their Conquests further ; Whereas the Ambition of the *Lacedemonians* was boundless insomuch that they made Account of freeing all the *Grecians* from the Persian Yoke.

*Tissaphernes* look'd upon these Suggestions as the Dictates of an Oracle, and took all his Measures accordingly : So that he never perform'd his promise of Joining his Fleet with that of the *Grecians*, and cut the Sinews of their Forces by stopping their Pay. *Alcibiades* thought of nothing now, but returning to his own Country, and wrote some Letters to that Effect ; but insinuated that he wou'd not willingly return, unless the Popular Government were abolish'd. The Nobility indeed got this done for him ; but matters were not yet ripe, by reason that *Tissaphernes* did not continue his Friend. The *Athenian* Army was then at *Samos*, and was mightily displeas'd with the Change of the Form of Government. However, *Alcibiades*



*des* made his Address to them, and they recall'd him. Now the Heats between the Army and the four hundred Oligarchical Men, to whom the Administration of Affairs was committed upon the Dissolution of the Popular Government, came to that height, that the *Athenians* were again beaten at Sea, and wou'd certainly have been quite undone, had they been engag'd with any other Enemies than the *Lacedæmonians*, who were always lazy and backward for Action. Upon this disaster, they endeavour'd to make Friends with the Army; and to that end, transferr'd the Government from four hundred Men to five thousand, and Enacted such Laws, that *Thucydides* says, *The Republic of Athens was then in its best Constitution, as being equally remov'd from the Imposition of a Few, and the boundless Liberty of a Multitude.* Affairs being thus put in order, they began to chear up, and entertain better Hopes. In the mean time *Alcibiades* went to Visit *Tissaphernes*, and was detain'd Prisoner by him, thinking by so doing to oblige the King of *Persia*, who, he fear'd, might be wrought upon by the querulous Requests of the *Lacedæmonians*.

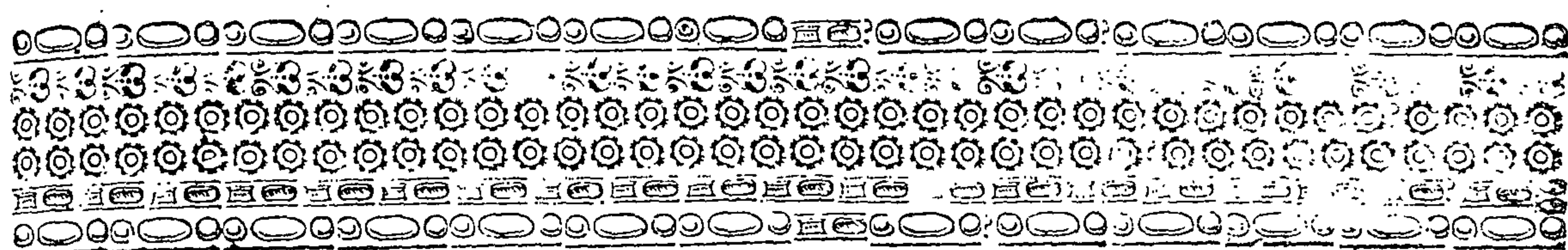
However *Alcibiades* escap'd out of Prison and advancing to *Cyzicum*, Defeated *Mindarus* the *Lacedæmonian* General both by Sea and Land, and took all the *Peloponnesian* Ships, insomuch that Letters were intercepted, directed for *Lacedæmon*, which gave an Account of the Case in this *Lacæmonick* Stile: *Al's gone: Mindarus is lost; the Soldiers are starv'd: We cannot tell what to do.* Upon this Turn of Affairs, the *Lacedæmonians* sent Ambassadors to *Athens* with Proposals of Peace. But *Cleophon* perswaded the *Athenians* not to give them any Audience; so unavoidable was the Fate (to speak with our Pagan Authors) which attended the *Athenians*, as we shall see by and by. For a short time indeed, Things went pretty even with them; and when *Alcibiades* return'd they treated him very honourably, and made him their General. But soon after, the Temerity of the Mob was so great, that they degraded him, because the Admiral of the Fleet had fought unfortunately in his Absence; and nominated ten Generals for the Land and Naval Forces. These ten Defeated *Callicratides* the *Lacedæmonian*, *Lysander's* Successor, in a Sea Engagement; but for as much as some of the Soldiers were lost, instead of being invested with the Honours due to their Merit, they were Sentenc'd to Die, and six of them of whom *Pericles*, the Son of the Great *Pericles* was one, were Beheaded.

Then the *Peloponnesians* perceiv'd, their Affairs were in a tottering Condition, and therefore resolv'd to take other Measures: Pursuant to which they determin'd to make *Lysander* Admiral. By the Laws of the Country no Man cou'd be twice Admiral, and *Lysander* was once so before: But, in order to comply in some sort with them, they employ'd him as Vice-Admiral under one *Alcib.* *Lysander* fell in with the *Athenian* Fleet in the River *Ægospotamus*, which lay there securely as they thought, but out of order; and of one hundred and thirty Ships none escap'd but eight; and of three thousand Soldiers all were kill'd bating one call'd *Adimantus*. Then *Lysander* pursuing his Fortune, clear'd all the Cities of the *Athenian* Garisons, and sent them all Home to *Athens*, to the End that the City being crowded with People, might be incapable to endure a long Siege. He also dissolv'd the *Democratical Government*, and introduc'd *Oligarchy* every where, insomuch that he got his own Friends to be invested with Power in all the Cities, and by that means obtain'd a sort of *Tyranny* over *Greece*. At last he brought his Forces from *Lacedæmon*, and invested *Athens* by Sea and Land, which after holding out to the last Extremity, surrender'd  
upon



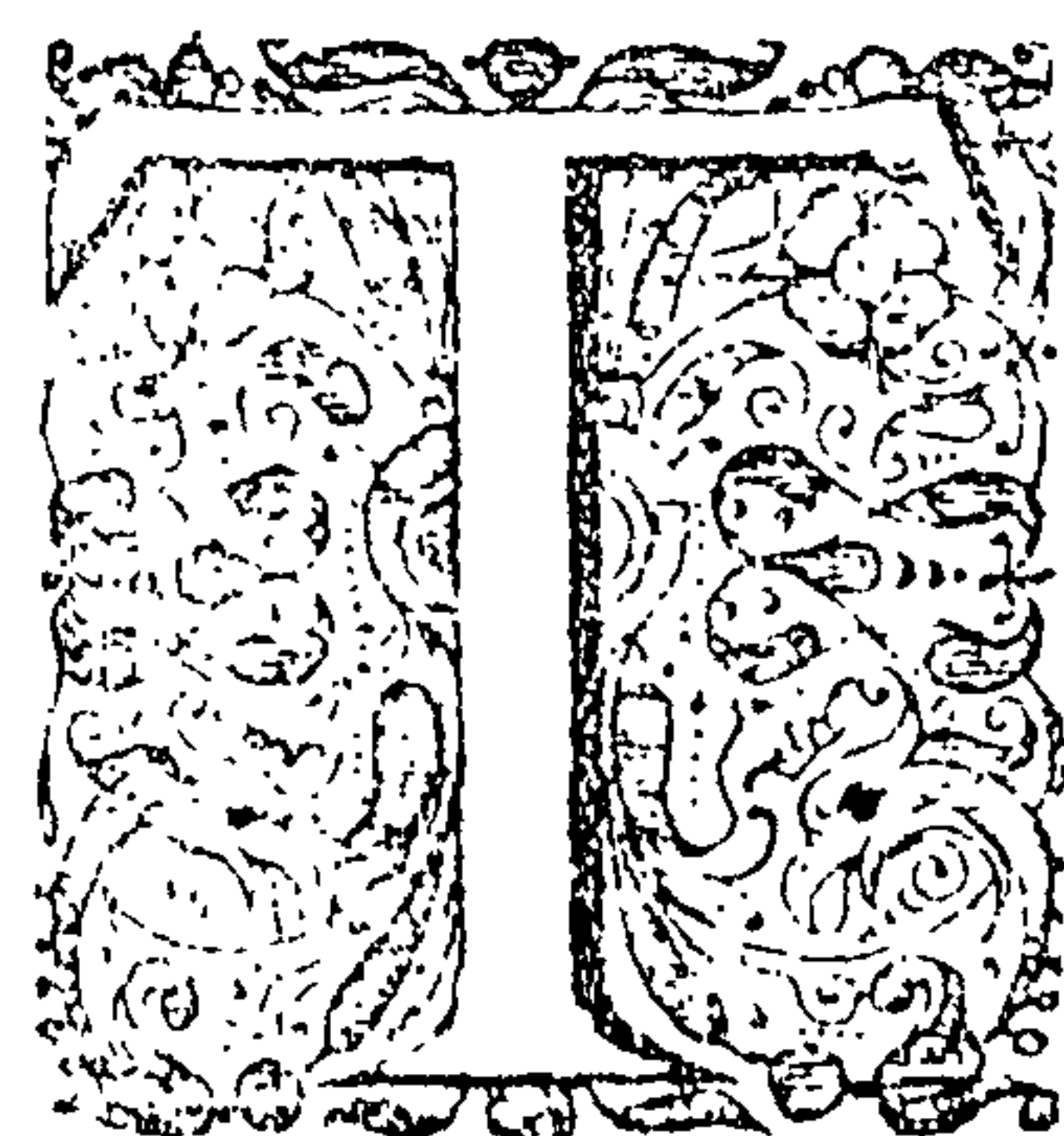
upon these Terms : That the Fortifications of the Haven, and the long Wall call'd Pireum shou'd be Demolish'd ; That all their Ships, bating twelve, be given up ; That all their Exiles be receiv'd into the City, and restor'd to their Estates and Fortunes ; That the Athenians shou'd stand and fall with the Lacedæmonians, and make Peace and War as they did.

These Articles being agreed upon, *Lysander* possess'd himself of the Ships and the Wall. The Ships he set on Fire, and the Wall he threw down with Huzza's and Sound of Trumpet. Thus the twenty seventh Year, and the *Peloponesian War*, which took off more *Grecian Captains*, than almost all the preceding Wars, came to an End ; in the fourth Year of the ninety third Olympiad, in the nineteenth Year of *Darius Nothus*.



C H A P. III.

Of the thirty Tyrants of Athens, and the Theban War.



THE next Year after the *Peloponesian War*, in which the ninety fourth Olympiad was Celebrated, *Crocias* the *Theſſalian* being Victor, when *Eudicus* was *Ephorus* in *Sparta*, and *Pythodorus* Archon at *Athens* ; thirty Men were chosen to make Laws, and manage the Affairs of the Republick. These thirty Men having got the Power into their Hands, by the Assistance of *Lysander*, thought of nothing but establishing their Power, and introducing a more Monstrous Tyranny than was ever heard of elsewhere. Blood and Rapine shin'd through every part of it : Citizens were pitch'd upon, to be Victims to their Avarice, for no other Reason, but that they had good Estates, and plentiful Fortunes ; and even *Theramnes* one of their own Number was sentenc'd to drink a Draught of Hemlock, by a Judgment which was so much the more unjust, because it was publick. His Crime was, that he hated their Monstrous Wickedness, and made it his Business to stop the mischievous Effects of the same.

A great part of the Citizens went off and banish'd themselves ; and their Estates were declar'd to be forfeited to the Tyrant's Exchequer. Among those Citizens, there was one *Thrasybulus*, who at the Head of thirty Men first possess'd himself of *Phyle* a Castle in *Attica*, and afterwards, being strengthen'd by the Number of Men that fled thither, master'd the Haven, whereupon those who remain'd in the City, wrested the Government out of the Hands of the Tyrants. The Tyrants sought Assistance from the *Lacedæmonians* and *Lysander* came immediately and besieg'd the *Piræum*. But his Treatment of the Exiles was so hard, that *Pausanias* the King, who envy'd



*Lyfander* the Glory of conquering *Athens* a second time, render'd all his Attempts ineffectual; and by this means restor'd *Athens* to its former Condition. He banish'd the Tyrants, put the Government into the Hands of the People, and caused a general Indemnity to be agreed upon by universal Consent; which according to *Xenophon's* Remark, was the great and only Bond of Peace and Concord, and was admirably well calculated for those Times.

This was the Exit of the Tyranny of the thirty Men, who being prefer'd to Sit at the Helm by the Senate's Decree, put one thousand four hundred Citizens to Death, and banish'd more than five thousand. Neither did their fury confine itself to the Town, but reach'd even to *Asia*, and brought Destruction upon *Alcibiades* the Hope of his Country. For they fear'd that one Day he might come and rescue *Athens*, and cou'd promise themselves no security while he liv'd, and with that View intreated the *Lacedaemonians* by any means to take him out of the Way. The *Lacedaemonians* oblig'd *Pharanabazus* to perpetrate the Murder, either because they dreaded him as well as the Tyrants, or out of a Design to oblige King *Agis*, whose Wife he had kiss'd. *Alcibiades* Died in the flower of his Age. He was a Man of a wonderful Genius, and handsome to the last degree. *Socrates* lov'd him with a true platonick love; but it seems it produc'd no great Effects, since it is manifest, *Alcibiades* was equally Superiour to all Men, both in Vice and Virtue. About this Time *Cyrus* the Brother of *Artaxerxes* rais'd a great Army, rebell'd against his Brother, as we observ'd before in the Life of *Artaxerxes*, and implor'd the assistance of the *Lacedaemonians* against *Tissaphernes*. Accordingly they sent *Thimbrores* into *Asia*; and when they heard, that a great Fleet was fitting out in *Phaenicia*, *Agessilaus* their King, Brother to *Agis*, who Dy'd a little before, went himself upon the Expedition. As soon as *Agessilaus* arriv'd in *Asia*, he found that *Lyfander's* dignity and the Glory of his memorable Actions Ecclips'd him; upon which account he was always against his Motions, in order to lessen his Interest, and at last remov'd him to the administration of other things at a great distance. However he carry'd every thing before him, so that he seem'd to stand fair for the Empire of the East: Then the *Persians*, finding there was a necessity of getting him out of *Asia*, or that else they shou'd be undone, brib'd the *Grecian* Cities with Gold to declare War against the *Lacedaemonians*, in order to constrain him to return to the relief of his Country.

The *Thebans* were the first that attack'd the *Lacedaemonians*, and *Pausanias* the other King (for the *Lacedaemonians* had of old always two Kings at once) and *Lyfander* were sent to make Head against them. *Lyfander* brought off *Orchomenum* from their Confederacy with the *Thebans*, and afterward Dy'd at the Siege of *Haliartum*. He was a Cruel cunning Man, who always promoted his Design Right or Wrong, and us'd to say, that, when the Cast-Coats of a Lion wou'd not serve, the Skin of a Fox shou'd be patch'd upon them. But *Pausanias* was Condemn'd for not sending him Relief according to his Promise, and for several other Crimes, with which he was Charg'd; Whereupon he fled to *Tegea*, where he Sicken'd and Dy'd. However the *Ephori*, and *Aristodemus* Guardian to the young King *Agessipolis* drew together fifteen thousand Men, and routed the *Thebans* and their Confederates consisting of twenty thousand, with the loss only of eight Men.

*Agessilaus* being by this time return'd to *Greece*, routed again the Confederates in the Bloody Battle of *Cheronea*, where the *Boeotians*, the *Athenians*,



nians, *Argivans*, *Corinthians*, *Eubceans*, *Ænians* and both the *Locrians* were engag'd. But *Conon* the *Athenian* Admiral, who promoted the Interest of his Country in many things, by the Assistance of the *Persians* join'd with *Pharnabazus*, and these two jointly routed the *Lacedæmonians* in a Sea-Fight; This Battle did so mortifie the *Lacedæmonians* that they thought fit to propole a Peace, which, after several Interviews, was at Length obtain'd, and was call'd *Pax Antalcidæ* from *Antalcidas* the Ambassador that concerted it.

The *Lacedæmonians* having thus obtain'd Peace, became very proud, and pretended to call some of their Neighbours to Account for favouring their Enemies. They oblig'd the Inhabitants of *Mantineia* to throw down the Walls of their City, and retire to their Villages; constrain'd the *Phliasij* to recal their own Exiles, and declar'd War against the *Olynthians*, being mov'd thereunto by the complaints of the Inhabitants of *Acanthus* and *Apolloniatis*, who arraign'd them of a Conspiracy with the *Athenians* and *Thebans*. At this time the *Olynthians* were justly much redoubted: For they had Master'd a great part of *Macedonia* and possels'd themselves of *Pelia* the Metropolis thereof; And upon the same Pretence that the *Lacedæmonians* had formerly made use of, of rescuing the *Grecian* Cities, had cutted King *Amyntas* of almost his whole Dominions. These the *Lacedæmonians* quell'd under the Conduct of *Agésilas*, took *Olynthus* their Metropolis, and subdued the *Phliasij*. But at the same time that every thing seem'd to go according to their wishes, The *Thebans*, whom they had banish'd and reduc'd to the last extremity, by the two late Battles, recover'd *Thebes*, and, by a Stratagem of theirs, *Sphodrias* the *Lacedæmonian*, was induc'd to invade *Attica*; and *Agésilas*, upon the Solicitation of his Son *Archidamus*, countenanc'd the Invasion: Whereupon the Project of the banish'd *Thebans* took Effect, that is, the *Athenians* were so incens'd that they join'd with the *Thebans*, and carry'd the Victory by Sea and Land more than once. *Agésilas* march'd twice against the *Boetians*, but came off with Loss, as well as several others after Him. By this means the *Thebans* were encourag'd and being daily exercis'd in War, instead of defending themselves, began to aspire at the Empire of *Greece*, Fortune itself having led the Way, and in a manner driving them upon the Project.

In the next Year which was the second of the Hundred and First *Olympiad*, and the Thirtieth of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, in the Archonship of *Hippodamus*; *Artaxerxes* saw it his Interest to have Assistance from the *Grecians* against the *Egyptians*; and with that View got them to make Peace one with another: But the *Thebans*, who were puff'd up by their late Success, refus'd to stand to the Peace, or to set the *Boetian* Cities at Liberty. They were animated by the Warlike Genius of their Citizens, especially *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas*, who from a poor Philosopher rose to be One of the most Celebrated of all the *Grecian* Generals; And even they, who desir'd the Peace, cou'd not enjoy it, or confine themselves to its Prescriptions: For those, who set up for *Democracy*, after they got clear of the *Lacedæmonian* Yoke, were inveterate Enemies to the *Oligarchy-Men*; and bloody Murders were reciprocally committed, while Sometimes these, and sometimes the People, had the Upper-hand: Neither did their Feuds end till they were all reduc'd under one Empire.

However, the *Lacedæmonians* always flood by *Oligarchy*, and the *Athenians* by the Popular Government; so that the Peace was presently trampled upon, and both Parties took up Arms. The *Thebans* observing the



other two were chiefly at Variance, minded their Game very close, and possess'd themselves of *Platen* and *Thejia*; because they seem'd to favour the *Athenians*, which Cities they levell'd with the Ground, at the same time that *Helice* and *Bura*, two Cities in *Arkaia* Perish'd by an Earthquake, and a subsequent Irruption of the Sea. The next Year *Artaxerxes* got the Cities once more to make Peace one with another: But the *Thebans* going upon the same Motive as above, wou'd not stand to it: Whereupon the *Lacedemonians* declar'd War against them, as the common Enemies of *Greece*; and were reinforce'd by Auxiliary Troops from all the rest, insomuch that *Thebes* seem'd to be in a desperate Condition.

But the *Lacedemonians* were not aware, they had to do with *Epaminondas* the *Theban* General, who by his *Courage* and *Conduct* supplied the defect of Numbers, as he soon gave them to understand: For when *Cleombrotus* their King invaded *Beotia*, he fought him at *Leuctra*, routed all the *Lacedemonians* and their *Confederates*, and kill'd *Cleombrotus* on the Field of Battle. Upon the News of this Defeat, the *Lacedemonians* behav'd themselves with a great deal of *Constancy*, and sent *Archidamus* their other King, to invade *Beotia* once more; but as soon as he arriv'd there, a Truce was agreed to by *Fajon* the *Thessalian*. After the *Victory* of *Leuctra*, *Epaminondas* had perswaded all the *Arcadians* to incorporate into one City, which was call'd *Megalopolis*. He also sent Messengers to *Sicily*, *Italy*, and to all other Countries, in which the *Messenians* were dispers'd, to recal them to the Seat of their Ancestors, which then receiv'd its ancient Name *Messene*. This Restoration happen'd two hundred and twenty eight Years after the taking of *Ira*, at which Time the *Messenians* were banish'd their Country by the *Lacedemonians* as we observ'd before.

The *Arcadians* being invaded by the *Lacedemonians* sought help from the *Athenians* in vain, but obtain'd it of the *Thebans*. *Epaminondas* invaded *Laconia*, and restor'd *Messene* to its *Primitive Splendor*, and after he had been eighty five days out, was attack'd upon his return, by *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*, whom he defeated, and pursu'd to the Walls of the City. But after all, he return'd too late, because the Laws provided that new Captains shou'd be chosen in the beginning of the Month *Eucatorium*, at which time *Epaminondas* was order'd to be back; and because he was not, without any Consideration of the Circumstances that retarded his Return, was thereupon brought to a Tryal for his Life by the Magistrates.

*Epaminondas* pleaded that he was not at all unwilling to Die, provided they wou'd engrave upon his Tomb the great and mighty Actions he had done. But the People were so much taken with the Recital of his Achievements that they freely clear'd him. Soon after he return'd to *Peloponnesus*, and after doing many good Services to the *Confederates*, and taking of several Cities from the Enemy, attack'd *Corinth*; but being repuls'd by *Chabrias*, return'd to *Thebes*.

The *Arcadians* thinking it unworthy of their Honour and Name to be Retainers in the War, withdrew themselves from their Alliance, and made Friends with the *Athenians*. The *Pisatæ* wag'd War with the *Eleans*, and claim'd a Right to the Administration of the *Olympick Games*, by Virtue of some fabulous Pleas. And indeed they administr'd at the Celebration of the one hundred and fourth *Olympiad*, which is therefore left out in the Catalogue of the *Olympiad* in the *Fourth Book*; nor is it known who was then *Victor*. However the *Athenians* being possess'd of the *Olympick Temple* converted the Money they found in it to the use of their Soldiers.

The



The *Mantineans* protested loudly against this Sacrilege, and the quarrel rose so high, that the *Thebans* were call'd in to prevent *Arcadia's* falling wholly into the Hands of the *Lacedemonians*. *Epaminondas* was once more employ'd to check the *Arcadians*. But the *Arcadians* (both *Mantineans* and others) smelling the Design which the *Thebans* had to subdue the *Peloponnesus*, made their Address to the *Athenians* and *Lacedemonians*, and implor'd their Friendship and Assistance: *Epaminondas*, upon the News, that *Agésilas* with the *Lacedemonian* Forces was come up to assist the *Arcadians*, march'd directly to *Sparta*, which was then empty and expos'd, and which he had certainly carried, had not some Body or other of his own People, out of a greedy desire of getting Money, acquainted *Agésilas* with his Design; who thereupon send speedy Notice to the Citizens of the approaching Danger, with Promises of speedy Assistance from him.

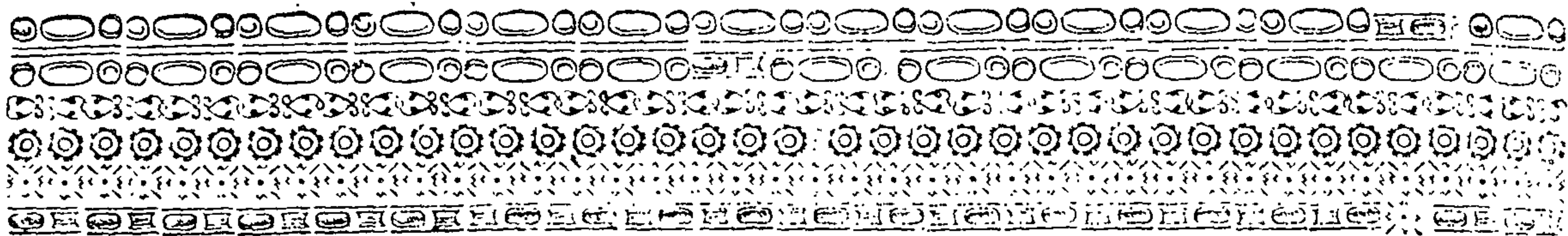
When *Epaminondas* found his Design was render'd ineffectual by the Approach of the *Lacedemonian* and *Arcadian* Troops, and that *Mantineia* was left Defenceless, he return'd with all possible speed to possess himself of it. But *Hegelochus* the *Athenian* at the Head of six Thousand Men prevented him. *Epaminondas* seeing all his Projects fail, was resolv'd to engage the Enemy upon their coming back, as thinking it dishonourable to return without doing something Memorable. In Pursuance of this Resolution he March'd towards *Tégea*, and having drawn up his Army Wedge-wise surpris'd the *Lacedemonians* and *Arcadians*, and kill'd great Numbers of them, but pursuing the Fight too eagerly, and too securely, receiv'd a Wound in his Breast, and was carry'd back to the Camp with the Dart sticking in the Wound; where, as soon as he found that his Shield was intire, and that his Men had carry'd the Day, he order'd the Dart to be taken out of his Body, which done he immediately expir'd. This was the Exit of one, who perform'd all the Offices of a good Man, a good Philosopher, and a good General; the Glory and Credit of *Baotia*, nay of all *Greece*, and the Ornament of their Schools and Military Arts.

The Character of *Epaminondas* will sufficiently appear, if we consider that, before his Time, the *Thebans* never did a Memorable Action; and after his Death were toss'd from one Rub to another, and quickly made Shipwrack of their whole Fortune. However the Issue of this War was, that neither side was Victor, tho' both of them made a shew of Victory, by erecting Trophies; and as *Xenophon* says, *the Divine Providence order'd Things much otherwise than Men expected*: For by the Intercession of *Artaxerxes* King of *Persia*, a Mutual League was concluded upon by all *Greece*, notwithstanding the Remonstrances of *Agésilas*, in order to exclude the *Messenians*. The Glory of *Agésilas* seem'd to be very much Eclips'd by this, that when he was eager for War, he suffer'd *Greece* to be torn in Pieces; and when he was worn out with Age serv'd *Nectanebus* the *Egyptian* Tyrant for Money. And after he had sacrific'd his Honour to his Avarice, in serving the *Egyptian*, he dy'd upon his return, in the eighty fourth Year of his Age, and the forty first of his Reign, the next Year after the Death of *Epaminondas*, being that in which *Artaxerxes* dy'd. He was a very great Man, inferior to none in Military Virtues.

In the Interval between the *Peloponnesian* War and this Time, there flourish'd in *Greece*, *Hippocrates* of *Cos*, the Prince of Physicians; *Democritus* of *Abdera*, *Socrates* the *Athenian*, and *Plato*, three eminent Philosophers; *Sophocles* and *Æmipedes*, two Poets; *Ctesias* the Physician and Historian; *Aristotle* the Head of the *Peripateticks*; *Demosthenes* the *Athenian* Orator,

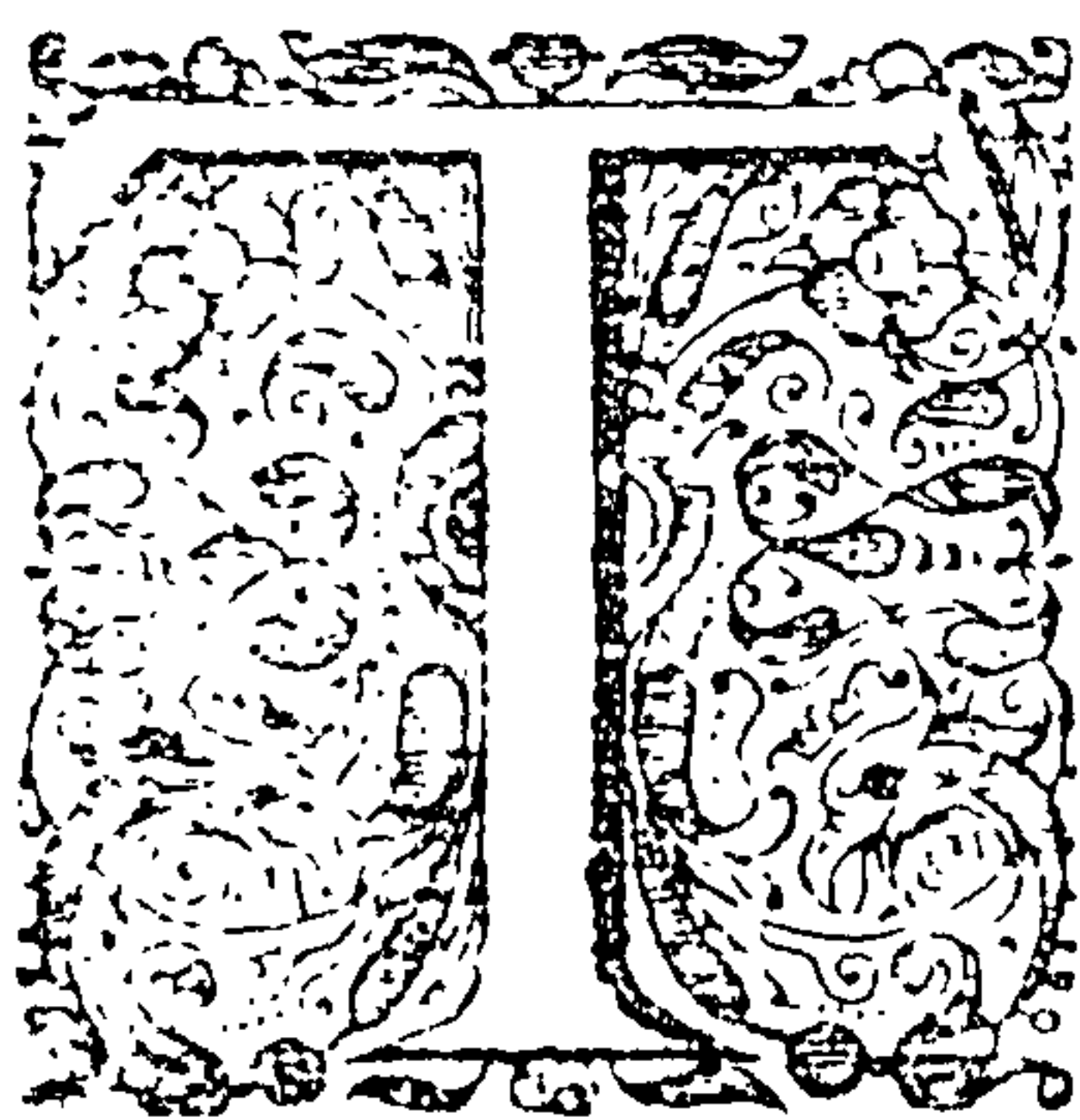


Orator, *Eudoxus* of *Cnidos* the Mathematician, *Zeno* of *Citium*, the Head of the Stoicks; *Thucydides* the *Athenian* Historian, and *Zenophon*, who for his Eloquence was call'd *Musa Attica*, an Excellent Philosopher, and a Man so well vers'd in Military Affairs, that his bringing back the *Grecians* after the Death of *Cyrus*, seems justly to surpass all the Atchievements of *Alexander* the Great, if not in the Importance of the Thing, at least in the variety of Stratagems and Conduct.



## C H A P. IV.

*Of the Kingdom of Macedonia, its Origin and Rise, unto the Days of Alexander the Great.*



HO' the Kingdom of *Macedonia* made no great Figure either in History or Warlike Atchievements till the Days of *Philip*, and *Alexander* the Great his Son; yet forasmuch as it produc'd these two great Men, it will be requisite to give a brief Account of its Ancient State, and by what Steps it came to Conquer not only all *Greece*, but almost all the World.

In ancient Times *Macedonia* being inhabited by the *Pelasgians*, was call'd *Emathia*, and afterwards *Bastia*. *Telegonus* Father to *Aristopaeus* that famous Warrior, who serv'd under *Priamus*, reign'd in one Part of *Paonia*, and *Europus* in the other. But about five Years after the Death of *Sardanapalus*, *Caramus*, King of the *Argives*, the tenth from *Hercules*, upon Advice from the Oracle, led a Colony into this Country, and establish'd his Kingdom by force. After him there follow'd fifteen Kings in Order, till the Time of *Amyntas*, Son to *Phalareus* or *Philip*.

*Amyntas* being Conquer'd by the *Illyrians*, and despairing to retrieve his Loss, gave a great Part of his Kingdom to the *Olynthians*, which he afterwards demanded again, when he brought his Affairs to bear. The *Olynthians* refus'd to give up what was freely gifted them; and tho' *Amyntas* was assisted by the *Lacedaemonians*, yet he was worsted, and lost a great Part of what remain'd of his Kingdom, together with *Pella* his Metropolis. He had three Sons by his Wife *Euclidice*, namely *Alexander*, *Perdiccas* and *Philip*, and a Daughter call'd *Thryon*. By *Gygis* his other Wife, he had *Archelaus*, and *Thygis* and *Meneclaus*, who were afterwards kill'd by *Philip* their Brother. *Alexander* succeeded his Father, but *Ptolomy Al-*



rites robb'd him of his Life and Kingdom, as some say thro' the Treachery of his Mother, who wou'd have made away with her Husband, and obtain leave to Marry this *Ptolomy* her Son-in-law. In three Years after, *Perdiccas* the Elder Brother of *Philip* kill'd *Ptolomy*, and recover'd his Ancient Kingdom : And when he had possess'd it five Years, was either slain in Battle with the *Illyrians*, or murder'd by his Mother. He left a Son an Infant under the Guardianship of *Philip* his Brother, in the second Year of the Reign of *Ochus*, the first of the hundred and fifth Olympiad, when *Calimedes* was Archon. It is said, *Philip* was kept as an Hostage at Thebes for some Years, and suck'd in the first Rudiments of Military Virtues under *Epaminondas* the Famous Theban Captain. After *Philip* had acted as Regent for some time, (the *Macedonians* being threaten'd with Wars on all Hands, which the Authority of the young King was not able to encounter) he was declar'd King : For the *Macedonians* had been sadly maul'd by the *Illyrians*, who likewise threaten'd another Invasion. The *Pæonians*, in like manner, made Incursions upon them; and the King of *Thrace* employ'd his Interest to set *Pausanias* upon the Throne, as the *Athenians* did theirs for *Argæus*, both of them being the Sons of *Æropius*, who had Usurp'd the Kingdom. But *Philip* got clear of these Difficulties by winning the Affections of his People. He restor'd the Military Discipline, and instituted the *Macedonian Phalanx* or Battalia. He took off the *Pæonians* and the King of *Thrace* by Money, and repuls'd *Argæus* and the *Athenians* by Force of Arms. Nay, he gain'd the good Will of the *Athenians*, by setting *Amphipolis* free, and shewing a great deal of Clemency to the Prisoners.

When he thought he had sufficiently confirm'd himself in the Government, he subdu'd the *Pæonians*, Conquer'd the *Illyrians*, took *Amphipolis*, and after he had possess'd himself of *Potidea*, gave *Pydna* to the *Olynthians*, in order to procure their Friendship which he thought wou'd be useful to him in compassing his Designs.

He Christen'd *Grenides*, which was mightily enlarg'd by the Accession of several Citizens, by the Name of *Philippi*; and improv'd the Gold Mines of that Place to that Degree, that they brought him one Thousand Talents every Year; upon which Fund he began to be very great : For he Coin'd this Gold into Pieces, which from him were call'd *Philippica*; hir'd a great many Troops, and brib'd most of the *Grecians* to betray the Country. In the mean time his Affairs went on the better, that the *Athenians* were engag'd in a Social War, so that they cou'd not Mind *Amphipolis*, and the other Affairs of *Greece*. This Social War took its rise from the Revolt of the People of *Chios*, *Rhodes*, *Coos* and *Bizantium* from the *Athenians*. It lasted three Years, and then was put to an end, by reason the *Athenians* fear'd the *Persians* wou'd joyn in with the Rebels. The famous Men in this War were *Iphicrates*, *Chabrias* and *Timotheus*, with whom the Glory of all the *Grecian* Generals was sunk and bury'd.

In the preceding Year *Philip* had Marry'd *Olympias* the Daughter of *Neoptolemus* King of the *Molossi*. The Kings of the *Thracians*, *Illyrians* and *Pæonians*, look'd upon his Success with an Envious Eye, and attempted to do with joint Force, what they cou'd not Compass separately. But *Philip* attack'd them, when they were running up and down in disorder, and easily brought them under Subjection. The same Year being the first of the Hundred and Sixth Olympiad, the sixth of *Ochus* King of *Persia*, in the Archonship of *Elpinices*, *Alexander* the Son of *Philip* and *Olympias* was born at *Pella*. On the first Day of his Birth, the Temple of *Diana* at



*Ephesus* was set on fire by a certain impudent Fellow, on purpose, as he confess'd, to have his Name Recorded for the heinousness of the Action; being incapable of deriving it otherwise to future Ages: But, besides the cruel Death to which he was put, he miss'd of his Aim: For the *Pannonian* or publick Council of *Asia* decreed that none shou'd make mention of his Name; so that it is not certain who he was, or what his Name; some calling him *Herostratus*, and others *Lygdamis*.

The next Year *Callistratus* being Archon, the *Phocian* or Sacred War broke out. The *Amphietyones* had fin'd the *Lacedemonians* for seizing upon *Cadmea* without any colour of Right; and likewise amerced the *Phocians* in a Thousand Talents, for possessing themselves of *Cirrhaea*, a Piece of Ground that belong'd to the *Delphick* Temple: But *Philomelus* animated the *Phocians* mightily, by offering to prove from two Verses of *Homer*, that in former Times the Temple was under their Patronage. Whereupon he was made General with an ample and unlimited Power, and brought the *Lacedemonians* to join in the War, as being injur'd at the same Rate. This *Delphick* Temple and Oracle of *Apollo Pythius* was a very ancient Thing: For *Homer* says, *Agamemnon* consulted it before the *Trejan War*. The Place upon which it stood was reckon'd the Center of *Greece*. The Oracle took its Rise from the Goats that fed about a Den which was in the Place where the Temple was afterwards built, and made unwonted Sounds and uncouth Gestures.

At first indeed, any one, who pretended to Inspiration, gave Responses to another, without any difference; but when many People in Fits of Madness crowded into the Cave, a three-footed Machine was invented, call'd the *Tripod*, in which a Woman might stand securely. That Woman was call'd *Pythia*, from being interrogated, and had Divinity ascrib'd to her; whence came the saying: *The Goddess made answer*. The first Woman that had this Honour was call'd *Phemonoe*. Virgins were commonly Appointed for the Office, till one of them was debauch'd by *Lecheocrates* the *Thessalian*; then Women of fifty Years of Age were pitch'd upon, who gave Responses in Virgin's Habits. In former times this Temple was mightily Celebrated upon the Account of the Oracle, the meeting of the *Amphietyones*, the *Pythian* Games, and its Riches, which indeed were so great, that all the Gold and Silver of the rest of *Greece* came far short of it: But in *Strabo's* time it's Glory was much Eclips'd. To proceed.

*Philomelus* cover'd his Designs with the highest Pretences of Justice and Honesty, and engag'd the *Lacedemonians* and *Athenians* on his side; but most of the other *Greeks* thought it their Duty to vindicate the Honour of the Temple with Arms, and with that view join'd with the *Thebans*; and the *Amphietyones* back'd their Resolution with a Decree, amercing the *Lacedemonians* in one Thousand Talents more, for not paying the former fine within the limited time. But *Philomelus*, finding that the Forces of his Allies design'd to make Head against the *Thebans*, seiz'd upon the Treasure of the Temple, and hir'd Soldiers with it. But his Attempts prov'd successless, for he either dy'd in Battle or threw himself headlong over a Rock, in order to avoid falling into the Hands of his Enemies. *Philomelus* was follow'd by *Onomarchus* who aided the Tyrant of the *Phereans* against the *Thessalonians* and *Philip*, but was afterwards taken Prisoner by *Philip* and strangled. To him succeeded *Phayllus* his Brother, who after he had brib'd the greater Cities of *Greece* to assist him, dy'd of a Consumption, without doing any Memorable Action. In the mean time *Philip* took *Metbona*, (in the Siege of which he lost his right Eye by a Dart,) and snatch'd



snatch'd the Power out of the Hands of the *Pherean* Tyrants. Then having Conquer'd some Cities of the *Helleſpont*, he attack'd the *Olynthians*, thinking he had now ſtrength enough to ſubdue thoſe, whom both he and his Grandſires had dreaded, and whom himſelf had by all Means endeavour'd to oblige.

Having defeated the Citizens twice, the Magiſtrates betray'd the City into his Hands, which he levell'd with the Ground, and ſold the Inhabitants, together with the Spoil, for a vaſt Sum of Money; with which he made Account to carry on his Deſign of bribing the *Grecians* to betray their Country. And indeed he found Traitors in every City, nor did he himſelf ſtick to own, that Gold had aggrandiz'd him more than Steel. *De-moſthenes* caution'd the *Athenians* to be upon their Guard againſt this Art of Bribery; but notwithstanding all his Remonſtrances, *Philip* gain'd Ground every Day, by Virtue of his Silver or Golden Weapons; and triumph'd over the *Athenians* themſelves, in obtaining a Peace for ſeven Years, having diſtributed Money among the popular Men, and as ſome ſay, *De-moſthenes* himſelf had a ſhare on't. His Deſign in the Peace was to gain time to get clear of his *Thracian* concerns, in order to bend all his Force upon the worrying of *Greece*.

After his Return from *Thrace*, the *Bæotians* ſollicit'd him for Aſſiſtance: Whereupon he invaded *Phocis*, and put an end to the War without coming to an Engagement: For the Greatneſs of his Name, mov'd *Phale-cus* the *Phocian* General, to deſert the *Phocians*, he and his Army having obtain'd leave to go off clear. Thus was the *Phocian* War ended after ten Years, and the Way of puniſhing the *Phocians* was remitted to the determination of the *Amphiſtyones*. They Decreed, that the two Fines in which they were amerc'd, ſhou'd be transferr'd to the uſe of *Philip*, in Conſideration of his Diligence in promoting the Intereſt of the Temple, that they ſhou'd be excluded from the Temple, and allow'd neither Arms nor Cavalry, till they reſtor'd the Treasures they had carry'd off; that all their baniſh'd Men ſhou'd be taken up by way of Reprifa and Attone-ment; their Town levell'd with the Ground, and their Inhabitants diſpers'd in Villages, each of them conſiſting of fifty Families, and lying from one another, at the diſtance of a Furlong; and in Fine, that they ſhou'd pay a yearly Tribute of ſixty Talents, till the Damages were repair'd.

This was the Sentence given againſt all the *Phocians* excepting the *At-tæans*, who were the only *Phocians*, that had not ſtain'd their Hands with this Sacrilege as it was call'd in thoſe Days. In the mean time *Philip's* Glory increas'd apace; and he us'd alluring Ways to get himſelf choſen Commander of the *Grecians* againſt the *Persians*. For he had deſign'd a War againſt them a long time before. He Conquer'd the *Illyrians* and *Thracians*, and built Caſtles to awe them to Obedience. The next Year, being the eighteenth of *Philip*, *Arymbas* King of *Moloffi* dy'd, and left a Son, namely *Æacidas*, the Father of *Pyrrhus*. *Philip* turn'd *Æacidas* who was then a Child, out of his Kingdom, and put *Alexander* Brother to *Olympias*, in his Place: Some ſay, this *Alexander* was made King in the Life-time of *Arymbas*, he being outted; and that *Philip* did only adjudge him the Crown as being his by Right.

Then *Philip* attack'd *Perinthus* and *Byzantium*, but without any great Succeſs; for the *Persian* Satrapa reliev'd the former, and the *Athenians* and their Allies, rais'd the Siege of the latter: And by the *Athenian* Intereſt, *Greece* join'd unanimouſly in ſo firm a League, that *Philip* was oblig'd to make Peace with them. About this time *Atæas* King of *Scythia*



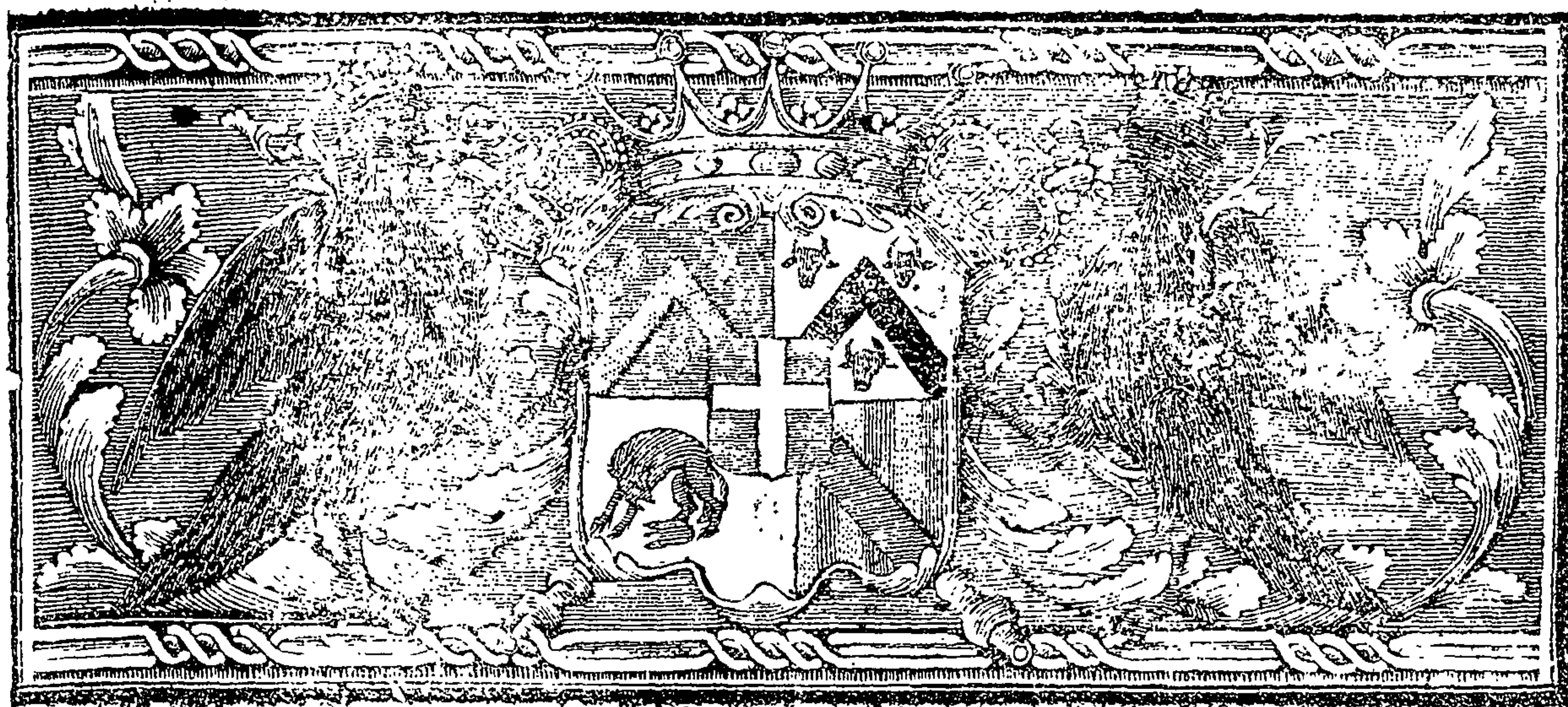
was assaulted by the *Istrians*, and call'd in *Philip* to his Assistance, promising him the Right of Succession to his Crown as a Reward : But when the *Istrians* retir'd, he refus'd to perform his Promise. This incens'd *Philip* so, that he invaded *Seythia*, ravag'd a great Part of the Country, and came back with much Spoil ; but upon his return it was all taken away from him by the *Triballi*, upon which Occasion he receiv'd a Wound in his Thigh, the Dart going quite thro' and killing his Horse. *Isocrates* the O-rator made use of this Opportunity to write a second Letter to *Philip*, perswading him to make Peace, but all in vain : For that Defeat did only encourage him to go on more briskly, so that he enter'd into an Alliance with most of the *Grecians* ; and seeing the *Athenians* were the only People of all *Greece*, that thwarted him, he resolv'd to check them by Force of Arms, and Stratagems. Accordingly he surpriz'd *Platea* in *Phocis* ; which put the *Athenians* into great Consternation, however they fortify'd themselves as much as was possible for the time, and got the *Beotians* to join with them. *Philip* invaded the *Beotians* with thirty Thousand Foot and twenty Thousand Horse, and being Superior to his Enemy both in Number of Men and Military Prudence (for the rest of the *Greeks* had, at this time, no experienc'd Generals) routed them at *Charonea*. Here concludes the Liberty of *Greece*, and its ancient Glory. However he made but Moderate use of his Victory over the *Athenian* Prisoners ; but according to *Justin*, was very severe upon the *Thebans*. This Battle was fought in the the third Year of the hundred and tenth Olympiad, in the Archonship of *Charondas*, and the first Year of *Arses* King of *Persia*.

The Upshot of this Victory was, that he got himself declar'd General of the *Grecians* against the *Persians*, and a Quota of Men and Money laid upon every City. The *Lacedaemonians* were the only People that stood out, and contemn'd both him and his Peace : But when he flourish'd abroad, his Concerns at Home were but in an ill Condition, upon the Account of his Divercing *Olympias* and Marrying *Cleopatra* the Grand-Child of *Attalus* : For *Olympias* incessantly push'd on *Alexander* her Son to Jealousy and Hatred. Next Spring *Philip* receiv'd a Response from the Oracle when Consulted upon the War, which was as Ambiguous as that given to *Cresus* in former Times ; whereupon he sent *Attalus*, *Amyntas* and *Parmenio* before him into *Asia* with a few Troops, under the Pretence of relieving the *Grecian* Cities in those Parts, till he was ready in the Summer to follow them at the Head of a Puissant Army.

In the mean time, he Celebrated the Nuptials of his Daughter *Cleopatra*, (whom he had given in Marriage to *Alexander* King of *Epirus*) with a great deal of Magnificence ; and as he display'd his Majesty, and by his Spectacles and publick Feasts ingratiated himself with the People, he receiv'd a Wound in his Side from a noble Youth call'd *Pausanias*, of which he died immediately. This *Pausanias* was outrageously affronted by *Attalus*, who having made him drunk, was not content to have abus'd his Body himself, but also prostituted him to others ; and the generous Youth finding that all his Sollicitations and Complaints cou'd not prevail upon the King to redress the Affront, took this Way of resenting the Injustice of the Judge.

This was the Exit of *Philip* in the twenty fourth Year of his Reign, and the forty ninth of his Life : A Man who surmounted Difficulties almost insuperable, purchas'd to himself so great an Empire, instructed so many Warlike and renowned Men, that both *Mars* and *Pallas* seem'd to wait upon him ; and even justly Merited a great Part of the Glory that ensu'd upon the Actions of his Son *Alexander*.





A  
New HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD.

BOOK VII.

CHAP. I.

*Of the Wonderful Exploits of Alexander the Great.*



DIOP King of Macedonia being Murder'd by Pa-sanias as aforesaid, Alexander his Son surnam'd the Great, for the Greatness of his Warlike Achievements, succeeded him in the twentieth Year of his Age, the first Year of the Hundred and Eleventh Olympiad, and the first of the Reign of Darius Codomannus King of Persia. From his Infancy his Spirit was Noble and Magnanimous, and delighted in nothing so much as in Arms and War.

When he heard of any Conquest made by his Father, he us'd to tell his Play-fellows he was not well pleased thereat, giving for Reason, that his Father wou'd Conquer all, and leave nothing for him to do, as Quintus Curtius tells



us, from whose History I borrow the Account I give of his Life and Actions. *Aristotle* the famous Philosopher instructed him in Liberal Arts, of whom *Alexander* often said, *that he ought more to Aristotle than to his Father Philip; for that Philip had only given him Life; but Aristotle taught him to live well.* *Alexander's* first Care was to Celebrate his Father's Funeral with Royal Pomp, and then having taken upon him the Administration of Affairs, punish'd the Regicide and his Complices. He surmounted all the Difficulties that stood in his Way by his singular Humanity, and the almost incredible Greatness of his Mind, which was never wanting to him thro' the whole Course of his Life.

The *Athenians* conspir'd against the new King, upon the Sollicitations of *Demosthenes*; and *Attalus*, whom the inhuman Cruelty of *Olympias* to *Cleopatra*, and her young Son had incens'd to the last Degree, join'd with them. The *Etolians* resolv'd to restore the *Acarnanians*, whom *Philip* had banish'd. The Citizens of *Ambracia* turn'd out the Garrison that had been put in upon them; and those of *Thebes* endeavour'd to recover *Cadmea*. The *Arcadians* contemn'd the Son as much as they did the Father before, and all the other *Peloponnesians* were ready to vindicate their Liberty. All these Evils were inflam'd by Mutinies of the Nations adjacent to *Macedonia*, who were eager for shaking off the *Macedonian* Yoke. But Providence had decreed, that *Alexander* shou'd Master every Thing, either by Favour or Force. He took care to get himself declar'd General of the *Grecians*, first by the *Thessalians*, and then by the *Amphielyones*. After this he march'd at the Head of an Army into *Beotia*, and did so frighten the Rest, that a Council was call'd at *Corinth*, which chose him General in the War against the *Persians* for the next Spring. Though he had Conquer'd the *Thracians* and fought with good Success against the *Paeonians* and *Illyrians*, yet some Cities revolted; and the *Thebans* having possess'd themselves of *Cadmea* join'd in with the *Athenians* which were push'd on by *Demosthenes*, who rail'd incessantly against *Alexander*, as he had formerly done against *Philip*, and honour'd him with no better Title than that of a Boy and a Fool.

The King having Intelligence hereof march'd with all Speed to *Beotia*, whereupon the *Athenians* were discourag'd; but the *Thebans* slighted all the offers that were made them, and provided all necessaries for undergoing a Siege. *Alexander* indeed was nettled by being diverted from carrying on his Designs upon *Persia*; and in order to avoid the loss of Time, Offer'd them very honourable Articles of Peace: But when he perceiv'd that all his Proposals met with no other Return than Rallery and Contempt, he took a Resolution to punish them severely for their Obstinacy. He easily carry'd the Town by entering at a Gate they had neglected, as thinking it secure, and committed great Slaughter upon the Citizens, and by a Decree of the *Amphielyones* sold or put to Death in cold Blood the Captives (bating the Family of *Pindarus*) because they had conspir'd so often with the King of *Persia*, and level'd all the Houses and publick Edifices of this Celebrated City (excepting those of the Children of *Pindarus*) with the Ground. This done *Alexander* return'd into *Macedonia*, and made all possible Preparations for the *Persian* War, from which neither the Weight of the Enterprize, nor the desire of having Children to propagate a Posterity cou'd dissuade him. Accordingly in the Spring he March'd to the *Hellespont* at the Head of thirty two Thousand Foot, and five Thousand Horse, leaving the Administration of *Greece* in the Hands of *Antipater* his trusty Friend, and dividing almost all *Macedonia* among his Captains, which gave



gave *Perdiccas* one of his General's, occasion to ask him, *what wou'd he leave to himself?* *Hope* (answer'd *Alexander*) *shall be my Portion.* Being come to the *Hellespont*, he transported his Army to *Troas* in one hundred and eighty Ships, and was the first who set Foot in *Asia*, in a jumping capering Manner, throwing his Spear, and darting it into the Ground, as it were to take Possession of that great Continent; in the second Year of the Reign of *Darius Codomannus*, and in the same of his own. Then having offer'd Sacrifices at the Tomb of *Achilles* from whom he was descended by the Mother, and whom he pronounc'd happy for having so Famous a Poet as *Homer* to sing the Glory of his great Exploits; he March'd into *Asia* in order to fight *Darius*, because he presum'd to demand Tribute of his Father *Philip*.

*Darius* being inform'd of *Alexander's* landing in *Troas* with so small a Number of Men, sent a Message to his Commanders in those Parts, charging them to take that Mad Young Boy (for so did he in Contempt stile *Alexander*) whip him with Rods, and bring him before him. His Commanders in order to execute his Orders, March'd with twenty Thousand Foot, and the like Number of Horse to the River call'd *Granicus*, whither *Alexander* must have come, in order to penetrate into *Asia*; and sat down there to oppose his Passage. Notwithstanding, *Alexander* pass'd the River, attack'd the *Persians*, and slew all their Foot, and five hundred Horse, with the loss of thirty nine *Macedonians* only. Upon the News of this Victory, *Sardis* open'd its Gates to the Conqueror, as did also all the rest of the Cities of *Lydia*, and on the fourth Day after the Battle, *Alexander* enter'd *Ephesus*, whither Ambassadors came from *Magnesia*, and the *Trallenses* with Offers of surrendring themselves and their Cities to him. Then he March'd to *Miletus*, and after a short Resistance took it: Whereupon all the Cities in the Way to *Halicarnassus* open'd their Gates: And forasmuch as this City was well fortify'd, and gave *Alexander* some Work to take it, he levell'd it with the Ground, in order to terrify other Places; then he advanc'd into *Caria*, and like a Torrent, over-ran all *Lycia* and *Pamphilia* bearing all before him, till he came to *Phrygia*, where he stop'd a while at *Gordium*, to see *Mida's* Famous Knot. This was a Chain made up into a Knot, whose Ends were so interwoven together by Art, that it was impossible to find them out: And the Inhabitants of the City reported, a certain Oracle had declar'd, that *whosoever cou'd loose this Knot shou'd enjoy all Asia.* *Alexander* being curious to see it, came attended with many *Phrygians* and *Macedonians*, and having taken a full view of it, and considering the impossibility of finding out the Ends of the Chain, took his Sword in his Hand, and said: *It matters not how it be loosed, so it be loosed;* and then cut it to pieces, by which means he either fulfilled the Oracle, or eluded it. About this time some Recruits arriv'd from *Macedonia*; with these and the rest of the Army *Alexander* March'd into *Cappadocia*, which being easily subdu'd, he advanc'd towards *Cilicia*.

*Darius* all this time was making great Preparations to meet *Alexander*. He had a certain great Captain of *Rhodes* call'd *Memnon*, whom he made General of his Forces; this *Memnon*, advis'd *Darius* upon the Defeat at *Granicus* to send Troops into *Macedonia*, and carry the War thither; being perswaded, *Alexander* wou'd return Home to save his own Country; but the *Persians* reject'd this Advice as Dishonourable: Again, he advis'd that *all the Country shou'd be burnt before Alexander, to prevent his getting Subsistance;* and even this also was not executed till it was too late. But the



greatest misfortune of all was, that *Memnon* died before *Alexander* came to *Cilicia*. *Darius* having now no General of Skill, was resolv'd to Head the Army himself. Whereupon he Commanded his Troops to Rendezvous at *Babylon*, where he soon after arriv'd with his Mother, Wife, Concubines, two Daughters, and an only Son of six Years old. And having Mustered his Army, he found it consisted of 214000 Foot, and 53200 Horse. With this prodigious Army *Darius* March'd in Quest of *Alexander*, whom he imagin'd to have fled from him towards *Cilicia*, and whose Army did not exceed (both Horse and Foot) 40000 effective Men. But he was very much mistaken; for *Alexander* hasten'd thither in order to clear all the Sea Coasts, to the end he might have a free Intercourse with *Greece*, as also that in the narrow Passes of *Cilicia*, he might not be surrounded by so great a Multitude, *Alexander* being then arriv'd at the Straights of *Cilicia*, which he found unguarded, and having pass'd them, blest his Stars, in that the Enemy had not oppos'd him in a Place where a few Men might from the top of Craggy Mountains and great Precipices obstruct his Passage. Then he March'd to a City call'd *Tarſus*, which the *Persians* set on fire and abandon'd upon his approach, but too late : For *Alexander* dispatch'd *Parmenio* with some Troops, who soon quench'd the Fire. Thro' this City ran the pleasant River call'd *Cydus*, and the Weather being excessive hot, *Alexander* was invited by the sweetness of the Stream to bath in it : But he no sooner put off his Clothes and got into the River, when all of a sudden a shivering seiz'd him all over, then grew pale and faint, so that his Attendants had much to do to bring him alive out of the Water. Being carried to his Tent he continu'd Speechless for some time; then he open'd his Eyes, and exclaimed against his hard Fortune; and having sent for his Friends and Physitians, declared *he would bear no delay in his Cure*, charging the Physitians to hazard all for his speedy Recovery; seeing the Enemy was not far off. Among these there was a Noble Physitian call'd *Philip*, who had attended him from his Infancy, and had serv'd him more out of the love he had for his Person, than upon any other account. This good Man promised *Alexander*, he wou'd use his utmost Skill to cure him in a short Time, and pray'd him to have patience for three Days only, and that then he wou'd give him a Potion which should effectually do the Work. This, tho' little Delay, seem'd very uneasy to *Alexander*; however he agreed to it. On the third Day, a little before *Philip* came in with the Potion, *Alexander* receiv'd a Letter from *Parmenio*, praying him not to trust his Life to *Philip*, for that *Darius* had bribed him with a Thousand Talents, and a promise of giving him his Sister to Wife. When *Alexander* had read this Letter he was in great Consternation, and cou'd not tell what to do; but his impatience of Delay made him resolve at last to take the Physick, be the Consequence what it wou'd, concluding, it was more honourable to die by the Hands of another, than by suspecting his most intimate Friend. So that having put the Letter under his Pillow, when *Philip* came in with the Potion, he took it off with an undaunted Courage; and then gave the Letter to *Philip*, fixing his Eyes upon him as he read it, being perswaded, if he had any Guilt upon him, it wou'd appear by his Countenance : But as *Philip* read on, he discover'd more Indignation than Fear in his Face; and having finish'd, cast the Letter and his Cloak on the Ground, and said : My Soul, O King, hung always on Thee, but now I see some sacred and venerable Mouth hath rendred me suspicious. As to the Crime of Parricide, which is cast upon me, your Recovery, I hope, will wash it off. I therefore beg and beseech you, that as I shall



shall preserve your *Life*, so you give me mine; and laying aside all fear; you suffer the *Potion* to infuse it self into your *Veins*. Ease a little your *Mind*; which the unseasonable care of your *Friends*, faithful indeed, but importunately diligent, has troubled.

These Words render'd the King not only secure but also full of Joy and good Hope. Wherefore he spake to *Philip* after this Manner : If the gods shou'd allow you to make Tryal of my Affection to you, after the best manner you wou'd, possibly you might pitch upon another Method, but a surer than this you see, you cou'd not wish for : For tho' I receiv'd this Letter, yet I drank the *Potion* which you prepar'd. And now I believe you are no less solicitous for my *Health* than you are for your own *Credit* : And having so said, he gave his Hand to *Philip* : But what immediately follow'd, seem'd to confirm *Parmenio's* Suspicion : For the Dose was so strong, that it cast *Alexander* into a Swoon, so that he seem'd to have neither *Life* nor *Breath*. *Philip* left nothing untry'd to bring him to *Life* : Apply'd Fomentations to his Body. Spirits of Wine, Spirits of different sorts of Meats to his Nostrils ; in a Word, took so much care of him, that in three Days after he walk'd abroad and shew'd himself to the Army.

*Darius* being inform'd of *Alexander's* Sicknefs made all the haste possible to come upon him before he shou'd Recover ; and in order hereunto laid a Bridge over the *Euphrates*, and Pass'd it with his Army in five Days; and so continu'd his March to *Cilicia*. In the mean time *Alexander* March'd to a City call'd *Iffus*, and Encamp'd near it, having resolv'd by the Advice of his Great Captain *Parmenio* to wait for the Enemy in that Place, as the most commodious for his purpose, forasmuch as the adjacent Mountains and Rocks secur'd him from being surrounded by the *Barbarians*. But he did not long continue there, when *Darius* his Army appear'd in Battle-Array. *Nabarzanes* guarded with his Horse the Right Wing, in which were twenty thousand Slingers and Archers, besides thirty thousand *Grecian* Foot commanded by *Thymondas*. These were indeed the Men most to be depended upon; they were gallant Troops, hir'd by *Darius*, and almost equal to the *Macedonian Phalanx*. But, forasmuch as they were to Fight against their own Countrymen, they probably had no great Stomach to serve *Darius* in the Battle. The Left Wing was commanded by *Aristomedes* the *Thessalian*, who had under him twenty thousand *Barbarian* Foot. In this Wing *Darius* himself Fought, attended by three thousand choice Horse, and follow'd by forty thousand Foot. Next to these March'd the *Hircanian* and *Median* Horse : As to all the rest of the Cavalry, they were plac'd in order on the Right and Left, so as to make a Front, from the Mountains to the Sea. *Darius* his Mother, Wife, Concubines, and all the rest of the Women, together with his young Son and two Daughters, March'd in the Rear attended by a great Number of Troops. In this order *Darius* March'd his Army, 'till he came in sight of *Alexander*, who on the other hand, immediately drew up his Army. He plac'd the *Macedonian Phalanx* in the Front. The Right Wing was commanded by *Nicanor* the Son of *Parmenio*. Next to him stood *Cenos* and *Perdiccas*, and *Melcager*, and *Ptolomy*, and *Amynatas*, each commanding their respective Troops : *Parmenio* and *Craterus* commanding the Left Wing; but *Craterus* was order'd to obey *Parmenio*. The Horse were dispos'd in order on each Wing, the *Macedonian* and *Thessalian* on the Right, and the *Peloponnesian* on the Left. Before these stood a Band of Slingers mix'd with Archers, and before them the *Thracian* and *Cretan* light Horse.



In this order both Armies stood within the Cast of a Dart of each other. *Darius* and the *Persians* glittering with Gold and Pearls, and *Alexander* and the *Macedonians* with stern Countenances and bright Steel, promising themselves Victory before they mov'd. *Darius* having given the Signal, the *Persian* Horse pour'd down fiercely upon *Alexander's* Left Wing, commanded by *Parmenio*, and even surrounded the Right Wing. Whereupon *Alexander* commanded two Squadrons of Horse to stand still on the Top of the Mountain while he lead the rest into the thick of the Enemy. Then he order'd the *Thessalian* Horse to withdraw privately behind their own Men, and join *Parmenio*, charging their Leader to execute whatever *Parmenio* shou'd command him. Now *Alexander* and his Gallant *Macedonians* were in the midst of the Enemy, and stuck close together like a Rock, hewing down all before them, till they came up to *Darius*, whose lofty Chariot, and pompous Furniture easily discover'd Him. Here *Alexander* play'd the part not only of a General, but also of a Foot Soldier, and being seconded by the *Macedonian Phalanx*, slew all that stood before the Chariot, then they rush'd upon the Body of Horse that guarded *Darius*, and having slaughter'd the most part of them, lanc'd their Darts against the Horses that drew his Chariot. The Horses hereupon began to kick and fling, and were like to overturn the Chariot. *Darius* perceiving the Danger he was in, and fearing to fall alive into the Hands of his Enemies, threw away his Crown and Scepter, Leap'd down, and by much ado, got on the back of an Horse that follow'd him. The *Persians* seeing their King dismounted and running away, lost their Courage, and betook themselves to their Heels; but were closely pursued and slaughter'd by the *Macedonian* Horse. While Matters succeeded thus happily in the Left Wing of *Alexander's* Army, his Right Wing was sorely press'd by the *Persian* Horse, so as to put their first Ranks into great Confusion, which *Parmenio* perceiving, sent immediately the *Thessalian* Horse, who set upon the *Persians* with such violence, that they all turn'd their backs and fled. Then follow'd an universal Rout, and the *Macedonians* at their Heels had little else to do but to drive and slaughter them like Sheep. The *Grecians* who were in the *Persian* Army went off in a Body untouch'd, while all the rest ran, some one way, and some another; few or none having the time to return to the Camp to take away any of their Goods. Then the *Macedonians* enter'd the *Persian* Camp, where all the Women lay. Here were found such immense Riches and Plunder as are more easily imagin'd than described; all which *Alexander* allow'd the Soldiers to take, bating the Royal Tent, and the Royal Captives.

Thus ended the Famous Battle of *Issus*, in which one hundred Thousand *Persian* Foot, and ten Thousand Horse fell; the *Macedonian's* Loss amounting only to thirty two Foot, one hundred and fifty Horse slain, and five hundred and four Wounded; one of the greatest and compleatest Victories that ever was purchas'd at so cheap a Rate. *Darius* his Mother, Wife and Daughters falling by this Battle into the Hands of *Alexander*, seem'd to lose nothing of their former Glory, bating the Change of their Condition: For he order'd they shou'd be attended and respected as if they had been in *Darius's* Camp; neither did he himself offer to violate their Chastity, or suffer any other to put the least Affront upon them. On the contrary, he frequently visited them with all the respect that was due to their Birth. Then he March'd into *Syria*, having sent *Parmenio* before him to *Damascus*, in order to seize upon the great Treasure which *Darius* had laid up



up in that City. This *Parmenio* receiv'd without any Loss : For the Governour of *Damascus* betray'd his trust, and deliver'd not only *Darius* his Treasure but also that of the Nobles and Princes of the Empire, together with thirty Thousand Captives of great Rank into his Hands. Tho' the Plunder of *Darius* his Camp was exceeding great, and sufficient to enrich all *Alexander's* Officers and Soldiers to whom he left all ; Yet the Plunder of this City surpass'd it by far : For *Parmenio* receiv'd here in Specie 2060 Talents in Gold, each Talent amounting to about 700 Pounds Sterling of our Money, and 500 Talents of Silver ; besides Jewels, Massy Vessels of Gold and Silver, Silks, and other valuable Goods without Number. With this vast Treasure *Alexander* March'd into *Celeſyria*, where every City open'd their Gates to him ; then to *Sydon*, and at last to *Tyre* ; where he sat down for a considerable time, the *Tyrrians* refusing to suffer him to enter into the Town : *Tyre* was then a Famous City, or rather a little Island on the Coast of *Phanicia*, four *Stadia's* distant from the Continent. The Inhabitants of this City sent Ambassadors to *Alexander* with rich Presents, and desir'd to be numbred among his Friends. *Alexander* receiv'd the Presents, but told the Ambassadors, *he design'd to go into the City to offer Sacrifice to Hercules, as being descended from him.* The Ambassadors guessing at his Intention, and confiding in the strength of their City, told him *there was a Temple upon the Continent nigh the Shoar, Dedicated to this God, where he might with less trouble perform his Devotion.* *Alexander* cou'd not contain his Anger, (of which indeed he was not otherwise very patient) at the boldness of this Answer. *What, says he, are you so confident of the strength of your City, because it is an Island ? or do ye contemn this my Land Army ? I will soon make you know, you are upon the Continent ; and therefore give you to understand at present, I will either enter the City, or Besiege it.* And having so said he sent them away.

In some Days after, when *Alexander* had well weighed the Difficulties of the Undertaking, and the Danger that attended it, as indeed it was one of the most difficult, and, in my Opinion, the greatest of all his Exploits, he sent Heralds to offer them Peace. But the *Tyrrians*, contrary to the Law of Nations, took the Heralds, and cast them down the Rocks into the Sea. This Usage was not to be born with, let the Consequence be what it wou'd, especially by a Man of *Alexander's* Temper ; He therefore set all Hands to work. Old *Tyre*, formerly situated upon the Continent and famous for its Riches and Grandeur in the Days of *Solomon* and his Successors, the Kings of *Juda*, furnish'd him with Stones enough to fill up the straight between the Shore and the City ; and Mount *Libanus* with tall Cedar Trees to make Stakes and Pontons for the keeping of the Stones and Earth together. In a word, so many thousand Hands were employed in this Work, that in a few Weeks a large and spacious Causeway was made four *Stadia's* long from the Continent to the City, thro' a deep and raging Sea. When *Alexander* saw this prodigious Work rise over the Water, he left *Parmenio* and *Craterus* to oversee the finishing of it, and March'd with Part of his Army against the *Arabians*, who had infested his Workmen, as they were cutting down and carrying the Timber from Mount *Libanus* : But upon his Return he had the Mortification to find that all the Work was destroy'd : For the *Tyrrians* had prepar'd a Ship of a vast bigness, and fill'd it up with Pitch, Greek Fire, and other combustible Stuff, and row'd it down to the Causeway ; and the Rowers having fasten'd the Poop in the Timber that supported the Stones and the Earth, set fire to the Ship, and got into a Boat ;



which they took along with them for the purpose. In a Minute after, this fatal Ship vomited out such a prodigious quantity of Fire, that it put the whole Work in a Conflagration, and consum'd all that was over the surface of the Water, nay, and pierc'd so far down within the Work, that the raging Billows of the Sea threw down, and carry'd all before them, as if there had never been any such Work.

This Misfortune however great did not discourage *Alexander*, but rather edg'd him on the more. He caus'd the Work to be renew'd, but begun in another Place, and directed his Course so as the Sea and Wind might not have so much Power over it as before; and having with stupendious Labour and Expence brought it to bear, Maugre all the Art and Resistance of the *Tyrians*, he caus'd his Navy to attack the Town by Sea, while he and his Land Forces assaulted it from the Towers which he had built upon the Causeway or Mole. Here ensu'd the fiercest Attack, and the most obstinate Defence that ever was Recorded in History. Here were to be seen Officers and Soldiers tumbling down the Rocks, and the same Men dragging the Enemy with them and fighting in the Sea till the Waters overwhelm'd both; Ships dashing against, and splitting one another, and their Crews ending the Quarrel in the raging Billows; Towers erected against Towers, and Men against Men, maintaining an obstinate Fight, while able to hold their Swords, or Bend their Bows. In a word, there was nothing left unpractis'd, on either side, that Art and Industry, Courage and Conduct, Rage and Despair cou'd suggest or invent. But as *Alexander* was always Fortune's Darling, so she did not abandon him in this: For after four Days continual Assault, almost Night and Day, some of his Marine Forces, possess'd themselves of one of the Towers of the City, and *Alexander* himself from a Tower he had erected upon the Mole, close to the Wall, having slain several Officers and Soldiers with his own Hands, forc'd his way into the Town. Then follow'd the most bloody and merciless Massacre that ever was heard of, none escaping the fury of the Conquerors but a few whom the *Sidonians* (out of pity to the *Tyrians*, as being their Neighbours) conceal'd and carry'd off in their Ships. The Town was set on Fire, six thousand Soldiers were slain with their Arms in their Hands, and two thousand more Gibbited upon the Sea-Coasts, both to appease *Alexander's* Wrath, and to terrify other Cities from following their Example. Thus was Tyre taken and destroy'd after seven Months Siege, and remain'd ever since an inconsiderable Place, famous only for its former Glory, and the still lasting Monuments of its Antiquity.

From Tyre, *Alexander* March'd towards *Jerusalem* with a design to destroy that City, as *Josephus* informs us, because the Republick of the Jews, which was, in those Days, in a flourishing Condition under the *Persian* Kings, refus'd to submit to, or send him any Succur, as he desir'd, while he sat before Tyre; alledging they had sworn Fidelity to Darius, which they thought not lawful to Violate: But when he came in sight of *Jerusalem*, the High Priest *Jaddus* went out to meet him in his Pontificalibus, attended by a great Number of Priests and Elders in Robes of Ceremony. *Alexander*, as soon as he saw *Jaddus*, alighted from his Horse and worship'd him; and being ask'd by *Parmenio*, What should be the reason of so sudden a Change, considering his design of exterminating that Nation? He answer'd, That the God who appear'd to him in Greece, and encourag'd him to undertake the Expedition of Asia, was clothed like that Priest. So having Embrac'd *Jaddus*, he enter'd *Jerusalem*, caus'd Sacrifices to be offer'd for him in the Temple,



ple, confirm'd the *Jews* in all their former Privileges, made them a free People, and then March'd away, took *Gaza*, where he receiv'd a Wound in the Shoulder ; and enter'd into *Egypt*, which submitted to him without striking a Stroke. From thence he March'd with a select Company of Officers and Soldiers, thro' vast Deserts and scorching Sands 'till he came to the famous Oracle of *Jupiter-Hammon*, where the *Pythia* or Goddess saluted him by the Name of the Son of *Jupiter*, which Appellation *Alexander* not only accepted but also Glory'd in, causing himself to be Worship'd as such : By which Means he spoil'd (as *Curtius* observes) his former and subsequent Glory ; since it is but little Praise-worthy in the gods to overcome Mortal Men. As *Alexander* came back from the Temple of *Jupiter-Hammon*, he caus'd a great City to be built between the Lake *Maræotis* and the *Egyptian* Sea, in the same Place where the Village *Rhacotis* stood ; and call'd it after his own Name *Alexandria*, Famous for many Ages after, for being the Metropolis of *Egypt*, and much more for being the Patriarchal Seat of *St. Mark* the Evangelist.

*Darius*, after his Defeat at *Iffus*, writ several Letters to *Alexander* making him very fair Proposals, and in his last offering him his Daughter *Statira* to Wife with thirty Thousand Talents of Gold, and all that Part of *Asia* which lyes between the *Euphrates* and the *Hellespont*. But it seems nothing less than all his Dominions wou'd satisfie *Alexander's* Ambition. He therefore prepar'd to come to a second Engagement, and brought double the Number of his former Troops into the Field, together with two hundred scythed Chariots : And having March'd from *Babylon*, pass'd the River *Tigris*, and came to *Arbella*, where he left his heavy Baggage. Then pass'd the River *Lycius* distant about eighty *Stadia's* from *Arbella*, and encamp'd between that and another River call'd *Bumado*, in a vast Plain, being resolv'd to fight no more where all his Forces might not engage. By this time *Alexander* was come out of *Egypt*, and had reach'd the River *Euphrates*, which having pass'd, he March'd to the River *Tygris* which he also pass'd but with a great deal of Difficulty, and the Loss of some of his Baggage ; and then mov'd forward in Battle Array to come up with *Darius*, whom he was glad to find encamp'd in the Plains of *Arbella* ; because he understood *Darius* and his great Captains had given out, that he wou'd not have overcome them at *Iffus*, had it not been for the Defiles and narrow Passes whereof he was possess'd. *Alexander's* Army was drawn up much after the same Manner, as at the Battle of *Iffus* ; and consisted of no more Men than at that time. On the other side, *Darius* his Army consisted of twice as many as he had in that Battle, and was now to fight in vast Plains, where he might surround *Alexander's* handful of Men in Comparison, and place twice as many Men, Horse and Foot, as he had in Front and Rear, and on each side of him.

At last the fatal Day being come, and the usual Orations to the Soldiers on both sides pronounc'd, *Darius* order'd the *Massagete* Horse to attack *Alexander's* left Wing, and immediately after, sent the scythed Chariots in full Carrier against the Center of the *Macedonians*, whose Charioteers driving with great Violence disorder'd the first Ranks, and tore in Pieces most of those that were in their Way. But the second Line perceiving the Danger join'd so close together, and made a Rampart of their Bodies and Arms, so that the Chariots were put to a stand, then using their Darts and Lances they stuck down their Drivers, and wounded the Horses, who to shun the Danger turn'd aside, and being gall'd with Darts and Arrows stuck in their



Breasts, Sides and Bellies, ran furiously back upon the *Persians*, tearing them to pieces, and overturning their Chariots, afforded a dismal Spectacle of the Soldiers that were in these fatal Chariots, falling upon the Sythes and Tenters wherewith the said Chariots were arm'd, and tearing their Limbs one from another. *Alexander* perceiving the great Slaughter which the *Persian* Chariots made upon themselves, and the Confusion they put that Part of the Army into, resolv'd to improve so mighty an Advantage : He therefore immediately attack'd them before they cou'd recover of their Consternation, and drove all before him, till he came up with *Darius* ; and just as he was going to set upon him, an *Aid de Camp* came from *Parmenio* to tell him, that the *Enemy* had taken the Baggage ; and that the Royal Captives also wou'd be lost, if not speedily succour'd. *Alexander*, who was always present to himself, bid the *Aid de Camp* go back and tell *Parmenio*, he desir'd him to do his Duty well in his Post, and not to heed the Baggage, charging him to tell him withal, that if they gain'd the Victory, they should have not only their own Baggage, but that of the *Enemy* too : And having so said, attack'd *Darius*. Here a bloody and obstinate Fight was for a great while maintain'd. The *Persians* fighting for their Country, and King, and that before his Face, riding in a lofty Chariot ; the *Macedonians* resolving to Conquer or die for the Glory of *Alexander*, who fought on Horseback at their Head, and shar'd in the Danger with them. And, indeed it was like to go hard with him : For the Prodigious Number of the *Enemies* Cavalry afforded them enough to surround both him and all his Troops, as in Effect they did ; so that he was press'd in Front and Rear and Flank. But his own Penetration and foresight had provided against that Evil. For he had a *Corps de reserve* of *Agrianian* Horse, who coming down opportunely, caus'd those that attack'd *Alexander* in the Rear to face about, and kept them in Play, till *Alexander* and his Gallant *Macedonians* had come up to the very Chariot in which *Darius* rode ; then the Charioteer being run thro' with a Lance, and fallen down, the *Persians* as well as the *Macedonians* believing that *Darius* was slain, a Lamentable Cry and Groan was heard over all the Field of Battle : Whereupon all *Darius* his Friends, and all the Guards that were on his Left Hand forsook his Chariot and ran away. But those on his Right Hand took him in the midst of them, and went off also. Then it was no more a Fight, but a Slaughter ; *Alexander* and the *Macedonians* at their Heels, cutting and hacking them till their Swords were blunted, and their Arms tir'd.

Thus went Matters very successfully in the Right Wing, which *Alexander* commanded, but it was far otherwise in the Left with *Parmenio* : For *Mazeus* one of *Darius* his Generals, press'd the *Macedonians* so grievously in Front and Rear, that there was no possibility left of escaping a Defeat, unless timely reliev'd : Whereupon *Parmenio* sent an *Aid de Camp* to let *Alexander* know the Danger. By the time this *Aid de Camp* came to *Alexander*, he was gone a great way in pursuit of *Darius*, whom he doubted not to over-take, and was sorely griev'd to find himself oblig'd to stop, when he was almost in his Hands ; however he order'd his Men to halt upon this News, and face about, tho' they had so much way to make, that in all probability *Parmenio* and his Men would be routed before they cou'd come up to relieve them : But such was *Alexander*'s good Fortune, that they needed not to precipitate their March : For in that very Moment the News of the Defeat of *Darius* coming to the Ears of *Mazeus* and of his Troops, put him to a stand, and he that wanted but a little of Piercing thro'



thro' the *Macedonians*, stopp'd all of a sudden; then began to give Ground, and in a few Minutes after, ran away in disorder. *Parmenio* was agreeably surpris'd to see this sudden Change, (when he was upon the brink of his Ruin) and blest his Stars for it; and having encourag'd his Men to resume their Spirits, pursued the Enemy, and kept close to their Heels 'till he met *Alexander*, who had like to have fallen into the Hands of a great Body of the Enemy, as he was with a few precipitating his March back to *Parmenio's* Assistance: But the good Fortune that always attended him, did not abandon him in this Distress. For tho' he had but a few Troopers in sight of him, yet he fac'd the Commander of this great Body, and with his Lance threw him down to the Ground; then another, and a third. The Enemy seeing their Leaders cut off, and fearing the *Macedonians* were more Numerous than they cou'd discern, it being then the Dusk of the Evening, betook themselves to their Heels and fled; so that when *Alexander* came up to *Parmenio*, there was not an Enemy upon the vast Plains of *Arbella*, but the Slain and the Wounded, whose Number was so great that they cou'd not well be told. While on the other hand, only three Hundred *Macedonians* were wanting, but a great many more Wounded, of which Number were many great Captains, as *Hephaestion*, *Perdiccas*, *Cannus*, *Menidas* and others. Thus ended the famous Battle of *Arbella*, and with it the Monarchy of the *Persians*, after a long series of mighty and powerful Kings, from *Cyrus* the Great, to this *Darius Codomannus*. It was Fought in the sixth Year of the Reign of *Alexander*; in the sixth and last of *Darius*, and in the second Year of the Hundred and twelfth *Olympiad*.

*Darius*, having thus lost all, came about Midnight to *Arbella*, being oblig'd to take a great Round for fear of falling into the Hands of *Alexander*, and having advis'd with such of his Captains and Officers as cou'd follow him, went away next Morning towards *Media*. *Mazeus* with his scatter'd Troops made the best of his way, and got into *Babylon*. *Alexander* went the next Day to *Arbella*, and seiz'd upon the vast Treasure which *Darius* and his great Captains had left there some Days before the Battle, consisting of four thousand Talents, besides Jewels, and other precious Things.

But the Stench of the Dead causing an Infection, *Alexander* forthwith March'd towards *Babylon*, cross'd the River *Tigris*, and being come with easy Marches in sight of the City, was met by *Mazeus*, together with his Wife and Children, who submitted himself to him, and gave the Keys of the City into his Hands. This Act of *Mazeus* excited all the rest of the *Babylonians* to follow his Example; among others *Bagophanes* the Keeper of the Tower, and of the King's Treasure, was resolv'd not to be behind Hand with him. He therefore came forth, and strow'd the way with Flowers and Garlands, and set upon both sides Silver Altars, each at an equal distance one from another, and burnt Incense and sweet Odours upon them, to perfume the King as he went along. Then *Alexander* enter'd *Babylon* in Triumph, preceded by the Magicians, singing their Country Songs, the *Chaldeans* with *Tubes* and *Telescopes* in their Hands, as marks of their Skill in *Astrology*, by the *Babylonian* Horse, deck'd with exceeding rich Trappings, proper indeed for a Triumph, but of no great use in the Day of Battle; and surrounded by his *Macedonian* Guards till he came to the Royal Palace. The next Day he took an account of the Household Goods and Treasure of *Darius*; and having pass'd thirty four Days in that once Mistress of *Asia* in great *Luxury*, he receiv'd a Reinforcement from *Antipater* in *Greece*, of seven Thousand five hundred Foot and one Thousand Horse.



With these and the rest of his Army he March'd to *Susa* the Ancient Seat of the *Persian* Kings ; where he found a vast Treasure. From *Susa* he went to *Persepolis*, which he allow'd the Soldiers to Plunder and lay waste, and having got drunk yielded to the Solicitations of *Thais* the Harlot, in ordering the Palace to be set on Fire, in the Execution whereof, she had the first Hand.

*Alexander* having now subdu'd all *Persia*, March'd into *Media*, and having receiv'd another Reinforcement of five Thousand Foot, and one Thousand Horse from *Greece* by the Way of *Cilicia*, mov'd towards *Ecbatanis* in Pursuit of *Darius*, who being at this time in that City, determin'd to make the best of his Way towards *Bactria* : But upon second Thoughts concluding that *Alexander* might possibly be there before him, or overtake him at a Disadvantage, he resolv'd to hazard another Battle, and set all upon that Cast of the Dye. He had then in his Camp thirty Thousand choice *Persians*, four Thousand *Bactrians*, and four Thousand Gallant *Grecians*, the Remains of the great Number of hir'd Troops which he had of that Nation at the Battle of *Issus* and *Arbella*. With these, who were indeed choice Troops, and far Superior in Number to those of *Alexander*, he March'd a little Way from *Ecbatanis* with a Design to give *Alexander* Battle. But *Bessus* the Governour of *Bactria*, who Commanded the Troops of that Nation, and *Nabarzanes* the General of the *Persian* Horse, Conspir'd against him, and resolv'd to deliver him up alive into the Hands of *Alexander* ; and to effect this Treachery, they corrupted the greatest part of the *Persians*, and all the *Bactrians* ; the *Grecians* they cou'd not : For they were always faithful to *Darius*, and even offer'd to secure him in the midst of their Quarters, but he unfortunately refus'd their Offer, concluding it was better for him to run the hazard of his Life than suspect the Faith of his own born Subjects. These two Villains having gain'd their Point by the Declaration *Darius* made of his Resolution to put his Life into their Hands, notwithstanding all that was suggested to him of their Treachery, took him and bound him with golden Fetters, strip'd him of his Royal Robes, and put him into a sorry fordid Chariot, cover'd only with Skins.

By this time *Alexander* was within a few Miles of the *Persian* Camp, and being inform'd of the Condition *Darius* was in, by some Deserters, who came on purpose to *Alexander's* Camp in pure pity to their good Master ; he order'd his Troops to March with all expedition to rescue *Darius* out of the Hands of his Treacherous Subjects, being sorry either to take *Darius*, or Conquer him otherwise than fairly in the Field of Battle. *Bessus* and *Nabarzanes* having Intelligence of the Approach of *Alexander's* Van, sent three thousand Men to guard a Pass in his Way. But the *Macedonians* soon cut them all to pieces, and came in sight of the *Persian* Camp. Then *Bessus* and *Nabarzanes* reflecting upon *Alexander's* Virtue and Justice, and concluding that tho' he shou'd not be sorry to have *Darius* given up to him ; yet that, to wipe off the Imputation of unfair Dealing, he wou'd punish their Treachery ; they wounded *Darius* mortally in his Chariot, stuck the Beasts that drew it with Darts, kill'd his Coachman, and fled away ; *Bessus* towards *Bactria*, and *Nabarzanes* towards *Hyrcania*, leaving the rest to shift for themselves. *Darius* his Chariot wandring up and down the Fields, came by chance to a Pond of muddy Water, whither also *Polystratus* one of *Alexander's* Officers came to quench his Thirst, who, as he dipp'd his Helmet into the Water, saw a Chariot near him, with many Darts sticking in the Beasts that drew it ; being curious to know what that might be, went



over to it, and discover'd a Man lying in the Chariot ready to give up the Ghost, and having ask'd *who he was?* *Darius* answer'd that *he was the unfortunate King of Persia, whom his own Subjects Bessus and Nabarzanes had mortally wounded, and left in that miserable Condition;* and having so said, he pray'd *Polystratus* to give him a draught of the said Water, for that he was exceeding thirsty. *Polystratus* brought him the Water in his Helmet, which when *Darius* had drank, he gave him his Hand, and prayed him to return his hearty Thanks to *Alexander* for his Humanity to his Mother, and Wife, and Children; and withal recommended to him *not to suffer his Murder to go unrevenged;* and then expir'd.

When *Alexander* heard of the Murder of *Darius*, he cou'd not contain his Grief or Tears, he ran to the place, took his Body out of the Chariot, covered it with his own Cloak, and sent it to his Mother *Sygigambis* (whom he had left at *Susa*, together with the Children) to be Inter'd with Royal Pomp in the Sepulchre of his Ancestors. Thus ended the great *Darius* his Life, having reign'd only six Years, which were intirely taken up with this War. He was a strong Man, Gallant and stout before he was made King, but being soften'd by the excessive Luxury of his Country, ever since he came to the Crown, was fitter to be Commanded than to Rule: Kind to his Subjects, tender of his Friends, and bountiful to excess; but had the misfortune to govern Nations, who, thro' the Excess of their Riches and Plenty, had enervated their Spirits, and sunk under the weight of their own Greatness.

*Alexander* having thus dispers'd *Darius* his rebellious Troops, March'd into *Hyrkania*, and having with a great deal of Labour and Difficulty subdu'd the Barbarous Nations of that Country, was met by *Artabazus*, who came with his Wife and Children to give himself up. Him *Alexander* receiv'd very kindly, because he was always faithful to his Master *Darius*. Soon after *Nabarzanes* the Traitor submitted also, having first stipulated with *Alexander* for his Life only, which was granted to him upon a false Suggestion, which *Alexander*, was not then able to disprove. Next to *Hyrkania* lay the Country of the *Amazons*, so call'd by the *Greeks*, from *Mazos* a Breast, and *Amazos* without a Breast, because these Women us'd to cut off one of their Breasts, in order to be the better able to shoot their Arrows without offending their Bodies, when the Hand that draws the Cord retorts back upon the Breast. This Nation consisted only of Women, who to propagate their Kind, did use to send at certain Seasons every Year, for as many Men of the Neighbouring Nations as were requisite for their purpose, and to send them back after a Month or six Weeks Commerce, paying them their Hire. The Male Children begotten upon this account they always sent home to their Fathers, or destroy'd; but bred up the Females, cutting off one of the Breasts, for the purpose aforesaid, and training up to Arms such as were of a Masculine Spirit. The Queen of these *Amazons*, at this time, was call'd *Thalestris*: She hearing of the great Exploits of *Alexander*, and of his Approach to her Country, went at the Head of a numerous Army of her own Sex to meet him; and being come in sight of his Camp, order'd her *Amazons* to Halt, and went in a most pompous warlike Dress, attended by three Hundred of her bravest and finest Women up to his Tent. *Alexander* was not a little surpris'd both at the Courage and Assurance of the Woman, and having consider'd her lofty Mein and Stature, and the incomparable Beauty of her Body, ask'd her, *If she came to demand anything of him?* Nothing, says *Thalestris*, but that hearing of your Fame, I shou'd be glad to have



Issue by you, which, if it proves a Son, I shall send to you, and, if a Daughter, keep to succeed me in my Empire. Alexander was a Gentleman of too much Gallantry to refuse such a Favour to a Queen of *Thalestris's* great Beauty, and so kept her thirteen Days to satisfy her Desire. Then he return'd to her Country, and he to the next in his way to *Bactria*, call'd *Parthiena*. Here Alexander continu'd for some time, being detain'd, and busied in subduing this barbarous Nation, and receiving their Submission, as also in detecting a Conspiracy against his Person, carry'd on as was pretended by *Parmenio* his great General, *Philotas* his Son, and several others of his great Officers. But whether it was a real Plot, or an imaginary one, occasion'd upon the account of several Murmurs and hard Words spoken against him for his excessive Drunkenness, and Imitation of the *Persians*, in their Luxury and Debauch'd Lives; he put *Philotas* and several other great Officers of his Army to Death in a most cruel manner, and even sent orders to have *Parmenio*, then in *Media*, treated after the same manner, which were accordingly executed; and then March'd into *Bactria*.

*Bessus* the Traitor, who had Murder'd *Darius* his Master, had got by this time a considerable Number of Troops, and having March'd with them to defend the narrow Passes, by which Alexander was to enter into *Bactria*; resolv'd to give him all the Opposition he cou'd : But upon Alexander's Approach, the *Bactrian* Officers dreading the very Name of Alexander, took *Bessus*, bound him in Chains, and brought him to Alexander, submitting themselves and their Country to his Mercy. When Alexander saw *Bessus* he ask'd him, *What Beastly Nature had possess'd his Breast to Murder a King who had been so kind to him?* To which Question *Bessus* being able to make no Satisfactory Answer; Alexander deliver'd him into the Hands of *Oxatres Darius* his Brother, whom he had made one of his Life Guard, order'd him to Gibbet the Traitor, and stick him all over with Darts to expiate the Murder of his Brother, which was accordingly done. Then Alexander pass'd the River *Tanais*, and defeated the *Scythians* in a bloody Battle upon the Brink of this River. Which done, he March'd against the *Sogdians* and *Massagetes*, whom Fear and Despair soon forc'd to submit. Then moving thro' the Country of the *Dabe* and *Saca*, where his whole Army was like to Perish by a dreadful Tempest, bent his Course to the Indies : But before he arriv'd there, a real Conspiracy against him was discover'd. Alexander, or Philip had introduc'd a Custom of causing the Sons of the great *Macedonian* Lords to wait always by Turns upon the King's Person, and to Watch about his Tent, in the Field, and his Bed, at Home : These were bred up in the most exquisite Arts and Sciences; and serv'd as a Seminary for great Captains and Statesmen. It happen'd then, that as Alexander was one Day hunting, one of these young Noblemen call'd *Hermolaus* stood by him and shot dead a Monstrous big Beast, which the King design'd to kill with his own Hands, having his Bow bent for the Purpose; but being prevented by *Hermolaus*, he caus'd him to be whipp'd for his Rashness. *Hermolaus* conceiv'd so much Indignation at this slavish Usage, as he imagin'd, that he resolv'd to be reveng'd, and drew into the Plot twenty nine more of his Fellows, who all agreed to Murder the King as he was to go to Bed from Table, being attended by none else but themselves. But as Fortune had always favour'd Alexander, the Night that this horrid Regicide was to be committed, he sat up drinking till it was Day light.

Then



Then other young Noblemen, who knew nothing of the Plot, coming to relieve the Conspirators, put them into a terrible Consternation : However they resolv'd to stay, pretending that it was their Business to wait till the King had gone to Bed : But *Alexander* rising from Table, and seeing them waiting, tho' others were come, order'd them to retire and take their Rest, being concern'd they had waited so long, and even giving them some Money as a mark of his Affection. The Design being thus happily Defeated, *Epimenes*, one of the Conspirators, mov'd either by the gracious concern the King express'd for their long watching, or despairing of the rest's keeping their Council, told the whole matter to his Brother *Eurylochus*, who was altogether a Stranger to it, and wonderfully apprehensive by what happen'd to *Philotas* and *Parmenio* before. *Eurylochus* immediately takes his Brother by the Throat, and drags him along to the King's Bed-chamber; alarms all the Guards, and brings him to the Bed-side; awakes the King, and relates the matter to him. *Alexander* hereupon examin'd *Epimenes*, who own'd the Fact; and having learn'd from him, who his Accomplices were, order'd them all to be brought before Him, bating *Calisthenes* the famous Philosopher and Statesman (who it seems was in the nature of Tutor or Governour to all the Macedonian Youth, and even Counsellor to *Alexander*) whom he caus'd to be kept in Custody, there being no more said of him, than that he express'd some Concern for the slavish usage of *Hermolaus*, and inveigh'd against *Alexander's* Cruelty and Pride.

*Hermolaus* being come before the King with the rest of his Associates, spoke with an undaunted Courage, and own'd the Fact, alledging that indeed they design'd to kill the King of the Persians, but not the King of the Macedonians; for that *Alexander* had degenerated from his Kind, by the Pride he conceiv'd in his Heart, upon the Victories obtain'd at the expense and effusion of the Blood of the Macedonians; That he had quite forgot both his Country and Parentage, causing himself, in the Vanity and Ambition of his Heart, to be stil'd the Son of Jupiter, and obliging the Macedonians to prostrate themselves at his Feet, and to adore him as such; that upon the least surmise, he made nothing of Sacrificing to his Cruelty the best of the Macedonians in Blood and Merit; witness the barbarous Murder of *Parmenio* his great Captain and chief Commander, who was sooner stab'd than he heard of any thing laid to his Charge; the Death of *Atalus*, *Philotas*, *Lyncestes*, *Clytus* and others; that as to himself, he had rather Die than Live his Slave, or behold the Slavery to which his Ambition and Cruelty had reduc'd his Freeborn Countrymen.

Tho' *Alexander* did not usually contain his Anger, upon much less Provocation than this, yet he heard out *Hermolaus* with as Serene a Countenance, as if he had not been concern'd in the Matter; nay, and would not suffer any one to interrupt him, tho' some of *Hermolaus's* own Friends endeavour'd it : And when he had made an End, even Condescended to answer every Particular of his Inveective, saying; That, as to his Pride and Ambition, it was all false; That, as to *Hermolaus's* Particular Crime, it was an Ancient Custom, among the Macedonians to Punish such as would behave themselves disrespectfully, as they hunted with their King; and that he being Guilty of that Crime, was whip'd for it. That as to those he had put to Death, he had good Grounds to believe they were Guilty of Conspiring his Death, and that he did Punish them the more severely; for their Ungratitude did by so much the more require it at his Hands, by how much he had exalted them above others; conferring such Honours and Wealth upon them, as made



them equal to Kings. That indeed he was very Sorry for the Death of Clytus, but that all the World might bear him Witness, it was the Intemperance of his own Tongue that gave Occasion to it : And lastly, that, as to his calling himself the Son of Jove, and requiring Divine Worship to be paid him, in Consequence of that Appellation ; he had the Word of the Divine Oracle for it ; and besides, concluded, that nothing cou'd Facilitate his Conquest of so many Nations, more than that they shou'd entertain an Opinion of him, that he was a god, and not a Mortal Man.

Alexander having thus justify'd himself before all his great Lords and Officers, caus'd all the Conspirators to be put to Death in a cruel Manner, and Calisthenes among them to the great Grief of most of the Macedonians ; and then bent his Courie towards the Indies. Being come thither after a long and tedious March, most of the Nations on this side of the River Hydaspes, hearing of his great Actions, submitted to him, and brought him Presents. Some indeed resisted, but were easily defeated. But when he came to that River, all the Obstacles he ever met with seem'd to be nothing in Comparison of the Difficulty of getting over it. The Hydaspes was four Stadia's broad, almost as deep as the Sea, and ran with such Rapidity, wherever it was straighten'd, that neither Man, nor Beast, nor even Ship or Boat cou'd pass over without eminent Danger of being lost. Besides Porus a great and Powerful King, stood on the opposite side with eighty five Elephants of a prodigious bigness, carrying vast Towers upon their Backs with arm'd Men, three hundred scythed Chariots, and thirty Thousand Archers, drawn up in Battle Array, ready to dispute his Landing, in Case he cou'd by any Means get over to them.

Alexander having well consider'd the Difficulty of this Enterprize, and finding it Morally impossible to come at the Enemy by open Force, be-thought him (after many Anxious Reflexions) of a Stratagem which took Effect. There were many Islands in this great River, and among others, one that was at a great Distance from the rest, cover'd with great spreading Trees. This Island Alexander thought very proper for his Purpose, in order to pass over his Men under its shelter, cou'd he but deceive the Enemy, so as to neglect their having an Eye upon it. To compass which, he March'd three or four Miles from it, and encamp'd on the Brink of the River at a Place where it was very narrow, and where the Enemy who always mov'd as he did, and stood over-against him, had a full View of his Camp. Then he pitch'd his Tent with great Magnificence, put on his Royal Robes, caus'd all his Officers and great Captains to put on their richest Apparel and brightest Armour, and made ado, as if he design'd to pass over at this Place. The Enemy on the other side seeing Alexander, whom they cou'd easily distinguish by his Royal Apparel and Attendants, making Preparations to pass over there, contracted all their Forces, and made account, that such of the Macedonians as the rapidity of the River wou'd not carry away, might easily be destroy'd by their Arrows before they cou'd set Foot on Ground. Then Alexander put his Robes and all his other Ensigns of Royalty upon one of his Captains, call'd Attalus, who was just of his pitch, and resembled him much in Face and in the colour of his Hair, and order'd him to appear every Day abroad in the same State, giving Directions, and carrying on the Work, as also to make a great noise and shew on the brink of the River, 'till he shou'd hear from him. Having thus dispos'd Matters in order to conceal his Design from Porus, he March'd by Night with all his choice Troops towards the Island, and having got some Barks  
and



and Boats from the neighbouring Nations, whom he had kindly us'd, waded all his Men over into the Island, and from thence to the other side of the River, without the loss of a Man; and even March'd a considerable part of the way before the Enemy had the least Intelligence of, or imagin'd his passing Over. On the contrary, when their Scouts brought Word *that there was a great Body of armed Men Marching towards them*; Porus concluded it was his Confederate *Abisares*, who was to come with his Troops to join him: But he was soon undeceived upon the approach of the *Macedonians*. Then Porus order'd four thousand Horse, and one hundred Chariots to charge the *Macedonian Phalanx*, while he with his Elephants and Archers, set upon the rest of *Alexander's* Troops. These Chariots carry'd each six Men, who shot their Arrows and darted their Javelins as they ran full Tilt among the *Macedonians*; but did more Mischief to themselves than to the Enemy: For, tho' they disorder'd a little the first Rank of the *Macedonians*, by the violence wherewith they ran in among them; yet their Horses being stuck with Arrows and Lances, began to kick and fling, over-turn'd the Chariots, and dragg'd the Men along in a miserable manner over the Fields, and even into the River. The *Macedonians* having thus got shut of an Enemy that caus'd them more Fear than Harm, recover'd their Spirits, and join'd heartily in Battle. Porus mounted upon a prodigious big Elephant glittering with Gold and Silver, seeing his Chariots destroy'd, distributed his Elephants, placing some in the Center, and some on each Wing, and March'd in order to attack the *Macedonians*. Alexander on the other side beholding the monstrous bigness of these Beasts, and the vast big Towers on their backs, said to his Friends: *Now I see a Danger equal to my Mind. We are to deal with Beasts and Gallant Men.* And then looking upon *Cenon*, one of his great Captains; *When I (says he) together with Ptolemy, Perdiccas and Hepheistion attack the left Wing, and you see me deeply engaged, then move forward with the right Wing, and set upon those you see disorder'd. Then Antigonus and thou Leonatus, and Tauron rush not in among the Enemy, but attack the Front. Our long Spears cannot be better us'd than against these Beasts, and them that govern them, stick the Beasts with your Spears, and they will throw down the Men whom they carry. They are a doubtful sort of help in Battle, and usually do more mischief to their own, than to the Enemy: For they must be driven on against their Enemy with Stripes and Stings; but fear makes them turn violently upon their own Men, to shew the danger that is before them.* And having so said, he spur'd his Horse, and set upon the Enemy. *Cenon*, as he was order'd moved against the left Wing, and the *Macedonian Phalanx* broke in upon the Center. On the other side, Porus order'd the Elephants to move against the *Macedonian* Horse; but these Animals being dull, and of a slow Pace, could not come up'till the Foot were disorder'd: However they stood their ground for a great while like Rocks immoveable, receiving the Arrows and Darts of the *Macedonians* in their Bodies, while the Archers in the Towers upon their Backs discharg'd Showers of Arrows upon the *Macedonians*; who perceiving there was no good to be done at a distance, laid down their Bows and Arrows, and took certain great Axes made like Scythes, which they prepar'd for the purpose, rush'd in upon the Elephants, and cut their Legs and Hams. Then the Elephants began to roar and fling, turn'd upon their own Foot, and threw down their Towers, affording a miserable Spectacle of the Men they carry'd before, but now drag'd over the Fields in a woful condition, easier to be imagin'd than express'd.

Bbbbb

Porus



*Porus* seeing his Men and Elephants driven like Sheep; did not however lose his Courage, but renew'd the Fight with the few Elephants and Guards that attended his Person. He was mounted upon one of these Beasts, which either by Instinct, or by being taught to do so, flew at every one that durst approach his Master, and tore them to Pieces, while *Porus* himself flew several with his own Hands; but being wounded in several places, he began to languish. The *Indian* that govern'd his Elephant observing the Wounds of his Master, turn'd the Elephant about, and began to fly. *Alexander* immediately pursu'd him; but his Horse being Shot under him, he was forced to take another. This Accident gave *Porus* an Opportunity of making his Escape, had his Elephant been able to carry him off; but being grievously Wounded in several places, cou'd only walk with a slow Pace, so that *Alexander* came soon up with him, and perceiving the Obstinacy wherewith he and his few Men resisted, order'd his Troops to spare no Man of them. So *Porus* having receiv'd more Wounds began to fall down, which the *Indian* that govern'd his Elephant perceiving, caus'd the Elephant to kneel, as usual, when Men mount, or light off them. The rest of the Elephants that carry'd the great Lords who were about *Porus* seeing his Elephant kneel, did the like; it being, it seems, the Custom that when the King's Elephant kneels, those that attend him shou'd do the same. Then *Alexander* seeing the Enemy yield by this Action, ordered his Troops to strip them of their fine Cloaths; but when they came to lay Hands on *Porus*, his Elephant rush'd upon them, and tore to pieces such as wou'd have seiz'd upon him. Then went back to his Master, and bent his Knees and Shoulders, in order to take him up and flee with him; but *Porus* being grievously Wounded, was not able to stand, which the poor Elephant perceiving, stood by him and receiv'd all the Darts and Arrows that were cast at him, in his Body, 'till he fell down dead. Then *Alexander* order'd *Porus* to be put into a Chariot, and seeing the miserable Condition he was in, being mov'd with Pity more than Hatred, and observing that he open'd his Eyes, asked him in a compassionate Tone, *What madness had possess'd his Mind in offering to resist him; since he could not be ignorant of the Fame of his great Actions?* Since you desire to be Inform'd (saith *Porus*) I will answer with the same freedom you ask. It was because I did not believe any Man's Strength to surpass mine own. I knew mine own, but did not by Experience know yours: Now the event of the War shews that you are Stronger. However, I do not esteem myself unhappy, because I am next to you. Then *Alexander* ask'd him again, *What he judged the Conqueror ought to do in the Case?* That (saith *Porus*) which this Day, in which you have experienc'd how frail human Felicity is, will suggest unto you. These modest Answers prevail'd more upon *Alexander*, than if he had begg'd his Life and Kingdom. For he esteem'd that the greatness of his Soul, which even the last of Misfortunes was not able to shake, did not only deserve Mercy, but was even worthy of all Honour; and therefore took as much Care to have him timely Cured of his Wounds, as if he had received them in his Service; and when this was effected, received him into the Number of his Friends, and bestowed a more ample Kingdom upon him than his own.

*Alexander* having thus happily finish'd the War with *Porus*, understood that there was a mighty Powerful Nation beyond the River *Ganges*, and forasmuch as this River was excessive broad and deep; he caus'd several tall Ships to be built in the River *Hydaspes*, in order to pass his Troops over the River *Ganges*, where this River falls into it. But the Design was no sooner



fooner made known than an Universal Murnur spread over all his Camp, as if he had intended to lead the *Macedonians* out of the World. *Alexander* hereupon made a long and fawning Speech to them, setting forth the Necessity of conquering that Nation, in order to secure the rest of his Conquests; and telling them, *that the Indians were a soft Effeminate People, flowing with Riches and Plenty; that the Spoil and Plunder of all the Nations which they had hitherto Conquer'd, were but Lumber in Comparison of the Gold and Pearls, and Pretious Stones, wherewith that Land abounded;* and concluded, *that in Case they wou'd not follow him, he was resolv'd to go alone and finish his Days by their Arms, sooner than it shou'd be said, he durst not encounter a People no less Famous for their Effeminacy and Weakness than for their Riches and Wealth.* But all to no Purpose, for the *Macedonians* both Officers and Soldiers absolutely refus'd to go a step further. Then *Alexander* in Rage shut himself up in his Tent for two Days, and wou'd not suffer any of them to see him; and finding that the *Macedonians* persisted still in their Resolution, he order'd the Elephants that carry'd the Baggage, to March by Land, and sail'd down the River with his Troops till he came to the Country of the *Sobians*. Here *Alexander* lost most of his Ships, and was himself like to be lost also by a violent Current, which sunk and dash'd his Ships against the Rocks; but having with much Difficulty surmounted the Danger of the Water, and with little or none at all subdu'd the People, he came to the Land of the *Oxydracæ*, where he was like to end his Days by his own Rashness. For having besieg'd and carry'd the Capital City of these Barbarians, which they set on Fire, when they cou'd no longer hold it, he attack'd a very strong Tower into which most of them had fled, and having no other Means of coming at them, in the Heat of his Pursuit but a single Ladder which offer'd by Chance, he Mounted it the first himself, and was follow'd by so many, that by the time he got to the Top of the Wall the Ladder broke, and all fell down back but himself. The *Macedonians* seeing their King expos'd to the Enemy's Shot, which came upon him like Hail, bawl'd out to him, and beg'd he wou'd leap down to them, stretching out their Hands and spreading their Clothes to receive him: But *Alexander*, instead of leaping down to them, leap'd among the Enemy into the Tower, where in all likelihood he might be oppress'd or taken alive before he cou'd recover of his fall. But, by good Luck, he so poiz'd his Body, that he fell upon his Feet, and perceiving a great spreading Tree nigh the Place where he leap'd down, put his Back to it, that he might not be surrounded, and began to defend himself, opposing his Shield to the Darts and Arrows of the *Barbarians*, and holding his Sword in his Hand. But being overwhelm'd with Shot and Stones, he began to sink down, which the *Barbarians* perceiving gave a Shout, and ran to Spoil him of his fine Armour. *Alexander* hereupon, as if he had recover'd from Death resuming his Spirits, laid the two foremost of them at his Feet, with two Strokes of his Sword. The rest durst not Approach him, but with their Bows at a little Distance began to pelt him a-new.

There was among these *Barbarians* a certain great *Indian* with a Bow and Arrows of wonderful bigness. This Fellow bent his Bow, and Shot *Alexander* in the Right Side with such Force, that the Arrow pierced his Breast-Plate, and stuck in his Body, so that he fell down upon his Knees. The Fellow seeing him fall, ran over to him; but paid for his Rashness: For as he was going to lay Hands upon him, *Alexander* thrust his Sword thro' his Body, and laid him with the other two. Just as this *Barbarian*



drop'd, *Peucestas* having by some means got over the Wall, came to the place where *Alexander* was Engag'd; then *Timaeus*; after him, *Leonatus* and *Aristonius*. The *Barbarians* observing, by the Obsequiousness of these Men to *Alexander*, that he was their King, forsook the Walls and set upon them with all their Might, concluding, that when these four were born down, and the King taken and kill'd, they had nothing to fear from the rest of his Army. But that, which they intended for their safety prov'd their ruin. For the *Macedonians* with Croes and Pick-Axes pierc'd the Wall, got thro' it, and made a terrible Slaughter of all that came in their Way, till they reach'd the King, who was in that very Minute to be seiz'd upon, his four brave Friends, *Peucestas*, *Timaeus*, *Leonatus* and *Aristonius* being Mortally wounded and laid at his Feet. Then follow'd a bloody Massacre of Man, Woman and Child. The King being brought to his Tent with the Arrow sticking in his side, was in eminent Danger of his Life : For it was observ'd, that the Arrow being bearded, cou'd not be drawn out, except the Wound were made larger. This being told to the King, he order'd the Chirurgeons and Physicians to enlarge the Wound; and being told also, that it was requisite he shou'd be ty'd with Cords during the Operation, because the least Motion of his Body might soil all, he answer'd, that he, who cou'd hold himself, needed not be held by any thing else. And so having undergone the Operation, he neither mov'd his Body, nor seem'd to make the least motion with Eyes or Face, notwithstanding the Excess of the Pain.

In seven Days after *Alexander* being pretty well of his Wound, order'd his Army to March on by the side of the River *Hydaspes*, while he himself sail'd down in a Galley to the Place where this River joins the *Ganges*, which discharges it self into the *Indian Sea*. In his way, many Kings and Princes came with Presents to meet him, and make their Subjection; and others, who presumed to resist were soon defeated. Being come to the *Ganges*, his Curiosity led him to see the *Indian Sea*, which he concluded to be the Bounds of the Earth, at least wou'd have others to believe so. And having sail'd down that famous River till he came into the Main Ocean, returned, and erected Monuments and Trophies of his Victories, with a *Non plus ultra*, after the manner of *Hercules*. Then he ordered *Nearchus* and *Onesicritus*, two famous Sea Captains to sail on the *Indian Coasts*, to make new Discoveries, and when they came to the Mouth of the *Euphrates* to sail up that River, and meet him at *Babylon*. And being resolved to return to that City, in order to pass from thence into *Africa*, and then to *Gades*, *Spain*, *France*, *Germany*, *Italy*, *Epirus*, and all the rest of the Earth, which he seem'd to have swallow'd up in his Imagination; he Marched thro' the Lands of the *Arabites*, and the *Gedossians*, who submitted to him, and came to *Caramania*. From thence passing thro' *Persia*, came to *Pasargadas*, where the Governour of that City presented him with a vast Present of Gold, which was laid up in the Mausoleum of *Cyrus* the Great. Then he March'd into *Media*, came to *Ecbatana*, and from thence to *Babylon*; little imagining that this was to be the last Scene of his Life.

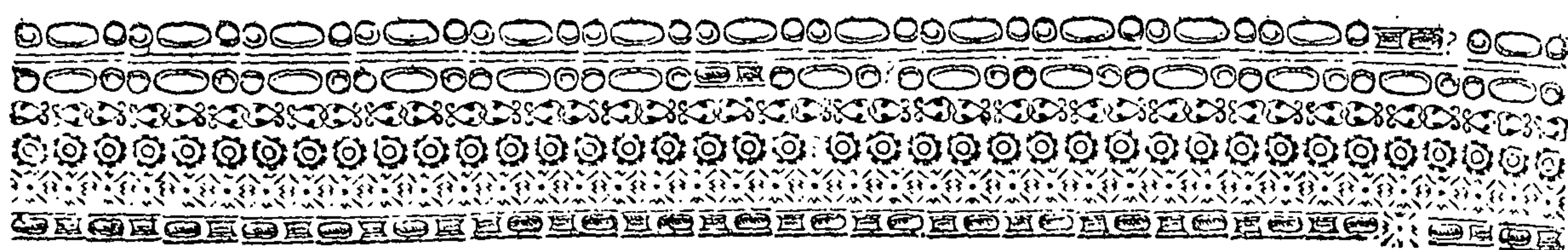
Here *Alexander* dismiss'd such of his Veteran Troops as were worn out with Age, or disabled by Wounds, and sent them Home laden with rich Presents, under the Command of *Craterus* and order'd *Antipater* to receive them with Honour, and to Assign them the first Place in the *Theatres*, and Publick Spectacles, where they shou'd sit Crown'd with Laurel, as also, that *Antipater* himself shou'd come to him to *Babylon*, with a Select Num-  
ber



ber of the *Macedonian* Youth to supply the Place of those he had sent Home, and leave *Craterus* in his Room. This last Step was the Downfall of *Alexander*. For *Antipater* knowing very well by the frequent Accusations and Complaints, which *Olympias Alexander's* Mother sent to *Alexander* against him, that he wou'd lose his Head so soon as he arriv'd at *Babylon*; wrote to his three Sons *Cassander*, *Philip* and *Jollas*, to make away with the King, and to communicate the Secret to none else but his good Friend *Thessalus* one of *Alexander's* Physicians. These Villains having put their Heads together determin'd to poison the King, which they concluded to be easy to effect, *Philip* and *Jollas* being his Tasters. It happen'd then as *Alexander* was every Day Feasting and Carousing among his Friends, waiting for *Antipater* and the *Macedonian* Youth, that *Thessalus*, this wicked Physician made a great Feast, to which he Invited the King. *Philip* and *Jollas* having prepar'd rank Poison in a Glas of fair Water, by the help, no doubt of *Thessalus*, waited their opportunity, when the King shou'd be far gone in Drink, to execute their wicked Design. And indeed *Alexander* by his intemperate Drinking, which was one of his greatest Faults, soon gave them the Opportunity: For being over-heated with Wine he still call'd for more; and the cursed Traitors fill'd a Cup of Wine, and having tasted thereof first, slyly convey'd the Poison into it afterwards, and gave it to Him. *Alexander* having drank of the Cup, gave a screech, as if his Heart had been pierced with a Dart; and being carried to his Bed, all Men ascribed it only to the excess of his Drinking, and concluded that when he had digested his Liquor, all wou'd be over: But being excessive ill, and, for the most part speechless four Days, the Soldiers rush'd into the Palace, and desir'd to see the King. *Alexander* before inform'd hereof order'd them to be admitted, and notwithstanding the intolerable pain of his Distemper, he sat up till he had saluted the last Man of them; and said to his great Captains; *Where will ye get, when I am gone, a King worthy of such Men?* And having so said, he repos'd upon his Pillow, and order'd his Friends to draw near for his Speech began to fail him. Then he took his Ring off his Finger and gave it to *Perdiccas*, charging him to bury his Body in the Temple of *Jupiter-Hammon*. Being ask'd by his Friends *To whom wou'd he leave his Kingdom*; he answer'd, (if we believe *Curtius*) *To him that should prove the best among them*. And being ask'd again by *Perdiccas*, *When wou'd he have Divine Honour bestow'd upon him?* *When* (saith he) *ye shall be all Happy*. These were *Alexander's* last Words: For immediately after he gave up the Ghost, in the thirty third Year of his Age, and the twelfth of his Reign; the first six Years whereof he pass'd in subduing all *Greece* and *Thracia*, and the other six in Conquering almost all *Asia* and *Egypt*.

Thus ended *Alexander*, the Terror and Wonder of the World. A Man of such Endowments both of Body and Mind, as was not to be parallel'd, scarce to be imitated; of such Strength of Body, as equall'd those whose only Virtue consisted in Strength: So present to himself in the most difficult Circumstances, as always to hit upon the best Expedient; rash in his Attempts, but successful to a Prodigy; Liberal to excess, but Cruel beyond measure to those that were ungrateful to him. Ambitious of Glory to that degree, as to despise Death and Danger to compass it; Compassionate to the Afflicted; Courteous and affable to all People; a great Lover of his Friends, Eloquent in Speech, graceful in his Mein and Carriage, fond of Wine, but indifferent for Women. In a Word, to speak humanly (if we except his unmeasurable *Ambition*) Nature had scarce ever fram'd a Man of more noble Qualities, or fitter to govern the Empire of the World. Ccccc Chap.





## C H A P. II.

*Of the Divisions among Alexander's Captains in the Choice of a Successor. Arideus is declar'd King. In a few Years after, the Empire is divided, and the Respective Governours take upon them the Stile and Title of Kings.*



ALEXANDER had two Wives, *Roxana* the Daughter of *Oxyatres*, and *Statira* the Daughter of *Darius*; and one Concubine call'd *Barfine*, Daughter to *Artabazus* the *Persian*. By this Concubine he had a Son call'd *Hercules*, and *Roxana* was with Child when he dy'd, and in some time after brought forth a *Posthumus* Son nam'd *Alexander*. He had likewise a Bastard Brother call'd *Arideus* the Son of *Philinna* a *Larisian*, Concubine to his Father *Philip*. Immediately after the Death of *Alexander*, his great Captains and Officers met together in order to Consult about the Election of a Successor. The Chief of these were *Perdiccas*, *Nearchus*, *Ptolomy* the Son of *Lagus*, *Aristonus*, *Leonnatus*, *Meleager* and *Pytho*n. *Perdiccas*, to whom *Alexander* gave his Ring or Signet, when he was in his Death-bed, spoke first, and recommended to them to reserve the Succession for *Alexander's* Issue by *Roxana*, in Case it prov'd a Son, and in the mean time, to chose a Head by whom they shou'd be Govern'd. *Nearchus* oppos'd him, and mov'd that (forasmuch as it was uncertain what the Issue of *Roxana* might be, and that the Weight of so great an Empire was too great a Load for the Shoulders of an Infant, tho' it shou'd prove a Son) *Hercules* shou'd immediately be declar'd King. This Motion was receiv'd with Indignation by the whole Assembly, the *Macedonians* scorning to be Govern'd by a *Persian* Bastard. *Ptolomy* mov'd, that the Publick Affairs of the Empire shou'd be Manag'd by a Select Number of Officers; but this was not agreeable to the greater Part of the Assembly. *Aristonus* propos'd, that *Perdiccas*, to whom *Alexander* had given his Ring, as a Mark of the Choice he made of him, shou'd be forthwith Proclaim'd King. Most of the Assembly gave in to this Motion, and March'd before *Perdiccas*, praying him to take up the Ring and the Royal Ensigns, which he had lay'd down upon *Alexander's* Throne, when the Assembly met. *Perdiccas* being in doubt what to do, delay'd a little to see if they wou'd Press him to it again. In the mean time, *Meleager*, who was no Friend to *Perdiccas*, made a long Speech, in which he inveigh'd heavily against him; and having got *Pytho*n on his side, propos'd *Arideus*, the Son of *Philip* and Brother to *Alexander*; whom the Soldiers immediately Proclaim King, and the Officers Confirm, assigning

Per-



*Perdiccas* as Guardian to him, by reason of the Weakness of his Understanding; for it seems he was **not** many Degrees from a Natural.

Then the Provinces were divided among the Officers, in order to be Govern'd by them as Rulers under this new King. *Egypt* fell to *Ptolomy* the Son of *Lagus* either by Lot, or some secret Contrivance: But *Perdiccas* envying him the Possession of so large and plentiful a Country, gave the Command of *Cappadocia* and of the other Provinces of *Asia* to *Eumenes*, and March'd himself at the Head of an Army towards *Egypt*, carrying *Arideus* and the Posthumous Child *Alexander* along with him, in order to make War upon *Ptolomy*. But in crossing the *Nile* he took no care of his Soldiers, so that some of them were swallow'd up by the Waves, and others devour'd by Crocodiles; neither did *Perdiccas* himself escape: For he was kill'd by some Horsemen that were probably of his own Troops, at the End of a Regency of three Years.

By the Interest of *Ptolomy*, *Python* was elected in the room of *Perdiccas*; but was so disturb'd by the Calumnies of *Euridice*, Wife to *Arideus*, that he resign'd his Government, and *Antipater* succeeded him. *Antipater* gave *Antigonus* the Command of the Army, to make Head against *Eumenes*, who being left in *Asia* by *Perdiccas*, had kill'd *Craterus* in the Field, and was declar'd an Enemy by the Army. *Antigonus* conquer'd *Eumenes*, not by Force, but by Stratagem, and Besieg'd him in the Castle of *Nora*. But *Antipater* being Dead, and *Polysperchon* the antientest of *Alexander's* Officers, left Successor, *Antigonus* began to aspire at the whole Empire, and in order to make *Eumenes* his Friend, broke up the Siege, and took an Oath of him, which *Eumenes* in *Antigonus's* Absence, accommodated to his own Meaning.

In the mean time, *Cassander*, the Son of *Antipater* concerted Measures for possessing himself of *Macedonia*, and enter'd into a League with *Ptolomy* and *Antigonus*, the latter of whom promis'd to imploy all his Interest on his behalf; and pretending a great deal of Friendship for him; thinking thereby to have a fairer Opportunity of making himself Master of *Asia*. *Polysperchon*, in order to make a stronger Interest against *Cassander*, makes *Eumenes* his Friend, whom *Olympias* had frequently intreated by Letters, to stand by the Royal Family. *Eumenes* enlarg'd the number of his Forces, by Marching into the upper Provinces, where the Governours Join'd him with an Army of Eighteen thousand seven hundred Foot, and four thousand six hundred Horse. *Antigonus* pursu'd him, and came to an Engagement in the Country of the *Parateceni*, and lost several of his Men; but the Victory was doubtful. After this, the War was carried on slowly for some time by Stratagems. At last they came to a second Battle, in which *Eumenes* obtained the Victory; but was soon after basely betray'd by a Party of his own Men, deliver'd up to *Antigonus* with his Hands ty'd behind his Back, and after three Days Fasting, put to Death.

*Olympias* being brought back by *Polysperchon*, and *Æacidas* King of the *Molossi*, to *Macedonia*, together with *Alexander* her Grandson, made away King *Arideus* with his Wife *Euridice*, the Daughter of that *Amyntas*, whom *Philip*, his Uncle and Guardian, outed of his Kingdom, and *Alexander* robb'd of his Life. *Olympias* did likewise Murder *Nicanor*, the Brother of *Cassander*, and some Hundreds more of his Friends. *Cassander* March'd from the *Peloponnesus* with an Army, and block'd up *Olympias* in *Pydna*. At last she was forc'd to surrender herself, and *Cassander* deliver'd her to those, whose Friends she had cruelly put to Death, to be pu-



nish'd after the same manner. In the mean time *Antigonus* did in the *East*, whatever he pleased. He took off the Head of *Python* Governour of *Media*, for plotting against him; and so frighted *Seleucus* Deputy Governour of *Babylon*, by calling him to give Account of his Money, that he fled into *Egypt*, accompanied only by fifty Horse.

*Seleucus* was very well receiv'd by *Ptolomy*, and manag'd Matters so, that an universal Confederacy was concluded against *Antigonus*. They demanded that *Cappadocia* and *Lycia* shou'd be given to *Cassander* the Governour of *Caria*; *Phrygia* adjacent to the *Hellespont*, to *Lyfimachus*; all *Syria* to *Ptolomy*; and *Babylon*, to *Seleucus*; and that the above-mention'd Governours, together with the others, that were outed of their Governments, shou'd have a share of the Treasure that came into his Hands after the Death of *Eumenes*. *Antigonus* rejected all these Conditions of Peace, and having entred into a League with *Polysperchon*, apply'd himself wholly to the Management of his own Affairs.

*Ptolomy* having pacify'd *Cyprus* and *Cyrene*, defeated *Demetrius*; *Antigonus* his Son, in a bloody Battle fought near *Gaza*, a Town in *Celestria*. *Seleucus* return'd to *Babylon* with eight hundred Foot, and twenty Horse, and with these made himself Master of the Town. After that, he increas'd his Forces, and possess'd himself of *Susiana*, *Media*, and other Countries; and then took upon him the Title of King; upon which account some Historians date the *Æra* of the *Seleucidae*, or the Race of *Seleucus* from this Year; it being the twelfth after the Death of *Alexander*. *Antigonus* sent his Son *Demetrius* against *Seleucus*; in opposition to whom *Ptolomy* sent an Army under the Command of *Calles*, one of his Generals, to beat him out of *Syria*: But *Demetrius* defeated him, and by so doing wip'd off the former Discredit. He also took *Babylon*, which the Enemy had forsaken: But the time prescribed by his Father being elaps'd, he return'd to the Sea; and as he lay before *Holicarnassus* was beaten by *Ptolomy*, and so oblig'd to bid an Eternal Adieu to the upper Provinces.

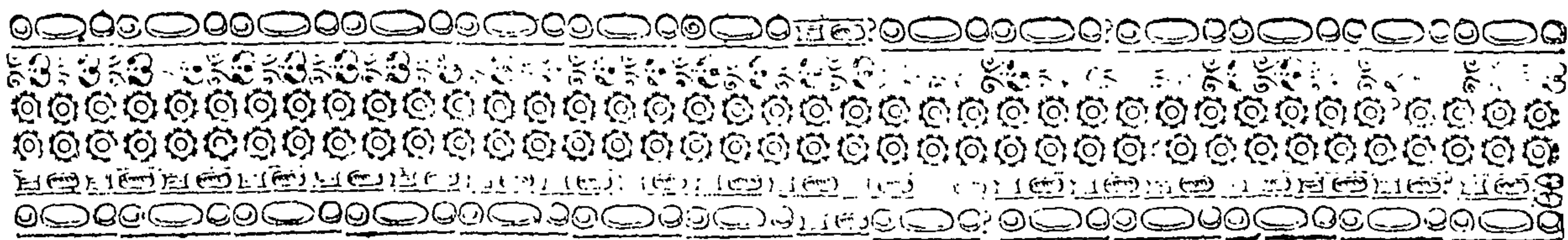
Soon after, a League was concluded between *Ptolomy*, *Lyfimachus*, *Cassander* and *Antigonus* upon these Terms, viz. That *Cassander* shou'd have the Command of Europe, *Lyfimachus* continue Master of *Thracia*, *Ptolomy* retain *Egypt* and the other Countries he was already possess'd of, till *Alexander* the Son of *Roxana* shou'd be of Age; and that *Antigonus* shou'd Command *Asia* and give Laws to the Grecians. This League quickly came to nothing, for every one catch'd what he cou'd come at; which they were the more capable to do, because he that was their Master and seem'd to be over them all; was taken off. For *Cassander* understanding that the People were best affected to *Alexander*, and spoke openly of setting him upon his Father's Throne, took Care that both the Mother and the Son shou'd be secretly made away. Thus was the Poor *Posthumus* Son of *Alexander* the Great cut off, thirteen Years after his Father's Death.

*Hercules* the other of *Alexander's* Sons, whom the *Macedonians* look'd upon as Spurious, being then seventeen Years Old, was call'd from *Pergamus* to *Macedonia* by *Polysperchon*, who envy'd the Principality of *Macedonia* to *Cassander*. But when it was drawing towards a Battle, *Cassander* by large Promises perswaded *Polysperchon* to cut off the Youth. *Cleopatra* also having rejected *Antigonus*, who Courted her, as having a greater Affection to *Ptolomy*, and upon that Account designing to flee from *Sardis*, was taken off by his Means. Soon after, his Son *Demetrius* rescu'd *Athens* from the Clutches of *Demetrius Phalareus*, and defeated *Menelaus*, *Ptolomy's*



my's General, in *Cyprus*, and pursued him to *Salamina*, where he block'd him up. *Ptolomy* himself came to relieve him, but had the Mortification to lose eight thousand Men, with his whole Fleet, bating eight Ships, with which he fled to *Egypt*, leaving both the Town and the Island to *Demetrius*. *Antigonus* puffed up by the Glory of this Victory, accepted of the Regal Title and Diadem, tendered to him by his Friends, and confer'd the same Honour upon *Demetrius* his Son. On the other Hand, the *Egyptians*, that they might not seem to despair of their Interest, did likewise declare *Ptolomy* their King. In like manner, *Cassander* and *Lysimachus* were invested with the same Dignity by their respective Adherents, the Off-spring of *Alexander* being now totally extinguish'd.

Thus, at last, was the Empire of *Alexander* the Great rent in Pieces, and possess'd by his great Captains. *Seleucus* surnam'd *Nicator*, or the Victorious, took to himself *Media*, *Susiana* and *Babylonia*; *Antigonus*, possess'd himself of the rest of *Asia*; *Ptolomy* the Son of *Lagus*, of all *Egypt*; *Lysimachus*, of *Thracia* and the Countries wash'd by the *Hellespont*; and *Cassander*, of *Macedonia* and all its Dependents. And forasmuch as *Seleucus* was the first that put on the Royal Diadem, and out-lived all the rest, and that the *Seleucidae*, or Race of *Seleucus* were the most famous at least in wickedness of them all, and continu'd the Scepter Royal in their Family much longer than any other of the said Captains (bating that of *Ptolomy*) I shall continue my Chronological Account in his Line, and in that of his Successors to the Days of the *Romans*, borrowing the Account, I shall give of their Lives and Actions, and of the Years of their Reigns indifferently from the Ancient Historians, without giving the Reader the trouble of looking into the Margin for their Names, there being little or no Difference among the Ancient Writers concerning their Actions, or the Years of their Reigns.



### C H A P. III.

*Of Seleucus and his Successors, and their Wars with the Neighbouring Kings, to the Death of Antiochus the Great.*



**S**ELEUCUS surnam'd *Nicator* or the Victorious; from the great Victories which he obtain'd over several Nations, was the Son of *Antiochus* and *Laodice*. He was first Marry'd to *Apame*, and had by her a Son call'd *Antiochus*; and afterwards to *Stratonice* the Daughter of *Demetrius*. He built four Magnificent Cities, or rather repair'd them from Poor Insignificant Towns. The first, he call'd *Antioch*, after the Name of his Father *Antiochus*.

This Town was call'd *Riblatb* in the Days of *Pharao Necho*, and in the Days of *Nabuchodonosor*: For it was here *Pharao Necho* bound *Joachas* King of *Juda* in Fetters, and *Nabuchodonosor* put out the Eyes of *Sedechus*, as

D d d d

we



we read in the 4th. Book of *Kings*, Chap. 24. and 25. *Antioch* was Famous, 1st. For that the Disciples of JESUS CHRIST, who being before call'd in Derision and Contempt *Nazareans* and *Galileans*, were surnam'd *Christians* first in this City, as we read in the *Acts* of the Apostles Chap. 11. 2d. For its being the *Patriarchal See* of Asia, as *Rome* was that of *Europe*, and *Alexandria* of *Egypt* and *Africa*, the then three known Parts of the World : But with this Difference, that *Rome* was the first and Chief, as being founded by St. *Peter*, the Prince of the Apostles, as St. *Jerome* and St. *Chrysostom* and other Antient Fathers call him. *Alexandria*, the second; as being founded by St. *Mark* the Evangelist and Disciple of St. *Peter*, sent thither by him from *Rome* to that Purpose ; and *Antioch*, the third ; being also founded by St. *Peter*, who remov'd from thence, and left St. *Evdrius* his Disciple to Govern it. Probably the reason why the second Place was given to *Alexandria*, was upon Account of the Excellency and Preheminence of an Evangelist above a Disciple, such as *Evdrius* was, St. *Mark* being over and above an Evangelist.

The second City built or repaired by *Seleucus*, was *Seleucia*, so call'd after his own Name. The third, *Apamea*, after the Name of his Wife *Apame*. This City was also Famous in Antiquity for its being near the Village call'd *Paneada*, where the Woman, whom CHRIST had cur'd of a Bloody Flux erected two Brazen Images, the one representing herself upon her Knees, and the other standing strait upon a low Pedestal representing CHRIST stretching forth his Hand to her ; at the Foot whereof there grew every Year a certain Herb, which when it became so high as to touch the Hem of the Robe or Garment of the Image, cur'd all Sorts of Distempers, as *Eusebius* tells us in the 7th. Book of his Ecclesiastical History, Chap. 14. and affirms, that both these Images stood in the said Village in his Days, and had been seen by him. The fourth was *Laodicea*, so call'd after the Name of his Mother, fam'd for the Admonitions given by St. *John* the Evangelist to its Bishop, as we read in the *Revelations* Chap. 3. 14, 15.

*Seleucus* had not long worn the Royal Diadem when he had occasion to have Recourse to Arms, in order to keep it upon his Head : For *Antigonus* being pufft up by his late Success and Victory over *Ptolomy*, began to entertain Hopes of turning him out of *Egypt*.

*Seleucus* knowing very well the Ambitious Designs of *Antigonus*, and wisely reflecting, that if he shou'd Conquer *Egypt*, he wou'd not stop there; enter'd into a League with *Ptolomy*, *Lysimachus* and *Cassander*, in order to repress the Insolence of *Antigonus*. Accordingly the next Spring the Forces of these Princes were led forth to a fatal Battle, consisting of sixty four Thousand Foot, fifteen hundred Horse, four hundred Elephants, and one hundred and twenty Chariots. On the other side, *Antigonus* appear'd at the Head of an Army of seventy Thousand Foot, ten Thousand Horse, and seventy five Elephants ; and boasted that with the throw of a Stone he wou'd disperse that Convention of Kings, like a Flock of Birds : But in the time of Battle, he became very sad and talk'd with some Anxiety to his Son *Demetrius*, whom he recommended to his Army : In fine the Battle was fought at *Ipsus*, a Town in *Phrygia*, in which *Demetrius* wretchedly ruin'd his Father's Interest in pursuing *Antiochus* the Son of *Seleucus*, whom he had put to flight, so far, that the Elephants, intercepted his return ; so that he cou'd neither help his own Troops ; nor assist his Father, who waited long for Relief, and was at last forc'd to submit to Fate, being overpower'd by the Darts of the Enemy, and so dy'd in the twenty third Year



Year after the Death of *Alexander*, and the sixth after he had taken upon him the Title of King.

The Conquerors divided the Dominions of *Antigonus* among themselves; but it seems *Ptolomy* and *Seleucus* got the greater Part, and the Differences they had concerning the Division of the Spoil were left undetermin'd to their Successors. *Ptolomy* possess'd himself of *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and soon after of *Cyrene*, and gave his Daughter *Arfinoe* in Marriage to *Lyfimachus*. *Seleucus*, soon after this Battle, having repossest'd himself of *Babylon*, turn'd his Arms against the *Indians*, whom he in a short time brought under Subjection; and his Wife *Apame* being dead, Marry'd *Stratonice* the Daughter of *Demetrius* Son to the late *Antigonus* King of *Asia*.

Next Year *Cassander* King of *Macedonia* dy'd of a Dropsy, his Body being terribly over-run with Lice, after he had Reign'd nineteen Years. He left three Sons by *Thesalonice* Daughter to *Philip*; Namely *Philip*, *Antipater* and *Alexander*. *Philip* succeeded his Father, but dy'd soon after of a Consumption; *Antipater* kill'd his Mother, because *Alexander* was her Favourite; tho' she Conjur'd him by her Breasts which he suck'd to spare her Life. Upon this Wicked Action the two Brethren fell out, and both of them call'd in Kings to their Assistance. But the just Judgment of GOD fell upon them both: For *Demetrius*, whom *Alexander* had call'd to his Assistance, possess'd himself of *Macedonia*, and slew him and his Brother. Thus it pleas'd GOD to Punish the Wicked and Unnatural Sons of *Cassander*, as the very Pagan Authors have observ'd.

*Demetrius*, who ever since the Battle of *Ipsus*, had been wandering up and down with the Remains of his Father *Antigonus* his scatter'd Troops, being now possess'd of *Macedonia*, turn'd his Arms against *Lyfimachus*, and endeavour'd to beat him out of *Thracia*: But *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, by invading *Thessaly* diverted him from this Design, and over and above created him a great deal of trouble. Afterward, *Demetrius* made Peace with him, having many Projects in his Head; and applying himself warmly to concert Measures for the recovering of his Father's Dominions: He made vast Preparations for War, and rais'd a greater Army than any that had appear'd in one Body from the Death of *Alexander* to that Day. It consisted of one hundred thousand Foot, and twelve thousand Horse, besides one thousand five hundred Ships. This frighted *Seleucus*, *Ptolomy* and *Lyfimachus*, so that they enter'd into a Confederacy; and with joint Intreaties perswaded *Pyrrhus* to break the Peace. *Lyfimachus* Invaded *Macedonia* upon the *Thracian* side, and *Pyrrhus* upon that of *Epirus*, possess'd himself of *Byrrhea*; and was declar'd King of *Macedonia* by *Demetrius* his own Army, that had basely betray'd him. But *Lyfimachus* coming up, claim'd a Right to part of that Kingdom, and obtain'd it; *Pyrrhus* being very easy in the Matter, as having no great Opinion of the *Macedonians* by reason of their Inconstancy.

*Demetrius* being thus turn'd out of *Macedonia*, and toss'd up and down a second time by the Instability of human Affairs, was at last oblig'd to Surrender himself to *Seleucus* his Son-in-Law. *Seleucus* gave him a very civil Reception, and allow'd him his Liberty. At first he diverted himself with Hunting; but afterwards, forgetting his former Dignity, gave himself up to Drinking and Gaming, and in three Years after, was seiz'd by a Distemper whereof he Died, in the fifty fourth Year of his Age. Soon after, *Lyfimachus* turn'd *Pyrrhus* out of *Macedonia*, as being a Stranger; and upon the Solicitation of his Wife, kill'd *Acathocles* his eldest Son. The Wife of *Acathocles* and others, whose Relations had been also put to Death for regretting his



Death, press'd *Seleucus* to revenge it upon the Tyrant. *Lyfimachus* fearing the Power of *Seleucus*, resolv'd to be beforehand with him, and in order thereunto cross'd over into *Asia* with a powerful Army to carry the War into *Seleucus* his Country; but all to no purpose: For *Seleucus*, in a pitch'd Battle fought in *Phrygia*, defeated his Army, and kill'd himself. *Lyfimachus*, having lost fifteen of his Children before, by his own Death compleated the Ruin of his Family. He died in the eightieth Year of his Age, four Years after his Possession of *Macedonia*, and forty Years after the Death of *Alexander* the Great. *Ptolomy* the Son of *Lagus* was by this time dead also; and tho' he had several Children, by his Wife *Euridice*, the Daughter of *Antipater*; yet he left the Kingdom to *Ptolomy* his Son by *Berenice*, one of the Queen's Maids of Honour; and even gave him a share in the Government while he was yet alive.

This *Ptolomy* was surnamed *Philadelphus*, for being in love with his Sister *Arfinoe*. 'Twas in his Reign, and by his Orders that the sacred Books of the *Old Testament* were Translated into *Greek* by the seventy two Elders, as I intimated before in the sacred History. His Elder Brother *Ptolomy* surnam'd *Ceraunus*, or the Thunderer, seeing his Birth-Right given to his bastard Brother, fled away from *Egypt* to *Lyfimachus*, and upon the Death of this King, made his Address to *Seleucus*, who gave him a kind Reception, which he return'd in a very ungrateful manner: For *Seleucus* being now the only surviving Man of all the Great Officers of *Alexander*, and well stricken in Years, resign'd his Kingdom of *Asia* to his Son *Antiochus*, and (which is more surprising) his Wife also, having understood that he was in love with her, and resolv'd to make his Exit off the Stage of this World in *Macedonia* his Native Country: But having cross'd the *Hellespont*, and directing his Course towards *Lyfimachia*, was, at a place call'd *Argos*, perfidiously Murther'd by this *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, who so treacherously corrupted *Seleucus* his Army, that he was Proclaim'd King of *Macedonia*, and by their Help settled himself in the Throne, after he had defeated in a Sea-Fight, *Antigonus Gonatus* the Son of *Demetrius*, who attempted the Recovery of *Macedonia*.

Thus ended *Seleucus* his Days after a Reign of thirty Years, in the seventy third Year of his Age, and the forty second after the death of *Alexander*. He was surnam'd *Nicator*, with regard to his great Victories; and it is said, *he had an Anchor imprinted on his Thigh*, at least his Posterity was noted for carrying the like Mark.

I had said above, that *Seleucus* resign'd his Wife, as well as his Kingdom, to his Son *Antiochus* a little before he undertook his Journey for *Macedonia*, in which he was Murder'd by *Ptolomy Ceraunus*; and the Cause of resigning his Wife, was this. After the death of *Apame* the Mother of *Antiochus*, *Seleucus* Marry'd *Stratonice* the Daughter of *Demetrius*: This Woman's Beauty rais'd such a Passion in *Antiochus* as cast him into a violent Fever. *Erasistratus*, *Seleucus* his Physician, took all the care imaginable of his Health, and yet cou'd not, for a long time, discover by any symptom what might be the Cause of his Distemper; nor wou'd *Antiochus* discover it to him, but answer'd always *that his Distemper was incurable*. At last, *Erasistratus* observ'd, when the Ladies and great Beauties of the Court came to Visit him, he was nothing moved; but as often as *Stratonice* ask'd him *how he did?* his Colour chang'd, and his Fever redoubl'd upon him to a great degree. *Erasistratus* observing this sudden Change in *Antiochus* at the sight of *Stratonice*, concluded he was in Love with her.

The



The next Day, *Seleucus*, who doated upon *Antiochus*, coming to make him a Visit, ask'd *Erasistratus*, what he thought of him? His Distemper is incurable, answer'd *Erasistratus*. Why so, saith *Seleucus*, if any thing in the World can cure him? Because he is in Love with my Wife, reply'd *Erasistratus*. O my dear Friend says *Seleucus* (embracing him) let him have her to save his Life, since there is no other Means of doing it. You wou'd not be willing to let him have *Stratonice* your own Wife, had he been in Love with her, rejoyn'd *Erasistratus*. No! says *Seleucus* with Tears in his Eyes, assure your self, that to save his Life I wou'd not only give him *Stratonice*, but my whole Kingdom also. Well then, answer'd *Erasistratus*, *Antiochus* is in love with your Wife *Stratonice*, and nothing else on Earth beside Her can Cure him. Then *Seleucus* assembled his Peers, Noblemen, and Officers; and declared in their Presence, That he resign'd both his Wife and Kingdom to his Son *Antiochus*, who immediately upon the News hereof was cur'd of his Fever. This Incestuous Marriage gives light to the Passage in the First Book of the *Machabees*, where the Children of *Antiochus* are call'd *Radix Peccatrix*. To proceed.

This *Antiochus* was surnam'd *Soter*, or *Saviour*, because he repuls'd the Gauls, who over-ran a great part of *Asia*, being Invited thither by *Mithridates* King of *Bithynia*. And forasmuch as these Gauls made a great noise in *Macedonia*, and over all *Greece*; and in the Lower Parts of *Asia*, and planted a Colony near the River *Halys*, which they call'd *Gallogreccians*, or *Gallatians*, famous for their early Conversion to the Christian Faith, and for the Epistle which *St. Paul* wrote to them; it will not be amiss to give here a brief Account of their coming into *Macedonia*, and of the State of that Kingdom till it was made a Roman Province.

*Ptolomy Ceraunus* was not well settled upon his Throne in *Macedonia*; when a vast Number of Gaules, finding the Bounds of their own Country too narrow, fally'd out in quest of New Seats under three Leaders. One Company directed their Course towards *Thracia*, under the Conduct of a Captain call'd *Ceretrus*. Another came into *Pannonia*, under the Command of *Brennus* and *Alciborius*, and the third settled in *Macedonia*, being Headed by *Belgius*, or *Bolgius*. *Ptolomy* rashly engaging with the last of these, was taken Prisoner and cruelly butcher'd after he had been Master of *Macedonia* for a Year and six Months. His Brother *Meleager* succeeded him, but at the end of two Months the *Macedonians* turn'd him out, as unworthy of the Crown, and declar'd *Antigater*, the Son of *Philip*, King in his room, who was afterwards call'd *Etesias*, by reason he possess'd the Crown only forty five Days. Then, one *Sisibenes* drew together a Body of Men, and check'd the Gauls; but declin'd the title of King, requiring only an Oath of Fidelity to him, as their Captain. In the mean time *Brennus* having notice that *Bolgius* was possess'd of such a goodly Spoil, invaded *Macedonia* with a numerous Army, and defeated *Sisibenes*; and having laid Waste all *Macedonia*, March'd into *Greece* with one hundred and fifty two thousand Foot, and twenty thousand four hundred Horse, in order to plunder the Temple of *Apollo* at *Delphi*: But the Inhabitants of the Town and their Allies, tho' not exceeding four thousand in Number, made so vigorous a Defence, that *Brennus*, being wounded in an Attack, and in such intolerable pain as was not to be born, slabb'd himself with his Dagger, and (if we believe *Justinus*) there fell such Rocks and Thunder-bolts upon his Men, that the most part of them were knock'd down dead.



*Softhenes* died after he had Govern'd two Years, and *Antigonus Gonnatas*, Son to *Demetrius*, having made Peace with *Antiochus Soter*, obtain'd *Macedonia*, and routed all the *Gauls* that remain'd in *Greece*. At this time, the other *Gauls*, who had left *Brennus*, when he Invaded *Macedonia*, and had made Incursions into *Thracia*, and scatter'd themselves up and down several Provinces in *Asia*, gather'd into one Body and assisted *Nicomedes* against *Zyphæus*, who possess'd himself of Part of *Bithynia*; and having Conquer'd him, and Pillag'd the Countries round about, they divided the Lands and planted themselves nigh the River *Halys*, at a Place which they call'd *Gallo-Græcia*, or *Gallatia*, famous, as I observ'd before for the Epistle of *St. Paul* inscrib'd to the *Galatians*.

*Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus* having carry'd on a Successless War in *Italy* and *Sicily* for six Years, return'd Home, and expell'd *Antigonus Gonnatas*; but did not Possess the Kingdom two Years: For he endeavour'd to restore *Cleonymus* the *Spartan*, whom the Citizens had expell'd; and being at *Argi* upon that Account, was kill'd with a Stone thrown by an Old Woman, whose Son he was going to put to Death. By this Means *Antigonus* recover'd *Macedonia* the third time. Afterwards, his Soldiers revolted from him to *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrhus*, who expell'd him again: But *Demetrius* his own Son reinstated him in his Threne and expell'd *Alexander*, whom he also kept for some time out of his own Kingdom. *Antigonus* dy'd at the Age of eighty Years, and was succeeded by his Son *Demetrius*. This Prince alienated the *Etolians* from himself, by soliciting *Agron* King of the *Illyrians* to relieve the *Mydonians* whom the *Etolians* had, at this time, besieg'd. He dy'd ten Years after and left his Son *Philip* a Minor in the Care of his Brother or Uncle *Antigonus* surnam'd *Dioson*. This Man behav'd himself so Meekly and Generously, that he was declar'd King during the Pupil's Minority. Upon the Death of *Demetrius*, the *Grecian* Cities lifted up their Heads, shook off the Tyrannical Yoke, and join'd in with the *Achaians*, who were mightily esteem'd by their Neighbours for their Prudence and Justice, and having United into one Body stir'd up other Cities against the *Macedonians*, who, ever since the Reign of *Alexander* the Great, had kept all *Greece* in Bondage.

*Aratus* the *Sicyonian* join'd his own Country to *Achaia*, and prov'd a great Ornament and Support to the *Achaians*, in freeing *Athens* from the *Macedonian* Yoke. But the *Etolians* were Jealous of their Prosperity, and *Cleomenes* King of *Lacedæmon* sided with them, who waited any Occasion of War in order to compleat the Ruin of the *Ephori*, which he had already projected. In Effect the War was too hard for the *Achaians*, so that they were oblig'd to beg Assistance from *Antigonus Dioson*. He restor'd their tottering Interest, and put a stop to *Cleomenes*'s Progress, who had already taken several Towns; and after several successful Attempts routed him in Battle to that Degree, that he threw off all Hopes, and fled from *Lacedæmon* to *Alexandria*. *Antigonus* us'd the *Lacedæmonians* very civilly, and restor'd their Antient Laws; but in the Midst of his Glory, was oblig'd to return to *Macedonia*, being inform'd that the *Illyrians* had invaded it. Upon his return he routed the *Illyrians*, but by Shouting and Crying aloud, fell into a spitting of Blood, which threw him into a Consumption whereof he dy'd, after he had Govern'd *Macedonia* ten Years.

Upon the Death of *Antigonus*, his Nephew *Philip* succeeded, being then sixteen Years Old. In him was the *Sybilline* Prophesie verify'd, which foretold, that, as the Glory of *Macedonia* ow'd its first Beginning to *Philip*,



so *Philip* shou'd one Day put an End to it. The *Etolians* were freed of their Fears when *Antigonus* dy'd, and sought for any Occasion of renewing the War with the *Achaïans*; and at last by continually affronting them and their Associates, occasion'd a Confederate War. *Aratus* call'd in *Philip* to assist him. *Philip* took *Ambracu*, which the *Etolians* had formerly taken from the People of *Epirus*: Then he invaded *Etolia*, and laid the Country Waste; but was soon call'd Home to defend *Macedonia* from the Incursions of the *Dardani*, and the Cruelty of *Scopas* the *Etolian* Prætor, who was then in *Macedonia* and put all to Fire and Sword.

The *Dardani* were scared by the News of his Return, and retir'd to their own Country. When *Philip* arriv'd, he possess'd himself of several Fortify'd Places, and carry'd on the War against the *Etolians* with a great deal of success. After all, when he heard that *Hanibal* the *Carthaginian* had routed the *Romans* at the Lake *Thrasimenus*, he was over-perswaded by *Demetrius* the *Pharian*, who had formerly Fought for the *Illyrians* against the People of *Rome*, to neglect the *Etolians*, and mind the business of *Illyricum*; from whence he might pass into *Italy*, and obtain the Monarchy of the whole World. Upon this Project he got an End put to the War; the Conditions whereof were, *that each Party should retain what they mutually possess'd, and live in Amity and Friendship one with another*. Besides, *Agésilas* a Citizen of *Neupaetum* solicited the *Gracians* to mediate for an Accommodation; fearing they shou'd become a Prey either to the *Romans* or *Carthaginians*. Thus was that War concluded after four Years standing, in the sixth Year of *Philip's* Reign.

*Philip* was altogether taken up with the Project of Aggrandizing himself, which *Demetrius* had suggested to him; and with that View, fitted out a Fleet in order to attack the *Romans*: But upon their appearing in view his Mariners were seiz'd with so much fear, that he was oblig'd to retire. He sent an Embassy to make a League with *Hanibal* the Victor, which was agreed to upon these Terms, viz. *That Italy, when Conquer'd, shou'd remain to Hanibal and the Carthaginians; that Philip shou'd have liberty to attack and take such as pass'd into Greece, and continue Master of all the Places he possess'd on the Continent, or in the Islands; And, Lastly, that he should Sail towards Italy with two hundred Ships, in order to distress the Romans in their Sea Affairs*.

*Philip* was so transported with this League, that he became a downright Tyrant. He began to oppress the *Grecian* Cities; being advis'd so to do by the above mention'd *Demetrius*, who told him, *That he ought to possess himself of the Peloponnesus, especially of the two Horns of the Beast, as he call'd it, meaning the Castles of Corinth and Messene*. Pursuant to this advice, he endeavour'd to set the *Messenians* together by the Ears, and Poison'd *Aratus* for resenting his Injustice. Afterwards he attack'd the Cities of *Illyricum*: But *Lævinus* the *Roman* Prætor beat him out of *Appolonia*, and oblig'd him to return to *Macedonia* with the loss of three thousand Men. Upon his Retreat he made himself Master of several Towns; but *Lævinus*, to be even with him, took off the *Etolians* from their Confederacy with him. However, he carry'd on the War against the *Romans* with tollerable Success, 'till *Sulpicius* the *Roman* Prætor defeated him at *Elis*, and the disorderly Condition of his Affairs in *Macedonia* call'd him Home.

His Adventures against the *Etolians* were successful for three Years. At length, they being destitute of the *Roman's* Assistance, which they trusted most in, were oblig'd to accept of Peace upon *Philip's* own Terms. Soon



after *Sempronius* the Pro-Consul succeeding *Sulpicius*, did likewise make Peace with him, through the Mediation of the People of *Epirus*. The Articles of this Peace were, *That the Cities of Parthini, Diamasum, Bargalum and Eugenium should continue in the Hands of the Romans; and that Attino should be under the Protection of Philip, pursuant to its own desire.* In this League Philip included *Prusias* King of *Bitthynia*, the *Achaians*, the *Bac-tians*, *Theffalians*, *Acarmanians*, and the *Epirians*: The Romans on their side, included the *Trojans*, *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, *Pleuratus* King of *Thracia*, the *Messenians*, *Eleans* and *Machanidas* Successor to *Nabis* the *Lacedemonian* Tyrant; the latter being kill'd in Battle by *Philipamenes*, who then began to defend his Country with Vigour.

*Philip* being always accustomed to Action, and fond of Glory, was uneasy under Peace. He envy'd the Fame of *Philipamenes*, insomuch, that he sent Assassins to take away his Life; by which Attempt he procur'd to himself many Enemies. He enter'd into a League with *Antiochus Magnus*, and both of them Conspir'd to turn Young *Ptolmy* King of *Egypt* out of his Kingdom; but were both scar'd by the Romans from pursuing their Design. Being in Friendship with the *Etolians*, he scrupl'd not to wrest *Lyfismachia* and *Chalcedon* out of their Hands, without any Colour of Justice. He likewise subdu'd the Town of the *Caunij*, which the *Rhodians* took so ill, that, from this time, they became his Enemies, and joined in with *Attalus*. Notwithstanding the multitude of Projects in which he was engag'd, and the heavy Disasters he had met with; yet he kept up an invincible Spirit, full of great Hopes, and had the Courage to wage War with the Romans the second time, when he understood they had declared War against him.

The Romans charg'd him with the Violation of the League in wronging the *Etolians* and other Confederates; and succouring *Hanibal* and the *Carthaginians* in *Africa*. The *Athenians* being besieg'd by *Philip*, beg'd the assistance of the Romans. *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* complain'd that he attack'd the Grecian Cities in Asia. *P. Sulpitius Galba* was sent into Macedonia, while he Invaded the *Chersonesus* of *Thracia*, where the *Abidians* did a very memorable Action, in standing out to the last Extremity: Nor did he succeed in attacking *Athens*. However, he endeavour'd to make the *Etolians* his Friends; but they were too well acquainted with his Treachery, to trust him. The next Year, *Tapsulus* being Consul, nothing was done. But *Titus Quintius Flaminius* his Successor, after an Interview to no purpose, Defeated him, and took several Places in *Theffaly*. At length finding that the *Achaians* Deserted him, and sided with the Romans; and that the Consul went on in Storming and Taking of Towns, he sued for a Truce of two Months, which being granted, he sent Ambassadors to Rome to treat of Peace. The *Grecians* likewise sent their Ambassadors to Complain, That he would not Deliver up *Chalcis*, *Demetrias*, and *Corinth*, which Towns he call'd the Fetters of Greece. Upon these Remonstrances the Senate would not grant him Peace; but order'd *Quintius* to carry on the War. *Quintius* Routed him at *Cynocephale*: Upon which Disaster, he desir'd a Truce of four Months, in order to send Ambassadors to Rome once more to sue for Peace. At last the Senate and the People of Rome gave him Peace on these Terms, viz. That he should restore all Greece to its ancient Liberty; Deliver all the Prisoners and Deserters; give up all deck'd Ships, bating five, and one big Ship; and pay half the Sum of one hundred Talents that Year, and the rest within ten Years; as also to send one of his Sons to Rome, as an Hostage, for the performance of these Conditions, and for his future good Behaviour.

When



When *Philip* had sent his Son to *Rome*, ten Men came from thence along with *Flaminius* into *Greece* to adjust the Concerns of the Cities, who were all over-joy'd at the Motion, except the *Etolians*; these censur'd the Terms of the Peace, and cry'd out, that *Greece* had only chang'd Masters: Since *Corinth*, *Demetrius* and *Chalcis* were in the Hands of the *Romans*. *Philip* finding himself pinch'd by Necessity, and the Hardness of his Fate; was very uneasy in his Mind; especially considering that he had not the Liberty of punishing the Rebels as he term'd them; that he was oblig'd to restore the Towns he had taken to their right Proprietors, and that he was forc'd to yield to the Querulous Remonstrances of the *Thessalonians*, of the *Athamanians*, and of *Eumenes* King in *Asia*. He was also mightily incens'd, that the *Romans* were so very favourable to his Son *Demetrius*, whom he had sent thither as an Hostage; as if they had valu'd the Son's Friendship more than the Father's. This Jealousie was inflam'd by *Perseus* the elder Son, who suggested, that *Demetrius* aspir'd to the Crown; and by suborn'd Witnesses, carry'd the Charge so far, that the Innocent Youth was put to Death by the Command of the Jealous and Credulous Father.

About a Year after, *Philip* fell into a Fit of Melancholly, for the Loss of his Son; the whole Conspiracy and the Innocence of *Demetrius* being brought to Light by the Care and Diligence of *Antigonus* his Kinsman. Whereupon he was so oppress'd with Grief and Sorrow, that he recommended *Antigonus* to the *Macedonians*, curs'd his Son *Perseus*, and then dy'd after a toilsome and an uneasy Reign of forty four Years. Had *Philip* liv'd longer he wou'd have settled *Antigonus* on his Throne; but *Perseus* being Acquainted with his Fathers approaching Fate by his Physitian, took timely Care to crush his Enemies, and possess'd himself of the Government. His Father left every thing in a readiness for carrying on a War against the *Romans*; so that *Perseus* was engag'd in it by Way of Heritage: And indeed he made it his only Business, making use of all Opportunities to keep under the *Roman* Allies. But when they appear'd in Arms, he quickly recanted, and sued for Peace, which he cou'd not obtain, the War being already Decreed.

He engag'd *Gentius* King of the *Illyrians* on his side; but murder'd the Opportunity of doing things to the purpose by denying him Money, of which he had great Store to carry on the War. It had been an easy matter to rout *Marcus Philippus* the Consul, who then made Head against him; by reason of the Difficulty of the Passes he was to get over, which might easily be defended by a few Men, and the Want of all manner of Provisions; but *Perseus* seem'd to be Conquer'd before they came to Fight; and resolving to flee, deserted all the narrow Passes, and gave his Enemy Liberty to advance. He gave also Orders for burning his Fleet at *Thessalonica*, and throwing his Treasure at *Pella* into the Sea. *Marcus* was succeeded by *Æmilius Paulus*, a second time Consul, who routed *Perseus* and his Army, consisting of thirty nine thousand Foot, and four thousand Horse, not far from *Pydna*, and took *Perseus* Prisoner, together with his Mother and Children, and carry'd them to *Rome* in Triumph. He died at *Rome* after he had been two Years Prisoner, having Reign'd eleven Years. Then the *Macedonians* were made Free: And this was the end of that Kingdom, being then made a *Roman* Province in the Hundred and fifty sixth Year after the Death of *Alexander*, the second Year of the Hundred and fifty third Olympiad. Thus much concerning the famous Kingdom of *Macedonia*: Let us now return to *Antiochus Soter*.



This Prince Curb'd and Bridl'd the *Gallatians* after such a manner, that they were not able, during his Reign to extend their Conquests beyond the Bounds of their little *Common-Wealth*, for which he had the title of *Soter*, or *Saviour* bestow'd upon him by his own Subjects. He had a Son by *Stratonice* his Mother-in-Law, call'd *Antiochus*, and a Daughter *Apamea*. His Daughter he gave in Marriage to *Maga*, King of *Cyrene*, and Brother to *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, upon whose solicitation he violated the Treaty of Alliance he had some time before enter'd into with the King of *Egypt*; but was prevented in accomplishing the Invasion which he design'd against *Egypt*, by the Forces which *Ptolomy* sent into *Asia*. He likewise wag'd War with *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, but with little success. This *Eumenes* was Nephew to *Philoternus* the Eunuch, who was Keeper of *Lyfimachus's* Treasure at *Pergamus*, and revolted from him at the time that he order'd his Son *Agathocles* to be put to Death, and possess'd himself both of the Place and the Money, while the Kings were worrying one another. Afterwards, he converted his Lordship into a Kingdom; and left it to *Eumenes* his Nephew. *Antiochus* Reign'd nineteen Years and was succeeded by his Son *Antiochus*, whom the *Miletians* impiously surnam'd *Theos*, *God*; because he rescu'd them from the Tyranny of *Timarchus*.

It was in this *Antiochus's* time, that the *Parthians* first revolted. These People were Originally *Scythians*, but being banish'd their own Country, were call'd *Parthians*: For *Parthus*, in the *Scythian* Language, as Authors tell us, signifies a Banish'd Man. They liv'd in an Obscure and Contemptible Condition when the *Medes* and *Persians* Reign'd in *Asia*. They were Conquer'd by *Alexander* the Great, but after his Death, slighted his Captains, and subjected themselves to the Government of one *Stesagenor* a Stranger, but a Friend to the *Macedonians*. They serv'd *Eumenes*, *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, and continu'd Obedient to the Successors of *Seleucus* till now that they rebel'd, being Headed by one of their own Lords call'd *Aspases*, who together with them expell'd the *Macedonians*, and slew *Agathocles* their Governour, for offering to commit Sodomy with his Brother *Tiridates*. About the same time, *Theodotus* Governour of *Bactria*, likewise revolted, and in Imitation of his Example, the People of the *East* withdrew themselves from the *Macedonian* Yoke. *Antiochus* was first Marry'd to *Laodice*, by whom he had two Sons, *Seleucus* surnam'd *Callinicus* and *Antiochus Hierax*; secondly to *Bernice* Daughter to *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, during the Life of *Laodice*, whom he had divorc'd, upon Account of the War he had with *Ptolomy*, which was finish'd to his Satisfaction, by putting away *Laodice* and Marrying *Bernice*. But it appear'd by the Event that this last Marriage was made to serve a turn rather than out of Affection to *Bernice*: For when *Antiochus* understood that *Ptolomy* was dead, and that the Young Prince *Ptolomy Evergetes* his Son was seated upon the Throne of his Father, he turn'd off *Bernice* and retook his Wife *Laodice*, who fearing the Levity and Inconstancy of her Husband poison'd him in the fifteenth Year of his Reign. *Laodice* Conceal'd the King's Death till the Kingdom was transfer'd to her Son *Seleucus*, surnam'd *Callinicus* or the Victorious, and besieg'd *Bernice* her Rival in *Daphne*. The Cities of *Asia* were mov'd with Compassion towards the Innocent Queen *Bernice*, and *Ptolomy Evergetes* King of *Egypt*, set out with all possible Expedition to relieve her, she being his Sister; but she unfortunately surrender'd before the Relief came up, and was perfidiously Murder'd together with her Young Son. The Cities detesting such a Barbarous Action revolted, and sided with *Ptolomy*,  
who



who March'd further into *Syria*, kill'd *Laodice*, made himself Master of *Celosyria*, and *Seleucia*, over-ran almost all *Asia* as far as *Bactria*; and had certainly possess'd himself of all *Seleucus's* Dominions, had not a Domestick Sedition diverted him from so great an Enterprize. *Seleucus* had fitted out a Fleet in order to retrieve his Cities, but it was all lost by Shipwrack. The Cities, tho' they abominated *Seleucus* upon Account of the perfidious Murder of *Bernice*, were so mov'd with Compassion at this Disaster, that of their own Accord they surrender'd themselves to him.

Soon after he declar'd War against *Ptolomy*, but was defeated by him in a pitched Battle, and oblig'd to flee into *Antiochia*, where he was reduc'd to almost as great straits as before. He call'd in his Brother *Antiochus* to assist him, who tho' very Young, was so eager in making use of this Opportunity, to possess himself of the whole Kingdom, that he signaliz'd his Courage in Invading Countries, and taking Cities; and was thereupon surnam'd *Hierax* i. e. the Hawk. *Ptolomy* having no mind to Engage them both at once, concluded a Peace with *Seleucus* for ten Years. After this Peace *Antiochus* hir'd the *Gauls* or *Galatians*, and with them March'd against his Brother *Antiochus*, whom he defeated in a pitch'd Battle: But the *Gauls* fancying that *Seleucus* was kill'd in this Battle, resolv'd to put all his Race to Death; and to that End made an Insurrection against *Antiochus* himself; but at last they were gain'd by Arms of Gold. *Asia* being thus pull'd to pieces, *Eumenes* the *Bythinian* annexed part of it to his Dominions. *Arfaces* also, upon the News of *Seleucus's* his Dissention with *Antiochus* compleated the Revolt of the *Parthians*: For having made an Irruption into *Parthia* with a Company of Robbers, he kill'd *Andragoras* their Governor, and possessing himself of that Country, join'd to it the Kingdom of *Hircania*, and brought his Affairs so to bear, that after a few Years he routed *Seleucus*, and settled himself in the Government. The *Parthians* Celebrated the Day of this Victory every Year, and Dated their Liberty from it; and *Arfaces* was as much esteem'd by them, as *Cyrus* was by the *Persians*, or *Alexander* by the *Macedonians*; and succeeding Kings were call'd by his Name.

Tho' the Interest of the *Seleucidæ* declin'd every Day, and the two Brothers were even almost outed of their Governments, yet they neglected their Foreign Concerns and renew'd a Civil War, in which *Antiochus* was at last Conquer'd, and fled first to *Ptolomy*, and then to *Artames* the *Capadocian* his Father-in-Law; but neither of them did secure him from his impending Destiny: For he fell into the Hands of some Robbers, and was kill'd. About the same time, *Seleucus* ended his Days by a fall off his Horse, and left the Remnants of his Country in a distracted Condition, after a Miserable Reign of twenty Years. *Seleucus* had two Sons, *Seleucus* surnam'd *Ceraunus*, or the Thunderer, and *Antiochus* surnam'd afterwards the Great. *Seleucus* being the Elder succeeded his Father. He endeavour'd to recover that Part of *Asia* on this side of Mount *Taurus*, which *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* possess'd, but was poyson'd by two of his own Officers, *Apaturnus* and *Nicanor*, in the third Year of his Reign. *Acheus* his General, Nephew to Queen *Laodice*, punish'd the Regicides, and manag'd Affairs so dextrously that he reduc'd all *Asia* to Obedience, and was so well belov'd by the People, that he might have possess'd himself of the Kingdom with Ease, but he wou'd not cheat *Antiochus Seleucus's* Brother of his Right. This *Antiochus* while his Brother liv'd, resided in the Upper Provinces; but was now call'd to *Babylon* in the 15th. Year of his Age, to take upon



him the Administration of Affairs : Accordingly he came, and made *Achaus* Governour of the Country he had lately recover'd; one *Molon*, Governour of *Media*; and *Alexander* his Brother, Governour of *Persia*.

*Antiochus* was soon after involv'd in great Troubles, upon the account of the over-growing power of a certain Court Favourite call'd *Hermias*, Brother to *Molon* and *Alexander*, who so highly relented the Preference given in the King's Favour to their Cadet, that they alienated the upper Provinces from their Allegiance. The King design'd to March against them; but *Hermias* over-perswaded him to turn his Arms against the *Egyptians*. By this time *Ptolomy Evergetes*, or the Benefactor, being dead, was succeeded by his Son call'd *Ptolomy Philopator*, for his Love to his Father, who thinking himself secure upon the Account of *Antiochus's* Youth, was entirely wrapt up in his Pleasures, and consequently might easily be subdued, if the War were Manag'd with Vigour. But *Antiochus* proceeded therein so slowly, and with so little Warmth, that it went on but heavily; and in the mean time *Molon* carry'd on his rebellious Designs, so that the King was oblig'd to return, and in a short time, and with no great Difficulty, quash'd the Rebels, and even put to Death *Hermias*, whom he found to have been engag'd in traiterous Designs. At the same time *Achaus*, having laid aside his former Modesty, took upon him the Diadem and Regal Title. However, *Antiochus* renew'd the War with *Ptolomy* upon the account of *Calosyria*, which the *Egyptians* continu'd Masters of, from the time that it was taken by *Ptolomy Evergetes* when he came to rescue his Sister *Berenice*.

He got *Seleucia* by Treachery, and made himself Master of several other Places; however, upon Advice of *Achaus's* Advances, he agreed to a Truce, in order to an Interview concerning Peace. But many Objections being started on both sides, neither Prince wou'd yield to the other; so that the War broke out again next Spring, and *Antiochus* reduc'd several Cities. After one Year, *Ptolomy* advanc'd to *Gaza* with seventy thousand Foot, five thousand Horse, and seventy three Elephants. *Antiochus* made Head against him with seventy two thousand Foot, six thousand Horse, and a hundred and two Elephants, and defeated the Enemy; but out of a youthful Ardor pursu'd him too far, and when he return'd, found his whole Army routed, and was fain to retire to *Raphia* and go Home. All *Calosyria* surrender'd it self to *Ptolomy*. *Antiochus*, fearing he wou'd pursue the Victory, sent Ambassadors with Proposals of Peace. The Embassy found *Ptolomy* very inclineable to it, and entirely devoted to his Luxury and other Vices, notwithstanding the Opportunity he was then presented with, of turning *Antiochus* out of his Kingdom.

*Antiochus* being rid of all Fears upon that Hand, March'd against *Achaus*, and block'd him up in *Sardis*. *Achaus* presuming too much upon his own Strength, and the Favour of the People, was notwithstanding betray'd, fell into the King's Hands, and brought to condign Punishment for his Rebellion. About a Year or two after this, *Antiochus* made a Progress into the upper Provinces, reduc'd several Countries, and Master'd some Towns and Principalities on this side of Mount *Taurus*. He manag'd the Administration of Affairs with so much Prudence, that his Subjects had a great opinion of his Courage and Conduct, whence they gave him the Title of Great. When *Ptolomy Philopator* died, he and *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, and Grandson to *Antigonus Dofon*, conspir'd against *Ptolomy Epiphanes* his Son, who was then but five Years old, and under the Guardianship of *Aristomenes*. *Antiochus Magnus* possess'd himself of *Judea*, *Calosyria*, *Phenicia*, and several other Places



Places in *Cilicia* and *Caria*; but being afterwards engag'd in a War with the *Romans*, he gave his Daughter *Cleopatra* in Marriage to *Ptolomy Epiphanes*, with *Judea* and *Cælosyria* as her Dower; designing thereby to secure an easy Passage into *Egypt*, and to avoid the Inconveniency of leaving an Enemy behind him. He likewise Invaded the Territories of *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, but the *Romans* Commanded him Home.

He was resolv'd at this time to obey the People of *Rome*, because he found himself not able to cope with them: But soon after, there arose such Jealousies between him and them, as at last broke out into a War. For after the Conquest of *Cælosyria*, he attack'd the *Græcian* Cities in *Asia*, which the *Romans* took under their Protection, and order'd him to desist; thinking that if he succeeded in *Asia*, he wou'd extend his Conquests to *Europe*; especially considering that *Hanibal*, whom he had entertain'd after his Disgrace at *Carthage*, solicited him to invade *Italy*. *Antiochus* in order to strengthen himself by Alliances gave his Daughter *Cleopatra* in Marriage to *Ptolomy* King of *Egypt*, as we observ'd before; and his other Daughter *Antiochis* to *Ariathres* King of the *Capadocians*; and by this Means was in no Fear of an Enemy behind him when he shou'd invade *Europe*. The *Roman* Embassadors press'd for Peace but in Vain; for he wou'd not hear of it, but joyn'd in with the *Ætolians*, who after the Conquest of *Philip*, fell out with the *Romans*, about the Division of the Spoil, departed from their Alliance, and now stir'd up all the Neighbouring Princes against them.

*Antiochus* being thus fortify'd conceiv'd Hopes of carrying the War into the very Bowels of *Italy*. He therefore Muster'd up a great Army, and pass'd over into *Greece*; but being met at the Straights of *Thermopile* by *Glabbio* the *Roman* Consul at the Head of a Stout Army, was routed and forc'd to flee to *Ephesus*. The Consul after this Victory took in *Phoris*, *Beotia* and *Eubæa*. Then *Antiochus* applying his Mind to Sea Affairs, was often beaten at Sea, and oblig'd to raise the Siege of *Pergamus* without doing any thing to the Purpose. Upon the Approach of *Scio* at the Head of his Army, he March'd his Garrisons out of *Lysimachia*, which might have given the *Romans* a great deal of Trouble, and, like a very impolitick Prince, or rather a Mad-Man, suffer'd the Consul to have a free Passage into *Asia*.

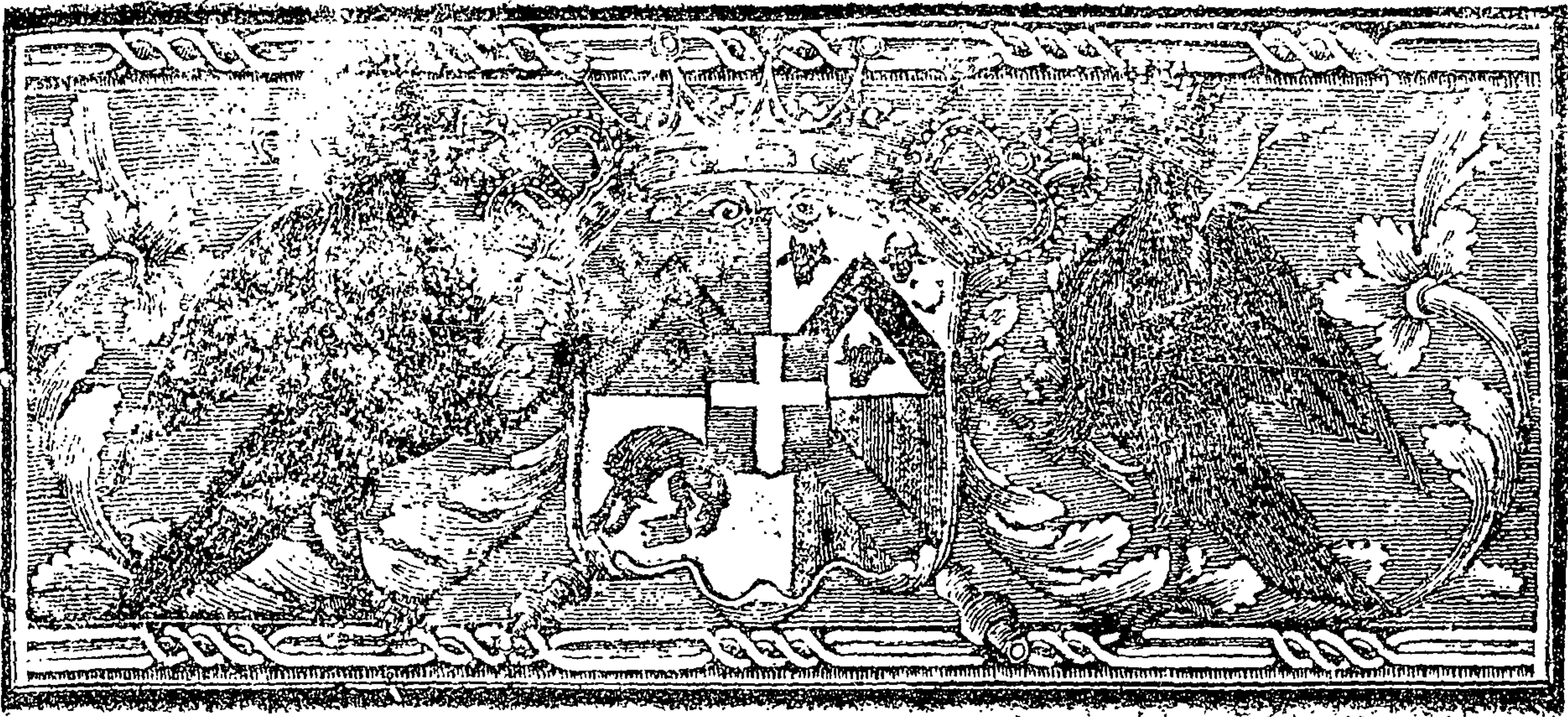
*Antiochus* sent Ambassadors to him with Proposals of Peace; but the Consul demanded, That he should Reimburse the Charges of the War, and not only part with *Æolia* and *Jonia*, but with all *Asia* besides, on this side of *Mount Taurus*. *Antiochus* look'd upon these Terms as too hard, and therefore resolv'd to try the Fortune of a Battle; but this prov'd his fatal overthrow: For *Lucius Scipio*, and his Brother *Africanus* having joined Battle with him, slew fifty thousand of his Men in the Field, and took eleven thousand Prisoners: However, they granted him Peace upon the former Terms, which to comply with, he made a Progress into the Upper Provinces, in order to gather Money for the *Romans*, and to fill his own Coffers; and understanding there was a great Treasure in the Temple of *Jupiter Belus* at *Elymais*, he attempted the sacking of the Temple, which, as some Authors affirm, did so incense the People of *Elymais*, that they slew him and his whole Army. Others say, that after he had cross'd the



Mount *Taurus*, he was kill'd by his own Companions, for beating them in his Drink. He Died in the thirty sixth Year of his Reign, in the second of the Hundred and forty eighth *Olympiad*, one hundred and eighty five Years before the Birth of CHRIST; and left three Sons after him, *Seleucus*, *Antiochus* and *Demetrius*, the second of whom, namely *Antiochus*, was carry'd to Rome as an Hostage. And, here we shall break off the Thread of our History of the Kings of *Syria* and *Egypt*, to give a Brief Account of the Rise and Progress of the *Romans*, who, by this time, were grown so powerful, that they wanted little of the Universal Monarchy of the World, which they soon after attain'd to, as we shall see when we resume the Thread of the History of the *Syrian* and *Egyptian* Kings.





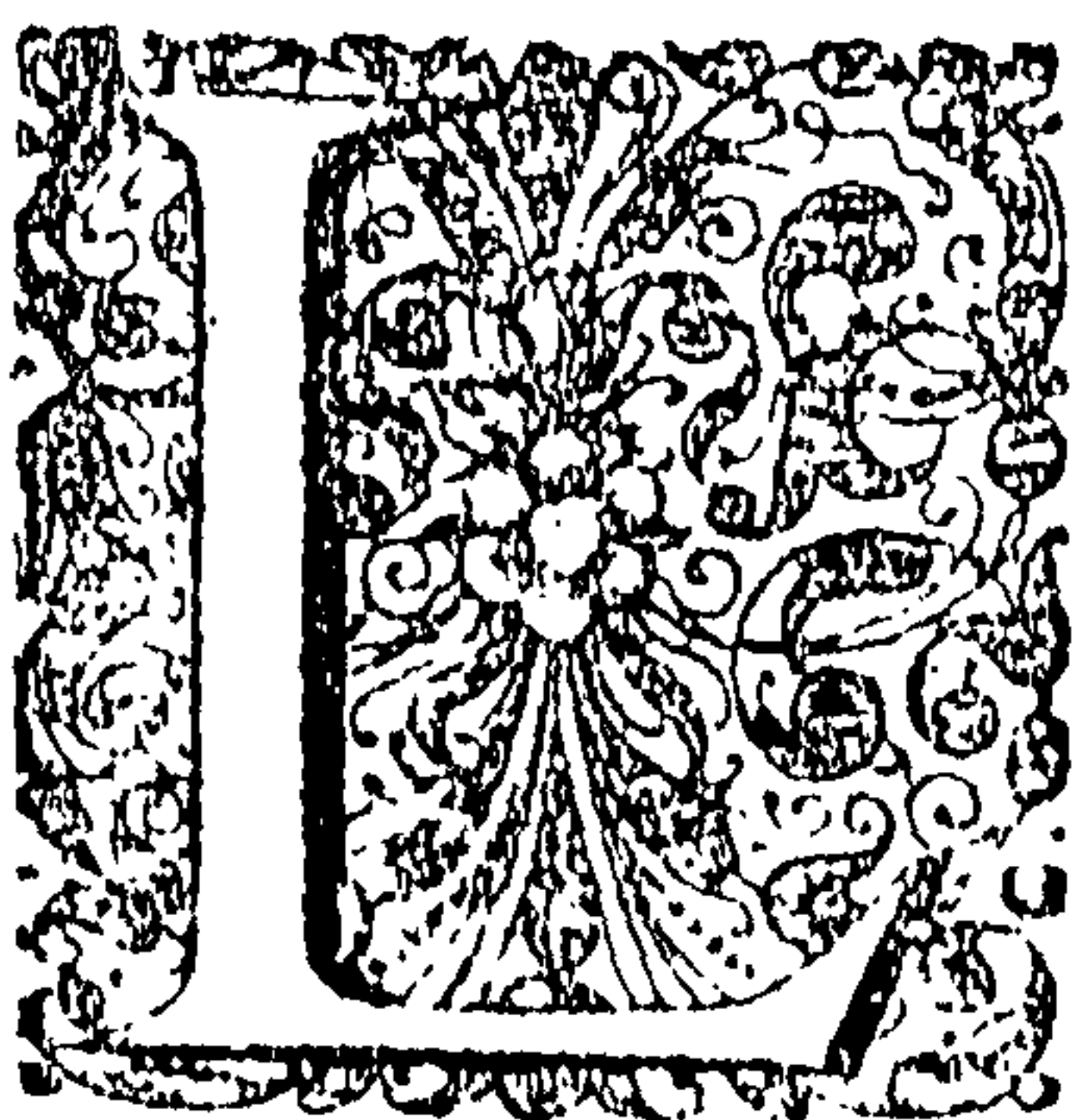


A  
New HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD.

BOOK VIII.

CHAP. I.

*Of the Kings of Latium, of the Building of Rome, and of the Roman Kings.*



LATIUM, so call'd from *Latinus*, who was there King, when *Aeneas* with his *Trojans* arriv'd in *Italy*, and from whose Name both the Inhabitants and the *Trojans* were call'd *Latini*; was, in those Days, a little Kingdom or Principality seated on the Banks of the River *Tiber*, then call'd *Albula*; bounded on the West with *Etruria*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea; on the East with the Lands now call'd *Frascati* and *Albani*; and on the North with the

Countries of the *Sabines* and *Samnites*.

The first Inhabitants of this Land were call'd *Oenotrij*, from *Oenotrus* the Son of *Lycaon*, who brought hither a Colony from *Lycaonia*, which was after-



afterwards call'd *Arcadia*. The first King of this Country we find Recorded in History was call'd *Faunus* the Son of *Picus*, who, as the Story, or rather Fable has it, (for the Beginnings of most Kingdoms are mixt with Fables) was the Son of *Saturn*, who fled from *Crete* to *Italy* for fear of his Son *Jupiter*. The next to *Faunus* was *Latinus*, whom some give in for his Son, and others for the Son of *Hercules*. In this King's Reign, *Æneas*, with his Retinue, having escap'd out of *Troy* when it was on Fire, arriv'd at a Place call'd *Laurentium*, near the Mouth of the River *Tiber*, then call'd *Albula*. This *Æneas* was the Son of *Anchises*, the Son of *Capys*, the Son of *Assaracus*, the Brother of *Tros*, the King, who gave Name to the *Trojans*. *Æneas* perceiving his City in Flames, and that all was lost, took, as it were out of the Fire, what he cou'd lay Hands on; and with such of his Friends and Followers, as cou'd join him, set to Sea; and after a long and tedious Voyage came to the Mouth of the *Tiber*, about three Hundred Years before *Carthage* was built; so that all *Virgil's* Account of his Amours with *Dido*, and his ten Years Voyage, is but a Poetical Fiction invented only by this great Poet to adorn his Poem, and to beget in the Reader a Noble Idea of the Grandeur of his Hero.

*Æneas* was no sooner Landed, when *Latinus* came with Arm'd Force to drive him out of his Kingdom; and being in sight of *Æneas* and his Men, desir'd to speak to their Leader, who, upon the Question put, *who they were? Whence they came? Or what induc'd them to invade his Country?* answer'd, that *they were Trojans, who had made their Escape from Troy when it was destroy'd; that their Leader was Æneas the Son of Anchises and Venus, and that they sought for a little Land to settle in.* *Latinus* here-upon mov'd with Pity, and admiring the Shape and Countenance of *Æneas*, embrac'd him, and took him Home to his Palace, gave him his Daughter *Lavinia* in Marriage, and provided for all his Friends and Followers. The *Trojans* finding themselves thus happily settled fell immediately to Work, and built a City which *Æneas* call'd *Lavinium* after the Name of his Wife, who, by this time had brought him a Son whom he had Nam'd *Ascanius*. *Turnus* King of the *Rutilians* to whom *Lavinia* was betrothed before the Arrival of *Æneas*, taking it very ill that a Stranger shou'd be prefer'd to him, declar'd War against *Latinus* and *Æneas*, and came to a Battle, in which *Latinus* was kill'd: But *Æneas* and his stout *Trojans* got the Victory. *Turnus* perceiving himself unequal to deal with the *Trojans*, implor'd the Assistance of *Mezentius* King of the *Etrurians*, who of his own Accord was ready enough to help him, having conceiv'd a Jealousie against the growing greatness of the *Trojans*. On the other side, *Æneas*, who by the Death of *Latinus* was left Heir of the Crown in Right of his Wife, wisely considering, that, having so great a War upon his Hands, it was necessary to Unite his Subjects together in perfect Love and Friendship, order'd, that all of them shou'd be call'd *Latini*, and that none of the *Trojans* shou'd be call'd by that Name any more. This succeeded so well, that the Natives of *Latium* were no less Obsequious and Affectionate to *Æneas* than his own People; and behav'd themselves so well in the next Battle which they fought with the *Rutilians* and *Etrurians*, that they gave them such an overthrow as made them incapable of Molesting them for many Years after; and however *Æneas* fell in that Battle, yet the Natives and the *Trojans* equally serv'd his Son *Ascanius*, tho' a Child, and even respected *Æneas* so far as to Erect a Statue for him in the Place where he fell at the River *Numicus* calling him *Jupiter Indigetes*.

When



When *Ascanius* was thirty Years Old he left the City *Lavinium* to his Mother, (for I make no Account of the Fabulous Stories that say, *Ascanius* was the Son of *Creusa*) and built a City at the Foot of the Mount *Alba*, and call'd it *Alba Longa*. Here *Ascanius* and his Successors Reign'd for a long time till the Birth of *Remus* and *Romulus*. His Son *Silvius*, so call'd because his Mother happen'd by Chance to be deliver'd of him in a Wood, gave surname to his Successors, and they follow'd in this Order, viz. *Æneas*, *Ascanius*, *Silvius*, *Latinus Silvius*, *Alba*, *Atis*, *Capys*, *Capetus*, *Tyberinus*, (who in passing over the River *Albula*, was drown'd, and gave it the Name of *Tyberis* ever since) *Agrippa*, *Romulus*, *Sylvias*, *Aventinas*, (who being struck with a Thunderbolt, and bury'd in the Mount which is now in *Rome*, call'd from his Name *Mons Aventinus*.) *Procas* and *Silvius*,

*Procas* was the thirteenth King of *Alba*. He left two Sons, *Numitor* and *Amulius*. This *Amulius*, tho' the Younger, Usurp'd the Crown, and banish'd his Elder Brother, and not Content herewith, put to Death his Male Children, and to cut off all Hopes of Issue of his Line, caus'd his Daughter *Rhea Sylvia* to Vow Chastity, making her a Priestess, or, as they call'd them, in those Days, a *Vestal Virgin*. But Providence order'd things otherwise; for this *Sylvia* being got with Child by some (no doubt in the Opinion of Men in those Days) god, was brought to Bed of Twins, who were afterwards call'd *Rhemus* and *Romulus*. When *Amulius* understood, that *Sylvia* was deliver'd, he caus'd her to be put to Death or cast into a close Prison, and order'd her Children to be cast into the River *Tiber*. Those that were Charg'd with this Wicked Commission, whether out of Pity to the little Innocents, or by Chance left them in a Thicket of Bushes upon the Brink of the River, whither a She Wolf, which had litter'd a little before, coming to lap Water in the River, and seeing the Babes, suckl'd them. The next Day *Faustulus* the King's Shepherd took them up, and brought them to his House, causing his Wife, or rather his Harlot Nurse them. I say his Harlot; for it is probable that *Acca Laurentia* who suckl'd *Remus* and *Romulus* as the Historians tell us, was a Harlot, who in the Language of those times, was call'd *Lupa*, as we do this Day call a Bawly-house *Lupanaria*: And that the Story of *Lupa* or a She Wolf suckling them came from thence. But be that as it will: When *Remus* and *Romulus* came of Age and were acquainted with their Original, they slew *Amulius*, and restor'd their Grandfather *Numitor* to his Kingdom. Soon after they took a Resolution to build a City of greater Extent than *Alba* or *Lavinium*; and having gather'd together a considerable Number of *Latins*, *Albanians* and *Trojans*, began to execute their Project. But a Contention arose between the Brethren about the Place where this City shou'd be built. *Remus* was for having it upon *Mons Aventinus*, and *Romulus* on the contrary, was for having it upon *Mons Palatinus*, as being the Place where they were brought up. This Difference was refer'd to *Numitor* their Grandfather, who advis'd them to leave the Determination thereof to the Augury of Birds. Accordingly *Remus* went to *Mons Aventinus*, and *Romulus* to *Mons Palatinus*. *Remus* immediately upon his Appearance was saluted by six *Vultures*; and *Romulus*, in some time after, by twelve. But this was so far from composing the Difference that it rather inflam'd it: For *Remus* pleaded the Priority of time, and *Romulus* the Advantage of Number; and both were Declar'd Kings by their Followers. At last they came to an Engagement, in which *Remus* lost at once both his Life and Pretence to the Kingdom. Then *Romulus*



*lus* having an uncontrol'd Liberty to do what he pleas'd, surrounded both the Hills with a Wall, and fortify'd the *Palatinian* Hill, the Place of his Education, with Care and Industry, calling the City after his own Name, *Rome*.

This is the most probable and approv'd account of the Original of *Rome*. As to the time or Year in which it was built, ancient Historians are at great Variance. The *Grecians* attribute the Building of it, some to *Romus* the Son of *Æneas*, some to *Æneas* himself; others to the Sons of *Latinus* and a certain *Roma*; and others again to *Remus* the Son of *Circe* and *Ulysses*. Neither are the *Roman* Historians agreed upon the Matter; for some give in the Sons of *Æneas*, and others, his Daughter's Sons, for the Builders. *Timæus Siculus* makes the Date of *Rome* equal to that of *Carthage*, and says it was built thirty eight Years before the first *Olympiad*. And among those who are look'd upon as most Authentick, some say, it was built in the sixth *Olympiad*, and the first Year of the same, according to *Velleius Paterculus*; or the third, according to others; or the fourth, according to *Varro*, the most Learned of all the *Greek* or *Roman* Historians. *M. Porcius Cato* dates the *Æra* of the City in the first Year of the seventh *Olympiad*: But *Fabius Pictor* casts it into the eighth, and *Lucius Cyncius* into the twelfth. Among all these jarring Opinions, *Varro's* seems to be best entituled to a Preference; which is, that *Rome* was built in the fourth Year of the sixth *Olympiad*, three hundred and eighty nine Years after the Destruction of *Troy*, according to the Chronological Account left us by *Bucolius* of the Years of the Reign of the *Latin* Kings from *Æneas* to *Romulus*.

The Walls of *Rome* being finish'd, *Romulus* first created one hundred Senators, and then set to Work the most Exquisite Artists he cou'd meet with, and built that Famous Edifice call'd ever since the Capitol, as also a Thousand Houses, and a Temple which he call'd an *Azilum*, or *Sanctuary*.

In the Beginning, he had only three Thousand Foot and three hundred Horse; but by the Means of this Sanctuary the City was soon fill'd with Vagabonds, Thieves, Robbers and Men oppress'd by Debts, who were all kindly receiv'd and provided for. *Romulus* his next Care was to provide Wives for these new Inhabitants, in order to propagate their Kind, and People his City; and being perswaded that the Neighbouring Nations wou'd not give their Daughters to such Scandalous Fellows, instituted a Publick Horse Race, and other Solemn Spectacles; and by Proclamation invited all the Nations round about him to come and partake of his Diversions: And when many Women and Maids came from the Neighbouring Nations, especially from the Country of the *Sabines*, to see these Diversions, upon a Signal given, every Man of the *Romans* (for so were they all call'd) seiz'd upon a Woman or Maid, and took them to Wives.

This Rape was so highly resented by the Neighbouring Nations that they immediately flew to Arms. In the first Battle *Romulus* got the Victory, and slew with his own Hands *Acron* King of the *Cinenetes*: But the other *Sabines*, whose Daughters were chiefly injur'd, having muster'd up a great Army, came and laid Siege to *Rome*, and soon after possess'd themselves of the Capitol by the Treachery of *Tarpeia* the Daughter of *Tarpeius*, who secretly open'd one of the Gates to them by Night, on Condition they shou'd give her what they carry'd on their Left Arms, meaning the golden Bracelets they wore on their Left Hands; but the *Sabines* thinking she meant their Shields, so soon as they got in, threw them all upon her and stifled her to Death: And then slew the four hundred Men that were in the Capitol.



*Romulus* hereupon sent *Hostilius* with a Body of Men to retake the Capitol, but *Hostilius* being wounded and his Men giving Ground, *Romulus* himself came up, and beat the *Sabines* back into the Capitol; and having prepar'd all things for a general Assault, the *Sabine* Women, whom the *Romans* had ravish'd, ran between both the Armies, and with mournful Cries and Lamentations, represented to the *Romans* that *they were going to kill their Wive's Parents and Brethren*, and to the *Sabines*, that *they were, in like manner, going to kill their Daughter's and Sister's Husbands*. The *Romans* and *Sabines* being equally moved at these Lamentations, laid down their Arms, and enter'd into a mutual Confederacy and Friendship upon these Terms. 1st. That *Tatius* the King of the *Sabines* shou'd reign together with *Romulus* at Rome. 2d. That the City it self shou'd retain the Name of Rome from *Romulus*; but the Citizens should be call'd *Quirites* from *Cures*, which was *Tatius's* Country. 3d. That the *Sabines* shou'd be Incorporated into the City, and have equal Privileges with the *Romans*.

By this means *Tatius* became Sharer in the Government of Rome, and annex'd all the Lands which he possess'd to those the *Romans* had conquer'd before. He took up his Residence in the Capitol, and *Romulus* in Mount *Palatine*. He created an Hundred *Sabine* Senators, as *Romulus* had done before the like number of *Romans*. Then both he and *Romulus*, in regard of the singular Service the Women had done them, granted many Privileges in their Favour, honour'd them with a Solemn annual Feast, call'd *Matronalia*, and then built Temples to their gods; *Tatius* to the gods of the *Sabines*, and, among others, one to *Vesta*; and *Romulus* to the gods of the *Romans*, chiefly to *Jupiter* whom he call'd *Jupiter Stator*, who, as he pretended, stopp'd his Soldiers when they turn'd their backs to the Enemy, upon the fall of *Hostilius*.

*Romulus* and *Tatius* reign'd jointly for five Years, at the End of which *Tatius* was kill'd by the *Lavinians*, because he refus'd to deliver up some *Sabine* Robbers, who had pillag'd their Lands. *Romulus* did not much resent the Murder of his Colleague, but gave satisfaction to the Plaintiffs: Then he made War upon the *Fidenates*, who dwelt in a City upon the Banks of the *Tiber*, call'd now *Castel Guibileo*. The Occasion of the War was this: The *Fidenates* took a Convoy of Corn, which the *Crustumeni* were bringing to Rome; and wou'd not surrender it notwithstanding all the Solicitations and Remonstrances of the *Romans* and *Crustumenians*. Whereupon *Romulus* Invaded their Country, defeated them in a Battle, sack'd their Town, and annex'd it to his own Territories. This drew on another War with the *Veientes*. *Veis*, now call'd *Isola* was then the Capital City of *Etruria*. The Inhabitants of this City being Jealous of the growing greatness of the *Romans*, demanded the Restitution of the City of the *Fidenates*, as being their Allies; and upon refusal took up Arms against the *Romans*: But *Romulus* defeated them in two Battles, and took their Capital City, which he likewise join'd to the rest of his Conquests.

*Romulus*, puffed up with so many Victories abroad, began to play the Tyrant at Home. He despis'd the Senators, and never call'd them together, but to Confirm his *Placita*; by which Means he render'd himself so Odious, that they pull'd him in Pieces at the Lake of *Capria* while he harangu'd the People; and forasmuch as this happen'd at a time, in which there was an Eclipse of the Sun and a violent Tempest, the Senators made the little People believe, he was carry'd up to Heaven. He liv'd fifty five Years, and reign'd twenty seven. He enlarg'd the Number of the Citizens that



were to carry Arms to forty six Thousand Foot and one Thousand Horse. He had succeeded to his Grandfather *Numitor* in the Kingdom of *Albany*, which he Govern'd by Deputies. He dy'd on the fifth of *July* (according to the Julian Year, on the twenty sixth of May) which Day was call'd *No-na Caprotina*, alluding to the Place where the Murder was committed.

The Senate Govern'd the People for one Year, after which *Numa Pompilius* a *Sabine* was chosen King. This Prince added the Ornament of Laws to the City that ow'd its rise to Arms alone, built a Temple to *Janus*, the Name of one of their gods, which was always to stand open in War, and shut in time of Peace. He discarded *Romulus's* Guards, as believing it much better to be lov'd by his Subjects than fear'd; and to the two *Flamins* or Priests, viz. one for *Jupiter* and another for *Mars*, he added a third for *Romulus*. He also instituted the Order of Priests and Vestal Virgins, and reform'd the Model of the Year, by adding or prefixing *January* and *February* to the other ten Months, whereof *Romulus* made the Year to Consist before, and which indeed wanted these two Months to make up the Periodical Course of the Sun. *Romulus's* Year began with the Month of *March*, and follow'd in this Order, viz. *Martius*, *Aprilis*, *Majus*, *Junius*, *Quintilis* or the fifth Month answering our *July*) *Sextilis*, *September*, *October*, *November*, *December*. Here ended the Year, and *Martius* immediately succeeded: So that the next Year ended on the last Day of our *October*, and the Year following, on the last of our *August*. *Numa* observing this Inversion of the Seasons, prefix'd the Months of *January* and *February* to the Month of *March*, and settled the Seasons of the Year in the Order we have them at present.

After *Numa* had reign'd forty three Years and liv'd eighty, *Tullius Hostilius* succeeded him, in the second Year of the twenty seventh Olympiad. He was the Son of that *Hostilius*, who behav'd himself so bravely against the *Sabines*. He ingratiated himself with the People by the Impartial Division which he made of the Conquer'd Lands among them, and added the Hill *Calius* to the Precincts of the City. He was a Warlike Prince, and embrac'd all Opportunities of shewing his Courage. In the Beginning of his Reign the *Albani* revolted, and Plunder'd some Grounds belonging to the *Romans*. *Hostilius* hereupon led forth an Army of choice Men: But before he cou'd come up with them, their General *Cluilius* dy'd, and was succeeded by *Metius Suffetius*. This Man was neither in Courage nor Conduct equal to his Predecessor, nor had the *Albanians* much Confidence in him, or (which was worse) a better General to Command: It was therefore thought adviseable to treat of Peace with *Hostilius*, which at last was Concluded upon these Terms, viz. That the three Brethren, call'd the *Curatij* of *Alba*, shou'd fight with the three Brethren, call'd the *Horatij* of *Rome*; and that the Victors shou'd give Law to the Conquer'd. The Place appointed for this Combat, was between both the Armies. The *Horatij* came forth from among the *Romans*, and the *Curatij* from among the *Albanians*; each Party Solicitous not for their own Lives, but for the Glory of their Country, which was either to Rule or Obey, as the Success of the Combat shou'd happen. At the first Onset two of the *Horatij* fell down dead, leaving only the third to encounter the three *Curatij*. This great Hero having his Wits about him, concluded it was not safe to engage all of them at once; he therefore ran away a little Space, and turning about encounter'd him that was the most forward in the Pursuit, and before the next cou'd come up, laid him flat upon the Ground. Then betook himself again to his Heels.



Heels. The two Brethren mov'd with Indignation to see their Brother dead, pursu'd him with all their Might. But forasmuch as one of them had been grievously Wounded in killing his Man, he was not able to keep Pace with his Brother in the Pursuit, which the Noble *Horatian* observing as he look'd back, turn'd upon him that was next to him, and slew him also, having then to deal but with one Man, he went to meet him half way, and soon laid him down by his Brethren.

The *Albanians* seeing their Champions dead, and the *Horatian* Victor, submitted immediately to *Hostilius*, who requir'd no more of Them, but to join their Troops to his, being then resolv'd to make War upon the *Fidenates* and *Veientes*, who being weary of the Roman Yoke, began to shake it off. But before this War began, there happen'd a Tragical Scene in Rome, which surpriz'd all the World. As the *Horatian* Conqueror was carry'd to Rome in Triumph, bearing the Spoils of the *Curatij*, his own Sister, who, it seems, had been betrothed to One of these *Curatij*, came to meet him, and seeing him wear the Cloak of her Spouse, which she had wrought with her own Hands, cry'd out with a lamentable Voice, *cursing that fatal Victory, which depriv'd her of the Man she lov'd above all Things*. This Conduct of his Sister rais'd such Indignation in the Breast of the *Horatian*, that he threw down the Trophies of his Victory, and with his Sword pierc'd her Heart, adding these Words. *Get thee hence with thy unseasonable Love, thou who hast forgot the Death of thy two Brethren : May thus perish all the Roman Women, who lament the Death of our Enemies*. This horrid Fact was taken so ill by all the Roman Magistrates, that they order'd the *Horatian* to be put in Irons, and sentenc'd him to die for so unnatural a Murder : But the People rescu'd him out of their Hands. However, he was oblig'd to expiate the Guilt of his Crime by such Lustrations and Sacrifices as were in use in those Days.

The War with the *Fidenates* and *Veientes* being Decreed, *Hostilius* order'd the Troops of *Alba*, under the Command of *Metius Suffetius* to join him. But this Traitor, when the Battle began, withdrew with all his Troops, giving way to the Enemy to attack *Hostilius* in Flank and Rear. *Hostilius* perceiving his Treachery, behav'd himself however so gallantly, that he defeated the Enemy, and took *Suffetius*, whom he ty'd to two Chariots and drag'd to Pieces, causing the Chariots to draw different ways. Then he caus'd *Alba*, which was hitherto the Metropolis of Rome to be level'd with the Ground, after it had stood about four hundred eighty seven Years. His next work was to reduce the *Sabines*, who had remain'd in their Country, and were still averse to the Romans, notwithstanding they were made Free of the City, and had the same Privileges and Immunities as their Countrymen, who dwelt in Rome. When this was done, *Ancus Martius*, who always bore a spleen to *Hostilius*, pretending the Crown belong'd to him of Right, as being Marry'd to *Pompilia*, the Daughter of *Numa*, conspir'd against him, and with a select Number of *Affassin* rush'd into the Palace, Murder'd *Hostilius*, his Wife, Children and all others that were within the Precincts of the Court : And then set Fire to the Palace, and, it happening to thunder at the same time, gave out *that the Palace, together with Hostilius and his Family, had been consumed by the Flames which came from the Clouds*.

*Hostilius* being thus taken away, the wicked Murderer *Ancus Martius* was chosen King, who, by wearing a Crown, seem'd to put off the fierceness of his Nature : For he gave himself so much to Piety and Religion im-



mediately after his Accession to the Throne, that he was reputed Timorous, and next degree to a Coward. Which when the *Latins*, the *Fidenates*, the *Volsicians*, the *Veientes* and *Sabines* perceived, they revolted from him; but *Ancus* made them soon understand, *that he cou'd Fight as well as Pray*: For he, in a short time reduc'd them all, and made them bear a Yoke much heavier than the former. He joyn'd *Rome* to *Janiculum* by a Bridge, and built a Prison for Criminals in the Middle of the City, whose Precincts he considerably enlarg'd, and extended the Dominions of *Rome* to the Sea; and, for the Encouragement of Trade, built the City *Ostia* in the Mouth of the *Tyber*. He reign'd twenty four Years, and was short of none of his Predecessors, either in religious Duties, or Military Virtues.

His Successor was *Lucius Tarquinius*, Originally a *Grecian*, being the Son of *Demaratus* of *Corinth*, who descended of the *Bacchiada*, and in the time of *Cypselus's* Tyranny came to *Hetruria*, and begot two Sons, *Aruus* and *Lucumo*, upon an *Etrurian* Matron. *Aruus* died without any living Issue, but after his Death a *Posthumous* Son was born to him, who from his Poverty was named *Egerius*; for his Father being dead before he was born, and his Grandfather *Demaratus* dying also soon after of Grief for the loss of his Son, *Lucumo* possess'd himself of the whole Heritage, and left poor *Egerius* to shift for himself. This *Lucumo* not meeting with Preferment in *Hetruria* suitable to the Ambition of his Mind, came to *Rome*, where *Ancus Martius* gave him a very civil Reception. He chang'd his Name from *Lucumo* to *Lucius*, and added a surname taken from his Country *Tarquinius*. His Wife's Name was *Tanaquil Gaia Cacia*.

Soon after, *Ancus* made him a Senator, and he, by his extraordinary Parts, quickly gain'd a great share in the Affection of the People. He was noted both for his peaceful and Military Virtues, and the King depended so much upon his Integrity, that he left him Guardian to his Sons. But *Lucius Tarquinius* Insulted over their Childhood, and harangued the People in order to hook in the Kingdom to himself. He produc'd the Example of *Tatius* and *Numa* to Vouch for a Foreigners Title to that Dignity; but above all, cry'd up his own Liberality. By which Means he compass'd his End, in the second Year of the forty first *Olympiad*, one hundred and thirty nine Years after the Building of *Rome*.

*Tarquinius* oblig'd the *Latin's* to Sue for Peace, He subdu'd the *Sabines* twice, and after a War of nine Years standing, Master'd the *Etrurians*, who in Testimony of their Homage sent him of their own accord the Badges of Majesty, viz. A Crown of Gold, a Throne of Ivory, a Scepter with an Eagle on the Top of it, a Purple Coat barr'd with Gold, and a purple Lac'd Gown that differ'd from those which the *Persian* and *Lydian* Kings wore, by its Semicircular Figure. Some say they also sent twelve Axes for so many Towns: For the Custom was, that the Magistrates of every Town should have one, and the General of the Army twelve, carried before him.

I intimated before, that *Romulus* instituted a Senate of a hundred Men, to which *Tatius* added the like Number of *Sabines*, who were made Free of the City, and thereupon call'd *Patres Conscripti*. *Tarquinius* added to these two hundred, another hundred more, who were styl'd *Patres Minorum Gentium*. He enlarg'd the number of Vestal Virgins, from four to seven. He beautify'd the *Forum*, and repair'd the Walls (which had been built in a hurry) with Stones, every one of which was a full Cart-load by it self. He likewise caus'd Sinks and Common-shoares to be made for conveying the Filth of the *Tyber*, which was so magnificent an undertaking, that the Con-



fors laid out two Thousand Talents in cleaning them. He also design'd to add three Centuries of Horsemen to the like number Instituted by *Romulus* : But being preadmonish'd by *Actius Nævius*, a noted *Augur*, to avoid the altering of *Romulus's* Model, he doubled the number of the Additional Centuries, and left the other three as they were. At length about the thirty eighth Year of his Reign, and the Eightieth of his Age, he was kill'd by a Conspiracy of *Ancus Martius* his Son. He was surnamed *Priscus*, when his Grandson was call'd *Superbus*, from the Corruption of his Manners. *Tarquinius Priscus* was follow'd by *Servius Tullius* in the fourth Year of the fiftieth *Olympiad*. He was call'd *Servius*, as being the Son of *Ocrisia Serva*, who was left with Child when her Husband was kill'd before *Corniculum*, a City belonging to the *Latins*, and was presented by *Tarquinius* to the Queen. He was brought up in the Court, and gave great Proof of an excellent Genius : Whereupon he was prefer'd to the highest Posts both in the Army and at Home. He was equally lov'd by the People for his Integrity and Prudence ; and at last came to be Son-in-Law to *Tarquinius*.

*Tarquinius* left no Sons alive, only two Grand-children very Young. The Queen wheedled the People so, that she got the Guardianship of these two Children for him. He being Regent did so humour the *Plebs*, that in spite of the Senate, and the *Patres Conscripti*, the Common-Council or *Comitia Curiata* elected him King. Having confirm'd himself in the Government, he distributed publick Lands to the Poor ; he made fifty Laws in the Common-Council concerning Contracts and Injuries. He added the *Viminalis* and *Esquianus* Hills to the other Five, and surrounded them all with a Wall ; he also divided the City into four Parts, and added a fourth Tribe.

Whereas *Romulus* divided the People into Tribes and Wards, according to the Seats and Way of Communion in their Sacrifices ; *Servius* drew them up in six Ranks according to their Substance. The first Rank was allotted to those who were worth one hundred and ten thousand Asles ; the next four comprehended those whose Substance was gradually less by a fourth Part ; and the last included those who had little or nothing. These six Classes he divided into a hundred eighty eight Centuries. The first Class contain'd eighty Centuries of Footmen, and eighteen of Horsemen, the second, twenty two ; which included the Tradesmen ; the third, twenty ; the fourth, twenty two ; the fifth, twenty five ; and the sixth, only one Century. Both the Men, and their Estates were to be tax'd according to their Centuries ; so that tho' the richer sort, were the fewer in Number, yet being divided into several Centuries, they contributed more Money and Men towards a War.

But after all, the Poor had nothing to boast of : For the same Law strip'd them of all Power. For, whereas formerly their Number gave Them an Ascendant in the Common-Council ; *Servius* order'd, that all Matters of Importance should be handled by a Convention of the Centuries of the richest Citizens ; and if these ninety eight agreed upon one Vote, they were sure to carry it, as being more numerous than the rest. But if their Votes jarr'd, other Classes were call'd in, 'till the ninety eight came to agree ; then at last the sixth Class, containing only one Century of the poorest sort of People was call'd to Vote ; but this seldom happen'd. Here the Reader is to observe, That the Word *Century* does not imply just an hundred Men, but a certain division of Men, and that in those Conventions of the Centuries, 'twas not every single Man, but every Century, let its number be what it would, that gave in one Vote.



When *Servius* had gone thro' with the Census, by which he came to know both the Number and the Estates of the People; he appointed a *Lustrum* so call'd a *Luendo* or Paying; and when every Man was rated according to his Substance, the Citizens appear'd in Arms in the *Campus Martius*, and from thence went in Procession, and offer'd the Sacrifice call'd *Suovetauralia*, that is, a Sacrifice in which a Hog, a Sheep and an Ox were offer'd. Then the Procession or *Lustrum* was appointed to be every fifth Year; for the Census or Tax was gather'd only once in five Years; and the Romans counted the Time by these *Lustra's*, as the Greeks did by their *Olympiads*, only with this Difference, that every *Lustrum* consisted of five Years, whereas every *Olympiad* consisted only of four. And tho' the Kings were soon after expell'd, yet the Consuls continu'd the same Ceremony, counting the time, and gathering the Census or Tax after the same Manner unto the Days of *Julius Caesar*, who reduc'd the *Lustrum* to four Years, and order'd the Census to be gather'd every fourth Year. To return.

In this first Review 847000 Roman Citizens were rated; and in Order to increase their Number, *Servius* introduc'd the *Manumission* of the Elders, and divided them that were thus *Manumised* into four Tribes. A *Manumission* is setting a Slave free, or sending him away from under his Masters Hand, as the Word imports; and such as were thus made free were call'd ever after *Libertini*; whence, I believe, we call Men *Libertins*, who do what they please. At first indeed, they were not made free, but upon very good Grounds; but afterwards, any Misdemeanour in an ill Master was accounted sufficient: So that *Dionysius* had reason to blame the City that Govern'd the World, for suffering the Censor's to degrade the Senator, and to have no Regard to the Merit of those whom they made free of their City.

*Servius* did not only Abridge the Authority of the Senate and the Noble-Men, but likewise lower'd the Regal Power, in order to advance the Power of the People. The *Latin's* by his Advice, built a Temple to *Diana* at Rome, where they met every Year upon a Festival Day, and remitted their Mutual Debates to the Publick Judgment; which was the same Project the *Amphyctiones* pursu'd in Greece, as well as the *Ionian Council* in *Ephesus*, and the Convention of the *Dorians* at *Epitropium*. He was the first that stamp'd the Effigies of Cattle upon Money; from whence it was call'd *Pecunia*; for, before this time, the Romans only us'd the Unpolish'd Metall. This was *Servius's* Business at Home. Abroad he wag'd War with the *Etrurians*, and after three Triumphs, at last subdu'd them. But tho' he surmounted all Publick Jealousies and Oppositions, yet the Domestic Feuds were too hard for him. For he Marry'd his two Daughters to *Tarquinius* his two Sons, viz. One Daughter of Corrupt Manners to the best of the Princes, and the other of extraordinary good Qualities to a profligate Prince. Whereupon the two Corrupt Parties, one of either Sex, Combin'd together to kill, the one her Husband, and the other his Wife, and then to Marry together. After that, their Business was to remove *Servius* out of the Way, who had possess'd himself of the Kingdom by Tricks, and without the Consent of the *Patres*. But in order to Compals that end, there was a Necessity of winning the Favour of the People.

At last when *Servius's* his Glory defeated all their Attempts; *Tarquinius*, (for so was this wicked Grandson of *Lucius Tarquinius* call'd) upon his Wife's Sollicitation, resolves to make away with his Father-in-Law. Accordingly he assembles the Senate, sits down in the seat where the Kings usually sat, and exclaims against *Servius*, calling him Usurper, and alledg-



ing that the Crown belong'd to himself. *Servius* hearing the Noise, run's into the Senate House to see what was the matter. *Tarquinius*, so soon as he came in, flew at him, takes him by the Throat, and flings him down Stairs, and lest the fall might not do his Work, caus'd some of his Soldiers to pierce his Body with their Swords. His wicked Daughter *Tullia* hearing that her Father was Murder'd, and her Husband Proclaim'd King, Mounts her Chariot, and drives to the Senate, that she also might be Proclaim'd Queen, and coming to the Street where her Father's Corps lay expos'd, the Horses stopping at so horrid a Sight, she caus'd her Coachman to drive over his Body; Whence that Street chang'd its Name from *Vicus-Cyprius* to *Vicus-Scleratus*. This was the Exit of *Tullius Servius*, after he had Reign'd forty four Years. He was a Man of Great Moderation and by his Courteous Behaviour wip'd off the Imputation he was charg'd with for Invading the Government. The *Patricij* saw he Design'd to put the Power into the Hands of the People, and therefore join'd in with *Tarquinius*, in order to keep up the Authority of the Senate.

*Tarquinius* possess'd himself of the Kingdom of *Rome* in the fourth Year of the sixty first *Olympiad*, two hundred and twenty Years after the building of the City. The Arrogance of his Temper procur'd him the Surname of *Superbus*; for 'tis said, he dispos'd of every thing at Discretion; He sunk the Authority of the Senate and Conventions, and fill'd the City with Blood and Rapes. He engag'd in a War with the *Volsci*, which continu'd twenty Years; and defeated the *Sabines*. He enter'd into a Confederacy with the *Æqui* and *Hetrusci*. He took from the *Volsci* the City *Gabij* together with *Suessa Pometia*, and pretended to build the *Capitol* upon its spoil, out of regard to his Grand-Father *Tarquinius's* Vow, who, in the last War against the *Sabines* had Vow'd a Temple to *Jupiter*, *Juno* and *Minerva*; and had been at a great deal of Charges, in smoothing the Rock upon which it stood.

It is said that a certain Old Woman came to *Tarquinius* with Nine Books offering to Sell them to him; but he refus'd to Purchase them, because she set a prodigious great Price upon them. Whereupon she went away, burnt three of them, and came back with the other six, holding them at the Price she demanded for the Nine; and upon refusal of that Price, went and burnt three more; came back the third time, and wou'd have as much for the three remaining as she demanded at first for the Nine. Then the matter was look'd upon as a Prodigy, and referr'd to the *Augures*; who advis'd the King to buy those *Sibylline* Books (for so were they call'd) at any Rate. Accordingly it was done, and the Woman immediately disappear'd. *Tarquinius* having purchased these Books, employ'd two Men to take Care of them, whence they were call'd *Duumviri Sacrorum*. Afterwards the number was enlarg'd, so that they became *Decemviri Sacrorum*; and by an Act of the Senate the Books were to be consulted only upon great Emergencies; as when Sedition prevail'd in the Republick, when they were routed in War, or when Prodigies appear'd. They were kept in a Stone Chest in the *Capitol*, 'till both they and the Place fell a Sacrifice to the Flames. Then they were sought for in other Towns and private Houses, and some were made use of that were spurious; but the Genuin sort were distinguish'd by *Acrostick* Lines.

This old Woman, who brought the Books to *Tarquinius*, was call'd *Sibylla*, which signifies a Woman privy to *Jupiter's* Counsels. And forasmuch as we read of many *Sibylla's*, it will not be amiss to give a brief Account



count of that *Enthusiastick* Family. The first *Sibylla*, according to *Varro*, was either a *Persian*, *Chaldean* or *Hebrean* born at *Noe* near the *Red-Sea*; her Father's Name was *Baroffus*, her Mother's, *Erymantha*; and her own, *Sambetha*. The second was a *Lybian*. The third, the *Delphick Themis*. The fourth, a *Cumean*, from *Cimcrium* a Town in *Campania*. The fifth, a *Samian*, call'd *Phyto*. The sixth was of *Cuma*; her Name was *Amalthæa*, and according to others, *Herophile* or *Demophile*.

*Suidas* calls her *Herophile*, and says she carry'd those *Nine Books* to *Tarquinius*, and demanded three hundred *Philippus's* for 'em. The seventh *Sibylla* was of *Hellepont*. She was born in the *Trojan Territories*, and liv'd in the time of *Cyrus* and *Solon*. The eighth was a *Phrygian*, and Prophecy'd in *Ancyra*. The ninth a *Tiburtine*; her Name was *Albunea*, and was Worship'd as a Goddess at *Tibur*, near the Banks of *Anio*; it being said, her Image holding a Book in its Hand, was found in that River. Besides these *Sibylls* mention'd by *Varro*, we read of several others, as namely of *Colophon*, *Elissa*, *Cassandra* the Daughter of *Priamus*, *Sibylla Ephirotica*, the *Thessalian Manto*, the Daughter of *Tiresias* the *Theban*; to whom we may add *Carmentis* the *Arcadian*, Mother to *Evander*, and *Fauna* or *Fatua* Sister and Wife to King *Faunus*. *Strabo* mentions two *Sibylls*, who liv'd in *Erythra*, one of whom flourish'd in the Reign of *Alexander the Great*. To return.

*Tarquinius* finding that the People were out of Humour, for being oblig'd to work at the Building of the *Capitol*, had a Mind to break their resenting Spirits, as also to gratifie his own Avarice. In Order thereunto he March'd thence out against *Ardea* a *Rutlian* City richly Stor'd with Plenty of all Things. While he lay before this Town, *Sextus* his eldest Son ravish'd a Noble Matron call'd *Lucretia* Wife to *Tarquinius Collatinus*. *Lucretia* relented the Abuse so highly, that, seeing she could get no Satisfaction of *Sextus* upon all the Complaints made both by her self and her Friends, took a Knife and stabb'd herself in the Breast, leaving to future Ages an unparallel'd Example of Conjugal Chastity, and of the Greatness of her Soul. This Piece of Wickedness put all the Relations and Friends of *Lucretia* upon Conspiring the utter Ruin and Destruction of *Tarquinius Superbus* and of all his Family. The Chief Actors in the Plot, were *Lucretius* the Father of *Lucretia*, *Publius Valerius*, and *Lucius Junius Brutus* the Son of *Marcus Junius* who descended of one of the Retinue of *Aneas*. This *Marcus Junius* Marry'd *Tarquinia* the Daughter of *Tarquinius Priscus*, by whom he had this *Lucius*; and afterwards *Tarquinius Superbus* put him and his eldest Son to Death, in order to Possess himself of his Estate. *Lucius* upon the Death of his Father and Eldest Brother, and the Loss of his Patrimony, was Constrain'd (in Order to save his Life) to Act the Part of a Fool, and was thereupon Surnam'd *Brutus*: But being a Man of a piercing Wit, he diligently watch'd the Opportunity of taking off the Tyrant. Accordingly when *Lucretia* laid violent Hands upon herself, and *Collatinus* her Husband discover'd the Plot to him, he took the Bloody Knife in his Hand, and perswaded all the Company to Swear by *Mars* and the other gods, to expell *Tarquinius* and his Offspring, and never to suffer another King in *Rome*.

After *Brutus* had laid open the Method for executing the Design, the Conspirators enter'd into a Debate upon the future Form of Government. At length they agreed that the Name of Kingdom should be chang'd into  
that



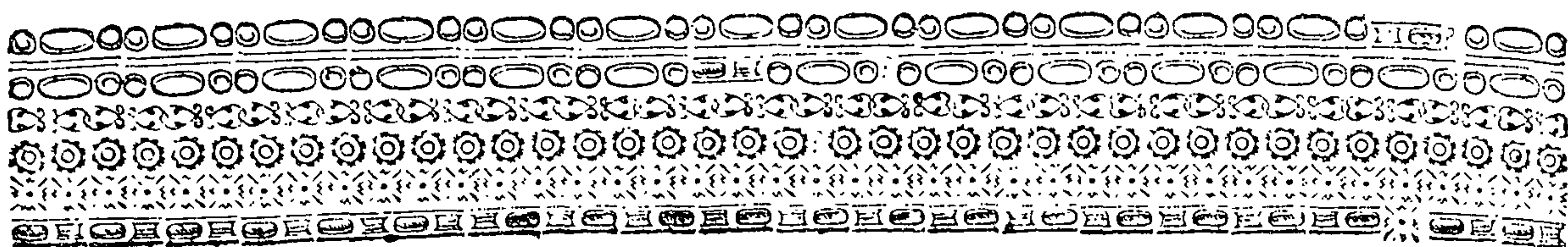
that of Republick, and that Modester Words shou'd be us'd for King and Monarchy. It was likewise agreed, that not one, but two, shou'd sit at the Helm of Affairs, and that the more Splendid Badges of Majesty, which inflam'd the People's Jealousie, shou'd be quite laid aside, excepting on Triumphal and Festival Days. Such Badges were the Scepters, the Crowns of Gold, and Purple Garments. The Use of the Ivory Chair of State, the *Pratexta*, or White Garment border'd with Purple, and Serjeants carrying the Fasces or Rods of State, and the Axes were retain'd. Moreover it was their Unanimous Opinion, that a perpetual Power was by no Means to be endur'd; but that a Yearly Power, and that in the Hands of two (*Ne Morâ vel Solitudine corrumpereetur*) was infinitely more suitable to Modesty and Liberty. But at the same time, in order to keep the Name of a King, it was further agreed upon, that the Title of *Rex Sacrorum* shou'd be conferr'd upon some Noble Men; who shou'd have the Charge of Religious Worship.

*Brutus*, having Communicated this Model of Government to the Senate, obtain'd a Decree that Confirm'd it. Then he call'd together the People, and expos'd to their View the Corps of *Lucretia* stain'd with Blood and Gore; whence he took Occasion to exaggerate the Charge against the *Tarquinius*, and made out at large, that both the People and Senate were Monstrously injur'd. He told them, that *neither the Temper of his Sons, nor the Humour of Tarquinius wou'd permit them to hope for Amendment; and that the Business they were about might easily be put in Execution.* By which Means he also obtain'd a *Plebiscitum*, or a Decree of the People, for expelling *Tarquinius* and all his Off-spring, and prohibiting any Man under Pain of Death to Countenance their Restoration either by Words or Actions.

This was Concluded upon in the Convention of the Wards or *Comitia Curiata*; and besides, it was agreed upon, that two Men chosen by the Convention of the said Wards shou'd Govern the Republick. *Brutus* nominated one *Sp. Lucretius* as Regent and President of the Meeting, who remov'd the Convention to the *Campus Martius*, and put up *Brutus* and *Collatinus* as Candidates for the Office of Yearly Kings. The Convention embrac'd the Proposal *Nemine Contradicente*. Then a Messenger was dispatch'd to the Camp to sollicite the Soldiers to revolt.

The King came Post to *Rome*, but finding the Gates shut against him; return'd to the Field, where his Soldiers likewise refus'd him Admittance; so that in his Old Age, his Hairs being already Gray, he was forc'd to submit to Banishment, in the two Hundred and forty fifth Year after the Building of the City, the last Year of the sixty seventh *Olympiad*.





## C H A P. II.

*Of the Affairs of the Romans under the Consuls to the second Alteration of the Government, introduc'd by the Decemviri.*



**A**FTER the Expulsion of the Kings, the Administration of Affairs was put into the Hands of Consuls, so call'd a *Consulendo*, because their chief Care was to Consult the Publick Weal. They were to be always two, and Rul'd only for one Year, at the Expiration of which, New Consuls were Chosen; and the Reason why they were thus *Anni* and *Bini* as they call'd them, that is, Yearly and two and two was, *ne Morâ aut Solitudine corrumpentur*, lest, if one were alone, or if both shou'd continue long in the Magistracy, they might be Obnoxious to Corruption, Bribery or Faction.

At first, the Consular Power was equal to that of Kings; but in a short time it was restrained by the *Provocatio*, and *Intercessio*; the former being an Appeal from the Consuls to the People, and the latter the Office of the *Tribunes*, who interceded for the People, of which more hereafter.

Those who first Hansell'd the Consulship were *Lucius Junius Brutus*, and *L. Tarquinius Collatinus*. These two had this Honour Conferr'd upon them, because they were the Chief Actors in Banishing the Kings. The First of them was Son to the Sister of *Tarquinius Superbus*, and the Latter was Husband to the Chaste *Lucretia*.

These New Consuls, at first, had twelve Axes carry'd before them, as well as before the Kings; but in order to prevent Reflection and Envy, they order'd that one of them shou'd have the Axes, and the other the Falces or Rods carry'd before 'em. In the mean Time a great Conspiracy was carry'd on, in order to restore *Tarquinius Superbus*, but *Vindicius* a Servant detected it; and *Junius Brutus* the Consul beheaded *Titus* and *Tiberius* his own Sons, as being concern'd in it; and left the other Complices to be punish'd by *Collatinus* his Collegue, whose Relations they were. *Collatinus* seem'd to be a little too Favourable to these other Conspirators, whereupon *Publius Valerius* took Care to have them Punish'd, and carry'd the Matter so far, that he got *Collatinus* turn'd out of the Consulship, and banish'd his Country, pretending that he seem'd to Favour the King's Party.

*Collatinus* his Place was fill'd by this same *Valerius*, a Man that hated the King Mortally; Then *Brutus* and he expos'd the King's Goods to be Plunder'd by the People, Levell'd his Houses with the Ground, and restor'd to the Publick the *Campus Martius*, which he had Engross'd to himself. *Tarquinius Superbus* finding his Plots and Stratagems prov'd Ineffectual, March'd against the *Romans* at the Head of a Numerous Army of *Etrurians*, and came



came to a sharp Engagement, in which *Aruns* his Son, and *Brutus* the Consul fell by one anothers Hands; but the *Romans* carry'd the Victory, and *Valerius* return'd in Triumph to *Rome*.

The People were Jealous of *Valerius* for governing the Republick by himself without a Collegue, and for making such Pompous Processions from his stately House, as seem'd to Threaten their Liberty. Upon Notice whereof *Valerius* pull'd down his House, remov'd the Axes from being part of his Ensigns, came into the Common Council, and lower'd the Badges to the People; and having done many Things on the Behalf of the Commons, by laying the Foundation of a *Democratical* Government, allow'd any Man that wou'd to put in for the Consulship. He brought in Appeals from the Consulsto the People. He reliev'd the Poor, by making Abatements of their Taxes, made a Law prohibiting any Man, upon pain of Death to Invade the Magistracy without the Desire of the People; as also another for punishing the Contumacy of Consuls. He added one hundred and sixty four Members to the Senate, and gave every one free Liberty to kill any Man that affected Tyranny, provided the Crime cou'd be made to appear. And in regard the People were to furnish the Charges of the Wars, he appointed Two, under the Title of *Questores*, to Manage the Treasury. For all which Courting of the People he was Surnam'd *Poplicola*.

This done, *Lucretius*, the Father of *Lucretia*, succeeded *Brutus*; but he died after a few Days, and *Marcus Horatius* succeeded. *Horatius* Consecrated the *Capitol* which was then newly Repair'd and Enlarg'd. In his Consulship the first League was made between the *Romans* and the *Carthaginians*. The next Year, *Valerius Poplicola* being then a second Time Consul, along with *Titus Lucretius Tricipitinus*; *Porfenna*, King of *Clusium*, besieg'd *Rome* with a numerous Army, in order to Restore *Tarquinius Superbus*. Soon after both the Consuls were wounded in some slight Skirmishes, in which the *Etrurians* pursu'd the *Romans* to the very Bridge; Then a Gallant young Man call'd *Horatius Cocles* oppos'd the Crowds of the Enemy till the Bridge was cut down behind him, then Leap'd into the River and Swam over to his own Men.

*Valerius Poplicola* and *Horatius Pulvillus* being Consuls for the next Year, Routed *Porfenna* in a bloody Battle, in which he lost five thousand Men. But he soon after return'd with greater Force, laid Siege to the City and distress'd the *Romans* beyond Measure. At this Time a certain young Cavalier call'd *Mutius Cordus* Combin'd with three hundred more to go to the Enemies Camp, and kill *Porfenna*; and having put on an *Etrurian* Habit went to *Porfenna's* Tent where meeting with *Porfenna's* Secretary, whom he thought to have been *Porfenna* himself, Stabb'd him with his Dagger: But being Seiz'd, and finding his Mistake, thrust his Right Hand into a great Fire before all the Spectators, for being so Unlucky as to miss the Object of his Revenge. *Porfenna* was so Astonish'd at his Courage, that he not only pardon'd the Crime, but also rais'd the Siege, made Peace with the *Romans*, and refresh'd them with Plenty of all Manner of Necessaries.

The War with *Porfenna* was no sooner over, when the *Sabines* and *Latins* revolted; *M. Valerius* Brother to *Poplicola* and *Posthumus Tubertus* being then Consuls. *Valerius* Conquer'd them twice in two sharp Engagements; and the next Year *Poplicola* being Consul a fourth time treated them at the same Rate. After that, *Poplicola*, the Darling of the People dy'd, and was interr'd at the Publick Charges.



Soon after the Death of *Poplicola*, the *Sabines* came to the very Walls of *Rome*, and *Posthumius* the Consul, who oppos'd them, lost a great Number of Men; but being joyn'd by the Forces under the Command of *Mementius* his Collegue, gain'd such a Victory as wou'd have ended in cutting off the whole Army of the Enemy, had not the Night interpos'd. Honours were hereupon Decreed for the Consuls. And forasmuch as these Honours consisted of a Triumph or an *Ovatio*, and that ever after, their Consuls or Dictators, or Generals challeng'd the like Honours upon their return from the Conquest of their Enemies; it will be requisite, once for all, to explain in what a Triumph consisted, and in what an *Ovatio*. A Triumph was Decreed for the General, when he Conquer'd the Enemy without committing any false Step, or suffering any other Loss than that which was occasion'd by the Courage of the Enemy; and was perform'd after this Manner. The General rode into the City on Horseback or in a Magnificent Chariot, carrying all the Badges and Ensigns of his Dignity, attended by all the Officers and Soldiers under their Arms, preceded by the Captives taken in Battle, led in Chains even Kings and Princes very often, and all the Spoils taken in the War; and being met by the Senate in their Robes of Ceremony, was Conducted to his Palace thro' a double Row of Citizens with Musick and Instruments Singing *Pæana's* and Praising their gods. But when the General had undergone any Defeat, or was Check'd by the Enemy out of any Neglect of his Duty, tho' he had afterwards Conquer'd them, yet the Senate wou'd Decree him an *Ovatio* only. This *Ovatio*, as some Authors tell us, derives its Original from the first Letter of it, because the Soldiers us'd to cry out O with a loud Voice as they March'd along in this Procession. It differ'd from a Triumph in this, that the General enter'd the City at the Head of the Army on Foot; that he had only a Purple Gown upon him, But not a Garment with Bars of Gold; that he had a Lawrel upon his Head, but no Scepter in his Hand. *Mementius* had a Triumph Decreed him, upon his Return as aforesaid; but *Posthumius* had only an *Ovatio*, because he had suffer'd some Check from the Enemy, before he was joyn'd by *Mementius*.

Next Year the *Sabines* being Routed again, desir'd Peace, which was Granted them. Soon after, *Posthumius Cominius* and *Titus Lartius* being Consuls, *Manilius Oclazius* Son-in-law to *Tarquinus Superbus* stirr'd up thirty Cities of the *Latins* against the *Romans*. The *Romans* thought fit to secure themselves by besieging and taking *Fidenæ*; which provok'd the *Latins* to engage more readily in the War. At the same time the *Romans* were troubled with Commotions at home, occasion'd by the hard Condition of Poor Debtors, whom their Creditors treated as Slaves. In the Midst of these Commotions, several were debauch'd by Bribes, and engag'd in a Conspiracy for the King's Restoration. Notwithstanding that a timely Discovery was made, and the Criminals punish'd; yet when they offer'd to levy Men for the Army, there were but very few who wou'd List themselves in the Service. Now there was no remedying this Inconvenience, by Reason of the Appeals to the People, which *Poplicola* had introduc'd. Upon this Account a new Magistracy was Created, who had an absolute and uncontroll'd Power for six Months.

This Head Magistrate was call'd *Dictator*, either because he was *Diſtinct*, or Nominated by the Consul; or because he dictat'd and gave the Word of Command. He was Nominated by the Consul, by the Senate's Orders, without the Consent of the Commons, for carrying on a War, fastening a



Nail in the Wall for a Memorial, in the time of a Plague, calling the *Comitia Consularia*, celebrating Games, choosing Senators, or upon any other Important Occasion. Upon the Nomination of the *Dictator*, the Power of all the other Magistrates, bating the *Tribunes*, was superseded. Who those *Tribunes* were, we shall see by and by. The *Dictator* Nominated one of a Consular or Pratorian Dignity to be *Magister Equitum*, with an Equal Power over the *Equites* and *Accensi*. He himself had a full Power over the People, and therefore was call'd *Magister Populi*. All the other Inferior Officers were call'd *Magistratus* and not *Magistri*: But afterwards Appeals were brought in from him to the People.

*Titus Lartius* was the First *Dictator*, and *Sp. Cassius*, *Magister Equitum*. The Dictator frighted the People with his Maces and Axes, and having them carry'd before him, rais'd a most Numerous Army, which he led into the Field, and then made a Truce with the Enemy for one Year. This done the *Latins* took up Arms once more upon the Sollicitation of *Tarquinius* and *Manilius*; but were sadly routed by *Aulus Posthumius*, the Second Dictator, at the Lake *Rhegillus*, whereupon they desir'd a Peace, and with Difficulty obtain'd it. At last *Tarquinius* having lost all, and being abandon'd by the *Latins*, *Etrurians* and other free Cities, went to *Cuma*, to the Court of *Aristodemus* the Tyrant, where he died soon after, in the Nintieth Year of his Age.

The *Romans* being freed from War abroad, fell into new Disorders at Home, occasion'd by the Exactions of Creditors, and the Cries of the Poor, who said they were not able to pay their Debts. This gave Rise to such Heats, that the *Plebeians* refus'd to take the Oath against the *Sabines*, and threaten'd to Relinquish the Country. And tho' at last they suffer'd themselves to be led out against the Enemy, yet finding they had got no Relief, they return'd Home; And tho' the Obligation of their Oath mov'd them not to flee from their Colours, yet they Retir'd under their Arms to the Sacred Mountain. Then the Town was in great Consternation, and the Senators divided in their Sentiments. At last, when they saw a great Number of Deserters went off, *Menenius Agrippa* prevail'd so far, that Ambassadors were sent with a Power to Treat with them without being Accountable to the Senate.

A Promise was made to the *Plebeians*, that those, who were not able to pay their Debts, shou'd be forgiven, and that hereafter Things shou'd be Manag'd by the joint Consent of the Senate and Commons. Then the Little People were very Chearful, and ready to Return, when *Sicinius* and *L. Junius* put into their Heads to ask Magistrates for themselves to Protect them, and Vindicate their Rights. The Ambassadors finding this a Business of the last Importance, remitted it to the Senate, where, after a Vigorous and hot Opposition, the Request was granted, and solemnly Confirm'd by an Act of the Senate. Accordingly the *Comitia Curiata* were call'd, and they Elected *Lucius Junius Brutus* (this being the Surname he desir'd) and *Lucius Sicinius Bellulus*, to whom they added *P. Licinius* and *Spurius Icilius Ruga*. They enter'd upon their New Office on the thirteenth of December, in the sixteenth Year after the Expelling of *Tarquinius*.

These Magistrates (If I may so call 'em) were Entituled *Tribuni Plebis*, *Tribunes* of the Little People: *Tribunes*, because they were chosen from among the Captains or Officers of the Army; and *Plebis*, because their chief Province was to defend the little People from the Insults and Power of the



great Ones. But they did not long Confine themselves within the Bounds of the Power wherewith they were Invested: For with an incredible Measure of Boldness they often put a stop to the Senates Acts and the Magistrates Edicts, in pronouncing only the Word *Veto*. Afterwards they were made *Sacro-Sancti*, and took the Liberty to call a Senate, Convocate the People, make Laws, and haul the Magistrates themselves to Prison. Thus the Senate made their Servants their Masters; and tho' they often repented it, being almost continually vex'd and tormented by these *Tribunes*, yet they were never able to Abolish them, till the Government came into the Hands of the Emperors. The Commons or *Plebs* obtain'd this further Privilege, that Two shou'd be Chosen out of their Number to serve the *Tribunes*, that is, to take Cognisance of some Causes, and to take Care of the Buildings and Corn. They were first call'd *Ministri Tribunorum*, and afterwards *Ædiles*, from taking Care of the *Ædes*, or Houses in which the *Plebiscita* or Decrees of the Commons were lodged. The Romans were Govern'd by six Sorts of Laws, viz. *Lex*, *Plebiscitum*, *Senatus-Consultum*, *Edicta Magistratum*, *Principum Placita*, *Responsa Prudentum*. *Lex* was that which was made by the whole Body of the People, including the Senators and *Patricians*: And the Method us'd in making this Law was thus: An Orator was appointed to Mount a Pulpit set up in the *Forum*, or great Market Place in the City, and to Harangue the People for several Days. shewing the Advantage that wou'd accrue to the Republick by making such a Law. And lest the People might be impos'd upon by the Eloquence of this Orator, another Orator was appointed to Mount the same Pulpit as many Days, and lay before the People the Inconvenience that might attend the Enacting the said Law.

When this was over, the chief Magistrate then in being, Mounted the Pulpit, and said with a loud Voice: *Vultis, Jubetis, Quirites, Legem ferre?* To which the People, such of them as were for the Law, answer'd: *Uti velis, uti Rogas*; and such as were against it, cry'd aloud: *Antiquo*. Then the Suffrages were gather'd, and if there were more Votes for the Law than against it, it pass'd, otherwise it was antiquated or laid aside. This was the Method the Romans observ'd in the Beginning; but finding by Experience, that it was attended with a great deal of Clamour and Noise; and very often with Blood-shed and Slaughter, they Decreed, the People shou'd give their Votes by Counters, on which were engrav'd the Letters *U*, and *A*. Denoting the Words *Uti Velis*, and *Antiquo*. And these they cast into a Box prepar'd for the Purpose. If there were more Counters with the Letter *U*, than with the Letter *A*, the Law pass'd; but if more with the Letter *A*, it was laid aside. *Plebiscitum* was the Law made by the Commons and *Tribunes*, without the Consent or Approbation of the Senate. *Senatus Consultum* was a Decree of the Senate without the Concurrence of the Commons. *Edicta Magistratum* were the Temporary Laws or Rules prescribed by the Magistrates during the time of their Administration, and when that was over, ceas'd to have the Force of Laws. *Principum Placita* were the Edicts or Decrees issu'd by the Kings and Emperors, and had the Force of Laws till abrogated by others. *Responsa Prudentum* were the Answers given by able Lawyers in Matters of doubt, concerning the Sense of an Edict or Decree, not unlike the Presidents or Reports in our Law. To return.

To these two *Ædiles Plebis*, a long time after, there were two added from the Noble Men, call'd *Ædiles Curules*, from the Chair of State that



was allow'd them; and *Julius Cæsar* added two more from the *Patricij*, call'd *Ædiles Cereales*, because they took Care of the Provisions and Stores of the Clty.

After these Transactions, the *Plebeians* willingly list'd themselves under the Consuls, and fought against the *Volsci*. They took *Longula* and *Polustia* with Ease, as well as *Corioli* the Metropolis, by the Valour of *Marcus*, a Noble Man who from thence was surnam'd *Coriolanus*. This Year the League with the *Latins* was renew'd upon the Account of their Faithfulness, when the *Romans* were harass'd by Domestick Feuds, and this War. The Senate Decreed that Supplications shou'd be made, and a third Fair was added to the two *Latin* Ones, one of which was instituted by *Tarquinius* after the Conquest of *Etruria*, and the other by *Populius* in the time of *Tarquin's* Exile. At this time a Review was made of the *Roman* Citizens, and 110000 Heads were assels'd. Next Year a great Famine prevail'd in the City, which was occasion'd by the late Seditions. This made a heavy stir among the Commons; and the Animosities of the Poor cou'd not be pacify'd, Notwithstanding that a Law was made in the Convention, prohibiting the contradicting of the *Tribunes* when they harangu'd to the People. Ambassadors were sent to *Sicily* to buy Corn, and when they return'd with a considerable Quantity, some were of Opinion, it shou'd be Sold to the Poor at low Rates; others were more harsh and thought it more proper to treat the common People somewhat roughly, in regard that Idleness and too great Indulgence had puff'd them up. Among those of this Opinion, *Marcus Coriolanus* spoke most freely, who was a great Assertor of the Dignity of the Noble Men, and was disoblig'd by the Refusal he met with from the People, when he put in for the Consulship. He alledg'd they shou'd not only Cramp the Commons in allowing them no Corn, but likewise abolish the Office of the *Tribunes*.

The *Tribunes* hereupon immediately indicted, and cited him to his Tryal before the Commons. Indeed the Noble Men were very loth to suffer one of their Number to be try'd by the Commons; but when the *Tribunes* gave them to understand, they charg'd him with affecting Tyranny, and wou'd make good the Charge, he offer'd of his own Accord to stand Tryal. He easily clear'd himself of that Imputation, and several Persons whom he had sav'd in the War, gave such loud Encomiums of his good Offices, both to them and their Country, that it was plainly Apparent, he wou'd quickly be acquitted. The *Tribunes* finding things in this Posture, design'd to attack him underhand, since they cou'd not openly reach him; and accordingly charg'd him with giving the Spoils he took in the War to the Soldiers in Order to render himself Popular, whereas he shou'd, according to Law, have given them into the Treasury. They put such a Construction upon this Omission, as if he design'd to curry Favour with the Army, and obtain a Life-guard; and tho' it was certain that what he did was to secure and encourage the Soldiers, and alleviate the common Calamity, at a time when his Country was sunk under Seditions and Divisions; yet such was the Fury of the People, that of twenty one Tribes, eleven sentenc'd him to perpetual Banishment.

This was the first time the Commons pass'd Sentence upon a Noble Man: And after this Precedent, the *Tribunes* kept up the Custom of arraigning whom they pleas'd; and the Power of the Commons encreas'd every Day, while that of the Senators dwindl'd a-pace, till at last the Commons were admitted to the Senate, Magistracies and Priesthood, the Noble Men being



ing induc'd to comply with their Demands, partly out of Necessity, and partly from a Principle of Prudence. In the Mean time *Coriolanus* fled to the *Volsci*, and rais'd a heavy War against his ungrateful Country. The *Volsci* gave him the Command of their Army. And (which is very surprising) the *Romans* who us'd to beat the *Volsci*, when commanded by *Coriolanus*, could not now stand before them when commanded by him. In a Word the *Volsci* beat the *Romans* in several Engagements, took many of their Towns, and advanc'd towards *Rome* in Order to destroy it. The *Romans* seeing all was lost, if they cou'd not Appease the Wrath of *Coriolanus*, sent first the Senators out in an Humble Manner to beseech him to spare them; but he wou'd not hear them: Then they sent the *Roman* Matrons and Ladies to him in the same Manner; but he was inflexible even to their Tears. At last his own Mother and Wife prevail'd upon him to Decamp, and forgive the Injury, which cost him his Life: For he was soon after Murder'd at *Antium* by *Tullius* his Rival.

*Coriolanus* being Dead, the *Volsci* were oblig'd to Sue for Peace; and the *Hernici* were Conquer'd, and obtain'd a League, the Conditions of which were left to the Determination of *Cassius* the General. *Cassius* allow'd them the Freedom of the City, and endeavour'd by all Means to Ingratiate himself with the *Plebs*, in order to make way for his Tyranny. He propos'd the *Lex Agraria* for Distributing the Lands equally among the People; But the Noblemen joyn'd together and prevented him, and condemn'd him to be thrown Head-long over the *Tarpeian-Rock*; Which was accordingly done. After the Death of *Cassius*, the Noblemen began to lift up their Heads again; But the *Plebeians* at the same Time increas'd their Boldness. When the War broke out again, the *Tribunes* assist'd those, who refus'd to take the Oath; but in order to Frustrate their Intercession, the Consuls Translated their Bench to the *Campus Martius*; for without the Bounds of the City they cou'd assist None. Then they came to Cuffs and Blows, and heavy Threats, and a *Dictator* was Nominated, Namely *Sp. Lartius*, who in some Measure Alleviated their Domestick Evils by making Consuls that were acceptable both to the Commons and Nobility.

Next Year, *Casus Fabius*, and *Sp. Furius* being Consuls, the *Æqui* and *Veientes* rose up in Arms against the People of *Rome*. The *Veientes* induc'd all *Hetruria* to Rebel, and defeated the Consuls oftner than once, making Excursions even to the City. Then the Senate thought it Necessary to secure their Territories by Garrisons. But at the same Time the Treasury was exhausted, and the Taxes not equal to the Publick Charges; besides, 'twas not to be expected that many shou'd Voluntarily List themselves in the Service for so tedious a War. Things being at this Pass, the Consuls mov'd, the whole Concern shou'd be committed to the Care of the Family of the *Fabij*. These having accepted the Commission, routed the *Veientes* and forc'd them to sue for Peace; But they soon after renew'd the War, and cut off all the *Fabij*, to the Number of 306, All the *Fabij* I say, to one Young Boy, who Surviv'd the Disaster, and Propagated the desolate Family.

After the Overthrow of the *Fabij*, the *Veientes* were much Animated, and Penetrated to the very Gates of the City: But in a Year or two were so often Defeated, that they again desir'd Peace. This War was but a slight one in Comparison of the Civil Wars. The City was in great Want of Provisions, by Reason that in the Preceding Year, while the *Veientes* besieg'd the Town, the *Romans* cou'd neither Manure the Ground nor keep up any Commerce. This gave occasion to great Tumults. *Genutius* the

*Tribune*



*Tribune* of the People made a heavy Stir about the *Lex Agraria*, and *Po-lero* his Successor, propos'd another Law, enjoying the *Tribunes* to be Created in the *Comitia Tributa*. Now the *Comitia Tributa* differ'd from the *Comitia Curiata*, in this, that in these the *Curia* or Wards only confirm'd what the Senate had luckily Enacted, But in those, every Thing was Transacted without the Intervention of any Decree of the Senate, merely by the separate Votes of the Tribes. The States had a sharp Debate concerning the making of this Law. The Noblemen were mightily offended by the Impudence of the *Tribune*, and their Resentment was further inflam'd in Regard he requir'd the *Ædiles* shou'd likewise be Nominated by the *Comitia Tributa*, and that all Things relating to the *Plebeians* shou'd be Transacted there. Now the open Tendency of this was to Transfer the whole Power from the Senate to the People. *Appius* the Consul, was one of the Chief Opposers; the Temper of his Family was always against the *Plebs*; he Interlin'd his publick Harangues with all manner of Railing and Opprobrious Invectives; and by that Means put all in Confusion again, when his Colleague *Quintius* had by his meek and smooth Discourses compos'd all the Differences. The *Tribunes* order'd the Consul to be Imprison'd, but the *Patricij* stood by him, and at last they came to fifty Cuffs, and throwing of Stones, in a scandalous Manner.

*Quintius*, who was all for Moderation, got the *Tribunes* to consent that the Matter shou'd be remitted to the Senates Determination, the People being then Possess'd of the Capitol, where they kept a Guard Night and Day. The Senate approv'd of the Law, and the *Comitia* confirm'd it: Whereupon the Consuls marched out at the Head of their Armies, *Quintius* against the *Æqui*, and *Appius* against the *Volsci*. Each of the Consuls met with such Success as they deserv'd. For *Quintius's* Army was prompted by the Consideration of his Equity and Mildness, to obey him in every Thing; And did of their own Accord undergo several Hazards, in order to purchase Glory and Honour for their General. But *Appius's* Army hated him, and when they were drawn out into the Field, refus'd to Engage, and loudly demanded to March out of their Enemy's Country.

*Appius* being oblig'd to take his Men out of the Enemy's Country, before his returning to his own, exercis'd the utmost Severities upon the Disobedient. For the *Centurions*, whose Companies had fled, and the *Standard-Bearers* that had lost their Standards, were either Beheaded or Whipp'd to Death. And as for the Rest, every tenth Man in the Army was drawn out by Lot, and put to Death; This being the usual Way, among the *Romans*, of punishing Deserters, and those who lost or threw away their Standards.

Next Year, the Senate went upon the *Lex Agraria*, which the *Consuls* and *Tribunes* laid before them. But *Appius* being against it, wheedled almost all the Senators to side with him. Whereupon the *Tribunes* cited him to stand Tryal for his Life. The *Patricij* were ready to employ their Interest for saving the Criminal, and intreated *Appius* to humour the Times, and take upon him a Habit more Suitable to his present Circumstances. But *Appius* said he wou'd not Condescend to any Thing that was Sordid or below his Dignity. He did not Abate any Thing of his wonted Magnanimity; and when he saw that the whole City expected his Condemnation, laid violent Hands upon himself, a few Days before his Tryal. Notwithstanding the Remonstrances of the *Tribunes*, the People allow'd his Son to have a Funeral Panegyrick upon his Father, according to the Custom of their Ancestors.



The *Romans* fought Successfully against the *Æqui*, *Sabini* and *Volsci*. But the *Tribunes* made a new Stir among the Commons, by Suggesting, that in a free State, which gave equal Liberty to every Man to speak and give his Opinion, the Administration of all Things, both Private and Publick, shou'd be regulated by positive Laws: Designing by such Motions to effect what *C. Terentius* the *Tribune* of the People had offer'd at, in the preceding Year. Accordingly, without the Consent of the Senate, they made a Law, ordering that ten Men, recommended by their Age and Prudence, shou'd be chosen by the People in their *Comitia*, to publish written Laws upon all publick and private Affairs; that their Laws shou'd be propos'd in the *Forum*; and that both the Yearly Magistrates and the private Citizens shou'd take the Decisions of their mutual Differences from them.

The *Patricij* wou'd not suffer Laws to be made without a Decree of the Senate to that Effect; whereupon they display'd all their Force in hindering the Meeting of the *Comitia*; and among other Young Noble Men, one *Cæso Quintius*, Son to *Lucius Quintius Cincinnatus*, made a great Figure. He spar'd no Opprobrious Invectives in railing against the *Plebeians*, and was thereupon Indicted by the *Tribunes*. His Father defended him but forrily, for the *Tribunes* foreseeing the Boldness of Insolent Youths would grow to an unsufferable Heighth if he got off with Impunity, arraign'd him of a feign'd Crime; the Tryal being put off he got out upon Bail, and fled from his Bail to *Tuscany*, but the *Tribunes* oblig'd the Bail to pay the Money they had engag'd for. The Father sold the most of his Estate and Goods and pay'd to the Bail the Money they had laid out for his Son, and retir'd with a few Servants to the Country, to a little Farm, that was all he had sav'd of his Estate, upon which he had a little sorry Cottage, and there Manur'd the Land in a Laborious Condition. Grief and Want oblig'd him neither to see the City nor to entertain his Friends, nor celebrate Festival Days, nor to be present at any publick Solemnity.

However the *Tribunes* were very much Disappointed; for *Cæso's* Distress was so far from checking the Insolence of the Young Noble Men, that they became more Insolent and Haughty; and oppos'd the Law both in Words and Deeds. The *Tribunes* seeing they cou'd not get the Law to bear, made a Noise of a great Conspiracy against the Commons; but *Claudius*, the Consul made it appear to be a Fiction. The Domestick Evils were further inflam'd by one *Herdennius Sabinus*, who at the Head of four Thousand Men possess'd himself of the Capitol, and invited the Servants to take their Freedom. The *Tribunes* wou'd not suffer the disorder to be redress'd, till *Valerius* one of the Consuls, bound himself by Oath to satisfy the Demands of the *Plebeians*. *Valerius* was kill'd in the Capitol, and *Claudius* wou'd not rest till *L. Quintius*, the Father of Banish'd *Cæso*, succeeded the deceas'd Consul.

'Twas with much Difficulty that *L. Quintius Cincinnatus* cou'd be induc'd to part from his Country Retreat; however, he at length accepted the Post, and by his Authority restrain'd the Sedition, and oblig'd the People wonderfully by his Equity and Justice. Next Year he was created Dictator, to make Head against the *Æqui*, who were possess'd of *Tusculum*, and within sixteen Days after his Entry upon that Post, reliev'd the Consuls Camp which was in a Manner besieg'd, defeated a Gallant Army of the Enemies, demolish'd their City, put a Garrison into it, and return'd in Triumph to *Rome*, with the Enemies General and several great Men bound in Chains. Then he, dimitted his Magistracy, refus'd all the Honours profer'd by the Senate,



nate, and retir'd again to his Country-seat. Thus did he prefer a Laborious Life to that of a Prince, and was prouder of his Poverty than others are of their Riches.

Next Year the *Plebeians* refus'd to fight against the *Sabines* and *Æqui*, unless the Number of the *Tribunes* were enlarg'd to that of ten; which accordingly was granted. But even that did not satisfy them, for the *Tribunes* made a new Stir by encroaching on the Authority of the Consuls for the next Year. For whereas formerly the *Tribunes* were only allow'd to harangue the People, but did not pretend to call the Senate, or give their own Votes; that Honour being peculiar to the Consuls: Yet one  *Icilius* an Active and Eloquent Man, induc'd the *Tribunes* for that Year to call a Senate. *Icilius* likewise mov'd that the *Aventine* Hill, which was no less than twenty two Furlongs in Circumference, and belong'd to the Publick, together with the Wood which grew very plentifully upon it, shou'd be given to the *Plebs* to build Houses upon.

The *Tribune* desir'd that his Motion shou'd be confirm'd by a Decree of the Senate, and finding that the Consuls put it off, order'd an Officer to follow them to the College and call a Senate, and was not far from throwing Headlong over the Rock one of the Serjeants that repuls'd the Officer, by the Consuls Orders. For the Consuls cou'd neither offer Violence nor rescue the Serjeant, because the *Tribunes* cou'd not be oppos'd, as being Sacred Persons, tho', at the same time, they were highly sensible of the Affront. Then they implor'd the Assistance of the other *Tribunes*; but they had all combin'd to carry on the Design with joynt Force. When the Consuls call'd a Senate, *Icilius* appear'd and excus'd all that was done, and made it out that his Law was very useful for preventing the Insurrections of the Poor, who were mov'd to Sedition by the *Patricij* their incroaching on the publick Ground. So that he got a Decree pass'd on that behalf.

Tho' these civil Commotions seem'd to be thus laid asleep, yet next Year the *Tribunes* reviv'd them, and then Wars broke out, which did not at all injure the Republick; for this was a certain Rule, that when they engag'd in War, they were free from Domestick Quarrels, and, when they enjoy'd Peace, civil Dissentions prevail'd. The Consuls indeed were in the Right of it, in proposing that the Mob shou'd be kept under by Foreign Wars; but they were out in using the Extremity of Severity, and admitting of no excuse in levying Men. Upon this the *Tribunes* took Occasion to raise the *Plebs*, and to inveigh against the Consuls, for ordering *Roman* Citizens, who implor'd Relief from the *Tribunes*, to be put in Prison. The Tumult encreas'd every Day, till at last they came to Blows, and the Consuls were cited to their Tryal; for the *Tribunes* cry'd, that not only their Authority was infring'd, but their Sacred Persons affronted and violated. The People were so furious and so dispos'd to civil Wars, that if the *Tribunes* had propos'd any thing against the Consuls, or the Senate, the City had certainly ruin'd itself; but at last the *Tribunes* call'd together the People, and told them, that out of Respect to several good and worthy Men, they forgave the Affront put upon themselves, but wou'd Prosecute and revenge the Injury done to the People, and promis'd to promote the *Lex agraria*, which had lain by above thirty Years. Among many who edg'd on the People in their Convention, none made more Noise than *L. Siccius Dentatus*, a Man of a wonderful Aspect, who by recounting a great many Exploits done by him, put the People in such a Ferment that they would not so much as hear those, who offer'd to speak against him.

N n n n n

This



This Man had serv'd in all Military Posts, and receiv'd all the Degrees of Honour in that Capacity. He was strong to a Miracle, and in the Time of forty Years continual Service, had fought in one hundred and twenty Engagements. He had forty five Wounds upon the Fore-part of his Body, but none behind ; and twelve of those were receiv'd the Day that *Herennius Sabinus* took the Capitol. From the several Battles he had been in, he got several Badges of Honour. He had fourteen City Crowns, put upon him by the Citizens, which he preserv'd, and one Siege Crown, with three Wall ones, merited by Scaling the Walls first, and taking Possession of them ; and eight other Crowns, which the Generals presented him with, for his extraordinary Service in the Field ; besides seventy three gold Chains, sixty gold Bracelets, eighteen Spears, and twenty five great Harneſſes ; nine of which were taken from the Enemies that Challeng'd the Romans to particular Duels.

*Siccus Dentatus* Surnam'd the *Roman Achilles*, told them he had serv'd the Republick in so many great Exploits, but the Reward of his Labours was Anticipated by the Noblemen, who possess'd the Conquer'd Lands ; and added several other Arguments for making the Law, and rejecting all Suggestions to the contrary. The Assembly was presently in such a Ferment, that one wou'd have thought they wou'd run on in a Current, when  *Icilius* the Tribune rose up, and spoke, indeed much to the Advantage of *Dentatus*, but told them withal, that it was a very unjust Thing for any Man to Ingross all the Favour of the People to himself, before others had the Liberty to set out their Pretensions to the same ; and then Adjourn'd the Convention to another Day, on which every Man might be in a Readiness.

The *Patricij* finding their Request Ineffectual, design'd to oppose the Law by open Force. They hinder'd the People to meet in their Tribes, and took away their Pitchers and Ballots, and, sparing the *Tribunes*, who made a heavy Noise, and crowded in among 'em, resisted their Followers, and so render'd their Offices of none Effect. Among these, the Young Gentlemen of the Families of the *Posthumius's*, *Sempronius's* and *Clælius's*, made the greatest Stir, and hinder'd the *Lex Agraria* to be Ratify'd by a *Plebiscitum*.

Tho' the *Tribunes* were mightily Enrag'd, yet they resolv'd to Indite None, but these Young Gentlemen ; and put up the Quarrel by Redeeming the Estates from the Noblemen, and restoring them to their proper Owners ; And were just going to Ratify the Law, when the *Æqui* penetrated to the *Tusculium*, and oblig'd the People to drown their Domestick Feuds in a Foreign War. Among others, *Siccus Dentatus* March'd out against the Enemy with eight hundred *Veterans*, who follow'd him by way of Compliment. The Consuls had a Mind he shou'd be Lost, because they envy'd his Glory, and found him Troublesome. Accordingly they order'd him to attack the Enemies Camp, in such a Manner as wou'd certainly have ended in his Ruin. But he Storm'd it another Way, and then return'd to the Field of Battle, where he contributed much to the obtaining of the Victory. After all was over, he return'd to *Rome*, and laid open the whole Story to the People, and procur'd the Consuls so much Envy, even among the Senators, that when they sought a Triumph, their Demands were rejected ; and in the next Convention the Commons made *Siccus Tribune*.

*Siccus* having Celebrated the Initiatory Rites of the first Day of his Magistracy, Indicted *T. Romilius* the Consul for the preceding Year, before he enter'd upon any publick Administration. *Romilius* made a haughty Speech that



that was not suited to the Occasion, whereupon the Tribes voted against him ; and his Punishment was a Fine of one thousand Asses, which *Siccus* had wisely Advis'd. A few Days after, *Venturius* his Colleague was likewise Fin'd fifteen thousand Asses. So that the Consuls for this Year were sorely afraid that when they laid down their Consulship, the Commons wou'd treat them at the same Rate. Upon which Account they openly Favour'd the *Plebeians*, and in the meeting of the Centuries made a Law allowing all Magistrates to Fine those who were guilty of any Misdemeanor with Reference to their Authority, contrary to the Discipline and Laws of the Republick. Now in former Times none but the Consuls had that Power. However the Measure of the Fine was not left to their Discretion, but it was provided by a Statute, that the largest Fine shou'd not exceed the Value of two Oxen, and thirty Sheep, which Law was long observ'd by the *Romans*.

Then the Consuls remitted to the Senate the Cognizance of the Laws which the *Tribunes* Labour'd mightily to make for the Common Use of the People, and for a perpetual Memorial. In this Affair the Opinion of *T. Romilius* prevail'd, who alter'd his Tune, and alledg'd, that the Commons shou'd be Humour'd : But soon after (To their Amazement) he said, he was as much against them as before ; but only since Matters were come to that Pass, that the Power of the Nobility did plainly Decline, he thought it was their Duty to act Conformably to their present Circumstances. So that he advis'd them to send Commissioners, some, to the *Grecian Cities in Italy* ; and some, to *Athens*, in order to fetch from thence the best Laws, and such as were most suitable to the *Roman* Customs and Statutes ; and when they return'd, to leave it to the Senate to Nominate Legislators, and to determine what shou'd be the Extent of their Power, and how long it shou'd endure, and in Fine, to do in that Affair as they thought fit.

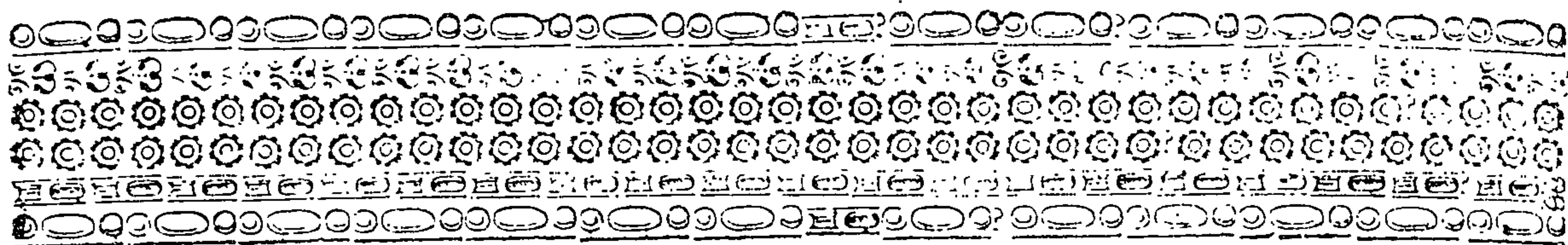
The greatest Part of the Senators approv'd of *Romilius's* Motion, and in pursuance of the same, by Virtue of an Act pass'd in the Senate, and Ratify'd by a *Plebiscitum*, *Sp. Posthumius*, *Servius Sulpicius* and *A. Manlius* were made Commissioners for fetching Laws from *Greece* ; and were furnish'd upon the publick Cost with Galleys adorn'd with all the Ensigns of the Greatness of the *Roman-Empire*. After three Years they return'd, and the *Tribunes* press'd the Consuls to leave the Affair of the Laws to the Senate. But the Consuls being unwilling to sink the Power of the Nobility, put it off till the *Comitia*, in which they chose *Appius Claudius* and *T. Gentius* Consuls, much sooner than usual. And then laid aside all Care of the Publick, as being thus committed to others, and gave no Ear to the *Tribunes*, meaning to pass the rest of their Consulship without doing any Thing. The *Tribunes* being oblig'd to have Recourse to the Consuls Elect, inveigl'd *Appius*, by Promises of Honours, to side with the *Plebs*. *Appius* brought his Colleague to be of the same Side, and did so edge on the People with his Harangues, that *P. Scyllius* the Consul was oblig'd to call a Senate by himself (his Colleague *L. Menenius* being then Sick) and remit the Affair of the Laws to the Senate. *Appius Claudius* the Consul Elect, being first ask'd, according to Custom, gave his Opinion, that ten Men, of the Noblest Rank of Senators shou'd be chosen, and invested with an Annual Authority, as being entituled to the Administration of Affairs, together with the Consular Authority, which the Kings had formerly ; and that all other Magistrates shou'd be broke till they were restor'd again by the Laws ; and that these *Decemviri* shou'd take Cognizance of private Contracts, and manage the Publick Affairs. This was the Opinion of the two Elected Consuls ; and carry'd.

Nnnnn a

When

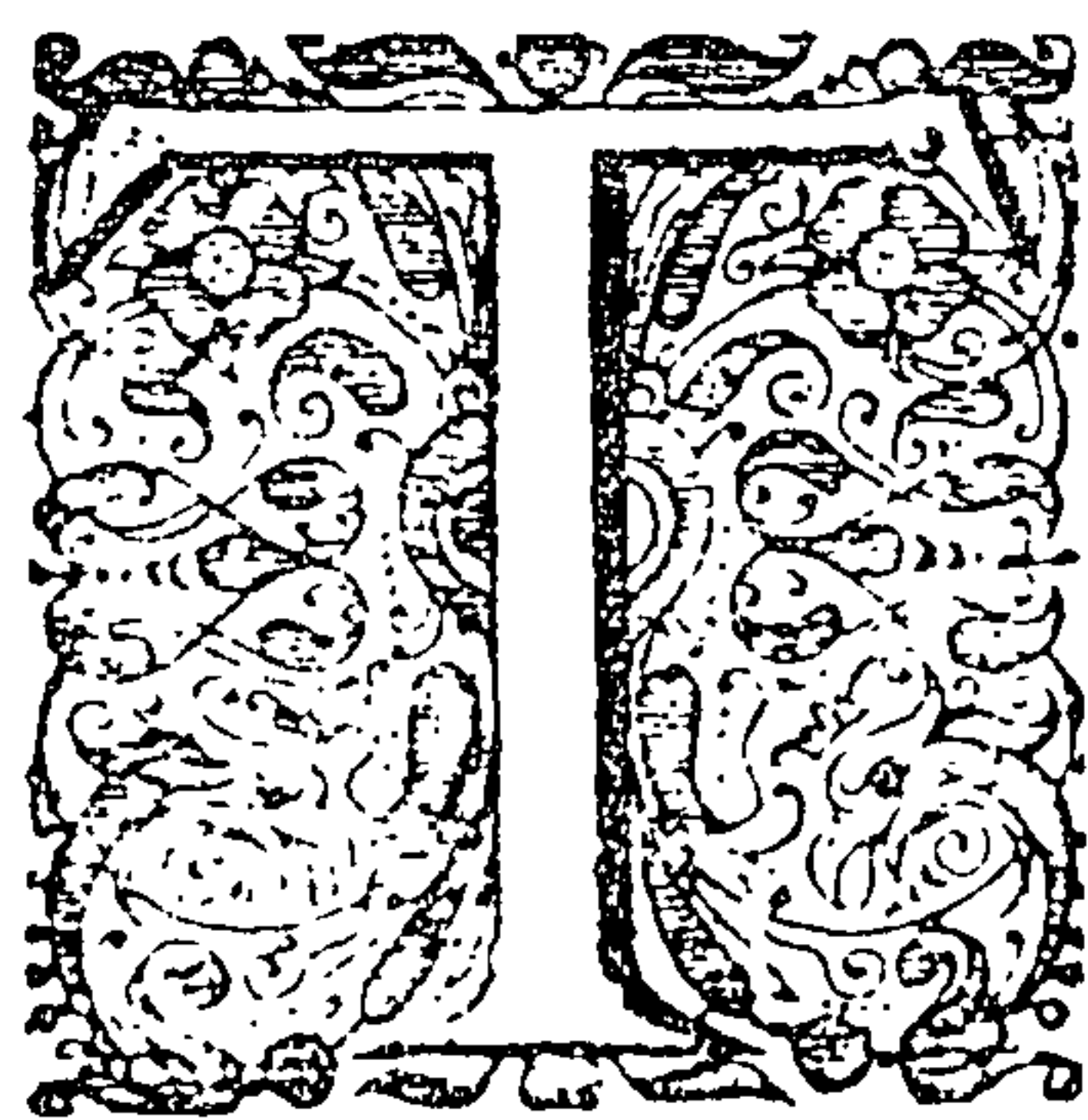


When the Day for the *Comitia* was come, the two elected Consuls resign'd their Consulship; and then the People cry'd them up, and elected them as the first and chiefest of the *Decemviri*, to whom they added *P. Sestius* that was Consul for that Year, and the three Commissioners, *P. Posthumius*, *Servius Sulpicius* and *A. Manlius*, together with *T. Romilius*, who was the Proposer of the popular Opinion, besides *C. Julius*, *T. Veturius* and *P. Curiatius* : These were all Senators of the Consular Dignity. And then the *Tribunes*, *Ædiles*, *Questores* and all other Magistrates were broke.



### C H A P. III.

*Of the Affairs of the Romans from the Institution of the Decemviri to the End of the War with the Privernatians.*



THE second Transformation of the Government of Rome, happen'd on the fifteenth of *May* in the three hundred and seventh Year, (according to *Varro*) after the Building of the City. The whole Authority being by the Law aforesaid vested in the *Decemviri*, it was thought adviseable, that each Man shou'd rule by Turns so many Days. He that actually Govern'd had the Mace and Consular Emblems carry'd before him; call'd together the Senators, ratify'd the Decrees, and perform'd all the other Offices belonging to the Head Magistrate. The rest of the *Decemviri*, to prevent envy, were clothed much like the other Citizens; and had only an Usher to walk before them. They Govern'd the Republick with Justice and Equity for a-while, and set up the Laws brought from *Greece* engraven on ten Copper Plates, in the most Conspicuous Part of the *Forum*, and added two Plates, or Tables more to them in which were engraven other Laws pick'd out of their own Statutes and Customs; whence they were call'd *Leges Duodecim Tabularum*, and *Summa æqui Juris*. Of these Laws we have as yet extant some Fragments in the Works of *Papinianus*, *Ulpianus* and other Ancient Lawyers; and the following Statutes may serve as a Specimen of the Nicety of their Language, and its Conciseness in expressing their Thoughts : *Summa Parentum in Liberos potestas est, occidere venundare licito. Ast si quis Intestatus moritur, cui suus Heres impubes est, Agnatorum Gentiliumque potestas esto. Substitutum Substituto est etiam Substitutum Instituto. Si quis clepserit, rapierit, e aliquid Sacrum ex Loco Propbano, aut Propbanum e Loco Sacro, Sacrilegus esto.* To return.

Next Year something seem'd to be yet wanting, especially that the Power of the *Tribunes*, which gall'd the Senators so much shou'd be abrogated.



gated. With which View the Senators mov'd that the *Decemviri* shou'd be created again, and carry'd it. The Commons chearfully consented to the Motion, being seduc'd by the Diffimulation of *Appius*, who bore the Credit of the whole Administration, and gain'd the People by his Compliance, fair Speeches and good Offices. The People were mightily for his continuing in the Magistracy, and he seem'd with Difficulty to comply with their Request, but when he did, he cast off the Mask, was openly Partial to his Friends, and inveigh'd against every Body else. However he was again made *Decemvir* in the *Comitia Centuriata*, and with him *Q. Fabius*, *M. Cornelius*, *M. Servilius*, *L. Minutius*, *T. Antonius*, *Manius Rabulejus*, all Noble Men; together with *Q. Petilius*, *Caso Duillius* and *Sp. Oppius*, *Plebeians*, whom *Appius* took in, in Order to ingratiate himself with the People.

*Appius* thought it now high time to play his Game; he and his Collegues enter'd into a private Conspiracy to keep the Government for ever to themselves, Matters being so order'd, that all of them shou'd be equal in Dignity and Power, that whatever one lik'd shou'd be ratify'd and confirm'd by all the rest; that the Acts of the Senate, and those of the *Plebs* shou'd never be made Use of without a pressing Occasion. Having thus agreed Matters among themselves, they manag'd all by Force, and fill'd the City with Blood and Rapine. They continu'd their Power next Year, and either kill'd or banish'd most of the richer Citizens. The *Sabines* and the *Æqui* made use of this Opportunity to invade the *Roman* and *Latin* Grounds; and the *Decemviri* being engag'd in the War against them, were Guilty of such Crimes as brought their Tyranny to an End: For *Appius*, who staid in Town, finding *Siccus Dentatus*, that *Roman Achilles*, kept a narrow Eye upon the State of the Republick, sent him to the Camp, in the Quality of Legate, and perfidiously sent secret Intelligence to his Collegues to kill him. Then he fell in Love with a young Lady call'd *Virginia* the Daughter of *L. Virginus* a *Roman* Citizen; and, in Order to compass her, us'd all sorts of fair and foul Means, both of Bribery and Threats to induce her to consent to his Lust; but when he found, the Young Lady reject'd his Bribes with Scorn, and contemn'd his Menaces, he order'd a certain Man call'd *Claudius*, one of his own Creatures, to claim her as his Servant, and to call her in Judgment before him. When this was done, *Virginus*, and all the Friends and Relations of his Daughter appear'd before the Tribunal attesting Heaven and Earth, that the Young Lady was Free-born, and never serv'd any in her Life, all which notwithstanding *Appius* adjudg'd her to be the Servant of *Claudius*. Poor *Virginus* seeing his Daughter ready to be snatch'd away from him by force and violence, call'd her aside on Pretence of speaking to her in private, and stab'd her in the Breast with his Dagger, adding these Words. *With this Instrument Daughter, I assert thy Liberty, and with this Blood, O Appius, I Devote thine Head!* And having so said, made his Way thro' the Crowd and went straight to the Camp, where, upon relating this horrid Fact, he induc'd the Army to revolt. The Young Lady's Body being expos'd to publick View bloody all over, rais'd such an Horror and Indignation in all the People, as did formerly that of *Lucretia*, that they Unanimously voted, the *Decemviri* shou'd be laid aside, and the Army was so touch'd with the Melancholly Relation which *Virginus* gave of the Death of his Daughter, that they declar'd for the Senate and the Republick, and refus'd to obey any of the *Decemviri*.



Thus again was the Republick settled upon its former Basis, and the Consulship fell to *Valerius Potitus* and *M. Horatius*, who were very much addicted to the Commons, as it appear'd by the Laws they made. One of which provided, that Laws enacted in the *Comitia Tributa* should be Universal and have the same Power with those made in the *Comitia Centuriata*. Now in the *Comitia Tributa* the Noble Men were Outvoted by the *Plebeians*; but in the *Centuriata* the former always prevail'd, tho' the latter were much Superior in Number; because, as we observ'd before, Votes were always given in the *Comitia Centuriata* according to the Number of the Centuries, and the Noble Men had, by far, more Centuries than the *Plebeians*. A Capital Punishment, and the Forfeiture of Estates was provided against those who should offer to violate or abrogate that Law. *Virginius*, the Father of the Young Lady, being made one of the *Tribunes* indicted *Appius*, and others did the same to the other *Decemviri*: But *Appius* either Murther'd himself or was kill'd by the *Tribunes* in Prison before the Tryal. *Oppius* likewise laid violent Hands upon himself, and the other eight were banish'd, and *Claudius* who laid Claim to *Virginia* as his Servant, was likewise sentenc'd to Perpetual Banishment. All the rest, who serv'd the *Decemviri* in their unjust Designs were pardon'd, and all the Exiles sentenc'd by the *Decemviri* were recall'd. Then the Consuls fought successfully against the *Æqui*, *Volsi* and *Sabini*; but when they put in for a Triumph, their Demand was reject'd by the Senate. The Consuls took the Refusal for a heavy Affront, and having call'd a Meeting of the People, accus'd the Senate in a long Harangue, and were back'd by the *Tribunes*, who pass'd their Bill, so that the People gave them the Liberty of a Triumph; and were the first of all the *Romans* that introduc'd the Custom.

From what has been said, 'tis apparent how the Commons of *Rome* hook'd the Authority into their own Hands, and almost turn'd the Nobility out of any Share in the Government. But they were not Content with this Purchase, nay the more they satisfi'd their Thirst, the more it was inflam'd; for they now pretended to a Share in the Consulship, and when the *Æqui*, *Sabini* and *Ardates* threatn'd them with a heavy War, the *Tribunes* rescu'd all those whom the Consuls were about to List in the Service, and would not suffer them to punish those that stood out; and not only so, but over and above threatn'd to thwart the Senate in every Thing else, and to Ratifie no Act of theirs whatsoever, unless they had first made an Act in Confirmation of the Law the *Plebs* had promulgated to that Effect. But *Claudius* a Senator found out a Way of satisfying the Ambition of the *Plebeians*, and at the same Time of keeping up the Dignity of the *Patricij*.

He perswaded the Senators, when they were reduc'd to Necessity, to allow the *Plebeians* a share of the greatest Power and Dignity, and for that End to create Magistrates, who should be call'd *Tribuni Militum*, and consist of as many *Plebeians* as Noblemen. This Project was first started privately; then the *Tribunes* and others hugg'd it, and Liberty was given to as many *Plebeians* as pleas'd to put in for the Magistracy along with the *Patricij*: But Desire is a Thing of so much Levity, especially when lodg'd in a Mob, that those very Men, who but now were unpeakably eager to be in the Magistracy, and, if the Noblemen had not granted their Demands, would have either deserted the Town as before, or master'd it by Force of Arms. That Crew, I say, when they had compass'd their End, remov'd their Desire from what they coveted before, and bend'd it upon contrary Things: For when many of the *Plebeians* put in with all their Might for the



the Office of *Tribuni Militum*, the Senate thought none of them worthy of that Post, and having the Votes in their own Power, preterr'd the Noble and Illustrious Men that Solicited for it, Namely, *A. Sempronius Atratinus*, *L. Atilius Longus* and *J. Clælius Siculus*; and yet the *Plebeians* seem'd to be satisfy'd with the very Honor of coming in Competition with the Nobles, tho' none of them were thought worthy of the Office.

These *Tribuni Militum* were Styl'd *Proconsuls*. They were at first but three in Number, afterwards Six, and then Eight. When the Number increas'd, and the *Plebeians* crept in among them; tho' they had a Consular Power, and were Intitul'd to all the Badges of their Authority, yet the Dignity was still reckon'd to be an inferiour Degree, and as it were Lieutenants to the Consuls, as the Word *Proconsul* seems to import. Sometimes they, and sometimes Consuls were chosen, till the Year three hundred and eighty eight, after the Building of *Rome*, when *Q. Sextius* a *Plebeian* was Elected Consul, and so they came into Disuse. Next Year the People thought fit to Elect Consuls; and accordingly *Marcus Geganius*, and *Quintius Capitolinus* enter'd upon their Consulship; the Former being then twice, and the Latter five Times Consul. In their Consulship the *Censores* were instituted: For they exhibited a Complaint to the Senate, that many Men escap'd paying their due *Quota* of the Expences of the War, while others were overcharg'd for want of Integrity in the Collectors of the Publick Taxes: Whereupon the Senate Elected two of their Members, whom they call'd *Censores*, either because the People were survey'd, and Assess'd by them; or else, because every Man's Estate was valued according to their Judgment or Report (*quanti illi censuissent*). At first they were Created for five Years: Afterwards the Term of their Service was reduc'd to a Year and a half. In the Beginning, they only Survey'd and Assess'd the People, but afterwards, they were imploy'd to inspect into the Manners and Conversation of the Citizens: So that it was in their Power to cut off those whom they found Criminal from any Right of sitting in the Senate, or in the Tribes, and reduce them *ad Ærarios*, so call'd, because they were only reckon'd Citizens, in as much as they paid *Æra*, by way of Tax for their Heads. In Process of Time, the Censors likewise Farm'd the publick Revenues, and took Care of the publick Buildings, and the High-Roads, and regulated the Charges of the publick Sacrifices. There were also Deputy Censors in the Colonies, who sent them an Account of the Number, and the Estates of the Inhabitants, to be inserted in the publick Tables. After the second punick War, the Censors were invested with a Consular Dignity, and wore the Ensigns of that Office, and indeed were reckon'd a Degree better than they.

In the mean Time the *Plebeians* being push'd on by the *Tribunes*, took it very ill, they were not allow'd Intermarriages with the Nobility, and laid Claim to an equal Right with them in that particular. This stir'd up *Sp. Malius* to aspire to the Kingdom by distributing Corn at the Time of Famine; But *Lelius Quintius Cincinnatus* being made Dictator in the eightieth Year of his Age, employ'd *C. Serrilius Hala*, Major General of the Horse to kill him and pull down his House. The *Tribunes* resented his Death, and mov'd they shou'd chuse the *Tribuni Militum* next Year, that so the *Plebeians* might creep into that Post; but they were disappointed. In this Year, *Fidenæ* a Roman Colony surrender'd it self to *Tollennius* King of the *Veientes*, and upon his Advice abus'd the Roman Legates. Upon the War against them, *Mamercus Æmilius* was made Dictator, and under his Com-



mand, *Cornelius Cassus* kill'd *Tolumnius* and was the second that obtain'd the *Opima Spolia*, that is, Spoils taken from the Body of an Enemy King slain in Battel; *Romulus* being the First, who slew *Acron* King of *Carina*. *Fidenæ* was soon taken, but Revolted again, and the *Tribuni Militum* were sent to subdue them: but being all invested with equal Power, and Dissenting from one another, they made but an ill Hand of it. Whereupon *Æmilius* was made Dictator a third Time, and *Cassus* Master of the Horse: These two defeated the *Etrurians* and took *Fidenæ*.

The Consuls and *Tribunes* of the Army succeeded Mutually, according as the People pleas'd. Soon after the *Tribunes* got three *Questores* and one *Tribunus Militum*, chosen out of the Commons. The *Veientes* having perswaded the *Fidenatians* to revolt, continu'd still a War with them, and the Siege of *Veij* lasted ten Years. In the tenth Year of this Siege *Furius Camillus* (who had been twice *Tribune* of the Army) was chosen Dictator: *Camillus* easily carry'd *Veij*, and return'd to *Rome* in Triumph, riding in a Coach drawn by four White Horses, which Honour was reckon'd Peculiar to *Jupiter*; and he was the first of the *Romans* that arrogated it to himself. By this Action he drew an *Odium* upon him, which was much inflam'd by his hindering the Commons to return to *Veij*, when they seperated from the Nobility. Upon which the Commons were so incens'd against him, that they banish'd him as if he had cheated the Treasury of the Spoil taken in the *Etrurian* War, and fin'd him fifteen Thousand *Æra*, which were then only in Use among the *Romans*.

*Camillus* being banish'd, extended his Hands towards the Capitol, and pray'd, that, if he was injur'd, his Ungrateful Countrymen might have Occasion to repent their Violence, and stand in Need of his Help; which indeed happen'd not long after. The *Galli Celta* being confin'd within too narrow Bounds, sent out several Colonies in Quest of new Seats. The Posterity of these, who settled between the *Pyrenean* Mountains and the *Alps*, having tasted the *Italian* Wine, had a Mighty Itch to subdue the Country that produc'd so Noble a Liquor. And accordingly cross'd the *Alps*, and remov'd to that Part of *Italy* which the *Hetrusci* were formerly possels'd of; and afterwards being call'd *Senones*, came under the Command of their King *Brennus*, and besieg'd *Clusium*, a City of *Tuscany*. The *Clusians* implor'd the Assistance of the *Roman*. These sent three Ambassadors, all of them of the Family of the *Fabij*, to bring the Affair to an Accommodation. The Ambassadors finding, the *Gauls* cou'd by no Means be perswaded into Peace, except they got Part of these Lands, were Angry, and March'd out of the Town to fight. So soon as *Brennus* was inform'd of their Motion, he cry'd out, that they violated the Law of Nations, and March'd towards *Rome*, demanding that the Ambassadors shou'd be deliver'd up to him: But this being refus'd, he took it as a great Affront, declar'd War against the *Romans*, and in a bloody Battle nigh the River *Allia* defeated their *Tribunes*, and routed their Army, insomuch that the very Gates of *Rome* were left open for the *Gauls*; such of the Citizens, as the time wou'd permit, retir'd with their best Effects, others got into the Capitol, with a Design to defend it, and most of the Senators waited for their Doom sitting together in Robes of Ceremony with their usual Gravity, as if there was nothing to be fear'd. The *Gauls* finding the Gates of *Rome* open, and every thing still, enter'd the City, sack'd and plunder'd it; and Meeting with the Senators sitting in State with their Staffs in their Hands like so many Statues, one of the *Gauls* drew near, and took the next Senator to him by



by the Beard and began to stroke it. The Senator disdaining the Insolence of the *Barbarian*, lift up his Staff, and gave him a pat upon the Hand. With that the *Gaul* clove his Head with his Sword, and his Companions fell upon the rest of the Senators, slaughter'd them all, and all such as came in their Way, without distinction of Sex or Kind; and then set all the City on Fire, laid close Siege to the Capitol, and wou'd have certainly taken it, had not an unforeseen Accident prevented them.

The Capitol being built upon a high Rock was not to be taken easily by Main Force; some of *Brennus's* Officers observing a Man one Day climb up the Rock, concluded they might do the same; and in Order thereunto having prepar'd a sufficient Number of hardy Men came in the dead time of the Night, got up the Rock, and Scal'd the Wall so as not to be seen or heard by any of the Centinels, who at this time were asleep, as fearing no Enemy on that side. It happen'd that there was a flock of Geese design'd for some Sacrifice, lying together upon the Rampart of the Wall at the very Place where the *Gauls* apply'd the first Ladder. These Birds, perceiving a Man coming suddenly upon them, made a clattering Noise with their Wings and Throats as they flew away, which awaken'd the Centinels, who seeing some Men upon the Top of the Wall, gave the Alarm, ran to them, and overturn'd them and their Ladder; and by this Means sav'd the Capitol. The *Gauls* finding their Stratagem defeated, resolv'd to starve the Men in the Capitol, by hindering any Manner of Provision to come to them and this they compass'd so far, as to reduce the Poor *Romans* to eat Cats and Dogs; and at last forc'd them to Capitulate for their Lives, and ransom the same at the Price of a vast Weight of Gold; Nay, and wou'd have given up the Capitol before any Relief cou'd come to them, had not the *Gauls* refus'd to take the Gold, pretending that it was not of the full Weight agreed upon: But this Avarice of the *Gauls* was the Salvation of the *Romans*. For *Furius Camillus*, whom the *Romans* had banish'd his Country sometime before, being at *Veij*, while the Capitol was in this Distress, and finding all those of his Country that escap'd the Hands of the Enemy repairing unto him, and begging him to Command them, in Order to attempt the Relief of their Country, sent some Men to the Capitol to get the Commission and Power requisite upon such an Occasion, which being happily come to him, by which the *Romans* in the Capitol created him Dictator; he March'd with all the *Roman* Youth, and all the Remains of the *Veteran* Troops, and came nigh the Gates of *Rome*, at the very time the *Gauls* were squabbling with the *Roman* Plenipotentiaries about the Weight of the Gold; and sent Ambassadors to the City charging the *Romans* to pay no Gold, nor make any Agreement with the *Gauls*, and declaring all Articles and Covenants enter'd into with them Null and Void, as being made without his Privy and Consent, who was their chief Magistrate and Head, and withal challenging *Brennus* and his *Gauls* to come and fight him fairly in the Field. The *Roman* Plenipotentiaries hereupon retir'd with their Gold to the Capitol, and *Brennus* who despis'd the *Romans* fail'd not to answer *Camillus* his Challenge. A bloody Obstinate Battle was fought soon after, and by it appear'd, of what Importance it is to a State, that the Soldiers shou'd entertain a good Opinion of the Skill and Conduct of their Leader. For the self same Soldiers, who wou'd not stand before the *Gauls*, when commanded by the *Tribunes*, of whose Skill and Conduct they had no great Opinion, fought with that Resolution and Courage under *Camillus* that notwithstanding all the Fierceness and Strength of the *Gauls*, they gave them such an over-



throw that they had no great Stomach to come near the *Roman Territories* in some Years after. This Memorable Victory and Deliverance happen'd in the three hundred and sixty fifth Year after the Building of the City.

Soon after the *Tribunes* of the People made a Noise again about separating and removing to *Veij*, and in order to Remedy this Evil, the Senators delir'd *Camillus* to retain the Dictatorship for the whole Year, tho' that was unprecedented. *Camillus* detain'd the Commons, and induc'd them to Re-build the City. Next Year *Camillus* was made *Dictator* a second Time, and Conquer'd the *Æqui* and *Hetrusci*, and oblig'd the *Volsci* to Surrender after they had from Time to Time continu'd the War seventy Years. About this Time the Commons began to complain heavily of their Debts, and rais'd a new Commotion. The *Tribunes* Animated them; but *Fabius Ambustus* a Noble-Man, inflam'd their Ambition much more: For having Marry'd one of his Daughters to a Noble-Man and another to a *Plebeian*, the Latter took it ill, that his Wife shou'd want the Honours her Sister had, and he made Answer, that in Time her Family shou'd be as Honourable as that of her Sister. He likewise concerted Measures with *Licinius Stolo* his Son in-Law, and *Lelius Sextus*, about giving the *Plebeians* a Right to be Consuls. These two Men being made *Tribunes*, rais'd such Tumults, that for five Years there was no Head-Magistrate. Indeed the Sedition lasted nine Years, and would have come to another Separation, had not *Camillus's* Authority weigh'd in some Measure with both Sides. Then *Camillus* was made Dictator a fifth Time, and routed the *Gauls* again near the River *Anien*. But upon his Return to *Rome* he Encounter'd great Difficulties; for the Commons were up again about the Consulship, and were not far from doing Violence to his Person, tho' Dignify'd by the highest Magistracy, and shining with the Glory of great Atchievements; so he perswaded the Senators to humour the Times, and to make a *Plebeian* one of the Consuls: But at the same Time the *Patricij* were allow'd to Chuse a *Prator* to judge Causes within the City, out of their own Number. Matters being thus Accomodated, a Temple was dedicated to *Concord*, which *Camillus* had formerly vow'd. A fourth Day was added to the *Latin-Fair*, and the greater Games were Celebrated; two Noble-Men being appointed to serve in the Room of the *Ædiles*, who refus'd to execute their Office upon this Occasion, these Noble-Men were call'd *Ædiles Curules* from their Chair of State.

The *Prator* was so call'd a *Præ eund*; and at first, the Consuls, and most Magistrates went by the same Name. The Consuls being for the most part taken up with Military Affairs, a *Prator* was appointed to sit as Judge in the Determination of all Causes between Man and Man. The first *Plebeian* Consul was *L. Sextius*: The first *Prator*, *Sp. Furius* Son to *Camillus*: The first *Ædiles Curules* were *Quintius Capitolinus*, and *P. Cornelius Scipio*: *L. Æmilius Mamercus* was Collegue with *Sextius* for the Nobility. And thus the Consulship return'd to its former Course, after an Interruption of twenty three Years, and was then the eighty eighth in Number from the Expulsion of the Kings. But the *Tribunes* of the Army were for ever exploded, after they had govern'd the Republick forty eight Times, and the Administration of Affairs had been fifteen Times Devolv'd from Consuls upon them, and from them upon Consuls. Besides these Alterations, the Government was toss'd from the Kings to the Consuls, from the Consuls to the *Decemvirs*, and from them to the Consuls again, and twenty Dictatorships interven'd, besides an Infinity of Interregnums, during which there was scarce any Thing to be seen but Rapine and Bloodshed. So many Alterations



tions and Changes there were after the banishing of *Tarquinius* their King, in the Space of one hundred and thirty four Years.

*Tanta Molis erat Romanam condere Gentem.*

*Such Time, such Toil requir'd the Roman Name,  
Such length of Labour, for so Vast a Frame.*

Dryden's  
Translation.

By which it appears that there is nothing so Pernicious to Human Society as the Itch of Liberty; and that no Evil can ensue from the Vices or Wickedness of a bad King (who Probably may have a good Successor) that can parallel the Ruins and Devastations, which attend the Change of Government; and tho' Liberty be always the Pretence, yet Experience shews, that it is after all but shifting of Masters; and that instead of one, Men have many Tyrants to Rule over them. To proceed,

The Noble-Men were so disoblig'd by the *Plebeians* their invading the Consulship, that the Senate made no Preparations against the *Gauls*, who, as it was said, were coming with a mighty Army to invade the *Roman* Territories. The *Plebeians*, on the other Hand, were angry, that the Noble-Men had three Magistracies in their Power, and look'd with an envious Eye upon the Authority of the *Prætor*. Whereupon (to pacifie them) the Commons were allow'd to be capable of the Place of *Ædiles Curules*. Next Year a grievous Plague rag'd in *Rome* by which *Camillus*, and many others were swept off. And no Remedy being found, the Stage-Plays were Instituted, and Actors were brought from *Etruria*, who were call'd *Histræ*, from whence the Word *Histrion* a Comedian takes its Rise. Soon after the *Forum* broke open in the Middle, and whether it was occasion'd by an Earthquake, or a Prodigy, gaped so wide and deep, that all the Earth and Rubbish Men cou'd throw into it, seem'd in no wise to fill it. Then the *Augurs* and Sooth-sayers being Consulted, made Answer; *That if the Romans wou'd be Great and Permanent, they ought to Dedicate to that Hole, the most excellent Thing they were Masters of*; Whereupon a young Noble Man, whose Name was *M. Curtius*, check'd the *Romans*, who doubted whether Arms and Valour were the most excellent Things; and having put on his best and most costly Armour, Mounted an Excellent Horse, with exceeding rich Trappings and Furniture, lift up his Hands and Eyes towards the Temple of the gods, and the Capitol, put Spurs to his Horse, and leap'd down into the Hole, leaving an Example to Posterity, how far Men ought to prefer the Good of their Country, to their own private Safety; and at the same time, how great an Ascendant vain Superstition has over Mens Minds, when once it takes root in their Hearts.

This Year the *Romans* wag'd War with the *Gauls*, the *Hernici*, the *Hetrusci* and *Latins*; and triumph'd over them. By the time the *Plebeians* had enjoy'd the Consulship nine Years, the Noble Men taking it ill that *C. Martius Rutilus* a *Plebeian* had been made Dictator, in the preceding Year, translated him to their Rank. This was so far relented by the Commons, that the Nobility was oblig'd both to restore the Consulship, and to pay the Debts of the Poor out of the Treasury; and in the next Year a *Plebeian* was made one of their Censors.

Hitherto the *Romans* had not carry'd their Arms far; but now they began to reach beyond their wonted Bounds, being solicited to assist the *Campanians* against the *Samnitiæ*, whom *Valerius* the Consul defeated and forc'd to make Peace. They likewise made War with the *Latins* for a-



standing the Enemies of the *Samniti*ans, who by the said Peace became their Allies. In this War *Decius Mus* one of the Consuls, perceiving with what Obstinacy the Enemy maintain'd the Fight, sacrific'd himself for the good of the *Roman* Army, by crouding in among the thickest Ranks of the Enemy, who cut him to pieces. *T. Manlius* also (who was surnamed *Torquatus*, from defeating and taking a Chain from a *Gaul* in a Duel) beheaded his own Son for Fighting without his Command, notwithstanding that he came off with the Victory. From thence hard Precepts were call'd *Manliana*; but when *Manlius* return'd after the defeat of the *Latins*, the young Men wou'd not go out to meet him.

The Consuls for the next Year maul'd the *Latins* again, who had revolted upon the taking of some Lands from them. The Senate being at this time somewhat unjust to *Æmilius*, one of the Consuls, and desiring to have a Dictator, he nominated *Q. Publius Philo* for his Colleague, whose Magistracy gall'd the Senators sufficiently, especially upon the score of three Laws made by him. The first of which seem'd to alter the whole Frame of the Government. For its Tenor was, that the Plebiscita were Obligatory upon the Quirites. The second provided; that whatever was enacted by the *Comitia Centuriata* shou'd be propos'd by the Senators. The third appointed one of the Censors at least to be a *Plebeian*: These Laws were made in the four hundred and sixteenth Year after the building of the City.

Next Year all *Latium* was subdu'd, and the Ships belonging to the *Antiates* were taken from them, the Beaks of which were put up in the Church where the Harangues were made, from which, I suppose, such Places were call'd *Rostra*. Next Year after this, *Q. Publius Philo*, a *Plebeian* was made *Prætor*, and the Nobility made but little Resistance, having by this time lost all other Privileges and the Badges of their Dignity. Soon after the *Sidicini* and *Aufones* were Conquer'd, and, upon a new Survey of the Citizens, two new Tribes were made, viz. the *Metia* and the *Scaptia*, for receiving new Citizens. At the same time one hundred and thirty Women were Convicted of Witchcraft and put to Death; and in Regard, it was reckon'd a Prodigy, a Dictator was Nominated to fasten a Nail in the Wall for a Memorial of the same. Then a War broke out with the *Præverna*tes, who had been push'd on by *Vitruvius Gallus* a great Man among the *Faudani*. In the first Year they were worsted, in the next *Vitruvius* was taken and *Prævernum* came into the Hands of the *Romans*, *Vitruvius* and his Complices were beheaded; and the other Citizens were allow'd the freedom of the City: Now the first Year of this War happen'd to be the last of *Darius Codomannus*, the last of the *Persian* Kings, the four hundred and twenty fourth after the Building of the City, in the Consulship of *L. Papirius Crassus* for the second time, and *L. Plautius Venox*.



## C H A P. IV.

*Of the Roman Affairs from the Wars with the Privernates to the End of the second Punick War.*



AFTER the taking of *Privernum*, the Romans declar'd War against the *Palæpolitani*. The Inhabitants of *Palæopolis* and *Neapolis* or *Naples*, were a Colony of *Greeks*, who settled upon the Maritim Coasts of *Italy*. The People of *Palæopolis* trusted in their own Strength, join'd to that of the *Samnites*; and were encourag'd by a Plague that rag'd among the *Romans*. Accordingly they attack'd the *Romans*, who liv'd about *Falernum*, and frequently gall'd them, but were afterwards Conquer'd and oblig'd to Surrender, and the *Samnites* lost three Towns. But the *Tarentini* stood out longer, and in the War with them *L. Papyrius Cursor* being made Dictator, mov'd that *Fabius Rutilianus*, Major General of the Horse, shou'd be beheaded for engaging the Enemy without Orders, tho' he came off with Victory; and it was with Difficulty that the Intreaties of the People diswaded the Dictator from putting the Design in Execution. *Papyrius* defeated the *Samnites*; whereupon they desir'd Peace but met with a Refusal, which cost the *Romans* very dear; for *Pontius*, the General of the *Samnites* March'd with his Army to a Place call'd *Caudium*, where there were two great Mountains, with a narrow Passage at the Entrance, and equally narrow at the going out. Here *Pontius* plac'd part of his Army, at the Entrance, in the Woods and Thickets, so as that they could not easily be discover'd; part at the other End, which he strongly Intrench'd; and with the rest possess'd himself of both sides of the Rocks. Then (to draw the *Romans* into this snare) he order'd ten Soldiers to go different ways in the Habit of Herdsmen, driving Cattle before them towards the Camp of the *Romans*, and to tell (when the *Romans* shou'd take them, and enquire about the *Samnites*) that *Pontius* with his whole Army was gone to besiege *Luceria* in *Apulia*. Accordingly the Soldiers being seiz'd upon with their Cattle, on every side of the *Roman* Camp, upon the Question put, answer'd, That the *Samnites*, had sat down before *Luceria*. This coming to *Papyrius* the Consuls Ears from several Quarters of the Camp, he concluded that it was true; and thereupon ordered the Army to March immediately for the Relief of *Luceria*; and tho' he was sensible of the Danger of passing thro' *Caudium*, yet flattering himself with a Belief, that the Enemy was at *Luceria*, he March'd thro' the narrow Pass; but to his great Grief and Astonishment, the Van of his Army found the Passage out strongly Intrench'd and Guarded; and when the Rear was enter'd, before they



they cou'd make a step back, the Pass was block'd up; so that the whole Army was in a Pound, stuck with Darts and Arrows in Front, Rear and Flank, and from the tops of the Rocks, gaul'd with Stones roul'd down upon them.

This fatal Disaster struck *Papyrius* and his Army with Horror and Amazement, and the rather that as they were a Slaughtering, they cou'd move neither forward nor backward; and (which was still worse) cou'd not come at the Enemy to take any manner of Revenge. Being in this Distress for some Days, while any part of their Provisions lasted, it was thought adviseable to send Ambassadors to the *Samnites* to beg Peace, who being brought before *Pontius*, cou'd obtain no other, *than that all the Romans should lay down their Arms, and pass as Captives under the Yoke in Plebeian Habits; that the Romans should never more enter the Lands of the Samnites, nor wage War with them; and that six hundred of their prime Nobility should be given as Hostages 'till these Conditions were ratify'd by the Senate in Rome.* When the Ambassadors came back, and had related upon what Terms they were to expect Peace, there was nothing but Rage, Fury, and Lamentations to be heard among the *Romans*; most of them being for laying violent Hands upon themselves, rather than suffer such Ignominy. At last, others, who were of a cooler Temper, perswaded them to submit to Fate, and reserve their Lives for a better Occasion, laying before them, that the *Roman* Republick wou'd soon be swallow'd up by the Enemy, shou'd all the Troops that were there be lost; considering that they had few or none else at Home, but raw and unexperient'd Youth. In fine they were forc'd with Heart-breaking Sorrow to submit to the Enemy's Terms. They gave up the Hostages, and then having laid down their Arms, and all the Ensigns and Marks of Military Captains and Leaders, pass'd under the Yoke (*sub Fugo*) Consuls, Captains, Soldiers and all in *Plebeian* Habits. This Yoke or *Fugum* was made of three Lances, two whereof were stuck in the Ground at a small Distance one from another, and the third across ty'd to the Tops of the two that stood up. Under this *Fugum* or Gallows, as a Mark of Ignominy, the *Romans* were forc'd to pass. It was an Invention of their own, who always made their Captives pass under the Yoke, and when they were Sold, term'd them *sub Hasta venditi*. The *Samnites*, whose Soldiers had been often before thus treated by the *Romans*, were resolv'd to pay them in their own Coin; and therefore wou'd not let a Man of them Escape, but such as pass'd thus *sub Fugo*, or *sub Hasta*.

When the Consuls and the Army came back to *Rome* in *Plebeian* Habits with Staves in their Hands, cover'd with Confusion and Shame; it is not to be express'd what Consternation the Senators and Citizens were in. And the Matter being put in Deliberation *whether they should ratify the Caudinian Peace*, it was Unanimously resolv'd to Sacrifice the six hundred Noble Men, that were left Hostages and leave them to the Mercy of the Enemy, rather than to ratify so Ignominious a Peace. Accordingly the same Officers and Soldiers were arm'd and sent out against the *Samnites*, whom they often maul'd, and gave them to understand, *that Caudium was not to be met with every where.* In short they never gave over until they had intirely subdu'd all the *Samnites* and brought them under the *Roman* Yoke. Yet so Generous were the *Samnites*, that they did not put the six Hundred Young Noble Men to Death; but kept them only confin'd in a Castle, which the *Romans* took at the End of the War, and so releas'd them. One Memorable Action which happen'd in this War is worthy to be noted. L.



*Decius Mus* one of the Consuls, being engag'd in a Battle with the *Samnites* and the *Galli Senones*, Sacrific'd himself for the Army, by rushing in among the thickest Files of his Enemies, about forty four Years after his Father in the War with the *Sabines*, had by his own Contrivance undergone the same Fate. This was a new Piece of Superstition invented by the *Roman Augurs*, which tho' vain in it self, yet had the desir'd Effect. It was perform'd after this Manner. The Person that had the Courage to devote or Sacrifice himself for the Common-wealth (which was never to be done but upon some Publick Calamity, or when there was eminent Danger of the Loss of a Battle) Mounted on Horseback with his best Armour and Accoutrements, and the Ensigns of his Dignity. Then he call'd for the High Priest, and order'd him to Pronounce all his Spells and Incantations; to devote him to the Wrath of the GODS of Heaven and Hell, to Swords, Lances, Spears and whatsoever else might Annoy the *Romans*: Which done, he put Spurs to his Horse and ran in among the Enemy, and was soon cut to Pieces. By which Means, his own Party took so much Heart that they beat the Enemy. The two *Decij*, the Father and the Son at two different times, being both then Consuls and Commanders of the Army, Sacrific'd themselves thus, and were a Means of gaining the Victory, at each time.

The War with the *Samnites* being thus happily finish'd, Domestick Factions prevail'd at Home; but they were soon appeased by allowing the *Plebs* a share in the Priesthood, and in the *Augural* Dignity; and then the *Lex provocationis* was renew'd a third time. But soon after the People Mutiny'd upon account of their Debts, and separated from the *Patricij*, retiring to *Janiculum*. *Q. Hortentius* the Dictator, in order to bring back the People, enacted a Law, investing the *Plebiscita* with a Legal Force capable to control the *Quirites*. Now this Concession had been made twice before, viz. in the three hundred and fifth Year of the City, when *L. Valerius* and *M. Horatius* were Consuls; and in the four hundred and sixteenth, when *Q. Publius Philo* was Dictator.

After a few Years the *Romans* engag'd in a War with the *Tarentines*. The *Tarentines* were descended from the *Parthenij*, who settled in that Country, when they were expell'd *Sparta*. They roll'd in Luxury and Pride; they attack'd the *Roman* Fleet, kill'd *L. Valerius* the *Decemvir*, and offer'd Indignities to *Posthumius* their Ambassador. Whereupon the *Romans* declar'd War against them, and they call'd in *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus* to their assistance. This *Pyrrhus* was the first that brought Elephants to *Lucania*, from whence the *Romans* call'd them *Lucanian* Oxen.

By the help of which he routed *Lævinus* the Consul, took a thousand 800 Prisoners, and having drawn together some Auxiliary Troops, March'd towards *Rome*, putting all to Fire and Sword, as far as *Præneste* within eighteen Miles of the City. But when he weigh'd the matter seriously, he considered, that the Conquest of the *Romans* would prove a very difficult attempt; and thereupon sent, the next Year, *Cineas* (a Man of extraordinary Eloquence) as Ambassador to solicit the Senate to a Peace, and to enter into a Confederacy with him. The Senate was not against the Peace, 'till *Appius Claudius* diverted them from it. This Man was a venerable old Senator, who had been twice Consul, and was blind of both Eyes for seventeen Years before: But being inform'd the Senate design'd to make a Dishonourable Peace with *Pyrrhus*, order'd himself to be carry'd in a Chair to the Senate House, where all the Senators, out of respect to his Age and Merit, stood up and were silent to hear what he had to offer. Then *Appius* began



began after this manner : *Jam a multis annis, fatis volentibus, oculis Captus sum; utinam nunc & auribus fuisssem, antequam audissem Infamiam Patrie meae!* It was my Fate to have lost my Sight these many Years past : I wish I had now lost my Ears also, before I had heard the Infamy of my Country. And so went on with so much force and Eloquence, that the Senate resolv'd never to make Peace with *Pyrrhus*, 'till he had quitted the Roman Territories; and thereupon sent *Caius Fabricius* to him to Treat about the Ransom of the Prisoners, and to let him know their Resolution. This *Fabricius* was also a Man of excellent Parts, and his Conduct before *Pyrrhus* and towards him, made *Pyrrhus* conceive a high Idea of the Romans, and of the Justice and Equity of *Fabricius* : For some of *Pyrrhus* his Court, (some Authors say it was his Physitian) came to *Fabricius*, and offer'd him for a Sum of Money to Poyson *Pyrrhus*; but *Fabricius* rejected his offer with Contempt, caus'd him to be bound in Chains and sent back to *Pyrrhus*, to be punish'd as his Crime deserv'd. However *Pyrrhus* being resolv'd not to quit *Italy* 'till he had try'd another Battle, the Romans came to meet him; but were defeated the second time.

This Defeat served only to animate them the more. They fight him the third time, and were still worsted; but the last Battle was so bloody, and cost *Pyrrhus* so dear, that upon taking a view of his Army the next Day he cry'd out : *Such another Victory wou'd ruin me.* And thereupon cross'd over to *Sicily*, being invited thither by the *Sicilians*, who implor'd his assistance against the *Carthaginians*, and even glad of that opportunity to leave *Italy* with Credit, thinking to be thereby the better able to recruit his Army, and to carry on his Designs against the Romans.

But finding himself disappointed in his Hopes of the *Sicilians*, and having receiv'd a considerable Reinforcement from *Epirus*, he return'd to *Italy*, where *Maximus Curius Dentatus* routed him intirely, and obliged him to retire to his own Country.

The Romans purchas'd such great and extensive Glory by this Victory, which spread it self far and wide, that *Ptolomæus Philadelphus* sent Ambassadors to desire a Confederacy with them.

The *Tarentines* finding themselves abandon'd by *Pyrrhus*, and having no hopes of obtaining Peace from the Romans, sent to Court the assistance of the *Carthaginians*; but that did nothing avail them. For the Castle of their Capital City call'd *Tarentum*, in which *Pyrrhus* left a strong Garrison, Surrender'd, and the Town soon after came into the Hands of the Romans, who allow'd the Citizens to live in Peace, and levell'd the Walls with the Ground in the four hundred eighty second Year after the building of the City in the Consulship of *L. Papyrius Cursor*, and *Sp. Carvilius Maximus*, who triumph'd upon the Conquest of the *Samnites* and *Tarentines*.

By the Conquest of the *Lucanians* and *Tarentines*, the Romans were now Masters of almost all *Italy*. Soon after, the *Campanian* Legion, that had Mutiny'd and possess'd it self of *Regium*, was taken and put to Death.

The *Picentes* were conquer'd, and allow'd to live in Peace. Colonies were then carried out to *Ariminum* and *Beneventum*. At the same time silver Money was first Coin'd in *Rome*, upon the finding of a great quantity of Silver in a Castle belonging to the *Samnites*. This happen'd in the four hundred eighty fifth Year after the building of the City, *Fabius Piclor* and *Q. Ogulnius Gallus* being Consuls.

After the Conquest of *Pyrrhus* and the *Tarentines* the Romans became so formidable, that they soon Master'd the rest of *Italy* and *Sicily*. They had lately



lately subdu'd the *Umbri*, and *Salentini*, and the Number of their Treasurers was thereupon enlarg'd to the Rate of eight. Then *Appius Claudius* cross'd over with an Army to *Sicily*, and first routed *Hiero*, and then the *Carthaginians*, who at this time laid Siege to *Mamertum*. But now that I am come to treat of the *Sicilians* and *Carthaginians*, it will not be improper to give a brief Account of the Origin and Rise of these two People, who made a great Figure in the World, and of whom the latter seem'd to dispute the Empire of the World with the *Romans*.

*Sicily* is an Island in the *Mediterranean* Sea, and lyes *Westward* of that Part of *Italy* now call'd *Naples*; being only divided from it by a Strait very dangerous for Sailors as having in the Passage on the one side *Scylla* a great Rock, and on the other *Charybdis* a Gulph, two fatal Enemies to Mariners: For in shuning the one, they are in danger of falling into the other, whence comes the Proverb: *Incidit in Scyllam qui vult vitare Charybdim*.

*Sicily* was first call'd *Trinacria* from it's Triangular Form; then, *Sicania*; and afterwards, *Sicily*. The first Inhabitants of it were call'd *Cyclopes*; afterwards came the *Sicani* and the *Siculi*, together with several other *Greek* Colonies. The *Phenicians* likewise, led thither some Colonies, and possess'd themselves of the Maritim Places, especially those about *Lilybaeum*. *Justinus* writes, that when the *Cyclopes* were extinct, *Cocalus* possess'd the Island, to whom *Dædalus* the Famous Athenian Architect fled from *Minos* King of *Crete*, whose Displeasure he had incurr'd upon Account of the Queen *Pasiphae*. He also adds, that after *Cocalus*, the *Grecian* Cities in *Sicily* came into the Hands of Tyrants, of which no Country was ever more Fertile.

But sure *Justin* must have meant *Cocalus* and his Posterity: For it is certain, that *Dædalus* came to *Sicily* long before the *Trojan* War, and that there were no *Grecian* Cities founded in that Island before the eleventh *Olympiad*; which Space of time takes up five or six hundred Years at least. *Phalaris* is the first Tyrant we read of in *Sicily*; he reign'd at *Agrigentum*, and as he came to the Crown by Fraud and Cruelty, so he maintain'd it by the same Methods.

*Perillus*, a Famous Athenian Carver, presented him with a Noble Machine, made of Brass in the Shape of a Bull, for burning Men alive, and himself was justly doom'd to make the first Tryal of it.

—*Neque enim Lex æquior ulla est,  
Quam necis Artifices arte perire sua.*

*That Artists die the Death their Wicked Arts invent,  
No Law more just than this, no sifter Punishment.*

The Tyrant confesses in his Epistles, that he put thirty seven Men to death in this cruel Manner. He exercis'd his Tyranny for sixteen Years, and then a Company of the *Agrigentins* fell upon him and kill'd him. After his death the *Agrigentins* maintain'd their Liberty till *Thoron*, the Son of *Æncsidamus* Invaded it. At the same time *Panactius* made himself Master of *Leontium* and *Cleander* of *Gelater*, who subdued the *Naxij*, *Zancleij*, the Inhabitants of *Messana*, and the *Leontines*. He wag'd War with the *Syracusians*, from whom he took *Camarina*, and after seven Years died in a Battle which he fought with the *Siculi*.

He committed his Children to the care of *Gelon* a certain great Lord of his Court. But *Gelon* betray'd his Trust, took Possession of *Gela*, and in a few Days after insinuated himself into the Favour of the People of *Syracusa*



so far, that they put the Reins of the Government of that famous City with its Dependants into his Hands. *Gelon* made such moderate use of his Power, and Ingratiated himself with the *Siculi*, that he was of so great Power and Strength both by Land and Sea, as to offer the *Grecians*, when Invaded by *Xerxes*, two hundred Gallies, and as many Land Forces, as they themselves could make up; provided they consented he should Command either the whole Land Army, or the whole Fleet. But both being refus'd, he bent his Forces against the *Carthaginians*, whom the *Egeſians* had call'd into *Sicily*, and routed them in a bloody Battle, on the same Day the *Grecians* fought at *Salamina*, and defeated the *Persian* Fleet. *Gelon* was succeeded by his Son *Hiero*; after him came *Thraſibulus*, a most cruel Tyrant, but was soon banish'd by the *Syracusians*. To *Thraſibulus* succeeded *Timarides*: This Man affecting Tyranny, was also cut off. Then *Diocles* an austere eloquent Man, made Laws for the People to walk by; and, among others, one prohibiting any *Man* to come with Arms into the Common Council. But he himself had the Misfortune to be the first that suffer'd by the said Law: For by an over-sight he came into the Council with his Sword by his Side, which when perceiv'd, he drew out, and, lest the Law should suffer by his Mistake, stabb'd himself.

To *Diocles* succeeded *Dionysius* a cruel Tyrant. To *Dionysius*, *Callistarches*; to this another *Dionysius* the Son of the former, a Tyrant also. To him succeeded *Timoleon* the *Corinthian*, an extraordinary good Man, who by wholesome Good Laws govern'd the People for a considerable time. But he was no sooner laid in his Grave, when a certain Man call'd *Agathocles* a Potter's Son insinuated himself into the favour of the People; and when he got Possession of the Government, became a cruel Tyrant, killing and destroying all such as would oppose his Arbitrary Proceedings. This Man being by much adoe remov'd, the *Syracusan* Army chose two *Prætors* out of their own Body. viz. *Artemidorus* and *Hiero*; and this was the *Hiero* whom the *Roman* Army under the Conduct of *Appius Claudius* defeated. Now during all this time, the *Syracusians* and almost all the *Sicilians* were in Commotion, using their utmost Efforts, either in vindicating their Liberty from those Tyrants, or repelling the *Carthaginians*, who scarce ever ceas'd to infest them, as I shall now observe in giving a brief Account of the Rise and Progress of that proud People and their famous City.

*Carthage* was built by the *Tyrians*, who in ancient times were Lords of the Sea, and transported Colonies to all the Maritim Places round about them. It was at first call'd *Carthadiz*, which, in the *Phenician* Language, signifies a new City, and soon after by a little Corruption of the Word, *Carthage*. It is story'd that *Dido*, the Sister of *Pigmalion* King of *Tyre*, was Marry'd to a very rich Priest of *Hercules*, call'd *Sichens*. *Pigmalion* being desirous to get the Priest's Treasure into his Hands, first Murder'd him, and then thought to Seize upon his Riches; but *Dido* prevented him: For she pack'd up all her Husband's Treasure, put it on board some Ships prepar'd for the Purpose, and Sail'd towards *Lybia* or *Affrick*. Having put in at the Harbour of *Carthage*, she told her Melancholy Story, and pray'd the *Lybians* to give her leave to Purchase as much Ground, to build an Habitation upon, as she could surround with an Ox-hide. And having easily obtain'd her Request, cut out the Hide into small Thongs, and with them inclos'd twenty Acres of Ground, upon which she built a strong Castle, that was call'd *Byssa*, that Word in the *Punic* Tongue signifying a Hide.

*Carthage.*



*Carthage*, before this time, was a very inconsiderable Place, but by the help of the vast Treasures which *Dido* brought thither, and the frequent Intercourse, which the *Tyrians*, who hated the Sacrilegious Murderer *Pigmalion*, had with her and the *Lybians*, it soon became Great and Famous; so that many date the Building of *Carthage* from the Building of *Dido's* Castle, which happen'd about an hundred Years before the Building of *Rome*.

The *Carthaginians* (for so we shall call them henceforth) were at first Govern'd by King's, but in Process of time the Itch of Liberty mov'd them to shake off Monarchy and to introduce a new Form of Government in which the People had a Boundless Power. They lodg'd however the Administration of Affairs in the Hands of two Men, who were call'd *Suffetes* or *Sophetim*, the same Name that was given to the Judges of *Israel*. These *Suffetes* did in some Measure resemble the two *Lacedemonian* Kings, and were not unlike the *Roman* Consuls; for they also were chosen every Year. They had likewise a Senate, a Common-Council, Dictators and Judges, call'd by the *Romans* *Prætores*. The first Man of Note among the *Carthaginians*, that Antiquity hath deriv'd down to us was call'd *Magus*. This Man introduc'd the Military Discipline among them, and by so doing laid the Foundation of their Empire. He had two Sons, *Asdrubal* and *Amilcar*, from whom descended the Famous *Hannibal*, and his Brother *Asdrubal*. The first War which the *Carthaginians* wag'd with the *Sicilians* was carry'd on under the Conduct of this *Amilcar*, in the Reign of *Gelon*, who slew both *Amilcar* and 15000 of his Men.

*Amilcar* left two Sons, *Amilco* and *Gisgon*; this *Gisgon* had a Son named *Hannibal*, who being very eager to revenge the Death of his Grandfather *Amilcar*, led a great Army into *Sicily*; but before he cou'd effect any thing, had the Misfortune to die of the Plague: However his Colleague call'd *Amilcar* beat the *Sicilians*, and took *Agrigentum*, whence he transported among other Things *Phalaris* his Brazen Bull to *Carthage*, raz'd the Walls of the City, and took *Gela*.

Next Year the *Carthaginians* sent another Army into *Sicily*, under the Command of *Amilco*, who laid Siege to *Syracusa*. But the *Syracusians* defeated his Fleet, and the Plague rag'd so violently in his Camp, that he was forc'd to purchase leave to depart out of the Island, from *Demysius* the Tyrant, who reign'd then in *Syracusa*, at the Expence of 300 Talents.

Soon after the *Carthaginians* return'd to *Sicily* to renew the War with more vigour; and continu'd so to do for a great many Years with various Success, some times gaining ground of the *Sicilians*, and not seldom worsted by them; 'till *Pyrrhus* Invaded *Italy*. At this time the *Sicilians* being very much press'd by the *Carthaginians*, and understanding that *Pyrrhus* had beaten the *Romans* in three pitch'd Battles, they implor'd his assistance. *Pyrrhus*, cross'd over into *Sicily*; but being unequal to the *Carthaginians*, came back again into *Italy Reinfestâ*, as we observ'd before. The *Romans* having routed *Pyrrhus* soon after he came back, were mightily incens'd against the *Sicilians* for assisting *Pyrrhus*; and resolv'd to be reveng'd of them.

Accordingly they sent an Army into *Sicily* under the Conduct of *Appius Claudius*, and first routed *Hiero* the *Prætor*, and then the *Carthaginians*, who at this time laid Siege to *Mamertum*, as I said before.

Next Year *Hiero* was so frighted by the *Roman's* Preparation for War, that he made Peace with them upon these Terms, *viz.* That he should deliver up the Captives, and pay a hundred Talents of Silver. *Valerius Maximus*, who was Consul along with *Manlius Ocellinus*, took *Assana*, from whence



he took the surname of *Messala*. Soon after the *Roman* Generals took *Aggrigentum*, *L. Posthumus*, and *Q. Mamilius* being Consuls. This success did so puff them up, that they resolv'd to apply themselves to Sea Affairs; for hitherto they had never touch'd upon the Sea.

At first, indeed, the Success that attended their Descents upon *Sardinia*, and *Corfica* favour'd the Design; and at the same time their Arms were victorious by Land. But when *Affrica* was made the Seat of the War; notwithstanding that the Consuls in their Passage defeated the Enemy's Fleet, and that one of them *Marcus Attilius Regulus* routed the *Carthaginian* Army, and took *Tunis*; yet the same Consul was soon after routed and taken Prisoner by *Xantippus* the *Lacedemonian*, who serv'd the *Carthaginians*, and of his thirty thousand Men very few escaped. The Consuls for the next Year, upon their return from *Affrica* wou'd needs make a shew of their Spoils, and expose the Signs of Victory; and in gratifying this Humour, acted contrary to the directions of their Pilots, insomuch that a Storm arising reduc'd the number of four hundred and sixty four Ships, to that of eighty.

And even those, who were Consuls about two Years after, sailing towards *Affrica*, underwent the same Fate, and lost one hundred and fifty Ships upon an Island call'd *Meninge*.

After so many and so great Disasters at Sea, the Senate resolv'd not to attempt any thing considerable further that way. The next Year, *L. Caelius Metellus* and *Cn. Furius Pecilius* the Consuls were sent at the Head of the Legions: And the first of the two routed the *Carthaginians* in a bloody Battle, and kill'd twenty thousand of their Men; so that they were oblig'd to sue for Peace. Accordingly the *Carthaginians* sent Ambassadors to treat upon that Subject, and the Ransom of the Prisoners; among whom was *M. Attilius*, who was admitted to go to *Rome* upon these Terms, that if he did not obtain their Demands, he shou'd return to be laid in Chains. But when he came to *Rome*, he advis'd the Senate to the contrary, laying before them, that it was a thing unprecedented among the *Romans*: And after that, in order to make good his Promise to the Enemy, return'd to *Carthage*, where he was Quarter'd and Tortur'd to the last Degree.

The *Romans* hereupon fitted out a Fleet, and Besieg'd *Lilybaeum*; but their Navy was soon after shatter'd, and *Amilcar Barca* the *Carthaginian* plunder'd *Italy*. After this, the *Romans* did not meddle at Sea for seven Years, till *Amilcar* provok'd them to fit out a new Fleet, and try the last turn of Fortune. In this their scornful Attempt, they defeated the Enemy at the *Azates Islands*, so that the *Carthaginians* were oblig'd to sue for Peace, and accept of it upon these Terms, viz. That they should quit *Sicily*, and all the Islands between it and *Italy*; That they should not make War with the *Syraculians*, or their Allies; That all the Prisoners should be deliver'd up, and two thousand three hundred Talents paid in a certain space of time. This was the End of the first Punick War after it had lasted twenty four Years, in the five hundred and thirteenth Year after the building of the City, when *A. Manlius Torquatus* was Consul for the second time together with *Quintus Lutatius Cerco*.

The *Carthaginians* desir'd a Peace only in Order to make further Provisions for War; but they quickly fell in with greater Dangers, than any that the War with the *Romans* cou'd have occasion'd. For their hired Soldiers gather'd into a Body, and before they wou'd separate, requir'd more Arrears than the whole Republick was able to pay. They were push'd on by the Suggestions of some Profligate Fellows, who rais'd Troubles in Order



to get off with Impunity ; and a heavy War ensu'd, which they call'd the *Lybian* and *African* ; and which they cou'd not get clear off till after three Years, and that with Difficulty.

'Twas then that Experience convinc'd them, that no Trust is to be repos'd in Mercenary Soldiers drawn up in one Body ; and that their own Subjects shou'd not be so Cruelly treated, as they had been formerly.

In the next Year after the *Punick* War, being the five hundred and fourteenth of the City, the first Comedies and Tragedies made by *Andronicus* a *Greek* Poet, who was call'd *Livius* from *Livius Salinator* his Patron, were acted in *Rome*. Before the Invention of Comedies and Tragedies, *Satyrs* were in Use among the *Romans* ; and before the Introduction of *Satyrs*, the Verses usual among them were call'd *Fescennini*. In the fourth Year after this, the Secular Games were celebrated a third time ; they were call'd the great and *Terentine* Games, from *Terentum* a Place in the *Campus Martius* where *Manius Valesius* did first celebrate the same, and were continu'd since, once every hundred Years.

In the sixth Year after the *Punick* War, the Temple of *Janus* was shut up a second time, for *Titus Manlius Torquatus* had lately conquer'd *Sardinia*, and the *Romans* were altogether free from War. The next Year after, being the five hundred and twentieth after the Building of the City, *Sp. Carvilius Ruga* divorc'd his Wife, which was the first Divorce that happen'd in *Rome*. *Carvilius* pleaded that he did it to have Children by another Woman ; but notwithstanding this Plausible Plea, the People resent'd it with a great deal of Displeasure and Hatred.

In the same Year, *M. Porcius* was born in the Confines of *Tusculum* ; He was call'd *Catus*, and diminutively *Catulus* with Allusion to his Sagacity and Parts. The same Year *Cn. Naevius*, who wrote the first *Punick* War in *Saturnian* Verse, publish'd Fables. Thirty Years after that, he dy'd having made his own Epitaph himself, with Arrogance enough, which *Gellius* takes Notice of, together with those of *Plautus* and *Pacuvius*.

After six Years, a War broke out with the *Illyrians*, and the Temple of *Janus* was open'd. *Teuta* the Queen of the *Illyrians* and Widow of *Agron*, who had thrown himself into a Mortal Pleurisie by hard drinking, gave her Subjects the Liberty of Pirating ; accordingly they took *Phenice* a Town of *Epiru*, and robb'd the *Italian* Merchants. Now the Queen was so far from remedying the Disorders, that she order'd one of the *Roman* Ambassadors to be kill'd, for discounting the Point freely with her. Whereupon War was declar'd against her, which *Fulvius* the Consul carry'd on so destroufully, that the Cities of *Illyrium* were either surrender'd or burn'd : And *Teuta* being put to flight, sued for Peace, and obtain'd it upon these Terms, viz. that she shou'd pay a Yearly Tribute, that she shou'd quit all *Ulyricum*, excepting a few Places ; and that she shou'd not Sail beyond the River *Orissus* with more than two Barks and those unarm'd.

The *Illyrians* continu'd their Allegiance to the *Romans* for nine Years, till the five hundred and thirty fifth of the Building of the City, in which they revolted, and were subdu'd by *Emilius Paulus* and *Marcus Livius* then Consuls ; and *Demetrius Pharius*, who had Uturp'd the Kingdom, was outted, and a certain Sum of Money was laid upon the People to be paid Yearly to *Pompey* the Son of *Agron*. This was the End of the War with *Teuta* ; which *Plinius*, out of a Mistake, Natural, as I may say, to him (for he committed many) Mistakes after the *Cisalpine* War, which broke out the very Year this War ended, upon this Occasion. *C. Flaminius* the Tri-



bune of the People mov'd that a Law shou'd be made, adjudging the Lands of the *Cisalpine Gauls* to be distributed among the People; upon which the *Gauls* were so incens'd, that they resolv'd to undergo all Extremities, rather than be outted of their Seats and banish'd their Country: Accordingly they call'd in the *Insubres* to their Assistance, who brought in the *Transalpine Gauls* upon the *Rhosne* call'd *Gesatæ*, upon the Foot of a National War. Presently fifty Thousand Foot and twenty Thousand Horse made an Irruption into *Tuscany*. Upon the News of the Invasion, *Rome* was thunderstruck with Fear and Grief; for they look'd upon the *Gauls* as their fatal Enemies. Then Lists were taken of all those that were fit for War, and all the *Italians* made such Preparations, that with incredible Expedition they drew together an Army of eight hundred and eighty Thousand Men. The *Roman* Generals surpris'd the *Gauls* when they were putting all to Fire and Sword in *Tuscany*, and engag'd them on all sides. The *Gesatæ*, whose Bodies were naked and expos'd, immediately fled and disorder'd all the rest. In this Encounter there were forty Thousand *Gauls* kill'd and ten Thousand taken Prisoners, among whom was *Concolitanus* the King, the other King, Namely *Averocstus* having laid violent Hands upon himself.

Upon this Disaster the *Gauls* desir'd Peace; but *M. Claudius Marcellus* and *Cn. Cornelius Scipio* being Consuls for the next Year, oppos'd it, as designing to reserve to themselves the glory of carrying the War further. Accordingly they Besieg'd *Acerræ* in the Country of the *Insubres*, and the *Gauls* laid Siege to *Clastidium*, where they came to a hot Engagement, and were sadly maul'd. *Marcellus* having kill'd *Dardomaras* the *Gesatian* King, was the third Man that brought off the *Opima Spolia*, which he consecrated to *Jupiter Feretrius*, notwithstanding that *Numa* had order'd them to be Dedicated to *Quirinus*. The triumphal Motto imply'd, that the *Germans*, together with the *Galli Insubres* were conquer'd; so that it seems the *Gesatæ* were call'd *Germans* by a Mistake. Some alledge they were call'd *Gesatæ* from a particular sort of Darts us'd among them, because, in the *Teutonic* Language, the *German* Darts were call'd *Gæsts*. Thus was that War brought to an End after six Years.

The second *Punick* War began three Years after the *Gallick* War. *Hannibal* the Son of *Amilcar Borcas* was then General of the *Carthaginians*. He was a mortal Enemy to the *Romans*; his Father took him along with him to *Spain*, when he was but nine Years old, and bound him by an Oath at a solemn Sacrifice, never to befriend the *Romans*. *Hannibal* subdued all *Spain* on the other side of the River *Iber*, except *Saguntum*. The *Saguntians* acquainted their Allies the *Romans* with the Progress he had made, and thereupon Ambassadors were sent; but they cou'd not dissuade him from attacking *Saguntum*: For he saw very well thro' their Design, viz. that they hop'd to make that Place the Seat of the War, and so keep it at some distance, to the end that *Italy* might be secur'd, and they might have leisure to get clear of the *Illyrians*, who, about this time began to revolt.

The *Saguntians* endur'd all sort of Extremities, and shew'd in themselves a noble Instance of Valour and Constancy; but at last the City was taken. Then the *Romans* sent Ambassadors to *Carthage* to demand *Hannibal*, as being guilty of Violating the League; and in case the Demand was not satisfy'd, to declare War, which accordingly was Declar'd and accepted. So the second *Punick* War commenc'd in the five hundred and thirty sixth Year after the building of the City, in the Reign of *Antiochus Magnus* in *Asia*, and *Ptolomy Philopater* in *Egypt*; in the twenty fourth Year after the Conclusion



clusion of the Peace, and in the Consulship of *P. Cornelius Scipio*, and *Tib. Sempronius Longus*.

*Hannibal* in the twenty sixth Year of his Age, having subdued all *Spain*, March'd thro' *Gallia* at the Head of fifty thousand Foot, and nine thousand Horse, and cross'd the *Alpes*; and in the fifth Month arriv'd in *Italy*, having lost a great part of his Army by the Fatigues of so tedious a March, being reduc'd to eighteen thousand two hundred Foot, and six thousand Horse. With these he routed *Scipio* and *Sempronius* the Consuls upon the *Ticinus* and *Trebbias*, and afterwards *Flaminius*, at the Lake *Thrasimenus*. These Disasters put the People of *Rome* into a Consternation; whereupon they nominated *Fabius Maximus* to be Vice Dictator, the Consul being absent, so that a Dictator could not be Nominated. *Fabius*, who was a wise Man, as well as a great Captain, concluded, *the best way to deal with so fierce and haughty an Enemy, was to make him contend with Hunger and Cold*; accordingly he declin'd giving him Battle, streighten'd his Quarters, cut short his Provisions, and distress'd him several ways. Once indeed he was like to catch him in a Net: For *Hannibal*, having Encamp'd, on an Evening, between two Hills, where there was but one steep Passage to get out, and that too very narrow: *Fabius Maximus* being inform'd hereof, March'd quickly after him by the favour of the Night, and plac'd a Detachment of ten thousand Men on the side of the Hill, at the entrance of the Pass, concluding, he had *Hannibal* and his Men in the same Circumstances, as the *Romans* were at *Caudium*. When *Hannibal* understood that *Fabius* had possess'd himself of the Entrance into his Camp, and that there was no other way to get out, which he did not know before, as being unacquainted with the Country; to retrieve this false Step, he made use of a Stratagem, which shew'd the Penetration of his Wit, and the Greatness of his Genius. He caus'd a great drove of Oxen to be driven up the Hill, with Faggots fasten'd, and set on Fire between their Horns, and follow'd them himself with a strong Detachment of the Army. As the Oxen drew near *Fabius's* Men, and began to feel the Fire, they roar'd and low'd so hideously, that they frighten'd the *Romans*, who could not imagine what such a sight shou'd mean; and being driven forward with Violence, broke into the Trenches of the *Romans*, who amaz'd and stupify'd at such a Spectacle, ran all away, leaving the Pass clear to *Hannibal*, who fail'd not to possess himself of it; and being once deliver'd from this Danger, took care for the future to give no such handle to his Enemy.

In the mean time the People in *Rome* were very impatient of Delay, and seem'd offended with *Fabius*; because he did not Fight the Enemy. They therefore appointed *M. Minucius* the General of the Horse, a very stout, but rash and inconsiderate Man, to Command the Army jointly and equally with *Fabius Maximus*, concluding, I suppose, that the forwardness of *Minucius* and the slowness of *Fabius* join'd together, wou'd bring a good Temperament, and make Matters succeed to their Wishes.

But *Fabius*, who was a great Lover of his Country, and, at the same time, knew the rashness of his Collegue, was very sensible that *Minucius* wou'd spoil all, had he the intire Command of the Army but one Day. He therefore divided the *Roman* Legions with him, giving him just one half of the Army, which he was to Command every Day, and kept the other half to himself. *Minucius* was not long in the Field when he March'd with his Men, and seem'd to insult *Hannibal* in his Camp. *Hannibal* who coveted nothing more than to fight, March'd out, and routed *Minucius* before he cou'd well look about him, killing a great many of his Men. *Fabius*, who



stood at a distance on the side of a Hill, seeing the Romans running away, struck his Hand upon his Thigh, and said : *Papa, quanto citius vincitur Minucius quam expectabam; & quanto serius quam ipse meruit!* How sooner is Minucius overcome than I expected, and how later than he deserved! And then March'd against Hannibal, put a stop to his Career, and beat him back into his Trenches. Then Hannibal said in a Joke to the Officers about him : *Did not I tell you, Gentlemen, that these Clouds would fall heavy upon us one time or other?* alluding to Fabius's Army, who us'd to hover over them upon the sides of Mountains and Hills. Minucius seeing his own rashness, and how near he was to the ruin of his Credit, and of the Troops he Commanded, came in an humble manner to Fabius, laid down the Ensigns of his Dignity at his Feet, and with a Tone denoting his Concern, assur'd him *he would ever after glory in Fighting under his Command, and by his Orders.* However, the loss on Hannibal's side being inconsiderable, when the Campaign was over, and that Fabius return'd to the City, the Senate and People were so impatient of Delay, and so angry with him for protracting the War, that they made Terentius Varro Consul, and Æmilius Paulus his Collegue; and sent them to Command the Army against Hannibal. But it seems Varro was as rash, if not more than Minucius; for in spite of all the Remonstrances of Æmilius, who was a wise and sober Man, he would needs engage Hannibal at Canna.

Hannibal, who coveted nothing more than to fight with Men, rather than with Hunger and Cold, which he had long encounter'd by the wise Conduct of Fabius, readily accepted the Challenge : And having put his Army in Battle Array, March'd towards the Romans; and being come in sight of them, he, with some of his Officers, stood on an Eminence to take a View of their Number, and of their Order in Battle; and as he was taken up with the Thoughts of so weighty a Matter, his Gentleman, whose Name was Gisco, came up to him, and said, *he admir'd he would engage so Numerous an Army.* Hannibal, who was always very ready at Repartees, and would put off, even his Disasters, with a Jest, turn'd upon him and said : *There is something more admirable than all this in the Matter, which is, that in this great Number there is not one Man among them call'd Gisco.* This put all the Officers on splitting their Sides with Laughter : So that the Soldiers seeing the Officers, upon their return in so Merry an Humour, conceiv'd a good Omen of what they were to undertake that Day. The Battle was fought, and the Slaughter of the Romans was so great that it was commonly reported, Hannibal sent to Carthage some Bushels full of the Gold Rings which were taken from the Fingers of the Roman Knights slain in the Field. Æmilius Paulus fell too, tho' he might have escap'd; but he declar'd he would not out live that fatal Day.

This defeat occasion'd such a Consternation in the City, that the richer Citizens thought of fleeing and leaving Italy; but P. Cornelius Scipio, a youth of brave Spirit, who was then scarce twenty four Years of Age, encourag'd them to stay; nay, so far prevail'd upon their Spirits, that all the Estates gathered into a Body, and went out to meet Varro, the Author of the Defeat, and thank'd him for gathering up the scatter'd Remnants of the Forces, and for not despairing of the State of the Republick.

Had Hannibal March'd straight to Rome, he might easily have stopp'd the Fountain-Head of the War, and so compleat his Work : But (as Malherbal the Major General of his Horse said to him : *Vincere scio Hannibal, uti Victoria nescis,*) He knew how to Conquer, but knew not how to make the best



*best advantage of the Victory* : For he led his Army to *Capua*, where he suffer'd them to be debauch'd and enervated by Luxury, and the Redundancy of all Necessaries; insomuch that the saying was not amiss, *Capua was a Cannæ to Hannibal*.

While *Hannibal* was thus negligent of his Concerns, the *Romans* took Courage; and saw, tho' a little too late, that *Fabius Maximus* was the fittest Man to deal with *Hannibal* : They therefore readily Listed themselves under his Command. *Fabius* follow'd his old sure Maxim : He us'd Delays, declin'd Fighting, cut off the Enemy's Convoys, and Distress'd *Hannibal*, so as to Force him to raise the Siege of *Cuma*, and to retire from before *Nola*, which gave *Ennius* occasion to say in his Rustick, but pithy Poem :

*Unus Homo nobis cunctando restituit Rem.  
Non ponebat enim Rumores ante salutem;  
Ergo postque magisque viri nunc gloria claret.*

*One Man our State restor'd by wise Delays;  
Our W'cal he sought, Contemned empty Praise;  
For which we now proclaim his glorious Name,  
And future Ages shall record his Fame.*

The *Romans* also acted successfully in *Spain*, in *Sicily* and in *Sardinia* : In *Spain*, under the Command of the two *Scipio's*; in *Sicily*, *Marcus Claudius Marcellus* besieg'd *Syracusa*; for after the Death of *Hiero*, the *Syracusans* revolted from the *Romans*. However they stood out a long while by the help of the Machines which *Archimedes* the famous Mathematician made to keep off the Enemy. At last, after a Siege of three Years, *Marcellus* took the Town, at a time when the Citizens were careless; and among others, *Archimedes* (who being so much taken up with drawing some Scheme in his Mathematicks when the Enemy enter'd the Town, that he was not sensible of the Towns being taken) was kill'd to the great Grief of *Marcellus*, who charg'd the Soldiers to spare his Life. At the same time the *Scipio's* designing unreasonably to put an End to the *Spanish War*, divided their Forces; and were cut off, together with almost the whole Army by the *Celtiberi* : But their Death was fully reveng'd by *Martius*, who took the like Occasion of attacking the *Carthaginians*, when they were divided, and routed them to that Degree, that thirty seven Thousand of them were kill'd, eighteen hundred Prisoners taken and a great Booty carry'd off.

In *Italy* the *Romans* besieg'd *Capua*; and *Hannibal*, to oblige them to raise the Siege attack'd the Castle of *Tarentum* : But finding this wou'd not do, and being loath to lose too many of his Men, (whereof he had none to spare) before that strong Fortrefs, he went off with a Joke, saying : *Relinquamus Tarentinis Deos Iratos, Let us leave the Tarentines their angry Gods*. And so March'd towards *Rome* it self, where Thunder and Lightning prevented an Engagement; so that he complain'd much of himself, and of his hard Fortune, and return'd to *Rhegium*.

By this means the *Capuans* were depriv'd of all hopes of Relief, and the Town forc'd to Surrender. About the same time *P. Cornelius Scipio*, Son to one of the *Scipio's* lately kill'd in *Spain*, was appointed Successor to *Claudius Nero*, who had suffer'd himself to be over-reach'd by *Asdrubal*, Brother to *Hannibal*. When every body else declin'd the Office of Proconsul, by reason of its Weight and Importance, *Scipio* of his own accord, listed himself Candidate for it in the twenty fourth Year of his Age. Next Year, *Levinus* the



Consul took *Agrigentum*, and Subdued all *Sicily*; but his Colleague *Marcellus*, being sent against *Hannibal*, had the Misfortune to be kill'd in an Ambush, into which crafty *Hannibal* had led him. Soon after *Asdrubal Hannibal's* Brother March'd at the Head of Auxiliary Troops from *Spain* to *Italy*, and was beaten and kill'd upon the Road by *M. Livius Salinator*, and *C. Claudius Nero*, at the River *Metaurus*. But *Hannibal* was ignorant of what happen'd : For, tho' *Nero* was Encamp'd just over against him, yet he was not sensible that he had March'd off, to the assistance of his Colleague, 'till the Consul return'd, and threw *Asdrubal's* Head into the *Carthaginian* Camp.

In the mean time *P. Scipio* went on Successfully in *Spain*, where his Father and Uncle had lost their Lives before. After he had recover'd the whole Province, he return'd to *Rome* and being made Consul, desir'd of the Senate, that *Africa* shou'd be allotted to him for his Province, to the end he might carry the War into their own Territories. *Fabius Maximus* was mightily against the Motion : His Opinion was, *that it was not proper to go to Africa, but to make head against Hannibal where he was*. On the other Hand, *Scipio's* Plea was, that if the *Carthaginians* were attack'd within their own Territories they wou'd be oblig'd to recal *Hannibal* from *Italy*, since their Hopes and Security were founded in him. After a long Debate, the Senate allots *Sicily* to *Scipio*, and allows him to cross over to *Africa*, if the Interest of the Republic requir'd it. Next Year *Scipio* went from *Sicily* into *Africa*, and made good his Promise to the Senate; for he defeated the *Carthaginians* several times, and reduc'd them to so low a Pass, that they recall'd *Hannibal*. So that he who rang'd over *Italy* full sixteen Years, and had pitch'd his Camp under the Walls of *Rome*, was oblig'd to return Home tho' unwilling and full of Sorrow; and afterwards, being routed by *Scipio*, advis'd the *Carthaginians* to sue for Peace. *Scipio* was very much concern'd for fear the Consuls of this Year, who had an Eye upon *Africa*, shou'd rob him of the Glory of concluding the War.

A Peace therefore was concluded by the Consent of the Senate; upon these Terms, *viz.* That the *Carthaginians* shou'd enjoy their Liberty, and their *African* Lands; but shou'd quit *Spain*, and all the Isles of the *Mediterranean* Sea, that were ever in Dispute; that they shou'd deliver up all the Deserters, all their Ships bating ten Gallies, all their tame Elephants, and promise to tame no more of those Animals for the Future; that they shou'd wage War with none without the Consent of the People of *Rome*; that they shou'd restore to *Massinissa* King of *Numidia* what ever they had taken from him; and enter into a Confederacy with him; that in the space of fifty Years they shou'd pay one Thousand Talents in Silver, and pawn one hundred Hostages for Security.

Thus was the second *Punic* War brought to an End after eighteen Years continuance; and from thence *Scipio* was surnam'd *Africanus*.



## C H A P. V.

*Of the Wars of the Romans with Philip King of Macedonia, with the Carthaginians and with Mithridates King of Pontus, to the Conspiracy of Pompey, Crassus and Cæsar.*



**D**ACE being Concluded with the *Carthaginians*, the *Romans* not only carry'd on their Wars in *Italy*, *Istria* and *Lusitania*; but were likewise engag'd in a heavy War with *Philip King of Macedonia*, being call'd to the Assistance of the *Græcians* whom he oppress'd: Besides, *Philip* had given the *Romans* Occasion to be offended with him ten Years before, for entering into a League with *Hannibal*. *Galba* and *Tappulus* the Consuls were first sent against him; and after them, *Quintius Flaminius*, who, (contrary to Custom) at the End of his Consulship had his Command continu'd to him: For the *Tribuni Plebis* did justly alledge, that the shifting of Generals every Year was a great Obstacle to the Success of their Affairs. *Flaminius* defeated *Philip* at *Cynocephalæ*, whereupon he sued for Peace, and upon the Senate's Desire, the Liberty of *Greece* was restor'd.

Soon after the *Romans* made War with *Antiochus King of Asia and Syria*: For *Antiochus* had invaded the Kingdom of *Attalus* the Roman Allie; he also attack'd *Egypt*, and assaulted the *Græcian* Cities upon the Pretence that they were once Subject to the *Asiatick* Kings. The *Romans* taking these Motions into their Consideration began to entertain some Jealousies of him, which were further inflam'd by *Hannibal's* Proceedings, who, being banish'd by his ungrateful Country-Men, came to *Antiochus* and edg'd him on to the War.

Besides, the *Etolians* had a great Hand in pushing him on: For when *Philip* was beaten, they and the *Romans* had some Dispute about the Spoil, and finding their Avarice baulk'd, were fond of an Opportunity of resenting it.

*M. Acilius* being sent against *Antiochus*, defeated him at *Thermopylae*; but the Honour of putting an End to the War was reserv'd for *L. Cornelius Scipio*, who was chosen Consul the next Year; And tho' his Colleague *C. Laelius Aepos* did earnestly desire the Province of *Greece*, yet *Scipio* obtain'd it, and withal Leave to go into *Asia* by the Interest of his Brother *Africanus*, who promis'd to go along with him in Quality of Lieutenant-General. *Scipio* defeated *Antiochus* in *Asia*, and oblig'd him to sue for Peace, which was granted to him upon the Terms mention'd in the latter End of the seventh Book.



He likewise subdu'd the *Etolians*, and made Peace with them. Soon after, the *Romans* wag'd War with the *Galatians*, under the Conduct of *Manlius* the Consul; and his Army, upon their Return, brought Home the first Seeds of Luxury to the City.

After three Years, *Scipio Africanus* was impeach'd for Cheating the State, by Impropropriating the Spoil taken in War, and the *Tribunes* appointed a Day for his Trial. This great Man, who had done so many, and such great Services to the Publick, was afraid to stand Trial, and having been forbid the Court, went up to the Capitol to return thanks to the Gods for his Victory; and then retir'd to *Linternum*, where he dy'd in the fourth Year of his Exile, in the same Year that *Hannibal* himself dy'd also, having fled to *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*, and finding that *Quintius* demanded him, and that it was not possible for him to Escape; kill'd himself with a certain Poison, which he carry'd in his Ring.

About the same Time *L. Scipio* (who from his Victory over *Antiochus* was surnam'd *Asiaticus*) was likewise charg'd with Cheating the State.

Next Year the wicked Mysteries of the *Bacchanalia* were brought to Light, by which many were offer'd up in Sacrifice, and several Monstrous Crimes were committed; Afterwards, a War broke out with the *Ligurians*, and *Cersira* was subdu'd. Soon after, the second *Macedonian* War, or that with *Perseus*, Commenc'd in the five hundredth and eighty third Year of the City, twenty four Years after the Conclusion of the Peace with his Father *Philip*, and after that with *Antiochus*.

*Philip* King of *Macedonia* had taken it very ill, that the *Romans* shou'd pinch him so much, and design'd to revive the War: But Death prevented him, and *Perseus* his Son succeeded. *Perseus* had been formerly disoblig'd by the *Romans*, and willingly embrac'd the War as Part of his Heritage. But *L. Æmilius Paulus* in his second Consulship, defeated and took him Prisoner, together with his Wife, Mother and Children; led them all in Triumph to *Rome*, and turn'd *Macedonia* into a *Roman* Province, from whence he was surnam'd *Macedonicus*.

Soon after, one *Andriscus* a Man of mean Descent, gave himself out for the Son of *Perseus*; and declar'd War against the *Romans*; but being routed by *Q. Metellus* the *Prætor*, fled to *Byzus* King of *Thrace*, who deliver'd him up. At last, the third *Punick* War broke out; for the *Romans* took hold of any Occasion of quarelling with the *Carthaginians*. Indeed the *Carthaginians* could not sit still and be idle; but constantly started Disputes concerning the Property of some Neighbouring Lands or other; and had thereupon declar'd War against almost all their Neighbours, especially *Massanissa* King of *Numidia*, who was an Allie of the People of *Rome*. The *Romans* being chosen Arbitrators in the Matter were Partial to the King, and, upon *Massanissa's* Solicitation, declar'd War against the *Carthaginians*; but were divided in their Opinions whether their City shou'd be destroy'd or preserv'd.

Some were of Opinion they shou'd not destroy it, by Reason, if *Carthage* were out of the Way, Civil and Domestick Feuds would never cease at Home.

But *M. Porcius Cato* was of another Opinion, viz. that the Republick of *Rome* would ever be in Danger, if this City were not Totally destroy'd; and therefore concluded his Speech with these Words: *Delenda est Carthago*.

This Opinion was most approv'd of, and the Senate came to the same Resolution. But *Cato* himself being then eighty five Years of Age dy'd while they were yet debating the Point. Among



Among many other Injunctions given by the Romans to the Carthaginians, this was one; that they shou'd abandon the City, and build another, if they pleas'd, ten Miles distant from the Sea. The Carthaginians were resolv'd to undergo the last Extremity rather than comply with so hard a Precept. Several Consuls were imploy'd against them : At last the Business of destroying Carthage was committed to the Care of *P. Scipio Emilianus*, Son to *P. Æmilius Macedonicus*, and Grandson to *Scipio Africanus*.

This *Scipio* having restor'd the Military Discipline, laid close Siege to the City, and when he had taken it, set it on Fire, and levell'd it with the Ground. This Exploit gave him the surname of *Africanus*, in the third Year of the War; after Carthage had stood about seven hundred Years, in the six hundred and eighth Year after the building of Rome, the third of the one hundred and fifty eighth Olympiad in the Consulship of *Cn. Cornelius Lentulus*, and *L. Mummius Nepos*.

About the same time the Romans declar'd War against the Achæians because they offer'd Indignities to the Legates that were sent to dissolve the Republick of the Confederate Cities of that Nation. *Metellus* being then in Macedonia was the first that attack'd them. After him *L. Mummius* the Consul came, and having defeated them in a bloody Battle had all Achæia surrender'd to him; and, by Virtue of an Order from the Senate, burnt and raz'd the City of Corinth, which *Cicero* call'd the Glory of Greece. About the same time *Viriatus* possess'd himself of Lusitania.

This Man from a Shepherd became a Huntsman, from a Huntsman a Robber, and from a Robber a Commander of a Gallant Army, with which he wag'd War with the Romans for some Years; and on some Occasions very successfully : But at last was kill'd by *Clapio* the Consul, and after that *D. Junius Brutus* reduc'd all Lusitania as far as to the Sea.

In the mean time the Romans were sadly maul'd by the Numantines, who reject'd the Articles of Peace given in by *Mancinus* the Consul, as being Ignominious. Whereupon they made *P. Scipio Æmilianus Africanus* extraordinary Consul, and committed the Care of the War to him. He went to the Army, and finding them softned by Luxury and averse to Hardships, reviv'd the Ancient Severity of the Discipline; and by that Means took Numantia and raz'd it, after it had sustain'd the shock of forty Thousand Romans for twenty Years together. About the same time, the Slaves in Sicily revolted, and gather'd a great Body of Men; and it was with some Difficulty that *P. Rutilus Nepos* the Consul quell'd them.

Hitherto the singular Modesty and Virtue of the Roman Generals, and the formidable Power of the Carthaginians, had so overaw'd the People, that all their Feuds and Differences never went to the height of Blood or Slaughter. But now the Asiatick Triumphs tainted them with so much softness and Luxury, that Envy, Feuds, Factions and Private Hatred gradually prevail'd upon them; and at length broke out into civil War: For in the same Year that Numantia was subdu'd by *Scipio*, *Tib. Sempronius* Tribune of the People, occasion'd great Disorders in the City, by making a Law prohibiting any Man to possess above five hundred Acres of publick Land, and adjudging the Overplus to be equally distributed among the Poor. The Noble Men were mightily incens'd at this Law; but he propos'd yet another, adjudging all the Money left by *Attalus* King of Pergamus by Way of Legacy to the People of Rome, to be distributed in like Manner.

This Juncture, stagger'd the Senate insomuch that they did not see how to get rid of the Difficulties that attended it. But *Scipio Nasica* calling upon every



every one that tender'd the good of the Republick to follow him, went up to the Capitol and slew *Gracchus* one of the Tribunes, as he was haranguing the People, together with many others. This was the first Blood that was shed in Sedition, and the Source of their civil VVars.

At the same time, the *Romans* were engag'd with *Aristobolus* in *Asia*, who being the Bastard Brother of *Atalus*, the King of *Pergamus*, that left the People of *Rome* his Heir, possess'd himself of the Kingdom, and defrauded the *Romans* of their Legacy. But *M. Perperna* the Consul defeated him, and having block'd him up in *Stratonice*, took him Prisoner; and *Aquilus* carry'd him to *Rome*, where he was strangled in Prison. Next Year, being the six hundred and twenty sixth after the Building of the City, *Scipio Africanus Minor*, upon Suspicion of being hard upon the People in the *Lex Agraria*, was kill'd in the Night-time, as he lay in Bed in his own House, and was privately bury'd; and notwithstanding the Greatness of his Character there was no Enquiry made into the Manner of his Death.

About twelve Years after the Murder of *Gracchus* his Brother *Caius* underwent the same Fate: For being made Tribune of the People he not only justify'd the *Lex Agraria* with a great deal of VVarmth, but transferr'd the Right of Publick Judgment from the Senators to the *Equites*, who now began to appear in a distinct Rank, which was afterwards brighten'd by the Care and Glory of *Cicero*: Besides, *Caius* being frustrated in his Design of carrying a Colony to *Carthage*, return'd to the City and endeavour'd to sow new Sedition among the People; but *Opimius* the Consul with his Friends fell upon him and kill'd him in the Attempt.

About the same time *Fabius Maximus* Grandson to *P. Æmilius* by a Son of his, that was adopted into the Family of the *Fabij*, subdu'd the *Alabreges*, *Arverni* and *Ruteni*, in *Gaul*; and *Metellus* together with *Minutius* Triumphed over the *Scordisci*, a People that were Originally *Gauls*, and inhabited *Thrace*, and had routed the Roman Army Commanded by *Cato*.

But soon after a heavy VVar broke out with *Jugurtha* King of *Numidia*, who had kill'd *Adherbal* his Cousin, after he had taken him in to be Partner in the Kingdom. *Jugurtha* gain'd both the Senators and many of the Generals by his Money: *L. Cecilius Metellus* made Head against him, and when the VVar was almost brought to an End, *Caius Marius* his Legate cunningly insinuated himself into the Favour of the People, got himself made Consul, and *Numidia* allotted to him for his Province; and so put an End to the VVar.

*Bocchus* King of *Mauritania*, being Father-in-Law, and an Allie to *Jugurtha*, was first Conquer'd; then *Jugurtha* was taken by Stratagem and led in Triumph, and by the Senate's Orders was kill'd in Prison, after he had carry'd on the VVar seven Years. In the time of this War with *Jugurtha*, the *Cimbri*, who inhabited the *Chersonesus Cimbrica* joyn'd in with the *German*s, who were call'd *Teutones* from *Teuton* the Great Father, and Native God of that Country.

These two Nations joyn'd together made up a Body of such a vast Number of Men as seem'd to cover the Face of the Earth, and struck such a Terror into the *Romans* that they expected every Minute to be swallow'd up by them.

These *Barbarians*, as the *Romans* call'd them, made Incursions into *Illyricum*, *Italy* and *Spain*, or rather seem'd by their Numbers to cover almost that whole Tract of Land; defeated several times the Roman Pro-Consuls and Legates, burnt and destroy'd several Towns and Cities, and carry'd all before them; so as that scarce any of the *Romans* had the Courage to stand before them.



At last, when their Fury was something abated by the Sweets of those Rich and Wealthy Countries, *Caius Marius*, who was then a fifth time Consul, led out a Select Army against them, with which he engag'd them several times successfully, and at length routed them quite out of *Italy*, on the third Day of *August* in the six hundred and fifty third Year of the City, after the War had lasted twelve Years.

About the same time *L. Apuleius Saturninus* whom the Senate had remov'd from being Treasurer, took Occasion to resent the Affront (being made Tribune of the People) by starting new Occasions of Mutiny upon the *Lex Agraria*. But the Consuls took him Prisoner, and the *Equites* fell upon him and his Complices, in the very Court, and kill'd them. About eight Years after this, *Drusus* the Tribune endeavouring to oblige the Senators and the *Equites* by making a new Law giving to either State the Power of passing Judgments, incurr'd the Displeasure of both; and when he endeavour'd to promote the *Lex Agraria*, and give the *Italians* the freedom of the City, was Murder'd by an unknown Hand in the Entry of his own House.

The *Italians* had undergone many Difficulties, and done considerable Services to the Empire of Rome; for which they were continually fed with the Hopes of being admitted into the City, but the Execution of it was still put off. This gave Rise to such Animosities, that a heavy War broke out which was call'd *Sociale*, *Marsicum* and *Italicum*. The War continu'd two Years with various Success; till at last the *Italians* were reduc'd and Conquer'd by *Scylla* the Consul: However they gain'd their Point, for they were allow'd the Freedom of the City, which was the thing they contended for. This happen'd in the six hundred and sixty sixth Year after the Building of Rome in the Consulship of *L. Cornelius Scylla*, and *Q. Pompeius Rufus*.

Soon after, the Romans were engag'd in a heavy War with *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, a Country in *Asia* so call'd from the *Pontus Euxinus* or *Euxin* Sea to which it is Adjacent. This Prince is said to be descended from one of the seven *Persian* Lords that cut off the Magicians, who Ufurp'd the Kingdom after the Death of *Cambyses*. He was surnam'd *Eupator* and *Diomsius*.

He slew his Brother, and his Mother that was left Partner in the Government. When the Romans were engag'd in the *Cimbrian* and *Italian* War; he did not stick to affect the Empire of *Asia*. He first possess'd himself of *Paphlagonia*, and then of *Cappadocia*, having kill'd *Ariarathes* their King, and put one of his Sons in his Place. The *Cappadocians* cou'd not brook the Yoke of this new King, and therefore call'd in *Ariarathes*, Son to the late *Ariarathes*; but he was soon after expell'd by *Nicomedes* King of *Bythynia* and thereupon dy'd.

*Nicomedes* suborn'd a Youth that gave himself out to be *Ariarathes*'s Brother, and sent his Wife (who was *Ariarathes*'s Mother) to Rome to be Evidence that she bore three Sons to *Ariarathes*. Upon these News *Mithridates* likewise sent People to Rome to make out that the Young Man who had lately Govern'd *Cappadocia* was the Son of *Ariarathes*.

The Senate of Rome thought fit to Interpose in these Matters, and accordingly restor'd the Kings that *Mithridates* had outted. But he continu'd to carry on his Design, possessing himself of *Bitthynia*, *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Lycia*, *Pamphilia*, and the other Provinces, as far as *Jonia*. He took *Oppius* and *Aquilus* the Roman Legates; the latter of whom he put to Death by pouring



ing melted Gold down his Throat. For he took all Occasions to Twit the *Romans* with their Avarice. The *Romans* were so incens'd at this Action, that they declar'd War against him, under the Conduct of *Cornelius Scylla*; But *Scylla* being then engag'd in putting an end to the *Italian War*, *C. Marius*, who was the sixth Time Consul, obtain'd another Act, committing the War to his Care. *Scylla* came to *Rome* hereupon, and got *Marius* Expell'd the City, and declar'd an Enemy. *Marius* lurk'd for some Time in the Marshes about *Minturnæ*, and afterwards cross'd over to *Africa*, in a little Sorry Boat with the hazard of his Life. Whilst *Scylla* was absent in *Asia* *L. Cornelius Cinna* the Consul, began to make a Stir, and carry on seditious Designs. But *Cn. Octavius* his Colleague oppos'd the same, and expell'd him the City: However *Cinna*, after he was expell'd, strengthen'd his Party, and joyn'd in with *C. Marius*, who upon this Occasion had return'd from *Africa*; Insomuch that with joynt-Forces they besieg'd *Rome* upon the Side of *Janiculum*, and by Reason the Citizens were both Lazy and Treacherous, got into the City, and fill'd the Streets with Blood and Rapine. Then they declar'd themselves Consuls, and display'd a great deal of Cruelty in the execution of their Office. *Cinna* gave Orders for the Death of *M. Antonius* an excellent Orator; and *Marius* serv'd *Q. Catulus* at the same Rate; But after all, he died about a Month after the Commencement of his Magistracy.

In the mean Time *Mithridates* slew 80000 *Romans* and *Italians* in one Day, and made all necessary Preparations for War. But *Scylla* came into *Greece* and took *Athens* together with the *Piræum*, and obtain'd two Victories over *Archelaus* the King's General, so that *Mithridates* was under a Necessity of sueing for Peace. Accordingly *Scylla* made Peace with him, and so put an End to the War. Then he return'd into *Italy*, but a little before his Arrival *Marius* dy'd. After the Death of *Marius*, *Cn. Papirius Carbo* stood by *Cinna*, and both of them joyn'd with the adopted Son of *Marius*, in order to Thwart *Scylla*, but they were all soon put to Flight.

*Scylla* having compass'd his End, pursu'd his Enemies with a great deal of Warmth; and after he had expos'd to publick View the List of the banish'd Persons, sold their Estates, and depriv'd their Children of any Right to Places of Honour and Trust. Then was he made Perpetual Dictator, dispos'd of every Thing at Pleasure, and even clipp'd the Power of the *Tribunes*.

When he sold the Citizen's Estates, he said in the publick Meeting, it was his own Spoil that he sold.

He was so Inveterate against *C. Marius*, that he order'd the Remains of his Corps that lay by the River *Anis*, to be scatter'd; and after that, was the first of all the *Patricij* that order'd his own Body to be burnt; probably out of Fear the like Affront might be done to himself after his Death. After so many and so great Exploits, he resign'd the Magistracy, and said, *he was ready to Answer for all he had done*: Then he retir'd to the Country to lead an Unactive Life, and dy'd at *Puteoli* of the Louie Distemper.

*Q. Sertorius* was one of those, who were banish'd; a Man Famous for his Steadiness and Experience in War. He created a great deal of Trouble to the *Romans* in upper *Spain*, took and Master'd several Cities, and defeated their Armies several Times, and even *Mutellus* the Consul; so that the Charge of carrying on the War against him was committed to *Cn. Pompeius*, a Youth of a Noble Spirit; After several dubious Encounters *Sertorius* was perfidiously Murther'd by *Perpenna* his own General, and *Pompey* be-

came



came Master of *Spain*, in the tenth Year after the Commencement of the VVar.

In the mean time, *Murena* being left in *Asia*, and coveting a Triumph, renew'd the VVar with *Mithridates* upon slender Grounds, but was order'd by *Scylla* to forbear; and thereupon Peace was concluded for three Years with the King, and his Son of four Years of Age was given as an Hostage, and Part of *Cappadocia* was allotted him. Soon after, the War broke out afresh, and that upon this Occasion. *Mithridates* had often desir'd of the *Romans*, that their League with him shou'd be engross'd, but finding his Sollicitations were not regarded, perswaded *Tygranes* King of *Armenia* his Son-in-Law to invade *Cappadocia* who carry'd off thirty Thousand Men from thence, and built *Tigranocerta* the Metropolis of that Country; and when he found he cou'd not obtain Pardon, enter'd into a League with *Sertorius*, and possess'd himself of *Bithynia* whose King *Nicomedes* had made the People of *Rome* his Heir.

In the six hundred and eightieth Year of the City while *Licinius Luculus* and *M. Aurelius Cotta* were Consuls, *Lucullus* fell upon *Mithridates*, who was then besieging *Cyzicum*, and having cut off his Army, turn'd him out of *Bithynia* and *Paphlagonia*, and oblig'd him to retire to *Pontus*, from whence he fled to *Tygranes*. *Lucullus* continuing to pursue his Enemy, defeated the joint Forces of both the Kings in several Battles, but the Mutinies that were cunningly fomented in his Army, hinder'd him to put an End to the War. For he was recall'd, and the War committed to the Care of *Glabrio*. The next Year, being the ninth after *Lucullus* had come to that Province, it was devolv'd upon *Pompey*, he being strengthen'd by *Cicero's* Interest, who made a Noble Harangue to the People in his Praise.

While *Lucullus* was carrying on the War in *Pontus* one *Spartacus* a *Thracian*, being joyn'd by seventy more possess'd himself of *Vesuvius* a Hill in *Campania*, gave a free Reception to all Fugitives, and committed Robberies in the Neighbouring Places. He routed *Claudius* the *Prætor*, and *P. Varinus*; and having drawn together an Army of seventy Thousand Men had some Thoughts of storming *Rome* it self; but *M. Licinius Crassus* the *Prætor* defeated him in Battle, and brought him to Condign Punishment for his Ambition. *Pompey* suppress'd the Remainder of his Forces, when they were Beginning to make Head again in the third Year before he engag'd in the *Piratic War*, which fell out after this Manner.

A great Company of *Pirates* did so infest the Mediterranean Sea that neither Sailors, nor those who dwelt on the Sea side were safe. These *Pirates* were first set up by *Mithridates*; but when Peace was first made with him, the Advantage they made by their Way of Living mov'd them to continue in it. They consisted of *Syrians*, *Cyprians*, *Pamphilians* and others who were call'd *Cilices*, because they sculk'd in some Creeks of *Cilicia*. *Murena* and *Servilius* had appear'd against them, but to little Purpose; for their Impudence grew to that Height, that they made a Descent upon *Italy*, and carry'd off several Noble Ladies, and (which was yet more Disgraceful to the *Romans*) two Armies together with their Standards.

Then *Gabinus* Tribune of the People made a Law appointing *Pompey* to make Head against them, with full Power for three Years,



and allowing him five hundred Ships, one hundred and twenty Thousand Foot, five Thousand Horse, twenty five Legates, two Treasurers, and six Thousand *Attick* Talents.

*Pompey* did so cover the Surface of the Sea, that when one Legate gave Chase to the Pirates, the others fell in with them, so that they cou'd not Escape; and himself Sail'd up and down, like an Emperor of so many Kings, overseeing the whole Work. By his singular Diligence and Application, he clear'd the Sea in forty Days, and oblig'd all the Pirates to put into *Cilicia*, where he storm'd their Forts, took almost four hundred Ships, one hundred and twenty Castles, slew ten thousand of their Men; and so made an End of the War in less than three Months Time. He carry'd himself civilly enough to the conquer'd Prisoners, who were Translated to other Seats at a considerable Distance from the Sea; But *Q. Metellus* was very cruel to those who lurk'd at *Crete*: For he subdu'd that *Island*, which boasted before, that it was never Conquer'd; and thereupon got the Surname of *Creticus*. When this War was almost at an End *C. Manilius Tribune* of the People made a Law giving to *Pompey* the Command of all the *Roman* Armies, the Province of *Asia*, and the Management of the War with *Mithridates* and *Tygranes*, notwithstanding all the Grudges of the Noblemen, who took it very ill, that the whole *Roman* Empire shou'd, without any President, be put into the Hands of one Man.

*Pompey* put *Mithridates* to Flight, and took *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, whom he Rais'd from a Suppliant, and dejected Condition, and set the Diadem upon his Head, after he had laid it down, adding some few Injunctions for him to observe. He likewise Check'd his villanous Son that had Conspir'd against his Father's Life, and at last put him to Death. Then he conquer'd the *Iturcans*, and *Arabians*, and reduc'd *Syria* to the Form of a *Roman* Province.

*Mithridates* fled to *Colchis*, and afterwards to *Scythia*; But at the same Time that he was Projecting great Things, and making a Descent upon *Italy*, *Pharnaces* his Son, whom he doted much upon, debauch'd the Army from him. When he found himself beset with Unsurmountable Difficulties, and that he cou'd not Reclaim his Son, he laid violent Hands on himself. The War with him Commenc'd about two Years before, when *Cn. Pompeius Strabo*, and *L. Porcius Cato* were Consuls; and was put to an End, when *M. Tullius Cicero*, and *C. Antonius Nepos* were Consuls, in the six hundred and ninety first Year of the City.

The News of his Death was brought to *Pompey* as he was upon his March towards *Judea* against *Aristobulus* whom he compell'd to accept of such Conditions as he thought fit to Prescribe, charging him to pay a Yearly Tribute to the *Romans*, and withal possess'd himself of the Temple in *Jerusalem*. When *Pompey* had adjusted the Affairs of *Judea*, *Pontus* and the other Places in the East, five Years being spent in the Expedition, he return'd to *Rome* Crown'd with Glory, and Triumph'd for two Days together. But before his Return, *L. Catalina* and several others enter'd into a Conspiracy against the Republick, in the same Year that *Mithridates* dy'd, and the Temple of *Jerusalem* was taken. This *Catalina* was a Profligate Nobleman, that had spent all his Estate in gratifying his Lust, and follow'd this new Way of Plotting in order to Repair his Fortune. *Cicero* pump'd the Account of the whole Affair out of *Fulvia*, *Catalina's* Courtezan. After the Crime



came to Light by *Cicero's* singular Industry, *Catalina* was expell'd the City; then he drew together a Body of Profligate Fellows in *Etruria* and was routed by *C. Antonius Cicero's* Collegue in a Battle wherein he fought Stoutly, and was kill'd. Publick Thanks were return'd to *Cicero* for his Diligence and Service in that Affair, and by *Cato's* Interest he was saluted *Pater Patria*.

In two Years after, *C. Julius Caesar* was sent as *Prætor* to upper *Spain*. This *Julius* was born in the six hundred and fifty fourth Year of the City, on the twelfth Day of *July*, in the Consulship of *C. Marius* and *L. Valerius Flaccus*. He Marry'd the Daughter of *Cinna*, by whom he had *Julia*, which mightily disoblig'd *Sylla*; infomuch that he scarce ever forgave him. He suck'd in the first Rudiments of War under *M. Thernus* the *Prætor*, by whom he was sent to *Bithynia* to fit out a Navy, and is said to have been over Familiar with *Nicomedes* the King. Having made a considerable Progress in the Art of War he went to *Spain* in Quality of Treasurer. As he Rov'd about the Country in the Execution of his Office, he came to *Cadiz* where he met with the Statue of *Alexander* in *Hercules's* Temple, and having view'd it, was much Troubled, he had done no Memorable Action at that Age in which *Alexander* made himself Master of the best Part of the World. After this, he long'd extreamly to return to his own Country, thinking to have the Opportunity of advancing his Fortune at Home.

When he return'd to *Rome*, he kept Company with seditious Men; but finding their Projects did not take, got himself made *Ædilis*; and put in for the Post of being sent to Compose the Affairs of *Egypt*: But the Noblemen oppos'd him, and baulk'd his Design. Soon after, by Virtue of Liberal Presents, he got to be *Pontifex*. In his *Prætorship* 'tis thought he favour'd *Catalina*, and assisted *Cacilius Metellus* in making of seditious Laws. Being burthen'd with Debt, he gave Security, and prevail'd to be sent to Command the Army in *Spain*, where he spent his Time not in adjusting the Affairs of the Country, but in extending his Conquests, and purchasing to himself a large Field of Triumph. But his Itch for Honour was so Precipitant that he wanted mightily to be made *Consul*; and forasmuch as the Sessions of the Consular Convention approach'd, desir'd Leave to return to the City before his Triumph; so that he prefer'd the Consulship to it, came to the City, and put in for Candidate.

After many Debates, and Factionous Advances he obtain'd the Consulship by *Pompey's* Interest. For *Pompey* Mortally hated *Magnates* his Competitor, who favour'd *Lucullus* in every Thing. *Lucullus* cry'd out that he was injur'd, and censur'd *Pompey's* Actions, desiring a Ratification of what himself had done in the Province of *Asia*. Things being at this Pass, *Pompey* was sorry that he had dismiss'd his Army; but, since his Repentance was too late, he struck up with *Caesar*, and assisted him in procuring the Consulship, upon Condition that if he Compass'd his End, he shou'd ratify what *Pompey* had done.

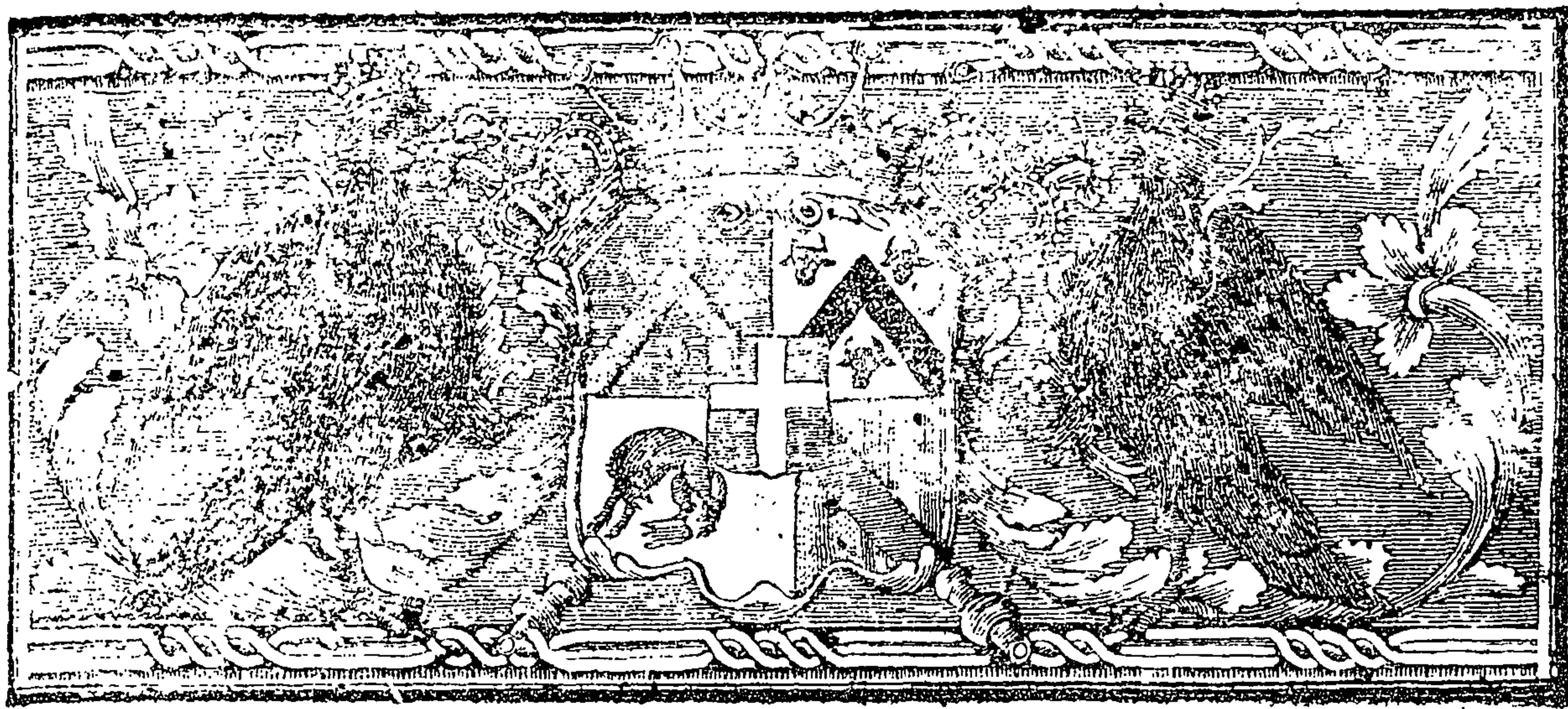
*Pompey* and *Crassus* had been at Odds from the time of their joint Consulship, but *Caesar* reconcil'd them; and all the three conspir'd together to suffer nothing to be done in the Republick that



they did not agree to. *Varro* wrote a Book upon this Conspiracy, and stild it *Conspiratio Tricipitana*. This was the Original of the civil Wars, forasmuch as it sunk the Authority of the Senate and Noble Men, and occasion'd the Slaughter of many Thousands of *Romans*. *Asinius Pollio* begins here his Book of the civil Feuds at *Rome*, and *Diodorus Siculus* Dates the Original of *Cæsar's* Greatness from this Year, which was the six hundred and ninety fourth after the Building of the City, when *Q. Cæcilius Metellus* and *Afranius* were Consuls. And here I shall leave for a while the *Roman* Affairs, and return to the Kings of *Asia* and *Egypt*, where I shall soon have Occasion to treat again of the *Romans*, who by this time, had almost subdu'd those Great and Flourishing Nations.







A  
New HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD.

BOOK IX.

CHAP. I.

SECT. I.

*Of the Affairs of Syria from Antiochus Magnus to the Time  
that Syria was made a Roman Province.*



ANTIOCHUS Magnus being dead as I said before  
in the latter End of the seventh Book, his Eldest  
Son *Seleucus Philopator* succeeded. This is he,  
who sent *Heliodorus* his Treasurer to *Jerusalem*,  
in Order to rifle the Temple, and carry away the  
sacred Treasure which was laid up there; but the  
Vengeance of GOD pursu'd him: For *Heliodorus*  
was Miraculously repuls'd, and in the twelfth  
Year of *Seleucus* his Reign the same *Heliodorus*

Murther'd him. *Seleucus* left one Son, a Child, call'd *Demetrius*, whom  
he had sent to *Rome* as an Hostage in the Room of his Brother *Antiochus*;

Y Y Y Y

for



for the *Romans*, some times, oblig'd those they had Conquer'd to shift their Hostages. *Antiochus*, upon his return, possess'd himself of the Kingdom. He was call'd *Epiphanes*, or the Illustrious, by the *Syrians*; because he recover'd the Kingdom of the *Seleucidae* from *Heliodorus*. Others call'd him *Epimanes* or the Mad-man with Allusion to his Phantastical Gestures, or rather for his amazing Wickedness and the Cruelty which he exercis'd upon the *Jerwish* Nation, as I intimated before.

*Antiochus* being Uncle to *Ptolomeus Philomator*, who had lately succeeded his Father *Ptolomeus Evergetes* King of *Egypt*, declar'd himself Guardian to the Young Prince: And in Order to make away with him, and to bring the Administration of Affairs into his own Hands; made four several Journies into *Egypt*: But the Plot being discover'd, the *Roman*, upon the Solicitation of the *Egyptians*, sent *C. Popilius Lenas*, with two others as Ambassadors to him.

When they came to an Interview, *Popilius* demanded, in the Name of the People of *Rome*, that he shou'd depart from *Alexandria*, which he was just going to block up. *Antiochus* desir'd time to consider of the Proposal, but *Popilius* made a Circle of Sprigs round about him, where he stood, and told him down right, that he must give his Answer before he step'd out of that Compass. *Antiochus* being well acquainted with the Power of the *Roman*: was thus frighted into a Promise of Peace, and so departed.

As soon as he return'd from *Egypt* he belieg'd *Jerusalem*, and carry'd it, put eighty thousand *Jews* to the Sword, and sold forty thousand, in Resentment of the Joy they had express'd, as he imagin'd, upon the Syrian News of his Death. Having pillag'd the Temple, and carry'd off one thousand eight hundred Talents, he left some Tyrannical Ministers behind him, who heavily oppress'd the People. Two Years after, he sent thither one *Apollonius* a very cruel Man, with Orders to put to Death all the Men that were of Age, and to expose the Women and Children to Sale. After this he made several Attempts upon *Egypt*, and destroy'd a great Part of the Country, but being at last Repuls'd, he issu'd forth an Edict enjoining all his Subjects on Pain of Death, to observe the Religion of the *Greeks*; and sent some Men up and down the Country to oblige them to observe that sort of Worship. Into *Judaea* he sent an old *Athenian*, with Orders to Consecrate the Temple in *Jerusalem* to *Jupiter Olympius*, and the other Temple built on Mount *Gabriel*, to *Jupiter Hospitalis*; as also to prohibit the Inhabitants to use the Law of *Moses*. Accordingly the Idol of *Jupiter Olympius* was set up in the Temple, and the Holy Scriptures were committed to the Flames: But many of the Inhabitants refusing to Comply with his impious Commands, cheerfully suffer'd Death; and others follow'd *Mattathias* the Priest, who drew together a Company of Men zealous of the Law of God, oppos'd the King's Tyranny, pull'd down their Altars, and circumcis'd the *Jerwish* Children. But a Year was scarce Elaps'd when *Mattathias* dy'd, and was succeeded by his Son *Judas Macchabeus*, who conquer'd and kill'd *Apollonius* Governor of *Samaria*; whose Death *Antiochus* so much resented, that when he could not perform his design'd Journey himself, he sent several Officers against him with a Numerous Body of Forces: But *Judas Macchabeus* by Virtue of the Divine Assistance, routed them all, March'd to *Jerusalem*, purg'd the Temple which the Heathens had polluted, offer'd Sacrifices upon a New Altar, and Celebrated an Anniversary Feast of Dedication for eight Days.



*Antiochus* having made a Progress into the upper Provinces in Order to raise Money, conquer'd *Artabazus* King of *Armenia* and took him Prisoner. But upon the News of the Defeat of his Men in *Judea*, being full of Wrath, and Revenge, he made all possible Preparations for a speedy Return.

But it pleas'd the Divine Majesty to punish him with such a horrible Distemper, that the Worms grew out of his Body while he was yet alive, and his Putrify'd Carcass became so Noisom that the Army could not bear the smell of it.

He Nominated one *Philip* his Favourite Guardian to his Son, and dy'd in the twelfth Year of his Reign. *Antiochus Epiphanes* was follow'd by his Son and Successor *Antiochus* a Child of nine Years of Age, whom the *Syrians* surnam'd *Aupator* with Regard, as they imagin'd, to his Father's Virtue. *Licias* the General of his Horse who formerly had the Charge of his Education, turn'd out *Philip*, and Manag'd all as he pleas'd. In the mean Time *Judas Macchabeus* fought Successfully against the Neighbouring Princes and Governours.

*Licias* envying his Glory, March'd against him at the Head of a numerous Army, thinking to blot out the Ignominy which the former Disaster had drawn upon them. But the Adventure proving Successless, he made Peace with the *Jews*; which was afterwards violated by *Timothy* and some others of his Captains, who renew'd the War; but were routed together with the *Arabs*, *Nomades*, *Edemites*, and *Philistines*.

These Adventures did so provoke *Antiochus Aupator*, that he drew together a most Numerous Army, invaded *Judea*, took *Bethsura*, and besieg'd *Jerusalem*: But the Warlike Preparations of *Philip*, who design'd to make good his Right to the Regency with Force of Arms, oblig'd him to make Peace with the besieg'd. Indeed he quickly crush'd *Philip*; but soon after he himself was forc'd to undergo the same Fate by *Demetrius* the Son of *Seleucus Philopator*, who fled from *Rome* in Order to possess himself of the Kingdom; having reign'd only two Years. *Demetrius* having gain'd the Kingdom, was Christen'd *Soter*, and endeavour'd by all Means to get into Favour with the *Romans*.

He sent *Bacchides* to make Head against the *Jews*, and after him *Nicanor*, who at first treated *Judas Macchabeus* with a great Deal of civility, but afterwards being check'd by the King, prov'd Treacherous to him. He call forth many impious Expressions in the Temple, but being kill'd in Battle, was punish'd for his Blasphemy.

Upon the News of the Death of *Nicanor*, *Demetrius* sent *Bacchides* to *Judea*, together with *Alcimus*, who was willing to Enterprize any thing against his Country in Hopes to obtain the Priesthood. The Army they brought with them was Numerous, which *Judas Macchabeus* engaging with a Disproportion'd Force, was kill'd after he had Govern'd the People of the *Jews* six Years. *Jonathan* his Brother being elected in his Room repuls'd the Heathens, and gave Laws to the People. In the mean time *Demetrius* gave himself altogether to Luxury, and by that Means, drew upon himself the Hatred of his People; who assist'd by the Interest of *Attalus*, *Antiochus* and *Ptolemy*, suborn'd a Young Man of an obscure Birth, who pretended to be the Son of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, and aspir'd to the Crown.

His Name was *Balas*, which he chang'd into that of *Alexander Heracleides*, whom the King had turn'd out of his Place of being Master of the *Babylonian* Treasury, carry'd him to *Rome* and procur'd a Decree of the Senate for assisting him and *Laodice* Daughter to the same *Antiochus*, in the



Recovery of their Father's Kingdom. *Alexander Balas* being assisted by the *Romans* drew together an Army, and routed *Demetrius* who dy'd Valiantly in the Field in the twelfth Year of his Reign.

While the Event of the War was yet undetermin'd, both of them courted *Jonathan's* Friendship, promising several Priviledges to the *Jewish* Nation. But *Alexander* promis'd him the Office of High-Priest, with the Purple Dignity and a Crown of Gold. Accordingly, in the seventh Month of the Hundred and sixty first Year of the *Selucidæ*, and nine Years after the Death of *Judas Maccabæus*, the Chair having remain'd Vacant seven Years from the Death of *Alimus*, was *Jonathan* invested with the Sacred Robes. He was the first of the *Asmonæi* descended of a Priestly Family, tho' not of that of the High-Priest; the Immediate Heir whereof was *Onias*, who being divested of the Dignity of his Ancestors, caus'd a Temple to be built at *Heliopolis* in *Egypt*.

*Alexander Balas*, having settled himself upon the Throne Marry'd *Cleopatra*, the Daughter of *Ptolomæus Philometer* King of *Agypt*. But his Dissolute and Luxurious Way of Living, furnish'd *Demetrius Soter* with an Opportunity of aspiring to his Father's Kingdom.

*Jonathan* the *Jewish* High-Priest made Head against *Demetrius*, with some Forces brought from *Apollonia*, and routed him in a Bloody Battle. But *Ptolomy*, who at this Time was possess'd of a great part of *Syria*, took away his Daughter from *Alexander*, Marry'd her to *Demetrius*, and Re-establish'd him in the Kingdom of his Fore-fathers. *Alexander* being routed in the Field, fled to *Asia*, where his Head was cut off, and sent to *Ptolomy*, after an uneasy Reign of six Years.

*Ptolomy* receiv'd the Complement with a great deal of Joy, but dy'd about three Years after of a Wound in his Head.

*Demetrius* having recover'd his ancient Kingdom, was Surnam'd *Nicanor*. He Establish'd *Jonathan* in the Priesthood, and slighted all the Charges given in against him. He Disbanded his Troops, thinking that *Syria* was Peaceable; but soon after *Diodotus Tryphon*, one of *Balas's* Captains brought *Antiochus*, the Son of *Balas* out of *Arabia*, and declar'd him King; and having routed *Demetrius* and his Army, oblig'd him to retire to *Selucia* having reign'd only two Years.

But *Tryphon* took up a Resolution of Transferring the Kingdom to himself; and in Order to compass his Ends with less Opposition, put to Death all that were of contrary Sentiments; and at last took *Jonathan* Prisoner, Kill'd him, and made away with the Child *Antiochus* by the help of Physicians. He courted many Allies all about, but obtain'd none. *Jonathan* being dead his Brother *Simon* succeeded, who took the Castle of *Jerusalem* by Storm, sent an Embassy to *Rome*, and after he had Officiated as Priest three Years, was by a publick Instrument declar'd High-Priest, and Prince of the *Jews* (till such Time as God shou'd raise up a Prophet to declare the Right High-Priest) and Invested with the Regal Power and Dignity.

*Demetrius* having fled to *Selucia*, and having no Mind to sit Idle, made War with the *Parthians*, by whom he was taken. During his Exile, *Tryphon's* Army Mutiny'd and sided with *Cleopatra* *Demetrius's* Wife. She having receiv'd Advice that her Husband was Marry'd to *Rhodoguna* the *Parthian* King's Daughter, offer'd her self in Marriage, together with the Kingdom, to *Antiochus* the Brother of *Demetrius*. This *Antiochus* was Surnam'd *Sidetes*. He was glad of the Opportunity of Reigning, and with that View Marry'd *Cleopatra*, and turn'd out *Tryphon*, who fled into *Apamea*



*mea* his own Country, and was there Murther'd. *Antiochus* sent one of his Generals call'd *Cendebæus* into *Judæa* in Order to destroy the *Jewish* Nation; but *John* the Son of *Simon* defeated him. Soon after, *Simon* was perfidiously Murther'd by *Ptolomy* the Son of *Abub*, to whom he had given his Daughter in Marriage, and whom he had made Governour of the Province of *Jerico*. Upon these News, *Antiochus* came to *Jerusalem*, and besieg'd it so vigorously, that, in a *Sabbatick* Year, the besieg'd were reduc'd to extremam Want. At last, they petition'd for Peace, and obtain'd it upon these Terms, viz. *That they shou'd lay down their Arms, level the Walls with the Ground, and pay five Thousand five hundred Talents, together with a Tribute for Joppa and the other outlying Towns.*

*Antiochus* wag'd War with the *Parthians*, obtain'd several Victories, and reduc'd some Provinces which the Insolence of his Soldiers provok'd to revolt; after which himself was kill'd in an Engagement with *Arfaces* in the ninth Year of his Reign. *Arfaces* in Order to divert him from *Parthia* had set at Liberty *Demetrius* his Brother; and after the Victory, endeavour'd to recal him, but found it too late: For he made the best of his Way to *Syria*, and with ease Master'd the Kingdom. But the *Antiochians* took it ill, and Solicited *Ptolomæus Physcon* King of *Ægypt* to send some Prince to take Possession of *Syria*.

*Ptolomy* hereupon set up a certain Youth call'd *Labinas*, Son to one *Protarchus* a Merchant, who gave himself out to be the Son of *Alexander Balas*. This Youth, who was also call'd *Alexander*, being assisted by the Power of *Ægypt*, and that of the *Antiochians*, defeated *Demetrius* near *Damascus*. *Demetrius* seeing himself rejected by his Wife *Cleopatra*, and even by his own Sons, fled to *Tyre*, where he thought to take Shelter in the Temple, as being a Sanctuary, but was kill'd by the Intreagues of *Cleopatra*.

*Demetrius* had two Sons by Her, Namely *Seleucus*, whom she put to Death for aspiring to the Crown without her Leave, and *Antiochus*, who was surnam'd *Gryphus* from his hooked Nose.

*Alexander* demean'd himself Meekly towards his Subjects and by that Means ingratiated himself with the People; but *Ptolomy* being touch'd with his Ingratitude, gave his Daughter *Tryphena* in Marriage to *Antiochus* the second Son of *Demetrius* and *Cleopatra* his own Sister, and lent him Auxiliary Troops with which he routed and slew *Alexander*, after he had reign'd one Year, and six Months. *Cleopatra* was not pleas'd with her Son's Victory, because it thwarted her Design of engrossing the Government to herself; upon which Account she offer'd him a Poisonous Draught, but upon the Discovery of the Design, was oblig'd to drink it up herself. *Antiochus* reign'd Peaceably for eight Years after his Mother's Death, till *Antiochus Cysicenus* his own Mother's Son by *Antiochus Sedetes*, turn'd him out of *Syria*. But the next Year he return'd, and possess'd himself of half the Kingdom, and continu'd Possessor notwithstanding the perpetual War between him and his Brother; till at last he was kill'd by the Means of one *Heraclion* in the forty fifth Year of his Age and the twentieth of his Reign, twelve of which he reign'd joyntly with his Brother.

*Antiochus Gryphus* left five Sons; the eldest of whom, Namely *Seleucus* cut off his Uncle *Cysicenus*, after he had reign'd eighteen Years; twelve of which are to be computed in the Reign of his Brother *Antiochus Gryphus*. But *Antiochus Pius* Son to *Cysicenus*, turn'd *Seleucus* out of *Syria*, and oblig'd him to retire to *Cilicia*, where he was burnt alive by the *Mopsate*, for demanding Money of them. *Antiochus* and *Philip* his Sons, who were

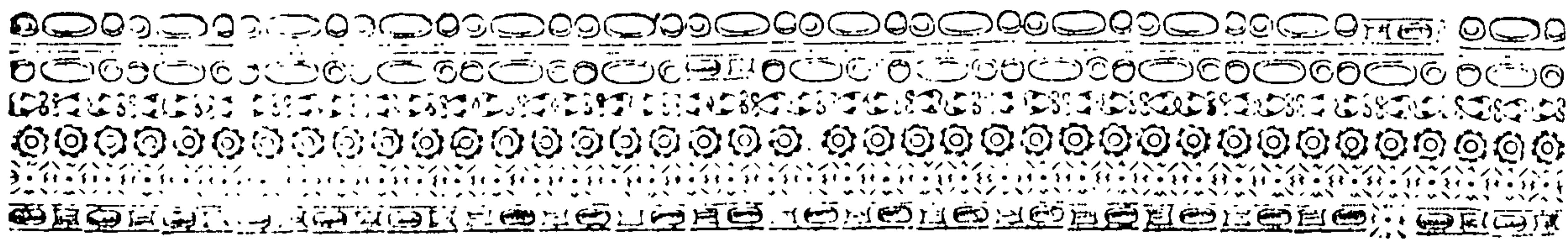
zzzzz

Twins,



Twins, resented their Father's Death, in levelling *Mopsuetia* with the Ground, but were afterwards defeated by *Antiochus Pius*. *Antiochus* was drown'd in the River *Orontes* upon his Flight. Then *Philip* his Brother put in for the Crown of *Syria*; but *Ptolomy* King of *Aegypt*, to whom it seems they refer'd their Differences, rejected both *Philip* and *Antiochus Pius*, and determin'd the Point in favour of *Demetrius*, the fourth Son of *Antiochus Grybas*. However the contending Brethren wag'd bloody Wars one with another. The *Syrians* finding themselves thus distracted and ruin'd by the Family of the *Seleucidae*, call'd in *Tyranes* King of *Armenia*, who expell'd them all, and possess'd himself of *Syria*.

*Tyranes* having settled the Affairs of *Syria*, left one *Magadates* to Govern that Kingdom; but was soon oblig'd to recal him Home, when he himself was defeated by *Lucullus* notwithstanding the Assistance he had from his Father-in-Law *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*. Soon after *Cn. Pompeius* being invest'd with a Power to Command all the *Roman* Army, and having *Asia* allotted to him for his Province, came into *Armenia*, defeated *Tyranes*, to whom notwithstanding he return'd his Crown, Dignity and Kingdom, as believing it no less Glorious for the *Romans* to make Kings than to destroy them. Then he sent one of his Officers call'd *Scaurus* into *Syria*, and soon after follow'd him to *Damascus*, which had been lately taken by *Mutellus* and *Lollius*. Upon *Pompey's* Arrival at *Damascus*, all the *Syrians* sent Ambassadors to him, offering him their Submission and Obedience. Thus at last ended the Reign of the Family of the *Seleucidae* in the second Year of the one hundred and seventy ninth *Olympiad*, about two hundred and seventy Years after the Battle of *Iffus*, by which it was added to the Dominions of *Alexander* the Great, and was now made a *Roman* Province.



## S E C T. II.

*Of the Affairs of Aegypt, from the Death of Ptolomæus Lagus to the Exit of Cleopatra; and the reducing of Aegypt to the Form of a Roman Province.*



HO' *Ptolomy* the Son of *Lagus* had several Children by his Wife *Euridice* the Daughter of *Antipater*; yet he left the Kingdom to *Ptolomy* his Son by *Berenice*, who was only Maid of Honour to *Euridice*; and while he was yet alive took him in for share of the Government. This *Ptolomy* (who was surnam'd *Philadelphus* for being in Love with his Sister *Arfinoe*;) outstrip'd his Father in Riches and Greatness. He was a Man of Learning, and Erected a Library at *Alexandria* of three hundred Thousand Volumes, among which were the Holy Scriptures translated into *Greek* by the seventy two Inter-



preters sent to him from *Jerusalem* by *Eleazar* the High-Priest, as I intimated before.

*Ptolomæus Philadelphus* wag'd VVar with *Antiochus Theos*, which at last was put to an End by the Marriage of *Berenice* his Daughter to *Antiochus*. Then he gave himself up to a Dissolute Life and Entertain'd the vain Hopes of Immortality : But Death disappointed him, after he had reign'd thirty eight Years by himself and one more jointly with his Father. In the sixteenth Year of *Antiochus Theos*, *Ptolomæus Evergetes* Son to *Ptolomæus Philadelphus* by *Arsinoë* the Daughter of *Lysimachus*, succeeded his Father. This Prince invaded *Syria* in order to relieve his Sister, who was then besieg'd and block'd up in a Castle call'd *Daphne*, but coming too late, and finding that she was put to Death by her cruel Rival, he ravag'd the greatest part of *Syria*, and would have Master'd it wholly, had he not been Oblig'd to return Home to Quell some Domestick Mutinies, as I intimated above.

While he was in *Asia*, *Berenice* his VVife made a Vow of giving her Hair to the Gods, if he return'd safe, which *Conon* a Mathematician, who flourish'd at that time, fabulously gave out to be translated to Heaven, and makes the Constellation, which is now call'd the Hair of *Berenice*. In this Prince's Reign the *Phoenix* is said to have come to *Heliopolis*. *Cleomenes* King of *Lacedæmon* being routed, and put to flight by *Antigonus Doson*, fled to him, and receiv'd a Promise of Auxiliary Troops in Order to the Recovery of his Kingdom. But the Death of *Ptolomy* prevented the Performance, which happen'd in the twenty fourth Year of his Reign.

*Ptolomæus Evergetes* was follow'd by *Ptolomæus Philopator*, Ironically so call'd, if we Credit *Justin*, who says, he slew both his Parents. This Prince who was so drown'd in Pleasure, that he neglected the Publick Affairs, and from thence was Christen'd *Tryphon*, finding that his Brother *Maga* had obtain'd a great Interest in the Army by his Mother's intreagues, made away both one and t'other. He defeated *Antiochus Magnus* in Battle, and recover'd *Cæle-syria*. Upon his Return he visited the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and had the Boldness to approach to the Inner Places call'd *Sancta Sanctorum*, where, by the Divine Vengeance, he was seiz'd with such Horror and Confusion, that it was with much Difficulty he came to himself again. When he return'd to his Kingdom he persecuted the *Jews* who dwell there, and slew *Eurydice* his Sister, that he might have the free'r Use of *Agathoclea* his Concubine. He laid aside all the Badges of Majesty, and list'd himself a Drudge to all Manner of Vice, while *Agathoclea* together with *Agathocles* her Brother, and *Evanthe* her Mother, manag'd the Government, and dispos'd of every thing as they pleas'd.

*Ptolomy* had always the good Fortune to surmount all Difficulties. *Cleomenes* the *Spartan* seeing the Bondage of the *Ægyptians* stir'd them up to retrieve their Liberty, but finding the Attempt successless, by the timely Notice given thereof to *Ptolomy*, slew himself, which, according to *Polybius*, was a Custom among the *Lacedæmonians* when they mis'd of their Aim. Afterwards the People revolted, but were quickly reduc'd to their wonted Obedience ; so that the King retain'd his Dignity. He persecuted the *Jews*, and in Order to bring them off from the Worship of GOD, tortur'd several, put many to Death, and expos'd the rest to be devour'd by five hundred Elephants; but these were rescu'd from the Clutches of the Beasts by the Ministry of two Angels, as *Josephus* tells us. Then the King alter'd his Mind, and endeavour'd to oblige them. He dy'd in the eighteenth Year of his Reign, and in the first of the 144th. Olympiad.



In the twentieth Year of *Antiochus Magnus*, *Ptolomæus Æpiphanes* Son to *Ptolomæus Philopator* being five Years old, succeeded his Father. The People put to Death *Agathocles* with his Sister and Mother, and made *Aristomenes* Guardian to the young King, who was very happy in the Administration of Affairs. *Philip* King of *Macedonia* and *Antiochus Magnus* King of *Asia* conspir'd together against *Ptolomy*. *Antiochus* possess'd himself of *Judea*, *Celo-Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and several other Places in *Cilicia* and *Caria*. But being afterwards Engag'd in War with the *Romans*, he gave his Daughter *Cleopatra* in Marriage to *Ptolomy* with *Judea*, and *Celo-Syria* as her Dower; designing thereby to secure an easy Passage into *Ægypt*, and to avoid the Inconvenience of leaving an Enemy behind him.

*Scopas* an *Etolian*, General to *Ptolomy's* Forces, did likewise Conspire against him; but he and his Complices were quickly cut off. At first he acted up to the Character of a good Prince; but afterwards the Flattery of wicked Courtiers prevail'd so far upon him, that he poison'd *Aristomenes* after all the good Services he had done him, and the Republick; and by so doing incurr'd the Hatred of his People. At last in Order to carry on a War with *Seleucus Philopator* he enter'd into a League with the *Achaïans*; but his Ministers fancying, the Charges of the War wou'd rob them of their Profit, took him off by Poison, in the twenty fourth Year of his Reign.

He left two Sons and as many Daughters. The Eldest of the Sons, nam'd *Philometor*, succeeded the Father in the forty eighth Year of *Seleucus Philopator*. When this Prince was about to make good his Claim to *Celo-Syria* by Force of Arms, his Uncle *Antiochus Æpiphanes* prevented him by making a Descent upon *Ægypt* and turning him out of his Kingdom. *Philometor* being expell'd, the *Alexandrians* declar'd his Brother King, and Christen'd him *Ævergetes*, which Name was afterwards turn'd to *Cacoerges* by Reason of his wicked Life and Manners. He was likewise Styl'd *Physcon*, with Allusion to his big Belly. Afterwards *Philometor* return'd, but the Citizens expell'd him. *Antiochus* under Pretence of Restoring him, continu'd the War; but finding himself not able to carry *Alexandria*, went off to *Syria*: and left all *Ægypt* to *Philometor*, except *Pelusium*, which he reserv'd as a Door for him to enter by, when the two Brethren shou'd have exhausted their Strength upon one another. But they patch'd up the Matter, and reign'd together Peaceably. *Antiochus* took this so ill, that he made another Descent upon *Ægypt*; but was order'd by the *Roman* Ambassadors to quit both *Ægypt* and *Cyprus*.

Soon after, the Brethren fell out, and *Philometor* being expell'd by the other, repair'd to *Rome*, where he obtain'd from the Senate an Order for his Restoration. *Ævergetes* finding the *Romans* kind to all Suppliants, went in Person to *Rome*, and obtain'd the Addition of *Cyprus* to his Dominions. And even that did not satisfy him; for he afterwards undertook a second Journey, but what the Result of it was we do not know. While *Philometor* Reign'd, *Onias* a *Jew*, Son to *Onias* the High-Priest, finding his Family turn'd out of the Priesthood, obtain'd a Decree for building a Temple in the Province of *Heliopolis*, which resembled that of *Jerusalem* in every Thing, bating that, instead of a Candlestick, it had a Lamp hung upon a Golden Wyre, which darted it's Beams all about in Imitation of the Sun. The *Jews* and *Samaritans* disputed the Antiquity of their Temples in the Presence of *Ptolomy*; and the *Samaritan* Orators being worsted were punish'd with the Loss of their Heads, pursuant to the Contract mutually agreed to before Hand. At last *Philometor* receiv'd a Wound in his Head, in a Battle



Battle with *Alexander* King of *Syria*, of which he dy'd, after he had reign'd thirty four Years, in the third Year of the one hundred and fifty eighth Olympiad.

After his Death the Method of Succession in *Ægypt* was alter'd : For whereas formerly the Son succeeded the Father, *Phyſcon* oblig'd *Cleopatra*, his Brothers Widow, to Marry him, and flew his own little Son in the Arms of its Mother the very Day of the Marriage. The Progreſs of his Reign was all of a Piece with the Beginning : Cruelty and Barbarity ſhin'd thro' every Part of it; every Place was fill'd with detestable Murders, and Mercy was ſhewn to none.

The *Alexandrians* took his VVicked Actions ſo much to Heart, that moſt of them deſerted the City, which he afterwards fill'd with new Citizens. But he quickly render'd himſelf ſo odious even to theſe, that they ſet his Palace on fire, baniſh'd himſelf, and put the Kingdom into the Hands of his Siſter *Cleopatra*, whom he however ſo cunningly ſoothed, and with flattering Promiſes prevail'd ſo far with, that ſhe ſuffer'd him to reſeſs the Kingdom. He dy'd in the twenty ninth Year of his Reign.

*Phyſcon* left three Sons and as many Daughters. By his Laſt Will he gave *Cyprus* in Legacy to *Apion* his Baſtard, and left *Ægypt* to his Wife to be diſpos'd of to which of his Sons ſhe thought fit. She fancying that *Alexander* the Youngſt wou'd be the moſt Obedient to her, deſign'd to give him a ſhare in the Government; but the People being againſt it, ſhe lent for his Brother *Lathurus*, whom ſhe afterwards expelled, and purſu'd with that Ardor, that all his Enterprizes in *Judea*, and *Caloſyria* were render'd Abortive. She made it her Buſineſs for ſome Years to undermine *Alexander*; but he ſmelling the Deſign kill'd her, and was afterwards puniſh'd for his Paricide in being baniſh'd by the *Alexandrians*.

The Citizens of *Alexandria* recall'd *Lathurus*, from whom the *Ægyptian Thebes* revolted, but was afterwards reduc'd in the third Year of his Reign. He dy'd ſoon after, but it is not certain who ſucceeded him. 'Tis probable *Alexander* the Younger Son to the other *Alexander* Marry'd his Daughter *Cleopatra*, and reign'd together with her eighteen Days, but, having kill'd her on the nineteenth, was expell'd by the *Alexandrians*, and forc'd to flee to *Tyre*, where he ended his Days after fifteen Years Exile, having left the People of *Rome* his Heir, in the Conſulſhip of *M. Tullius Cicero* and *C. Ant. n. us Nepos*. Upon the Expulſion of *Alexander*, the *Alexandrians* declar'd the Son of *Ptolomaus Lathurus* their King, who was ſurnam'd *Dionyſius* and *Auletes*, becauſe he was addicted to the Pleaſures of *Bacchus* and to the Flute. This *Auletes* was a Baſtard, as well as his Brother the King of *Cyprus*, if we Credit *Pauſanias*, who tells us, that *Lathurus* left no Legitimate Children but one Daughter. After a few Years his Subjects turn'd him out of the Kingdom, becauſe he exacted a great Sum of Money with which he purchas'd the Friendſhip and Alliance of the *Romans*.

*Auletes* being outted of *Alexandria* came to *Rome*, but all his Sollicitations for Aſſiſtance were reject'd, by Reaſon the *Sibylline* Books did not ſeem to Countenance it. From thence he went to *Æpheſus*, and with a goodly Sum engag'd *Gabinus* Governor of *Syria* to Reſtore him. Since his Reſtoration he did no Memorable Action, but dy'd in four Years after, in the ſecond Year of the hundred and eighty ſecond Olympiad. He had two Sons and as many Daughters, and order'd the Elder of both Sexes who were joyn'd in Marriage (for it ſeems the old Cuſtom of the *Persians* prevail'd



vail'd among the *Ægyptians* that the Brother shou'd Marry his Sister) to Reign together.

The Elder of these two Sons was call'd after the Father *Ptolomæus Dionysius*, and the Elder Daughter his Wife, *Cleopatra*; which was the Name commonly given to the *Ægyptian* Princesses in those Days. After three Years *Dionysius* turn'd away his Wife and Sister *Cleopatra*; but she having address'd her self to the *Roman* Governor that was then in *Syria* came back at the Head of a great Army in order to recover her Right to the Kingdom. *Dionysius*, on the other Hand, came out to meet her with an equal Force, and Pitch'd his Camp on Mount *Cassius*, at the *Pelusian* Mouth of the *Nile*; But before they could come to Action, they were both Surpriz'd by the News of the Arrival of *Pompey* in the Haven, who being Beaten by *Julius Cæsar* in the Plains of *Pharfalia*, fled for Sanctuary to *Ægypt*. *Dionysius*, contrary to the Laws of Hospitality, and the Trust which *Pompey* repos'd in him, at the Instigation of a wicked Man call'd *Theodatus* his Præceptor, lent a sorry Boat to bring *Pompey* a-Shore, and caus'd him to be Murther'd just as he was going to set Foot on Land; thinking thereby to win *Cæsar's* Good-Will.

How *Cæsar* stood affected upon the News of the barbarous Murder of *Pompey*, when he pursu'd him to *Egypt*, is not known; but certain it is that by demanding the Money which *Auletes* ow'd to the *Romans*, he incur'd the Hatred of the *Alexandrians*, and while he made it his Business to bring the King and his Sister to a good Understanding, *Photinus* Minister of State to *Ptolomy* carry'd on a War against him, all the *Alexandrians* having joyn'd with this Minister. But *Cæsar* resolving to punish both him and the *Alexandrians* for the sake of *Cleopatra* with whole Love he was smitten, so soon as he had seen her, laid Siege to *Alexandria*, and attack'd their Army. At last the *Alexandrians* being worn out by many successive Disasters, were forc'd to Submit. *Cæsar* master'd their Camp, and *Auletes* Retiring into a little Boat was drown'd in the River by the Crouds of People that pour'd into the Boat, and sunk it. *Cæsar* carry'd *Alexandria* without any Difficulty: For the Citizens surrender'd at Discretion. However he did not annex *Ægypt* to the *Roman* Dominions, but return'd it to *Cleopatra* his Mistress. She Marry'd her second Brother, who was then only eleven Years old, and after four Years Poison'd him, in order to Engross the Government to her self. She was mightily given to Amours, not only with *Cæsar* to whom she bore a Son call'd *Cæsario*; but, after his Departure, with *Pompey* the Son of *Pompey* the Great. When *Cassius* and *Brutus* the Murderers of *Cæsar* were cut off by the *Triumviri*, *Marcus Antonius* went into *Syria*; whither *Cleopatra* came, and perswaded him to go with her to *Ægypt*, where they were both entirely wrap'd up in Debauchery. *Antony* was so strangely bewitch'd by her, that he divorc'd his own Wife, and was not asham'd to bestow the *Roman* Provinces upon her and the Children she bore to him; and even requir'd, that the Senate shou'd Ratify the Gift. The Senate justly receiv'd his Demands with Contempt and Derision, and at last resolv'd upon a War against them both under the Conduct of *Octavius Cæsar*. *Cleopatra* would needs be present at the Sea-Engagement between *Cæsar* and *Antony* at *Actium*, and was the first that turn'd her Back and fled.

Upon this Disaster she order'd her Ships to be carry'd over into the Bay of *Arabia*, designing by the Help of these Ships to avoid Captivity, in Case she shou'd be Outted of her Kingdom: But *Antony* having receiv'd no News of the Revolt of his Land-Forces at this Time, dissuaded her from that Project.

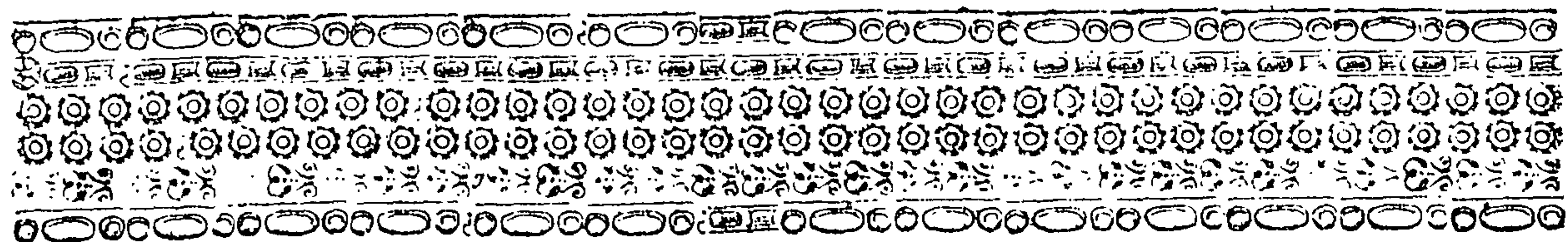
Then



Then they return'd to their wonted Luxury, and invited all that were fearless of Death to enjoy themselves in the present Use of all agreeable Pleasures. But she did not fail to Court the Favour of *Cæsar*, by betraying into his Hands *Felustum* with the Navy and Cavalry. *Antony* indeed suspected her Treachery, but was (poor Fool) soon Wheedled by the Artful Intimations of a Flattering Woman. When *Cæsar* was just upon the Borders of *Ægypt*, the stubborn'd People to tell *Antony*, she had laid violent Hands upon her self, for fear of the Conqueror. Upon which News *Antony* stab'd himself in the Belly. Then indeed she bewail'd his Death with many Moans and heavy Lamentations.

*Cæsar* had a great Mind to take *Cleopatra* alive; which wou'd have prov'd an unheard of Accession to his Triumph. And indeed she came thus into his Hands; but as soon as she found, that all her Artifices, which had subdu'd so many great Men before, could not prevail with the Conqueror; and that he design'd in a short Time to send her into *Italy*, she concerted Means to bereave him of his Prey, and to avoid the Suffering of any Thing unworthy her Crown and Kingdom: That is, she dy'd by the Application of Serpents to her Breasts, as if she had slept her Life away. She was a Woman of a Masculine Spirit, and richly endow'd with the Gifts of Nature. She liv'd thirty nine Years, and reign'd twenty two after her Father's Death; and kept Company with *Antony* fourteen Years. Her Exit concludes the Kingdom of the *Ptolomy's*, which was then reduc'd to the Form of a Roman Province.

Thus was the *Macedonian* Empire quite extinguish'd, about three hundred Years after the Death of *Darius Codomannus*, and the Commencement of the Monarchy under *Alexander* the Great; two hundred and ninety three Years after *Ægypt* was possess'd by *Ptolomæus* the Son of *Lagus*, in the third Year of the hundred and eighty seventh Olympiad.



## C H A P. II.

*Of the Affairs of the Romans from the Commencement of the Triumvirate of Julius Cæsar, Pompey and M. Crassus, to the time that the said Julius Cæsar was made perpetual Dictator.*



AT the Close of the eighth Book I broke off the Thread of my Relation of the Affairs of the Romans, in Order to give a brief Account of the Kingdoms of *Syria* and *Ægypt*: Because the Affairs of the Romans, in those Days, being so interwoven with the Transactions of these Kingdoms, cou'd not be well understood otherwise than by premising a short Account of them. Which done, I shall now resume the Thread where I broke off and Proceed.



I had intimated above, that *Julius Caesar* finding *Pompey* and *Marcus Crassus* at odds, reconcil'd them; and all the 3 conspir'd together to suffer nothing to be done in the Republick, that they did not agree to. Then *Caesar* being made Consul by *Pompey's* Interest, distributed the Publick Grounds in *Campania* among the *Plebs*, and by Force and Violence introduc'd a Law for the Purpose; obliging every one to swear to the Observation of the same upon Pain of Death. He seldom consulted the Senate upon any Thing; but apply'd himself for the most part to the People, and endeavour'd by all Means to oblige them; Insomuch that he obtain'd the Province of *Gaul* for five Years. In order to unite *Pompey* more firmly to his Interest, he gave his Daughter *Julia* in Marriage to him. *L. Calpurnius Piso*, and *A. Gabinius*; who were chosen Coniuls for the next Year, were intirely devoted to his Interest. *Vatinus* and *Clodius* were made *Tribunes*. Tho' *Clodius* had debauch'd *Caesar's* Wife, he not only forgave the Adulterer, but even assisted him in procuring the Tribuneship, out of spite to *Cicero*, who incessantly rail'd against the Triumviral Conspiracy, and by way of a grateful Return for the good Services he had done him in procuring the Province of *Gaul*.

*Clodius* being a Noble Man cou'd not be Candidate for the Tribuneship, till, in order to be reveng'd of *Cicero*, who impeach'd him of Adultery with *Caesar's* Wife, he got himself adopted by a *Plebeian*; and being by that Means made *Tribune*, enacted a Law entailing Banishment upon any Man whatsoever, who shou'd, or had given Orders for the Death or Punishment of a *Roman* Citizen before he was Try'd, Convicted and Condemn'd. By the Way, it was to this Law that *St. Paul* seem'd to Allude, when he ask'd the *Centurion*: *Is it Lawful for you to Scourge a Man that is a Roman, and Uncondemn'd?* Acts 22. 25.

Then *Clodius* impeach'd *Cicero*, who by the Senates Consent had order'd *Cethegus*, *Lentulus*, and *Catilina's* other Complices to be put to Death in Prison before they were try'd or condemn'd: So that *Cicero* being forsaken by *Pompey* was banish'd. *Clodius* was not Content to banish *Cicero*, but having an Equal Spleen to *Cato* the Great and Wise Man, sent him by Virtue of a Law made for the Purpose, upon a desperate Attempt, as he imagin'd, Namely to turn *Ptolomy* King of *Cyprus* out of his Kingdom: But *Cato* manag'd the Matter so wisely that he made a large Treasure of Money out of the Estate of this King, who upon Approach of the *Roman* General laid violent Hands upon himself. However *Clodius* continu'd to despise the Noble Men, putting several Affronts upon them, without sparing even *Pompey* himself, who then began to repent that he had Consented to the Banishment of *Cicero*, who of all others, was the fittest, by his Eloquent Speeches, to quell the Insolence of such Men; and therefore solicited for his Return. After sixteen Months banishment, *Cicero* was recal'd with an Universal Joy, and made a Harangue to the *Quirites*, in which he return'd Thanks to his Friends. Then he charg'd *L. Piso* and *A. Gabinius* with his Banishment, and made out, that they betray'd him; and, in Consequence hereof, advis'd the Senate to take the Provinces of *Syria* and *Macedonia* out of their Hands.

By this time *Julius Caesar* was gone to *Gaul* in Order to make Head against the Neighbouring Potentates, who were invading his Province, which at this time was but very small, as Consisting only of Part of *Savoy*, *Autun* and Part of *Gascony*. His first Expedition was against the *Helvetians* or *Swiss*. These People abounding in Numbers of stout and hardy

Men,



Men, tho' labouring under the Want of a great many Conveniencies for well Living, resolv'd to leave their own Cold Barren Country, and purchase to themselves by the Force of their Arms some happier Climate, in *Gaul* or *France* to settle in. *Cæsar* being inform'd they intended to pass thro' Part of his Province, resolv'd to stop their Passage. He had at this time but one Legion of *Veteran* Troops in his Province, but upon Notice of the Designs of the *Helvetians*, caus'd new Levies to be made, over all the Province, and not Content herewith, return'd to *Italy*, where he rais'd two Legions, and drew three more out of their Winter Quarters about *Aquileia*. With these he March'd toward *Autun* in Pursuit of the *Swiss*, who, by this time, had sack'd many Cities and ravag'd all the Country; and being come up with them about fifteen Miles from *Autun*, routed them and took all their Baggage, after a bloody and Obstinate Fight, which lasted from one a Clock in the Afternoon until Night.

Alter this Disaster, the *Swiss*, to the Number of one hundred and thirty Thousand Men made the best of their Way, without Provision or other Arms than Swords in their Hands, to a City call'd *Langres*. When *Cæsar* had Notice of their Arival at this City, he sent Messengers to the Citizens forbidding them to give any Provision to the *Swiss* upon Pain of being declar'd Enemies to the *Romans*. The *Swiss* being by these Menaces brought to the last Extremity, sent Ambassadors to *Cæsar* praying him to give them Peace upon his own Terms. Whereupon he order'd them all to lay down their Arms, and sent them back to their own Country, giving Orders to the People of *Savoy* to furnish them with Provision in the Way thro' their Country. *Cæsar* tells us in his Comentaries, that there was a List of the Number that left Switzerland found in their Camp, by which it appear'd, that the whole amounted to two hundred and sixty three Thousand, and that there return'd only one hundred and ten Thousand, who had escap'd the Sword, and the Famine to which they were reduc'd.

*Cæsar's* next Expedition was against *Ariovistus*, King of the *German*. This Prince being call'd in to assist the People of *Auvergne* and *Franchecomte*, against those of *Autun* who were in War with them, brought both Parties, that is, his Friends and Enemies (as it usually happens upon such Occasions) into Bondage, and tyranniz'd over them in a most cruel Manner. Complaints hereof being made to *Cæsar* by Deputies sent from these People to that Purpose, after his Victories over the *Swiss*, gave him anxious Thoughts, especially in Regard of the People of *Autun*, who were Friends and Allies to the *Romans*; he therefore sent to *Ariovistus*, and desir'd to have an Interview with him in Order to adjust some Matters that highly concern'd both him and the *Romans*.

*Ariovistus* answer'd *Cæsar's* Messengers in a haughty Tone, and told them, that if he had any Business with *Cæsar*, he wou'd have waited upon him; and if *Cæsar* had any with *Ariovistus*, he might give himself the same Trouble. This was enough to give *Cæsar* to understand, there was no other Way of bringing this haughty Prince to reason but by Force of Arms; he therefore March'd with great Diligence to *Besancon* the Capital City of *Franchecomte*, and put a strong Garrison into it; being inform'd that *Ariovistus* had set out three Days before in Order to Invest it. Having thus secur'd *Besancon*, and retrein'd his Army, he March'd in Quest of *Ariovistus*, and having met him on the 7th Day, fought him and routed his whole Army, took his Camp together with his Wives and Daughters; he himself with a few more hardly escaping over the *Rhine* in small Boats.

B b b b b

Cæsar



*Cæsar* having thus happily rescu'd the People of *Autun*; *Auvergne* and *Franchecomte* out of the Hands of *Ariovistus*, March'd early the next Spring against the *Belgæ*, being inform'd that they enter'd all into a Confederacy against the *Romans*, and were raising Troops with the utmost Diligence. *Gaul* was, in those Days, divided into three Parts, each inhabited by People of Languages, Laws and Customs different from one another, Namely the *Belgæ*, *Acquitains* and *Celtæ*. The *Celtæ*, were divided from the *Acquitains* by the River *Garone*, and the *Belgæ* from the *Acquitains* by the Rivers *Maern* and *Seine*; so that *Belgium* was in those Days, of much greater Extent than it is now, reaching then as far as the City of *Paris*. *Cæsar* having Intelligence of all their Proceedings March'd with so much Expedition, that the People of *Rheims* being surpris'd at his sudden Appearance upon the Confines of their Territories, sent Ambassadors to assure him, they had no Hand in the Confederacy of the rest of their Countrymen; but were ready to submit to the *Roman* Empire, and, as a Mark of their Submission, wou'd give him Hostages, receive his Army into their Cities, and furnish them with what Provisions they had Occasion for; that indeed all the rest of their Countrymen were raising Troops with the utmost Diligence, and that the *Germans*, on the other side of the *Rhine*, had promis'd them Assistance.

The *Belgæ* upon Notice of *Cæsar's* approach March'd against him with a Formidable Army consisting of three hundred thousand effectual Men, whereas *Cæsar* had scarce eighty thousand, and Encamp'd in sight of him, enclosing above eight Miles for their Camp, as near as cou'd be computed by their Fires at Night, and Smoke in the Day. *Cæsar*, whose Business it was to engage the Enemy before they were join'd by the *Germans*, being in no Apprehension upon Account of the great Number of their Troops, tho' he was inform'd, they were War-like and Stout; Drew up his Army upon the Side of a Hill, and Fortify'd with a large Trench both the Sides of the Hill to prevent his being Flank'd by the Enemy. In this Posture he waited for some Days, expecting to be attack'd by the *Belgæ*, who were divided from him by a Marsh that was at the Foot of the Hill. On the other Side, the *Belgæ* stood under their Arms every Day expecting that *Cæsar* wou'd pass the Marsh and Attack them: But finding he wou'd not move out of his Post, and observing that their Provisions began to fail, and (which was worse) that it was impossible to be supply'd for so great a Number at such a Distance from Home, they resolv'd to break up, and Depart, each Clan to its Respective Country; but still so as to meet again in their own Country in Case *Cæsar* shou'd follow them, and attack any of their Cities. Accordingly the next Morning, they began to March, and tho' *Cæsar* was inform'd thereof, yet he wou'd not follow them, for fear it might be a Stratagem to draw him out of his Advantageous Situation. But being fully convinc'd the next Day, that they were quite gone off, he detach'd his Horse, who coming up with their Rear, kill'd so many of them that the whole Army was put to Flight, every Man making the best of his Way to his own Habitation. Then *Cæsar* March'd towards *Noion* with a Design to Besiege it; but the Inhabitants prevented him by their early Submission, giving up the Town, and Hostages for their future good Behaviour.

From thence he March'd to *Beauvois* the Capital City of the Province of the same Name, which, in like Manner, open'd its Gates, and gave Hostages to him; as did also *Amiens* upon the same Terms. *Cæsar* having made himself Master of these three Cities and of the Territories belonging to them,



them, March'd against the People of *Hainault*. These were the most Warlike and Haughty of all the *Belgæ* : For they not only refus'd to send Ambassadors to *Cæsar*, tho' advis'd thereunto by their Neighbours, but also declar'd they wou'd neither take Peace from, nor give Peace to the *Romans*. This insolent Humour *Cæsar* cou'd not digest. He therefore made the best of his Way to come to them. On the other Side, the *Hainaultois* having engag'd the People of *Doray* in their Quarrel, March'd as it were half way to meet him, even before they were join'd by those of *Doray* ; so little did they seem to value the *Romans*. And, indeed, *Cæsar* was so hard put to, upon this Occasion, that Fortune seem'd almost to have abandon'd him : For tho' he surpass'd the Enemy in Number, and was Advantageously Posted ; yet the *Hainaultois* attack'd him so Briskly, and with so much Activity and Fury in Front, Flank and Rear, that they drove him, and his Men back on every Side, and knit them so close together, that they cou'd not make use of their Arms ; possess'd themselves of his Camp, and struck such a Terror into the *Roman* Horse, that a great part of them began to Desert their Colours and fly. *Cæsar* seeing his Army in this Distress, snatch'd a Shield from one of his Soldiers, cry'd with a loud Voice calling his *Tribunes* and *Maniples* by their Names, and bid them follow him ; and then rush'd in among the Enemy. This encourag'd the Soldiers, so that a great many following their Emperor gave the rest of the Army Room to widen their Ranks and make use of their Swords ; and tho' this seem'd to infuse fresh Courage into them, yet the Enemy press'd them so hard, that they wou'd be infallibly Lost, had not the two Legions whom *Cæsar* had left at a great Distance from the Field of Battle to guard the Baggage, come seasonably to their Relief. These fresh Men, who had not fought a Stroke all Day, came with that Impetuosity upon the Enemy, that they bore all down before them ; and their Fellow Soldiers, who, at this Time, were scarce able to weild their Swords, seeing fresh Succours come to them which they did not expect, resum'd their Spirits and laid about them so Furiously, that of sixty thousand Enemies, which attack'd them in the Morning, there escap'd their Hands but five hundred.

The Battle being thus decided, and almost the Name and People of *Hainault* extinguish'd, their old Men and Women hearing the Defeat of their Army, sent Ambassadors to *Cæsar* praying him to accept of their Submission, and spare their Lives. *Cæsar*, who always had Gallant Men in high Esteem, not only granted their Request upon account of the Bravery of their People, but also restor'd them to their Cities and Lands, charging all their Neighbours, on Pain of his high Displeasure, not to Molest them. About the same Time, *P. Crassus* (whom *Cæsar* had sent with a Legion to take in the Cities of *Normandy* and *Brittany*) sent him Word, that all these Cities had submitted to the *Roman* Empire. The *Belgick* War being thus ended, and all the Provinces of *Gaul* in Peace, *Cæsar* took his Journey to *Italy*, and sent an Account of his Success to the Senate ; whereupon they caus'd a general Thanksgiving to be Decreed, which lasted fifteen Days, an Honour which no *Roman* before that Time, had ever obtain'd. *Cæsar*'s next Campaign was taken up in reducing several Cities in *Brittany* and *Normandy*, which had revolted, and imprison'd his Ambassadors, contrary to the Law of Nations ; especially *Vannes* in *Normandy*, which cut him out a great deal of Work ; obliging him to fit out a Fleet upon the Ocean : But having by much a do, defeated the Enemies Fleet at Sea, he reduc'd the Town of *Vannes*, put all it's Senators to Death, and establish'd the former Tranquility in *Gaul*.



The next Year *Cæsar* was oblig'd to engage the Inhabitants of *Zutphen* and *Hesse*. These *Germans* being oppress'd by their Neighbours the *Suauians*, March'd away with their Wives and Children and Cattle, cross'd the *Rhine*, and planted themselves in *Guelders*, driving away the Inhabitants, and putting to the Sword, such of them as offer'd to resist. The People of *Guelders* hereupon make their Complaints to *Cæsar*, as being Subjects to the *Romans*, and Implore his Assistance. Then *Cæsar* immediately March'd to their Relief; and being come nigh the Confines of *Guelders*, was met by an Embassy from the *Germans*, desiring he wou'd grant them a Truce of a few Days to Consider whether they shou'd return to their own Country, or engage in a War with him; and at the same Time forgot not to Magnifie their own Numbers, their Courage and Skill in Military Affairs. *Cæsar* concluded, that all this tended only to borrow Time in order to be the better prepar'd to withstand him; However he granted them a Truce of three Days; but March'd forward till he came within four Miles of their Camp; yet so as to order his Horse which led the Van not to commit any Acts of Hostility without special Orders. The *Germans* perceiving a Body of the *Roman* Horse Foraging at a great Distance from the Rest of the Army, set upon them unexpectedly, (the three Days of the Truce not being yet expired) and put them in such Disorder that they flew away, leaving seventy of their Troopers whom the *Germans* had kill'd. This Piece of Treachery enrag'd the Army, and put *Cæsar* upon taking a Resolution not to hear of any Accomodation with so perfidious a People. The next Morning several of their Chief Men, and General Officers came to *Cæsar* to excuse the Fact, as being committed without their Orders; but *Cæsar* being resolv'd not to be outwitted a second Time, order'd them all to be secur'd, and March'd immediately to Storm their Camp, and having Forc'd it in several Places, put all to the Sword that came in the Way; and such as ran to the *Rhine* were all Drown'd: So that of four hundred and thirty thousand, that pass'd the River, not a Man escap'd, but the few General Officers and Chief Men, who were kept in the *Roman* Camp, and whom *Cæsar* order'd to Depart upon his Return.

The War with the Inhabitants of *Zutphen* and *Hesse*, being thus Concluded, *Cæsar* resolv'd to pass the *Rhine* and strike a Terror into the rest of the *Germans*, in Order to deter them from attempting any more upon the Province of *Gaul*. Accordingly he built a Wooden Bridge over the *Rhine* in ten Days, March'd a great Way into the Country, burnt and destroy'd all before him, struck such a Damp upon the *Germans*, that they betook themselves to the Bogs, Woods and Mountains; and having no other Design, at this time, but to let the *Germans* see the Power of the *Romans*, came back the same Way loaden with Spoil, repass'd the *Rhine* and broke down the Bridge. Then he resolv'd to pass over into *England*, call'd in those Days *Brittain*; because he was inform'd, the *Brittons* had assil'd the People of *Vannes* in their late Revolt; not with a Design to make War upon them, at this time, but in Order to be acquainted with their Coasts and Harbours, and to inform himself of their Power and Strength. Pursuant to this Resolution, *Cæsar* Commanded the Fleet which he had in the Ocean to attend him at a Place in *Gaul*, call'd in those Days, *Terracenne*, overagainst the Coasts of *Kent*. In the mean time the *Britton* having Intelligence of the Preparations *Cæsar* was making to invade their Country, sent Ambassadors to him, promising in the Name of their Masters, that the whole island wou'd submit to the *Roman* Empire, and send Hostages to him. These



*Cæſar* receiv'd very graciously, and diſmiſs'd with his uſual Courteſie. However he reſolv'd to make a Voyage into their Country; and having all things ready ſet to Sea with ſome Legions of Foot, ordering certain Troops of Horſe to follow him; and being come to the Coaſts of *Britain*, after eight Hours ſailing, was ſurpris'd to ſee all the Shoar cover'd with armed Men, Horſe and Foot, ready to oppoſe his Landing. This Deceit of the *Britons* edg'd on *Cæſar* to take the more ſpeedy Revenge of their Treachery. He therefore order'd his Ships to make to the Shoar, which prov'd impracticable, by reaſon his Veſſels had ſharp Keels, which requir'd a good Depth of Water, and the Sea near the ſhoar at low Water being very ſhallow, none of his Ships cou'd come within a great Length of dry Land; ſo that his Men muſt have ſtood in the Water to their Middle, and engage the Enemy, who with their Horſe were ready to attack them, before they cou'd come a ſhoar. Theſe Circumſtances diſmay'd the *Romans*, and put them to a ſtand for a good while, till one of their Standard-Bearers leaping into the Sea with his Standard in his Hand, cry'd out : *Let all thoſe, who have a Regard for the Glory of the Roman Empire, or the Credit of Cæſar either follow me, or ſee their Eagle in the Poſſeſſion of the Enemy.* This was ſpur enough to the Soldiers, ſo that as many as heard, or ſaw him, leap'd into the Water immediately after him. But the Enemy's Horſe, who came half way to meet them, ſet upon them with ſo much Advantage, that they wou'd have been all cut off, had not *Cæſar* in the mean time Mann'd all the Boats that attended the Fleet with Soldiers, who with their Piles, and Darts, and Slings ſo gall'd the Enemy, that they gave Way; by which Means the *Romans* having got footing on dry Ground ſoon routed them.

Then *Cæſar* landed all his Foot and waited for the Arrival of his Horſe. The *Britons* having Intelligence of *Cæſar's* Landing ſent Ambaſſadors to him excuſing the Oppoſition they gave his Troops at their Landing, which they aſcrib'd to their not knowing they belong'd to him, and pray'd him to accept of their Submission, promiſing alſo to ſend him Hoſtages from all the Parts of the Iſland, as a Guarantee of their Obedience. *Cæſar*, however dubious he was of their Sincerity, yet forasmuch as his Affairs call'd him to *Italy*, accepted of their Submission. In the mean time he had an Account that all the Horſe that were to follow him were ſo diſpers'd at Sea in a Storm, that ſome of them were driven back, and others forc'd in upon the *Western* Coaſts of *Britain*. But this was not all; for the ſame Storm blew ſo violently where his own Transport Ships rid at Anchor, that many of them were daſh'd to Pieces againſt the Rocks, others ſunk in Quickſands, and few or none remain'd undamag'd. The *Britons* having at this time a General Aſſembly of their Princes and Great Lords in Order to pitch upon Hoſtages to be ſent to *Cæſar*, according to Promiſe; and hearing of theſe Diſaſters of the *Romans*, reſolv'd to attack them in their Camp, concluding that having no Horſe, and but few Foot, which they conjectur'd by the narrow Bounds of the *Roman* Camp, they might have an eaſy Purchase of them. Accordingly they gather'd together a vaſt Army, and March'd directly to *Cæſar's* Camp : But after all had not the Courage to withſtand the very firſt Onſet of the *Romans*; for *Cæſar*, who ſuſpected their Integrity by their Delay in ſending the Hoſtages, being prepar'd, receiv'd them ſo warmly that they immediately turn'd their Backs, and betook themſelves to their Heels. *Cæſar* did not think fit to purſue them, but return'd to his Camp, and having ſent to *Terracene* for Ships, and caus'd all thoſe in the Harbour that were not quite deſtroi'd to be refitted, paſs'd over into



*Gaul*; where he gave Directions for a good Fleet, against the next Campaign, and then took his Journey towards *Italy*, whence he made a Progress into *Illyricum*, where he adjust'd some Matters of Importance that requir'd his Presence; and then came back into *Gaul* early in the Spring.

*Cæsar* resolving to take Vengeance of the *Britons* for their Perfidy, and finding his Fleet ready fitted out at *Boloign*, embark'd for *Britain* with five Legions of Foot and two Thousand Horse, where being safely arriv'd he had several small Skirmishes in which the *Britons* were always worsted.

At last they came to a General Engagement, in which the *Britons* not being able to withstand the Fury of the *Roman* Legions, turn'd their Backs and departed, (each Clan) to their respective Places of Abode. Then all the Kings and Princes of the Island sent Ambassadors and Hostages to *Cæsar*, and submitted in good Earnest to the *Roman* Empire. *Cæsar* receiv'd them very graciously, and being in Haste to return to *Gaul*, where he understood there were some Commotions tending to a Revolt. He restor'd all the Kings and Princes of *Britain* to their respective Possessions, being Content to lay a small Yearly Tribute upon them, and then return'd to *Boloign*.

Soon after, there was almost a general Insurrection in *Gaul*, most of the *Gallick* Kings and Princes having enter'd into a Confederacy with a Design to oppress the *Romans*, who, at this Time, happen'd to be separated one from another, for the better Conveniency of Subsisting in their Winter-Quarters: But the Celerity wherewith *Cæsar* (who seem'd rather to Fly than March) came upon them, before they were able to join their Forces, quickly reduc'd them to their Duty; and that with small loss of Time or Men, bating that one entire Legion under the Command of *Q. Sabinus*, and *L. Cotta* were quite destroy'd upon the Advice of a perfidious *Gallick* Prince call'd *Ambiorix*, who sent Word to *Sabinus* and *Cotta*, that all the *Gauls* were in Arms, and that for the many Favours he had receiv'd from the *Romans*, he Counsel'd them to March out of their Garrison, to join the Troops that were in the next City to them, and that they might be sure of a free Passage thro' his Territories; yet this very Prince, at the Head of a vast Army, set upon them, when they thought of nothing less, and cut them, and all their Men to Pieces.

*Cæsar* having thus the second Time subdu'd the *Gauls*, resolv'd to invade *Germany* because he was inform'd, that the *German* not only Encourag'd the late Insurrection; but also sent Troops to promote it. Accordingly he caus'd a Bridge to be built over the *Rhine*, and March'd into *Suabia* upon Information that the Inhabitants of this Country were the Men that most abett'd the Insurrection: But the *Suabians* upon Notice of the Approach of the *Romans*, retir'd with their best Effects into Woods and Inaccessible Places; so that *Cæsar* was forc'd to Repass the *Rhine* without doing any Thing Memorable. Then he sent his Troops into Winter-Quarters, and return'd to *Italy*, where he was but just arriv'd, when he had Notice sent him, that there was an Insurrection in *Gaul* more Universal and Dangerous than the Former; for that all the Kingdoms and States of the *Gallick* Nation except the People of *Rheims*, had enter'd into a Confederacy and were raising a Prodigious great Army which was to be commanded by one *Vercingetorix* a great Lord of *Auvergne*.

*Cæsar* hereupon return'd immediately in the Dead of Winter, and with great Difficulty join'd part of his Forces in *Autune*; many Parties of the Enemy lying in wait to intercept his Passage. His next Care was to hinder the Conjunction of the Enemies Forces. In order thereunto, he went in Quest



of *Vercingetorix*, who by this Time, had made up an Army of sixty thousand Horse and Foot, and after some light Skirmishes, laid Siege to *Bourge* in the Province of *Bery*, which after many bloody Rencounters he at last took by Storm, and put all to the Sword without distinction of Age or Sex. Then he sat down before *Clermont*, but was forc'd to raise the Siege, because he had not Troops enough to defend his Lines. In some Time after being join'd by *Labienus* with the Legions under his Command, he March'd after *Vercingetorix*, who by this Time was at the Head of one hundred and fifty thousand Men; and being come up with him, made a terrible Slaughter in his Rere; *Vercingetorix* Retreating as not thinking fit to face *Cæsar*, till join'd by almost as many more, which he expected wou'd soon come to Him.

Having by this Means encourag'd his Soldiers and shown the Cowardise of the Enemy, he pursu'd *Vercingetorix* to the Gates of *Alise* and laid Siege to it. This was one of the most difficult and desperate Undertakings that ever General took in Hand. The City was extreamly well Fortify'd both by Nature and Art. It had a Garrison of eighty thousand Men, besides an Army of equal Number round about it's Walls; add to this, that the Besieg'd expected another Army equal, if not Superior in Number to what was within and without the City, and which *Cæsar* knew to be then actually on their March. All these Difficulties notwithstanding *Cæsar* with about eighty thousand Men sat down before the Town and with incredible Labour and Diligence, Maugre all the Opposition of so great a Garrison, and the Army that cover'd it, and the almost continual Sallies of the same, made such Lines of Circumvallation and Countervallation in a few Days that I believe the like was never perform'd before or after by so few Hands, whether we consider the prodigious Depth and length of the Trenches, the many Lines of Communication from one Part of the Camp to the other, or the various Turrets and Engins proper to defend the Camp, and to offend the Enemy.

Soon after *Cæsar* had finish'd his Works, The Army, which *Vercingetorix* expected, appear'd; so that the *Romans* seem'd to be in a Thrice besieg'd in their Camp, by double their Number without, and double within; by Men equally Fierce and Prodigious of their Blood with the *Romans* themselves. Yet all these Circumstances, tho' sufficient to shake any other, did not in the least dismay *Cæsar*. The next Day the Garrison seeing their Friends from the Eminences of the City, gave a Shout, and were answer'd by another from them. Then they prepar'd that Night to Sally the next Day out of the City, as did also the Army without to attack *Cæsar's* Camp: *Cæsar*, who expected no less, having dispos'd his Legions and Cohorts in their respective Posts, gave them so warm a Reception, that after several Hours fight, in which they lost a prodigious number of Men, they were forc'd to Retreat without being able to Force any part of his Intrenchments.

The Generals of the Army without, receiving this unexpected Check, cast about them to see where they might attack *Cæsar's* Camp with less Hazard, and perceiving that there was an Eminence at one End of the Camp that was not so well Fortify'd, by reason the Nature of the Place wou'd not allow it: This Place they resolv'd to attack by twelve a Clock the next Day, and to give the Garrison Notice thereof by their Shouts, that they might Sallie out at the same Time. Accordingly they drew out fifty five thousand of their Choice Horse and Foot, and sent them late at Night under the Command of *Vergasillanus*, one of the four Generals of the Army,



to a certain Hill which cover'd them from being seen by the *Romans*, and was near the Place they intended to Storm.

At the Hour appointed these Troops appear'd on the Top of the Hill, gave a hideous Shout, and being furnish'd with all Sorts of Instruments and Materials fill'd up the Trenches in a Moment, and rais'd a Mount from which they cast such Showers of Arrows, Darts and Stones, that the *Romans* were mightily distress'd. In the mean time, *Vercingetorix* fall'd out of the Town with the choice of all his Troops and endeavour'd to force the Trenches : But *Cæsar* being pretty sure, that a few Men wou'd be able to repulse the Enemy at any other Place, bent his Thoughts upon maintaining the Post attack'd, by *Vergasillaunus* and his prodigious Army : He therefore plac'd himself upon a rising Ground, where he might see all the Attacks at once, and send Detachments, from time to time to relieve the Men who shou'd be most distress'd : But observing that the Enemy were gaining Ground, he order'd a considerable Number of Horse to fallie out, to take a Compass about, and attack the Enemy in the Rear. Which done, he order'd all the Cohorts that cou'd be spar'd in any of the other Posts that were attack'd, to follow him, and being come to the Eminence where his Men were disputing every Inch of Ground, he infus'd such Courage into them by his Voice and Presence, that what with the Troops which he brought to their Assistance and the new Life he seem'd to breath into them, they repuls'd the Enemy, and follow'd them out beyond their Trenches. In the mean time, the Horse, which *Cæsar* had sent about, attack'd the Enemy in the Rere, and put them into such Confusion, that the *Romans* before and behind were tir'd with slaughtering them. In a Word, very few of the fifty five Thousand escap'd to bring an Account of their Disaster to the rest of the Army. *Sedulius* one of the Generals was kill'd, *Vergasillaunus* taken Prisoner, and seventy four Standards were brought to *Cæsar*.

The rest of the Auxiliary Troops seeing the Flower of the Army cut off, March'd away, and dispers'd each Clan repairing to their respective Countries. *Vercingetorix* perceiving that all was lost, summon'd a Council of his Officers, and the Chief of the Citizens, and told them, *that since he had the Misfortune to bring all these Disasters upon them, he was ready and willing to give himself up as a Sacrifice to appease the Wrath of the Romans, either by having his Head sent to Cæsar, or by being deliver'd alive into his Hands.* Upon which they sent Ambassadors to know *Cæsar's* Pleasure, who order'd them to surrender their Arms, and deliver up all their Noble-Men. They readily obey'd his Commands bringing *Vercingetorix* among the Rest.

*Cæsar* distributed the Prisoners among his Soldiers for their Booty, excepting only the Natives of *Autune* and *Auvergne*, hoping by their Means to recover the other States. Then he distributed his Legions in the several Provinces of *Gaul*, and took up his Quarters in the Capital of *Autune*. The next Campaign, he spent in quelling some Insurrections made in *Poitou*, *Chartres* and *Normandy*, and then resolv'd to return to *Italy*, being inform'd that *Lentulus* and *Marcellus* the Consuls, together with *Pompey*, and several others, envying the Glory of his great Exploits, were conspiring his Ruin. Upon his Arrival in *Lombardy* he sent Deputies to *Rome*, praying he might have Leave to stand Candidate for the Consulship, as having but a few Months of his Administration unexpir'd. But this was absolutely refus'd him on Pretence that no Man who was not actually in Person at *Rome*, cou'd obtain



obtain that Dignity. This gave *Cæsar* some Anxious Thoughts of what had been only rumour'd before. Another Instance seem'd to increase his Jealousie. Sometime before he left *Gaul*, the Senate order'd him to send one of his Legions forthwith to *Italy* in order to be sent to the *Parthian War*: And *Pompey* demanded the Legion which he sent to him some time before. *Cæsar* immediately sent both these Legions back to *Italy*; but upon his Arrival in *Lombardy*, he understood they were still Quarter'd in *Italy*, and neither of them sent to *Parthia*: But what Confirm'd him in the Belief, that his Enemies design'd his Ruin, was *C. Curio* the Tribune of the People, who having done his utmost to serve the Republick and promote *Cæsar's* Interest, at last finding all his Endeavours in vain, fled from *Rome*, and inform'd him of the Designs his Enemies had concerted against him. *Curio* advis'd him, (since they openly prepar'd to make War upon him) immediately to draw his Army together, and rescue the Republick out of the Hands of that Faction, whose Tyranny she labour'd under. But tho' *Cæsar* was convinc'd of the Truth of *Curio's* Report, yet he resolv'd to demonstrate so particular a Regard to the Republick, that no Man might justly accuse him for being the Cause of a civil War. In order hereunto he writ a Letter to the Senate, wherein having Briefly and Modestly Enumerated the Meritorious Actions he had done for the Republick, intreated them that *he might have Liberty to set up for Consul the ensuing Year without appearing in Person at Rome*. He assur'd them *he should not refuse to Disband his Army, if the Senate and People commanded him, provided Pompey, who was his Antagonist, would do the like; but so long as Pompey kept his Forces standing, there was no Reason he should dismiss his Soldiers, and leave his Person expos'd to the Malice of his Enemies.*

This Letter he committed to *Curio's* Charge, who deliver'd it in full Senate, and had much a do to prevail with them to suffer it to be read publickly: But having at last by the Help of the other Tribunes got the Letter read in open Senate, *Lentulus* the Consul and *Scipio* spoke with a great deal of warmth against *Cæsar*, as did also *Cato* and several others desiring the Senate *not to be mov'd at his Menaces, but to rely upon Pompey, who would not be wanting to the Common-Wealth, provided they stood by him*. At last the Senate came to a Resolution, that if *Cæsar* did not disband his Army by a Day prefixt, *he should be proclaim'd a Traitor*. *Pompey* hereupon began to Strut and Triumph; and being ask'd by one of the Noble Men call'd *Phaonius* who stood by, *how he could be able with so few Troops as were then at Hand to withstand Cæsar's veteran Legions?* Answer'd: *When I stamp with my Foot on the Ground there will appear Men enough to subdue Cæsar and all his Forces.*

When *Cæsar* had Notice of the Resolution of the Senate, he sent for most of his *Veteran Troops* out of *Gaul*, and having made a short Speech to the Officers and Soldiers of the Legion that attended him, in order to try their Pulse, he March'd to the River *Rubicon*, where pausing a while upon the Consequences of his Design (For this being the Bounds of his Province it was High Treason in him to pass it at the Head of an Army) he said, *Id est ille. The Dye is Cast*; and then order'd his Troops to March over.

So soon as the News of *Cæsar's* passing the *Rubicon* was brought to *Rome*, the whole City was in a Fright and Confusion, every one running to *Pompey*, and asking *what he intended to do?* Among others, *Phaonius* fail'd not to put him in Mind of his Promise, desiring him *to stamp with his Foot up-*



on the Ground. Pompey made no Answer to this Taunt; but told the Consuls and Senators, *that it was absolutely necessary for the good of the Republick, they shou'd leave the City, and follow him.* So most of the Senators, the Consuls and the Roman Youth follow'd Pompey, who March'd with his regular Troops to *Brundisium*. In the mean time Cæsar took in *Corfinium* and some other Towns of less Importance; and having Intelligence, that Pompey and his Army, together with the Consuls, Senators and the Flower of the Roman Youth, had abandon'd the City, and were gone to *Brundisium*, he follow'd him thither: But finding he had ship'd off his Army and Friends, and had sail'd for *Dyrrachium* he did not think fit to pursue him any further at this time, because his Troops were not as yet arriv'd from *Gaul*, neither had he Ships in a readiness for the Purpose. He therefore March'd back to *Rome*, whose Gates were left open for him, and call'd a Senate of such Members as did not think fit to follow Pompey's Fortune; propos'd to send Ambassadors to Pompey and the Consuls, and protested *he was ready to disband his Army, provided Pompey wou'd do the like*: But finding little or no Disposition in the Senate towards an Accommodation upon these Terms, he sent for the Questor or Treasurer, and order'd him to bring him what Money remain'd in the Treasury to pay his Army. The Treasurer like a bold Roman told him, *he wou'd pay no Money without an Order from the Senate.* Well Friend, says Cæsar, *I know how to come by it another Way.* Do not you hear (says the Treasurer, quoting a Decree of the Senate) *what the Law says?* No, reply'd Cæsar, *I cou'd never hear the Law speak for the Noise of Arms.* Whereupon the Treasurer began aloud to quote the Law. Hold thy Tongue, says Cæsar, and give over quoting Laws to us who have Swords by our Sides: Then he order'd some of his Officers and Soldiers to break open the Doors of the Treasury and take what Money they cou'd find in it. Which done, he settled the Publick Affairs of the City as well as the times wou'd permit, and March'd with a few Troops into *Gaul* with a Design to reduce *Spain* to his Obedience before he shou'd prosecute his Voyage after Pompey into *Greece*.

In the mean time, he order'd all his Ships to be in a readiness, and to rendezvous at *Brundisium*. He also sent *Valerius* into *Sardinia* with one Legion, and *Curio* into *Sicily* with three, in Order to reduce these Islands; while he himself was taken up with the War in *Spain*. Pompey had left *Cotta* to Govern *Sardinia*, and *M. Cato*, *Sicily*; but upon the Arrival of *Valerius* and *Curio* they both abandon'd their Governments, and retir'd into *Affrick*. Being arriv'd in *Gaul*, he sent *C. Fabius* with three Legions that were quarter'd about *Narbone* into *Spain* before him; with Orders to secure the Passes over the *Pyrenean Mountains*. At this time, *Spain* and *Lusitania* were Govern'd by *Affranius*, *Varro* and *Petreius*, three great Captains, and Zealous Assertors of Pompey's Interest. Cæsar made Account, he might reduce these Men while his Fleet was a getting ready; and therefore resolv'd to follow *Fabius* immediately with the rest of his Army: But when he came to *Massilia* or *Marseilles* he was surpris'd to find they had shut their Gates against him, and sided with Pompey, from whom they receiv'd a Garrison under the Command of *Domitius*. This Ingratitude of the *Massilians*, who had receiv'd many Favours from the Bounty of Cæsar provok'd him to a great Degree. So that he Commanded *Brutus* his Admiral to besiege the Town by Sea, and *C. Trebonius* by Land, till he had return'd from his Expedition in *Spain*. Then he pass'd the *Pyrenean Mountains* and join'd *Fabius*, who at this time, lay encamp'd near *Lerida*, whither



ther *Affranius* and *Petreius* with a Potent Army had March'd before to make Head against him.

Here *Cæsar* gave evident Proof of his Clemency, and of the Affection he had for his Country Men : For after several sharp Skirmishes, Marches and Countermarches, he reduc'd the Enemy to such Straights, that he might with very little Loss, destroy them; yet he wou'd not suffer his Men to fight, tho' they were ready to Mutiny, (as if he intended to betray them) for not giving the Signal of Battle, when they had the Victory, as it were, in their Hands; and being ask'd by some of his Officers, *why he wou'd slip such an Opportunity of destroying the Enemy and ending the War?* They are said he, *for the most Part my Countrymen and fellow Citizens, and many of them are your own Relations; and if I can Conquer, without killing them, as I doubt not, I shall soon convince you I can; the Victory will be much more Glorious, than if I shou'd, with the Hazard of the Lives of many of you my Friends, destroy so many Gallant Men, who, tho' now in Arms against me, yet still are my Countrymen.*

And indeed it so happen'd as *Cæsar* had projected : For by keeping close at their Heels, and cutting off their Convoys and Provisions he reduc'd them to such Straights, that *Affranius* and *Petreius* submitted to lay down their Arms, and disband their Soldiers.

*Varro*, who Commanded in the farther Province of *Spain* for *Pompey*, having Intelligence of the Disasters of *Affranius* and *Petreius*, came in Person and submitted to *Cæsar*, who immediately settled the Kingdom of *Spain* upon its antient Basis, came to *Cadiz*, where he embark'd for *Terragona*, and from thence March'd by Land to *Marseilles*, which by this time had Capitulated, and receiv'd a Garrison from *Trebonius*; and being inform'd that *M. Lepidus* the *Prætor* had by Edict constituted him Dictator, he sent his Army into *Italy*, and went himself to *Rome*.

The People that stay'd in *Rome*, some out of real Affection to *Cæsar*, and others out of Fear, carrels'd and receiv'd him with all Demonstrations of Joy, and chos him Consul together with *P. Servilius* for that Year. And *Cæsar* in Return, administred Justice Impartially to them, adjusted their Differences, and put their Trade and Commerce, which was very much sunk, upon a Foot to Flourish and Increase. Then he laid down his Dictatorship, and March'd with his Army to *Brundisium*, where having shipp'd off only seven Legions of his Foot, (there being no more Vessels in the Harbour than what suffic'd for that Number) he set Sail for *Greece*, and Landed at a Place call'd *Pharsalus* near the Promontory of *Ceraunium*. He was indeed very much Troubled for not finding Ships enough to Transport his Army all at once, being well inform'd what Advantage *Pompey* had over him, in Number of Troops; but there being no Remedy, he order'd his Transports to go back for the Cavalry and the Rest of the Foot, which he left behind under the Command of the (afterwards) Famous *Mark Antony*. But the Winter Season being very Tempestuous, and the Seas cover'd almost every where by the vast Fleets which *Pompey* had fitted out to catch *Cæsar's* Men in the Traject, it was a long Time before they cou'd set to Sea. At last, *M. Antony* Sail'd with four Legions and as many Horse as his Fleet cou'd carry, and landed safe at a Port call'd *Nymphæum*, without the loss of a Ship, buting one slow Sailer, in which there were about one hundred and fifty Soldiers of the new Levies; notwithstanding that he pass'd in sight of *Durazzo*, where *Pompey's* Camp was, and in sight of the Enemy's Fleet.



*Cæsar* being soon after join'd by *M. Antony* with the Troops under his Command, March'd directly to *Pompey*, who was at this Time encamp'd at a Place call'd *Asparagium* in *Macedonia*, and offer'd him Battle. *Pompey* had a prodigious great Army, for he was Reinforc'd by most of the Troops of all *Greece*, *Egypt*, *Asia* and the Isles; and even *Scipio*, who commanded in Chief in the *Parthian* War after the Death of *M. Crassus*, was by this Time come as far as *Thessaly* with his Legions to join him; yet he declin'd giving Battle. *Cæsar* hereupon March'd towards *Durazzo* where most of *Pompey's* Provisions and Stores were laid up, with a Design to oblige *Pompey* to Decamp in order to save his Stores, hoping by that Means to have an Opportunity of Fighting him upon equal Terms, or cutting him short of his Provisions. But neither did this succeed; For tho' *Pompey*, decamp'd upon Notice of *Cæsar's* Design, and made what haste he cou'd to get to *Durazzo*, yet finding that *Cæsar* had got before him, he did not attempt to fight; but encamp'd upon the Hills by the Sea side being well assur'd that *Cæsar* cou'd not hinder him from receiving Provisions from the Town, so long as he was Master of the Sea. Then *Cæsar* resolv'd to besiege *Pompey* in his Camp, in Order to cut him off from all Provision and Forrage by Land, believing by this Means to be able to distress his Horse. Accordingly he went about drawing a Line of eighteen Miles Circumference to inclose *Pompey's* Camp from the Sea, on the one side, to the Sea, on the other.

And here were employ'd all the Skill, Art and Industry of the two greatest Generals then in the World; of the one, endeavouring to Compais his End, and of the other, in defeating his Design. Frequent Skirmishes and little Battles pass'd every Day: But *Pompey* finding he cou'd not hinder *Cæsar's* Works to go on, drew another Line within *Cæsar's* Line, and enclos'd 15 Miles of Ground; which likewise occasion'd many bloody Rencounters between both Parties. At last *Pompey* perceiving that if the Line between his Camp and the Town of *Durazzo* were once finish'd, his Soldiers wou'd be very much distress'd for want of fresh Water, as were indeed his Horse already for want of Forrage, resolv'd to make the last Effort to hinder the finishing of it on that side. But being repuls'd by the Vigilance and Care of *Cæsar*, he was at his Wits end; and even *Cæsar's* Soldiers in their Trenches us'd to tell *Pompey's* Men, who were so near as to be heard by them, that they would keep them besieg'd in their Camp, so long as there remain'd in the Land any Quantity of a certain Root call'd *Chara*, of which they made Bread; and, as a Mark of the Abundance they had of the same, us'd to cast some Loaves there f into their Lines.

Thus were both the Armies for several Days employ'd in Labouring and Fighting without any great Advantage on either Side. At last *Cæsar* got a terrible Foil which was like to break all his Measures. He observ'd one of *Pompey's* Legions at a distance from the Rest, and Concluded, he might easily cut it to Pieces before it cou'd be reliev'd. Upon this Presumption, he March'd at the Head of thirty three Cohorts, and charg'd them so Briskly, that they forsook their Intrenchments, and wou'd have been intirely cut off, had not *Pompey* detach'd another Legion with a great Body of Horse to sustain them. In the mean Time *Cæsar's* Men being carried too far by their Ardour in pursuit of the Enemy, Mistook their Way and upon sight of this Detachment, ran along down the Line to the Sea; where finding their Mistake they return'd back; but before they cou'd go far, were attack'd in Front, Rere and Flank. This put them into such a

Consternation



Consternation, that all *Cæsar* cou'd do, or say, wou'd not prevail upon them to stand their Ground, but they leap'd into the Trenches, and such as went down first being trodden to Death, procur'd a safe Passage for the Rest. In this Engagement *Cæsar* lost thirty two Colours and nine hundred and sixty Men, among which Number fell many Roman Knights and *Veteran* Soldiers.

The next Day *Cæsar* decamp'd and March'd into *Macedonia*, concluding that either *Pompey* wou'd follow him, or that he wou'd have an Opportunity of cutting off *Scipio*, who was then in his Way Marching thro' *Thessaly* with the Army which he led from *Parthia*. He was not mistaken in his Opinion, for *Pompey* decamp'd immediately, and after some Days March, join'd *Scipio*. *Pompey's* Army by this Conjunction was fifty five thousand strong in Foot, and seven thousand in Horse; whereas *Cæsar's* whole Strength consisted of twenty five thousand Foot, and one thousand Horse: Notwithstanding, upon Intelligence that *Scipio* had join'd *Pompey*, he March'd into *Thessaly*, and pitch'd his Camp near that of *Pompey* in the Plains of *Pharsalia*; being in Hopes that now at least, *Pompey* wou'd accept of his Challenge; since he was Reinforc'd by all the Troops he expected. *Cæsar* hereupon drew out his Army the next Day, and offer'd *Pompey* Battle, but finding he wou'd not stir, resolv'd to Decamp, and Ravage the Country, that then at least, he might oblige him to Fight. *Pompey*, who was of Opinion that it was much safer to Harraß *Cæsar* than Fight him; being often importun'd by his Leading Officers, and especially by *Scipio*, who shar'd the Supream Authority with him, as being Chief Commander of the Roman Legions come from *Parthia*, yielded at last. Accordingly the next Day, when *Cæsar* drew out his Army in Order to decamp, *Pompey* order'd his Tents to be struck, and drew out his Army also. This was agreeable News to *Cæsar*, who immediately rang'd his Army in Battle Array, telling his Officers and Soldiers that *the Day was come which shou'd put an End to all their Toils, and determine his Fate.*

*Pompey's* Army was drawn up in this Manner: Two Legions form'd the Left Wing, and was Commanded by *Pompey* himself: *Scipio* was in the Center and Commanded the Forces come from *Parthia*, and *Asfranius* in the Right, with the *Cilicians* united to the Cohorts brought from *Spain*; who were esteem'd the best Troops in the Army. *Pompey* having seven Thousand Horse made Account, and told the same to his Officers, that *he wou'd with his Horse Flank Cæsar's Army, and defeat him, before the main Body cou'd engage*; being perswaded that the few Horse which *Cæsar* had, wou'd not be able to make any tollerable Resistance. On the other side, *Cæsar* drew up his Army very close to hinder the Enemy from piercing thro' his Squadrons.

He gave the Command of the Left Wing to *Mark Anthony*, of the Right, to *P. Sylla*; and of the main Body to *Cn. Domitius*, posting himself directly over against *Pompey*. Having drawn his Forces up in this Order, to prevent his Right Wing from being surrounded by the Enemy's Horse, he detach'd a Cohort from every Legion in the third Line, and of them compos'd a Fourth, to engage the Cavalry: He gave them the necessary Orders; and foretold that *the Success of the Day wou'd depend on their Courage and Conduct.*

The Hour being come which was to decide the Fate of the Roman Empire, and the Signal given, *Cæsar's* Troops advanc'd, cast their Piles, and attack'd the Enemy Sword in Hand. *Pompey's* Soldiers, on the other side,

EEEEEE

receiv'd



receiv'd them with equal Bravery, standing firm and maintaining their Ground. At the same Instant, *Pompey's* Cavalry sally'd from the Left, according to their Orders, attended by their Archers, and attack'd *Cæsar's* Horse with so much Fury, that they gave Ground. *Cæsar* hereupon gave the Signal to the fourth Line, which he had plac'd behind the Horse on Purpose to sustain them; upon which they charg'd *Pompey's* Cavalry so vigorously, that they routed, and oblig'd them to fly to the next Mountain. Their Retreat expos'd the Archers and Slingers to the Fury of *Cæsar's* Soldiers, who cut them all to Pieces; and pursuing their Success, surrounded *Pompey's* Left Wing, and attack'd his Army in the Rere, Maugre all the Resistance he was able to make. In the mean time, *Cæsar* order'd the third Line to advance, which hitherto had no share in the Action, and to attack *Pompey's* Main Body. In this were plac'd the Flower of the Roman Youth, who, like our Beau's, were very fond of their fine Faces. These *Cæsar* order'd his rough *Veteran* Soldiers to strike not on the Head or Arms, but across the Face; which they accordingly observing, soon made them fly, in spite of what *Pompey* and his Commanders cou'd do.

*Pompey* seeing his Cavalry routed, and his Left Wing cut to Pièces; nay and his Main Body dispers'd, retreated to his Camp with Precipitation, and gave Orders to secure the Pretorian Gate against the Enemy: But *Cæsar* and his Men, who were at his Heels, Notwithstanding their great Fatigue, storm'd the Camp, and soon carry'd it, putting all to the Sword that durst oppose them. *Pompey* being inform'd, that the Enemy had enter'd his Camp, said: *What even my Camp in Cæsar's Hands!* And then took Horse, rode out by the *Decuman* Gate to *Larissa*; and from thence to the Sea, attended only by thirty Horse, having cast off all Ensigns and Marks of Consular Dignity. Thus ended the famous Battle of *Pharsalia*, where *Cæsar* and his Troops, got as much Plunder and Provision as did abundantly make amends for the Misery and Want which they endur'd for several Months before. On *Cæsar's* side, there fell only two hundred Soldiers, and thirty Centurions. On *Pompey's*, fifteen Thousand were kill'd, and above twenty four Thousand taken Prisoners.

*Cæsar*, laying all other Thoughts aside, resolv'd to pursue *Pompey* so close, wherever he went, as not to allow him time to levy new Forces, and renew the War: He March'd therefore every Day as far as his Cavalry cou'd hold out, Commanding one Legion to follow after in a slower Pace. *Pompey* being come to *Amphipolis* took Shipping for *Mytelene*, and sail'd from thence to *Cilicia*; then to *Cyprus*, where having seiz'd all the Money that was in the Publick Bank, and rais'd two Thousand Soldiers, set to Sea again; and being come into the Harbour of *Pelusium* in *Egypt*, was Murder'd, as I intimated before, by the Advice of *Theodatus*, and by Order of *Ptolomy* the Young King of *Egypt*, who lay encamp'd at that time near this City with his Army, making Head against his Sister *Cleopatra*, who being left Sharer in the Kingdom by the Will of her Father, was come from *Syria* at the Head of an Army to assert her Right. *Cæsar* continu'd his Pursuit, and being arriv'd in *Asia* understood, that *Pompey* had been seen at *Cyprus*, whence imagining he had gone to *Egypt*, because of the Interest he had in that Kingdom, resolv'd to go to *Alexandria* with two Legions, and eight hundred Horse; tho' these two Legions did not make up more than three Thousand two hundred Men, the rest being either lost in the former Action, or fatigu'd in their long Marches. However *Cæsar* trusting to his Fortune scrupled not to sail in a few Gallies with this small Number, and arriv'd



riv'd at *Alexandria*, where he understood that *Pompey* had been Murder'd. Having Landed his Men, and enter'd the City, was inform'd, that Young *Ptolomy* and his Sister *Cleopatra* were ready to decide their Pretensions to the Crown by a Battle; whereupon he cited them both to appear before him, as believing it to be a Prerogative of the People of *Rome*, and so him as Consul to determine the Differences of their Friends and Allies; and at the same time demanded the Money that was due of *Ptolomy Auletes* their Father to the *Romans*.

This Conduct of *Cæsar's* did highly incense the *Egyptians*: First for demanding Money which they were unwilling to Pay, and next for presuming to cite their King, who was an absolute Prince depending on no Power on Earth: They therefore prepar'd to make War upon *Cæsar* in that Quarter of the City, in which he was lodged, and laid violent Hands on all such of his Soldiers as stirr'd out of their Quarters. *Cæsar* hereupon fortify'd his part of the City, and sent for more Troops into *Asia*. In the mean Time, he possess'd himself of the Famous Tower in the Mouth of the *Nile*, call'd *Pharus*; and had several desperate Rencounters with the *Egyptian* Army with various Success. Once he was forc'd to save his Life by casting himself into the Sea, where, it is said, he Swam with one Hand, holding the Papers of his *Commentaries* over the Water, in the other, lest they shou'd be lost. At length his Troops being arriv'd, he defeated the *Egyptian* Army, took the other part of the City, and *Ptolomy* being drown'd before in an Engagement on the River *Nile*, he left the Kingdom to *Cleopatra*, who, it seems, Conquer'd him another Way, as was observ'd before.

*Cæsar* having thus happily put an End to the *Alexandrian* War, receiv'd several Expresses from *Rome*, giving him an account of several Broils and Disorders both in the City and Country, which wou'd be of ill Consequence, if not timely prevented by his coming back. On the other Hand, he had more grievous Complaints sent to him from *Pontus* and *Cappadocia*, against *Pharnaces* King of the Lesser *Armenia*, who had unjustly invaded *Pontus*, and carry'd all before him. *Cæsar* thought fit to settle the Affairs of *Asia*, as being nearer to him, before he shou'd pass into *Europe*, and therefore March'd with all Expedition against *Pharnaces*, whom he soon after defeated, so as to apprehend no further Trouble from him: And having in a short Time adjust'd all the Differences, and Pretensions of the respective Kings and States of *Asia* and *Syria*, return'd to *Rome* much sooner than he was expected; where his Presence did soon lay all the Commotions both in the City and throughout *Italy*.

His next Care was to quench the Fire that had been kindled in *Affrick*: *Scipio* the General for the *Parthian* War, and the Famous *Cato*, a Man much Celebrated by *Cicero* for his Wisdom and Gravity, having escap'd his Hands at the Battle of *Pharsalia*, made the best of their Way, both by Land and Sea together with such of the scatter'd Troops as were able to Accompany them, and arriv'd in *Affrica*, where they were join'd by *Asfraninus* and *Petereius*, the two Generals of the *Spanish* Army, whom *Cæsar* had the Year before defeated and Pardon'd; and having enter'd into an Alliance with *Juba* King of *Mauritania* made up a formidable Army, Possess'd themselves of all the fortify'd Cities on the Frontiers of that great Continent, and put strong Garrisons in all the Sea-Port Towns.

This was a Matter of too great Consequence to be neglected: *Cæsar* therefore cross'd over into *Sicily*, and March'd with his Troops to *Lylibæum*. He had with him upon this Expedition only six Legions, all new Levies,



bating one Legion, and two thousand Horse: Nor had he Ships enough to Transport even those at once; However he Shipp'd off as many as he cou'd, and having set to Sea, arriv'd at *Adrumetum* in four Days; but his Fleet being dispers'd by a Tempest, not above three thousand Foot and fifteen hundred Horse came into the Harbour. Here *Cæsar* lay at Anchor for some Time, expecting the rest of his Fleet; but hearing no Tidings of it, and understanding that *Scipio* had put a strong Garrison into *Adrumetum*, under the Command of *C. Confidius*, he Landed his Men at a little Distance from the Town. This Action would have been Censur'd as Rash and Desperate in any other than *Cæsar*, considering there was a very great Garrison in the Town, and was cover'd by an Army of three thousand Foot and two thousand Horse: And indeed *Cæsar* was soon made sensible thereof: For he had scarce Landed his Men, when all these Foot and Cavalry came pouring upon him; but *Cæsar's* Fortune (as he us'd to call it, upon all desperate Attempts) and the Confidence he had in his Men, did soon extricate him out of this Difficulty: For only thirty of his Horse routed all those of the Enemy, and made them fly to the very Gates of *Adrumetum*. Then he March'd by the Sea-side till he came to a Town call'd *Leptis*, which open'd its Gates to him. Here *Cæsar* resolv'd to wait for the rest of his Troops, part whereof being soon after arriv'd, he took the Field, and March'd into the Country. By this Time *Scipio* and the rest of the *Roman* Generals his Confederates, together with King *Juba* drew together a prodigious Army Consisting of several *Veteran* Legions, new Levies made in *Affrick*, and several Elephants carrying great Castles, or Turrets on their Backs. With these *Cæsar* had several light Skirmishes; at length being join'd by a few more of his Troops that had Landed, he resolv'd to offer *Scipio* Battle; tho' *Scipio* was six times his Number. But *Scipio* declin'd coming to a general Engagement, whether out of Distrust of the Performance of his Men, or that he thought it more safe to Harraß *Cæsar's* Troops, who having neither Stores nor Magazines were forc'd to live upon what they cou'd take from the Enemy: Whereupon *Cæsar* resolv'd to lay Siege to *Thapsus*, a City very well fortify'd, wherein most of *Scipio's* Stores were laid up, with a strong Garrison commanded by *Vergilius*, a stout Captain and a faithful Friend to *Scipio*. Accordingly he invest'd the Place, set his Men to work with a Design to besiege it in Form, and encamp'd himself near it to cover the Siege. *Scipio* having Notice hereof, was Necessitated to hazard a Battle, because he could not well bear the Loss of his Stores, neither was he willing to expose his faithful Friend *Vergilius* to the Cruelty of *Cæsar's* Men: He therefore drew out his Army, and March'd towards *Cæsar*, who, to spare him part of the Labour, went gladly to meet him half way.

When *Cæsar* had taken a View of *Scipio's* Army, and observ'd how the Elephants had been dispos'd in either Wing, he order'd his Archers and Slingers to attack these uncouth Animals, who upon the very first Shower of Darts and Javelins pour'd upon them, turn'd with great Fury upon their own Foot, and trod them to Death. In the mean while the main Body advanc'd, and attack'd the Enemy so furiously, that they seem'd to make no Resistance at all, but betook themselves to their Heels, flying for Refuge to the Woods and Mountains; so that *Cæsar* might very well have said of this Battle: *Veni, vidi, vici*. Here *Cæsar* kill'd ten thousand of the Enemy, with the Loss only of fifty Men kill'd and a few wounded, took a great Number of Prisoners, and dispers'd all the rest. Upon Notice of this Victory, most of the Cities that were in the Enemies Hands, sent Deputies to

*Cæsar*



*Cæsar*, and submitted to him ; and such as did not, were soon reduc'd. *M. Cato* commanded in *Utica*, and finding by the Murmurs and Complaints of the Citizens and Garrison, that they were resolv'd to submit to *Cæsar*, laid violent Hands upon himself, falling upon the Point of his Sword, rather than into the Hands of the Tyrant, as he call'd *Cæsar*. Soon after, *Cæsar* having settled the Affairs of *Affrick*, took Shipping at *Utica*, and in twenty seven Days arriv'd in *Rome*, where he had a Triumphant Procession upon his Conquest of *Gaul*, *Egypt*, *Pontus* and *Affrick*. But it seems the Destinies (to speak in the Pagan Stile) had decreed, that he shou'd never be at Rest to enjoy the Fruits of his Victories : For he was immediately obliged to have Recourse to Arms. *Pompey's* Sons, the Elder whereof was, after the Father, call'd *Cneius Pompey*, and had been Admiral at Sea to his Father ; the Younger, who was call'd *Sextus Pompey*, having both escap'd *Cæsar's* Hands, possess'd themselves of the Farther *Spain*, whilst *Cæsar* was distributing Rewards to his Officers and Soldiers in *Italy*. *Cn. Pompey*, the better to strengthen his Party, began to insinuate himself into the Favour of every State in that Kingdom. Thus partly by Entreaty, and partly by Menaces, he soon Levy'd a considerable Army ; and began to lay the Province waste : Some Cities freely sent him Supplies, whilst others shut their Gates against him ; but if any of the Latter happen'd to fall into his Hands by Assault, he cut them off, and distributed their Effects among his Licentious Followers. His Soldiers meeting with so good Encouragement, their Number was soon increas'd : Wherefore they that were in *Cæsar's* Interest, dispatch'd frequent Couriers into *Italy*, to implore his Protection.

This was a Matter of that Importance as was not to be neglected ; therefore *Cæsar*, who was now chosen Dictator a fourth Time, made what haste he cou'd to dispatch this War. Being come to *Spain*, he was inform'd that *Sextus Pompey* had a strong Garrison in *Cordova*, which might easily be surpriz'd, by Reason they had no Intelligence as yet of his Arrival in *Spain* : Whereupon *Cæsar* sent Word to his Lieutenants *Q. Pedius* and *Q. Fabius Maximus* to attend him with all the Cavalry in their Province. In the mean Time, he understood that *Cn. Pompey* the elder Brother had invested *Ulla*, a City that had been always faithful to him ; wherefore he resolv'd to besiege *Cordova* to oblige *Cn. Pompey* to raise the Siege of *Ulla*. Accordingly he dispatch'd some Horse and Foot before him to the Town, who made so brisk an Attack upon *Sextus* his Men, that they drove them with considerable Loss into their strong Holds. *Sextus Pompey* was so frighten'd at this Action, that he immediately sent to his Brother to quit *Ulla* with his Forces, and join him ; which was accordingly done, tho' the Town was then in the last Extremity. The two Brothers having join'd their Forces, encamp'd near *Cordova*, over against *Cæsar*, who drew out his Army, and offer'd them Battle, but finding they would not accept of the Challenge, remov'd his Camp, and invested *Atena*, one of their strongest Garrisons. This prov'd a difficult Siege, yet *Cæsar* at last carry'd the Place, and made a dreadful Slaughter of the Garrison, tho' it cost him many a gallant Man. Soon after, *Cæsar* besieg'd *Urbis*, and *Pompey* was Eye-Witness of the taking of it ; yet did not think fit to hazard a Battle, but March'd to a City call'd *Munda*, a place well fortify'd both by Nature and Art. Thither *Cæsar* follow'd him, and, as if this Place had been destin'd to decide his Fate, he drew up his Army in the Plains adjoining to it, and offer'd *Cæsar* Battle on equal Terms, only that he had some Advantage by the Situation of the Ground. *Cæsar*, who coveted nothing more than to dispatch the



War, readily accepted the Challenge: Having therefore drawn up his Army in Battle Array, March'd to attack the Enemy, who receiv'd his Charge with equal Courage; and after casting and waiting all their Piles, Darts and Javelins on both Sides, they join'd so close, that it was Arms to Arms and Foot to Foot; and continu'd thus for several Hours together, so that it was not known to which Side the Victory wou'd lean. At last, *Cæsar* perceiving his Men give Ground, rush'd in among them, and cry'd with a loud Voice: *What! after defeating the Father, will you deliver me up to these young Boys?* meaning *Pompey's* Sons. This Reproach was in a minute Echoid among all the Soldiers, and animated them to that Degree, that coming, as it were, fresh to the Charge, they laid about them with so much Fury, and carry'd all before them, that *Pompey* and all his Forces after a dreadful Slaughter, were oblig'd to consult their Safety by the help of their Heels, leaving their Camp and Baggage in the Hands of the Conqueror, together with three thousand slain on the Field of Battle, and all their Eagles, Colours and *Pompey's* *Fasces*. This Battle *Cæsar* own'd to have been the most desperate that ever he fought: For if we believe *Plutarch* and *Appian*, *Cæsar* declar'd, that in other Battles he fought for Victory; but in this, for his Life.

After this Battle, *Cæsar* had little else to do, but to receive the Submission of the Cities and Places that had taken up Arms for the two Brothers; *Cn. Pompey* the elder Brother, being soon after taken by *Cæsar's* Soldiers, and put to the Sword: So that concluding now, he had put an End to his Labours, for the Rest of his Days; Having in a manner Conquer'd all the World, return'd to *Rome* to enjoy the Fruits of his Conquests.



### C H A P. III.

*Of the Affairs of the Romans from the Perpetual Dictatorship of Julius Cæsar, to the forty second Year of Augustus Cæsar.*



WHEN *Cæsar* was come to the City, he dimitted his Dictatorship, and appointed *Q. Fabius Maximus*, and *C. Trebonius* Consuls for the three Months of Year that were then unexpir'd; the latter of whom, happening to die on the last Day of the Year, *Caninius Rebilus* succeeded for the rest of the Day: Whereupon *Cicero*, who hated *Cæsar* in his Heart, tho' he durst not let his Hatred appear, and who was very fond of a good Jest, punning upon *Rebilus*, call'd him a *most Vigilant Consul*; because he never slept during the whole time of his *Consulat*, which was but a few Hours. About this time, *Julius Cæsar* reform'd the Computation of the Year, if we credit some Au-  
thors;



thors; for others maintain this Reformation was made before he undertook the Expedition of *Spain*: But whether it was before or after, is not Material, since it is certain, he Model'd the Year, and put it upon the Foot that it stood since his Days to that of Pope *Gregory* the 13th. and which we to this Day follow; whence it is call'd the *Julian* Account. Now *Cæsar's* Reformation consisted in this: He observ'd, by the help of his Mathematicians, that the Periodical Course of the Sun, was not perform'd in three hundred sixty five Days precisely, as *Numa Pompilius* imagin'd; but in three hundred sixty five Days and six Hours. So that Computing the time that had pass'd from *Numa's* Correction to his own Days, he Model'd the Year accordingly, and order'd that the said six Hours shou'd every fourth Year make a Day; whence this Year was call'd *Annus Intercalaris*, or *Leap-Year*, or *Annus Bissextilis*, there being one Day more in it than in any of the other 3 Years: And to the End that the same Number of Days might always hold in the other Months of the Year as before, this New Day was always added to the Month of *February*, so as the twenty fourth and twenty fifth Days of it every fourth Year shou'd be inscrib'd, *Sexto Calendas Martij*; whence that Year was call'd *Annus Bissextilis*, as was said above. To proceed.

The Senate reflecting upon the Great and Wonderful Exploits perform'd by *Cæsar*, and perceiving his Modest Conduct towards all Men; what Regard he had for the Meanest Citizen, how Munificently he rewarded those that serv'd him well, and with how much Lenity he punish'd the greatest Offences; concluded they cou'd not do better than to lodge the Supream Power in his Hands; they therefore made a Decree by which they Constituted him Perpetual Dictator, and Emperor indeed, inasmuch as that Word implies the greatest Power in the Common-wealth: For the Military Affairs, and the raising of Money depended intirely upon him; and all the Magistrates were at his beck, and oblig'd by Oath not to oppose his Decrees.

The next Year, *Cæsar* was chosen a fourth time Consul together with *Mark Antony*, who being Tribune of the People, had employ'd all his Interest for his Advancement, and made a Law, changing the Name of the Month *Quintilis* into *Julius*, for *Cæsar's* Honour. Then *Cæsar* began to display his Magnificence. He instituted Publick Spectacles for the People's Diversion at vast Expences, laid the Foundation of Sumptuous Edifices and Aqueducts for the Use and Embellishment of the City; and made a Feast, like that of *Assuerus*, for the Citizens, which cost a Prodigious Sum of Money; caus'd a Statue to be made for himself, and set up in the Capitol, where stood the Statues of the seven Kings and that of *Lucius Brutus*, who banish'd them; and (which of all things created him most Enemy's) having declar'd his Intention of going in Person to subdue the *Parthians*, caus'd the *Decemviri Sacrorum* to lay, the *Sibylline* Books had prophesy'd, that the *Parthians* were not to be subdu'd but by a King. He also caus'd a Throne of Gold to be set up for him in the Middle of the Court, a Temple to be dedicated to his Name, and a Priest Consecrated to his Memory. Another thing that *Cæsar* did, help'd very much to increase the People's Jealousie, which is, that being seated in his Throne, he had not the Civility to stand up when the Senators brought him Decrees to be sign'd; whereas the Dictators and Consuls us'd to lower their Badges and Ensigns to the very People, as they pass'd by them. But what confirm'd them in their Opinion of his designing to affect Tyranny, and be Proclaim'd King, was,



that as he return'd from offering Sacrifice at a Solemn Feast, some of his Friends in the midst of the Publick Acclamation of the People, having put a Laurel Crown upon the Head of his Statue; he caus'd two of the Tribunes to be cast into Prison for pulling it off. 'Tis true, he seem'd to refuse the Name of King, for being saluted of the People by that Name, he answer'd, *that he was Cæsar and not King*. But this, the Men that were Zealous for the Common-wealth, construd to be only a Copy of his Countenance, and therefore enter'd immediately into a Confederacy to cut him off. *Brutus* and *Cassius* were pitch'd upon, as the fittest to head the Party; but all the Difficulty was how to bring in *Brutus*, who was, at this time, highly favour'd by *Cæsar*. He had pardon'd him for carrying Arms against him, at the Battle of *Pharsalia*; and not long before, *Cassius* and He being Competitors for the Office of *Prætor*, *Cæsar* decided the Matter in Favour of *Brutus*: So that it was look'd upon as dangerous to let him know, much less to attempt the bringing him into the Confederacy. However, such of them as were acquainted with *Brutus* his Temper, and reflected that he was descended from *Lucius Brutus*, who was the Chief Instrument in banishing the Kings, did not despair of compassing their End; and therefore took this Method: For several Days, as *Brutus* sat down to hear Causes, he found a Billet on his Tribunal Seat, in which these Words were Written: *Dormis Brute, &c. Thou sleepest Brutus: Thou art not of the Blood of Lucius Brutus*. Again, at the Foot of the Statue of *Lucius Brutus*, an other Billet was fasten'd with these Words: *Lucius Brutus was the first Consul, for banishing the Kings from Rome, and Cæsar was made King for banishing the Consuls*.

*Cassius*, who had not spoke to *Brutus* since the Contention about the *Prætorship*, perceiving by *Brutus* his Countenance, that the said Billets had some Effect upon him, resolv'd to make him a Visit: Accordingly being come to his House, *Brutus* receiv'd him with uncommon Civilities; whereupon *Cassius* ask'd him, *if he design'd to be in the Senate House on the Ides of March*. For says he, *those who love Cæsar better than the Common-Wealth, are resolv'd to demand that the Title of King be given to him that Day*. *Brutus* answer'd, *if it be so I shall not be there*. But what if we be call'd upon reply'd *Cassius*? Then answer'd *Brutus*, *I will be there to let the World see, that my Life is not dearer to me than my Liberty*. This was enough to convince *Cassius* of his Intention; and therefore disclos'd all the Conspiracy, and the Parties concern'd, took Measures with him for the Execution of their Design; and agreed to Murder *Cæsar* in the Senate House on the Ides of *March*.

In the mean Time, some of *Cæsar's* Friends apprehending there was some Mischief a hatching against him, took Notice of a certain Great Man, who was more than ordinary Familiar with him; and pray'd him to beware of such Familiarity: To whom *Cæsar* made answer, *That he had nothing to fear from Men of his Temper*, For (added he) *your Fat fair Countenanc'd Men, have no Gall in their Hearts, but I will tell you whom I fear: These two Meager-Fac'd Men, meaning Brutus and Cassius: However (contin'd he) it is better die quickly with Quiet, than live long and be always in Apprehension of Death*.

The fatal Day being come, *Cæsar* was no sooner seated on his Throne in the Senate House, when the Boldest of the Conspirators, earnestly intreated him to recal from Banishment the Brother of *Metellus Cimber*, one of the Conspirators; and upon *Cæsar's* Refusal, this *Metellus* took hold of his

Robes,



Robes, and *Casca* another of them, wounded him in the Back; whereupon *Cæsar* turn'd about, seiz'd upon *Casca's* Sword, cry'd out: *Traitor what art thou doing?* And began to defend himself; but having receiv'd many Wounds, and seeing *Brutus* coming with a naked Sword to pierce his Breast, he look'd upon him and said: *Et tu Brute!* Then he drew his Robe over his Face, fell down on his Knees and abandon'd himself to the Rage of his Murderers, who gave him three and twenty Wounds; and even design'd to drag his Body thro' the Streets and to cast it into the *Tyber*; but being apprehensive, *Mark Anthony* and *Lepidus* the General of the Horse, who, it seems, were the only two Friends *Cæsar* had among the Senators on that accursed Day, and who by the Artifices of *Brutus* came too Late, wou'd be reveng'd on them, they fled to the Capitol and secur'd themselves, leaving *Cæsar's* Corps in the Senate House, which was carry'd by his Servants to his Palace, and in two Days after interr'd with great Pomp in the *Campus Martius*.

Thus ended his Days the Great *Julius Cæsar*, the Terror and Wonder of the World; the next in every Degree to *Alexander*, if in any Thing inferior to him: For he had scarce any of *Alexander's* bad Qualities, and possess'd all his good Ones: As Fortunate and Bold as *Alexander*; as Great, nay a greater Conqueror than *Alexander*; as patient of Labour and Toil as *Alexander*; as vigilant in Danger and as prodigal of his Life as *Alexander*. But as to *Alexander's* immoderate Passion, which put him often upon destroying his best Friends, his unmeasurable Ambition, his Drunkenness, his Rage and Fury upon the least Contradiction, and his insatiable Revenge, *Cæsar* was a perfect Stranger to all these Vices. In a Word, were it not that *Cæsar* seem'd to want, upon some desperate Occasions, that Presence of Mind, which *Alexander* was always Master of, and which is an Ingredient of no small Value in the Character of a General, I shou'd not be afraid to pronounce *Cæsar* the greater Man of the two.

Now, as to the Time *Julius Cæsar* reign'd or govern'd the *Roman Republick*, if we Compute it from his first Consulship, which happen'd in the first Year of the one hundred and eightieth *Olympiad*, as *Varro* and *Diodorus Siculus* inform us, to the Time of his Death, which fell upon the first Year of the 183d. *Olympiad*, we shall find just twelve Years; to which if we add the two Years that past between the Reducing of the Kingdom of the *Seleucidae* to a *Roman* Province by *Pompey*; which fell on the second Year of the one hundred and seventy ninth *Olympiad* and *Cæsar's* Consulat, we shall have fourteen Years compleat for the Reign or Government of *Pompey* and *Julius Cæsar*.

When *Cæsar's* Death was nois'd in the City, *Mark Antony*, who, one wou'd think, shou'd immediately Resent his great Patron's barbarous Murder; having *Lepidus* the Master of the Horse and all the Army at Command, as being himself Lieutenant General and Tribune of the People, did not seem to be in any wise concern'd for it; whether it was that he observ'd all the Senate and People averse to *Cæsar*, or that he was not sorry he was taken out of the Way to make Room for his own Ambitious Designs: But whatever the Matter was, *Antony* caus'd only his Will to be read Publickly, and took no farther Notice of his Death at present. By this Will it appear'd, that *Cæsar* had adopted *Caius Octavius* his Sister *Julia's* Grandson, and left him his Heir and Name; that by the same Will *Brutus* the Chief of the Conspirators was in Remainder to *Octavius*, or, as they term'd it in those Days, Heir of the second Form; That he bequeath'd a very



Considerable Legacy to the People of *Rome*, and appointed most of the Conspirators as Tutors, and Guardians to his Children, in case he shou'd have any.

*Caius Octavius*, the Son of *Caius Octavius*, and of *Accia*, the Daughter of *M. Antius Balbus* and of *Julia* the Sister of *Caesar*, was at this Time studying Philosophy in *Apolonia*, a City in *Illyricum*; and being inform'd, that *Caesar* was Murder'd, and had left him his Heir, came immediately to *Rome*, where he expected that *Antony* wou'd assist him, in Revenging the Death of his Grand-Uncle; but when he went to wait of him, *Antony* despising his Youth, receiv'd him Disdainfully; and refus'd to advance him the Money which he was to give the People of *Rome* according to *Caesar's* Will; whereupon he sold all his own Heritage, paid all *Caesar's* Legacies, and by this Means highly ingratiated himself with the People.

Soon after, it was discover'd, that *Antony* minded nothing but his own Interest, and took Measures visibly tending to the Engrossing of the Supream Power into his own Hands, and the making of himself King. Whereupon the Senate loaded *Octavius Caesar* (for so was he to be call'd by the Will of *Julius Caesar*) with Marks of Honour and Respect, designing to make use of Him in opposition to the Tyrant, as they term'd *Antony*: But when he had defeated *Antony* at the Battle fought at *Modena*, and compell'd him to desist from his Extravagant Pretensions, most of the Senators that were formerly of *Pompey's* Faction, slighted and affronted him. This surprising Conduct of the Senators put *Caesar* upon taking other Measures. Accordingly he made a Compact with *Antony* and *Lepidus*, who by this Time had conceiv'd a great Idea of his Parts, in which it was agreed, that they shou'd erect a *Triumvirat*, and be mutually assisting to one another in destroying their Enemies: But the greatest Scruple in the Articles of this Agreement was the Murder of *Cicero* without which *Antony* wou'd do nothing, because *Cicero* had rail'd against him in his Harangues, after an outrageous Manner. *Caesar* indeed stood out two Days, but at last consented to *Antony's* Motion. Then the *Triumviri* banish'd a great many Senators and Roman Knights under pretence of Resenting *Julius Caesar's* Death, and about three hundred of the same order were led in Chains to an Altar in the Temple dedicated to *Caesar's* Memory, and sacrific'd to his Ghost, among whom, *M. Tullius Cicero*, the great Pattern and Glory of the Roman Eloquence, was one. I had almost forgot to relate, that when the Case of the Murder of *Julius Caesar* came before the Senate, *Cicero* made such Eloquent and perswasive Speeches in Favour of the *Assassins*, that the Senate, which was then well enough pleas'd to have him cut off, not only pardon'd, but also assign'd them Provinces, as the Reward of their Perfidy. *Brutus* and *Cassius* had all *Greece* and *Asia* given to them, and were the only Men of Consequence that stood up for the Republick, while the *Triumviri* were killing and Ravaging all *Italy*, on pretence of *Caesar's* Murder. These *Octavius Caesar*, *Antony* and *Lepidus* thought fit to cut off, as being the only obstacle in their Way: And however difficult the Task seem'd to be, considering that *Brutus* and *Cassius* had twenty Legions of Foot, twenty thousand Horse and two hundred tall Ships at Command, together with a vast Treasure; yet the Resolution was taken to fight them. Accordingly *Caesar* and *Antony* March'd into *Greece* with all the Veteran Legions of *Julius Caesar*, which they cou'd make up, together with a great Number of new Levies, and engag'd *Brutus* and *Cassius* at a Town in *Thessaly*, call'd *Philippi*. That Wing of the Army commanded by *Cassius* was soon defeated and put to flight by *Antony*



ny. *Cassius* stood upon a Hill, and sent a Messenger to bring him Word how Matters went with *Brutus* in the other ; but the Messenger not coming back so soon as he expected, he order'd one of his Servants call'd *Pindarus* to cut off his Head, which was but just done, when the Messenger came back and reported, that *Brutus* had defeated *Cæsar*. The next Day *Brutus* caus'd *Cassius* his Corpse to be interr'd, lest such a sight might discourage his Soldiers, and then pursu'd *Antony*, whom he had hem'd in so close that he was necessitated either to Fight or Starve. *Antony* chose the first. Accordingly he drew out his Army, and offer'd Battle, which *Brutus* readily accepted. In this Engagement *Romans* against *Romans* fought so desperately, that laying aside their Darts and Piles, they disputed every Inch of Ground, Sword in Hand, with unparallel'd Rage and Fury. At last, *Brutus* seeing his Men give Way, routed and put to flight, kill'd himself, and with him fell the Form of Popular Government,

After this Victory, *Mark Antony* March'd into *Asia*, in Order to subdue the *Parthians*, who had not as yet, submitted to the *Roman* Yoke; and *Cæsar* being sick was forc'd to return to *Italy*. *Antony* pass'd thro' *Greece*, and having gone as far as *Cilicia*, in his Way to *Parthia*, was met by several Kings and Princes, who came to wait upon him, and to pay their Homage : And being inform'd that *Cleopatra* had given Assistance to *Cassius* in Order to carry on the War against him, he summon'd her to appear before him to give an Account of her Conduct. This cunning Gypsie, whose Beauty and Charms had captivated so many great Men before, even the Great *Julius Cæsar*, doubted not to make *Antony* carry her Chains ; being well appriz'd how much his Inclinations were bent that Way. She therefore set out from *Alexandria* with such Pomp and Magnificence, as was never Recorded of any other Woman either before or after. She sail'd down the River *Cydnus* in a Ship laid over with Gold, whose Velvet Sails were dy'd with *Tyrian* Purple, the Cordage and Shrouds whereof were made of the finest Silk, with Nymphs, Nereids and *Cupid's* Artfully dress'd and playing about them : The Oars, pure Silver; and seem'd, as they struck the Water, to beat the time for the Musick, that Charm'd her Ears, as she sail'd along. Besides, a great Train of Young and Beautiful Damsels stood on each side of the Ship with Baskets in their Hands full of Incense and Sweet *Arabian* Spices, which they burnt and cast out on the Banks of the River all the Way, perfuming them in a Charming Manner ; while *Cleopatra* herself sat, *Venus* like, on the Deck, in a Throne of Gold under a Canopy of the same Mettal, curiously wrought by the most exquisite Artists, and set out with all the Advantage the finest Clothes, and the Richest Jewels cou'd add to her great Beauty.

When she came in this Pompous Equipage to the Place where *Mark Antony* had appointed to see her, and had made her Complement to him ; he was so amaz'd, that he cou'd not well tell which to admire most, her Beauty and Equipage, or the Grace and Charms of her Tongue : In a Word, he was so smitten with her Love, that he laid aside all Care of the War, and went along with her to *Alexandria*, where he gave himself up to all the Pleasures which so Artful a Woman cou'd invent, or bestow upon him. He continu'd in this Lethargy till his Wife *Fulvia* had Written Letters to him, by which he was inform'd, that *Cæsar* had driven her, and his Friends out of *Italy*. This rouz'd him from his Dream, made him hasten into *Syria*, and think of the *Parthian* War : But being again solicited by *Fulvia*, he turn'd toward *Italy* with two hundred Ships. In his Voy-



age, one of his Friends, who had set out from *Italy*, inform'd him, that *Fulvia* had been the Sole Cause of all these Troubles in hopes that a War in *Italy* wou'd draw him away from *Cleopatra*. But *Fulvia* hastening to meet him in *Asia*, dy'd at *Sicyon* in *Greece*. *Antony* hereupon came to *Italy*, in Order to adjust Matters with *Cæsar*, where their common Friends brought *Cæsar* and him to an Accommodation, by which it was agreed, that the whole *Roman* Empire shou'd be divided; *Antony* have the *Eastern* Part, from the *Ionian* Sea; *Cæsar*, *Italy*, *Gaul*, *Spain* and the Islands; and *Lepidus*, *Africk*. To Confirm this Agreement, *Antony* Marry'd *Octavia* *Cæsar's* Sister and then sent *Ventidius*, one of his Lieutenant Generals with the greatest Part of his Army to repress the Insults of the *Parthians*, he himself following him soon after with his Wife *Octavia*. Being arriv'd at *Athens* in *Greece*, he receiv'd Letters from *Ventidius*, by which he inform'd him, that he had routed the *Parthians* in three pitch'd Battles.

Soon after another Quarrel arising betwixt *Cæsar* and him, he sail'd to *Italy* with a Fleet of three hundred Sail and took along with him his Wife *Octavia*, who so dexterously manag'd her Brother and Husband, that all Matters were again adjusted. Then *Antony* sail'd back for *Asia* leaving *Octavia* behind him in *Rome*.

While *Antony* was on his Voyage to *Asia*, *Cæsar* took up Arms to suppress *Sextus Pompey*, the only surviving Son of *Pompey* the Great, who, at this time, had possess'd himself of *Sicily* with a great Fleet, and considerable Land Forces; and after some light Skirmishes, routed him, so that he was forc'd to fly to *Phrygia*, where he was kill'd by some of *Antony's* Friends. In a few Months after, *Lepidus*, not Content with his Portion of the Empire, endeavour'd to possess himself of *Sicily*; but his own Men betray'd him into the Hands of *Cæsar*, who divested him of all Authority: And thus was one of the Heads of the *Triumviral* Conspiracy lopp'd off.

When *Antony* arriv'd in *Syria*, (his former fatal Love for *Cleopatra* breaking out again,) he sent *Fonteius Capito* to fetch her thither; and besides what he gave her before, made her an Additional Present of *Phœnicia*, *Cælosyria*, *Cyprus*, Part of *Cilicia* and Part of *Judea*, with the *Nabatbean Arabia*. These Profusions to *Cleopatra*, and *Antony's* Dotage on her, gave no small disgust to *Cæsar* and the Senate, who look'd upon these Kingdoms to be the Fruit of the Blood and Sweat of their Troops: However they did not think fit to resent the Matter as yet; till *Antony* gave *Cæsar* fresh Provocations, that cou'd not be well put up. He sent *Cleopatra* back into *Egypt*, and March'd against the *Parthians* at the Head of one hundred Thousand Men Horse and Foot, which made all *Asia*, as far as the *Indies*, tremble; and yet by his Dotage on *Cleopatra*, and his eager longing to be early with her, lost all the Advantages he might reasonably hope for from so Powerful an Army; doing every thing out of Order, whilst he did every thing in haste. In short, after some light Skirmishes and Rencounters, he made a Truce with the *Parthians*, and March'd into *Armenia*, and by the time he had made twenty seven Days March, he found upon a Review of his Army, that he had lost upwards of twenty four Thousand Men, partly by the Fatigue of the Way, and partly by the Ambushes of the *Parthians*, who, Notwithstanding the Truce, lay in wait for him, wherever they cou'd attack his Forces with Advantage.

Having pass'd thro' *Armenia*, and being come to a City call'd *Leucecome*, where he expected *Cleopatra* with the utmost Impatience, Ambassadors came to him from the King of the *Medes* offering to enter into a League with



with him against the *Parthians*. *Antony* accepted of their Proposals, return'd into *Armenia* and began to renew the War.

*Octavia* being desirous to see her Husband, came, about this Time, as far as *Athens* in her Way, and sent to know where she might see him. *Antony* sent her Orders not to move from thence till she shou'd hear further from him; being unwilling she shou'd trouble his Amours with *Cleopatra*; who, upon Notice of *Octavia's* Arrival at *Athens*, pretended to dye; and abstain'd from Meat, counterfeiting a Sickness which nothing cou'd Cure but *Antony's* Presence. *Antony* vanquish'd by these Arts, laid aside all Thoughts of his Expedition, and return'd to *Cleopatra*. *Octavia* his Wife, on the other Hand, seeing her self slighted, return'd to *Rome*. *Cæsar* being full of Resentment, for having his Sister thus slighted for a Mistress, publickly accus'd *Antony* to the People, who were already not a little prejudic'd against him, upon the Account of *Cleopatra*. *Antony* upon Notice hereof resolves to be before hand with *Cæsar*. Accordingly he prepares a Fleet of five hundred Gallies, one hundred thousand Foot, and twelve thousand Horse, and comes to Anchor together with his belov'd *Cleopatra* before *Actium*, a City in *Acarnania*, whilst his Land Forces lay encamp'd near that Town.

*Cæsar*, on the other Side, draws together his Forces, crosses over to *Greece*, and with two hundred and fifty stout Gallies attacks *Antony's* Fleet at *Actium*, which was neither well Mann'd nor in good Order for Fighting; and whilst he holds a doubtful Fight, *Cleopatra* with sixty Gallies Rows away, whom *Antony* shamefully follows Home to *Alexandria*, leaving his Ships engag'd, and his Army on Land entire. *Cæsar* soon Defeats the Rest; and *Antony's* Land Forces seeing themselves abandon'd by their General, submits to *Cæsar*. When the News of all these Disasters were brought to *Antony*; he did not seem to be any more concern'd than if he had been Conqueror; but fell again to his former Revellings and criminal Pleasures with *Cleopatra*, changing only the Name of their Sports and Revels: For whereas they gave them before the Name of the *Inimitable Livers*, they now call them, *The Diers together*.

*Cæsar* having spent the Rest of the Campaign in settling the Affairs of *Greece*, return'd to *Rome*, and early in the Spring set out for *Egypt*, where landing his Forces, he attack'd *Pelussyum* and carry'd it. In the mean Time, *Cleopatra* foreseeing the Impending Evils convey'd all her Treasures and Jewels into a Sumptuous Monument which she had built for herself nigh the Temple of *Isis*; and being Morally assur'd, *Cæsar* wou'd carry her in Chains to *Rome*, to Grace his Triumph, resolv'd to make herself away, before she shou'd suffer such a Disgrace: In Order hereunto she made Experiment of several Sorts of Poyson upon Criminal Persons, and found that those which made a quick Dispatch were very tormenting, and those that were easie, slow; then she made Tryal of several Venemous Creatures, and found nothing comparable to the bite of an Asp, which gave Death by a gentle sleep, without Apparent Pains or Convulsions.

At last *Antony*, seeing *Cæsar* almost at the Gates, awak'd out of his Dream, and began to suspect *Cleopatra*, whereupon she retir'd to her Monument, and sent him Word, she had kill'd herself. *Antony* hearing this, cry'd out: *Alas fond Antony! Why this Delay, since she is dead from whom thou derivest thy Life?*

Then sending for a Servant call'd *Eros*, order'd him to pierce his Heart with his Sword; but *Eros* desiring him to turn his Back, kills himself; which *Antony* perceiving, said with a doleful Voice: *Thou hast taught me*  
H h h h h h Eros,



Eros, *what I have to do*. Then casting himself upon the Point of his Sword, put an End to his Life. *Cleopatra* hearing *Antony* was dead, caus'd his Corpse to be brought to her, and by the help of her Maids laid it up in her Monument. Then betaking herself to her former Artifices, Mutter'd up all her Charms and Graces, in Hopes she might Captivate *Octavius Cæsar* like the Rest; but when she found by his Grum Countenance, that he intended her for to Grace his Triumph, she resolv'd to rob him of his Prey: To that End, she apply'd Asps to her Breasts, and so slept away her Life, desiring no other Favour of *Cæsar*, but that he wou'd be so kind as to see her laid in the same Monument with her belov'd *Antony*, which *Cæsar* readily granted, highly extolling her Bravery, and Greatness of Soul.

*Antony* and *Cleopatra* being thus taken out of the Way, *Cæsar*, to the End, there might be no Embers of Sedition left in *Egypt*, caus'd *Cæsario* the Son of *Cleopatra* by *Julius Cæsar* and *Antyllus*, the eldest Son of *Antony* by *Fulvia*, to be put to Death. Then he turn'd his Arms against the *Parthians*, and compell'd them to accept of such Terms of Peace, as he was willing to grant them. He also stifled a dangerous Sedition rais'd in *Spain*, and Notwithstanding that all the World seem'd to bow down to him, and obey his Dictates; yet he behav'd himself with so much Moderation and Temper, that the People and Senate of *Rome*, did Glory in putting all their Authority and Power into his Hands, as into that of a Common Father. He shut up thrice the Temple of *Janus*, which during the whole Course of the *Roman* Empire had been shut but twice before: This being a Ceremony us'd when there was neither Foreign nor Domestick War upon their Hands.

The *Roman* Senate was so acknowledging of *Cæsar*'s true Love for his Country, and of his tender Care of the Publick-weal, that they sat in Council upon devising a more Honourable Name for him than *Cæsar*; and after proposing many Illustrious Titles or Additions to that of *Cæsar*, *Manacius Plancus* pitch'd upon that of *Augustus*, which all of them approv'd off. Then they made a Law which the Lawyers call *Lex Regia*, transferring the whole Authority of the Senate and People to him. All this did not extol nor depress the Mind of *Augustus Cæsar*. His Care of the Fame and Glory of the *Roman* Empire was still the same. He always encourag'd and bountifully rewarded those who discharg'd their Duty well; and seldom chastis'd any without some Mixture of Mercy, except the Crime had been Enormous, and Maliciously perpetrated. He made Peace and Plenty reign over all the Empire, which gave *Virgil* Occasion to say, the Golden Age had return'd again, and, in a Manner, to declare, the Coming of the SAVIOUR of the World was at Hand, as indeed it was,

*Ultima Cumæi venit jam Carminis Ætas,  
Magnus ab integro Sæclorum nascitur Ordo.  
Jam redit & Virgo, redeunt Saturnia Regna:  
Jam nova Progenies Cælo demittitur Alto.*

*The Last great Age, foretold by Sacred Rhymes,  
Renews its finish'd Course, Saturnian Times  
Rowl round again, and mighty Years, begun  
From their first Orb, in Radiant Circles run.  
The base degenerate Iron Off-spring Ends;  
A Golden Progeny from Heaven descends.*

Dryden's  
Translat.

Au-



*Augustus* brought Learning and Literature, Arts and Sciences to the highest Pitch of Perfection; and bountifully bestow'd his Favours upon Men of bright Parts. *Virgil* and *Horace* he had in great Esteem, and rewarded accordingly; and no doubt *Ovid* wou'd have shar'd in his Munificence, had not his own Vanity and Indiscretion oblig'd the good Emperor to banish him. *Augustus* was not only a Lover of Ingenious Men, but also a good Judge of their Performance. Of this we have, among many Instances, one which is very remarkable. A certain *Greek* Poet made a very scurvy *Epigram* in Commendation of *Augustus*, and having presented it to him, *Augustus* took Notice of the Incoherence of the Piece, and how little it deserv'd to be regarded; which when he had declar'd to the Author, who had still the Impudence of a bad Poet; he cou'd not get shut of him, but was still persecuted by him, praying he wou'd accept of his Gift. *Augustus*, who was not of a Humour to encourage the Authors of such naughty Pieces, took Pen in Hand, and wrote an *Epigram ex Tempore* in Commendation of the Poet to pay him in his own Coin. The Poet took the Piece, and as he read it, gave broad Signs, by his Nods and Gestures how well he lik'd it, and then put his Hand into his Purse, took out the few Pence that were in it, and presented them to *Augustus*, assuring him before all the Company, if he had any more, he wou'd not stretch his Hand with so small a Gift. This put all the Court a laughing, and *Augustus*, who very well understood the Drift of the Poet, order'd him two thousand five hundred Crowns.

As *Augustus* was kind and bountiful to Men of Parts, so was he no less affable and easy of Access to the meanest of his People. Of this we have a particular Instance in his Conduct to a *Veteran* Common Soldier. This poor Man having a Cause depending in one of the Courts, whereof his little Living depended; and having no Money to Fee a Lawyer, went strait to *Augustus*, and pray'd him to plead his Cause: *Augustus* happening to be very buisy at this Time, order'd an able Lawyer to serve the Poor Man: Whereupon the Soldier open'd his Bosom, and said with a loud Voice: *Ah Cæsar, these Scars and Wounds shew that I did not serve you by Proxy, when you were in Danger at the Battle of Actium!* *Augustus* was so touch'd with this Modest Reproof, that he went strait with the Soldier and pleaded his Cause.

But what endear'd *Augustus* most of all to the People of *Rome* was his extraordinary Care of their great City. He rifled both Sea and Land to embellish it; sent for, from all Parts, the most exquisite Architects and Artists the World cou'd afford; brought thither from *Egypt*, *Asia* and other Countrys an Immense Quantity of Marble and costly Timber; threw down the greatest Part of the City, and built in its Room stately Palaces; publick Edifices, Theatres, Temples, Gates, Porticoes, Aquæ-Ducts, Fountains, Cisterns, and an hundred other Things both for Ornament and Convenience; the whole suitable to the Grandeur and Dignity of the Metropolis of the World. So that he might without Vanity say of *Rome* what he did at the Hour of his Death. *Lateritiam inveni, Marmoream Reliqui. I found Rome made of Brick, I left it made of Marble.* This indeed made *Augustus Cæsar* the Darling of the People, the Light of their Eyes, and the Breath of their Nostrils. And thus did he continue to do good to all Mankind in profound Peace and Plenty to the End of his Days.

H h h h h 2

But



But forasmuch as I have propos'd to my self to proceed no further in this Work, than to the time that the Son of GOD appear'd in the Flesh : I shall conclude with a remarkable Passage of this Great Emperor recorded by the Evangelist St Luke, 2. 1. *Exiit Edictum a Cæsare Augusto ut describeretur Unversus Orbis.* There went out an Edict from Cæsar Augustus that the whole World shou'd be enroll'd; that is, that the whole Roman Empire, which was (in the common Acceptation in thole Days) taken for the whole World, shou'd be enroll'd, in Order to pay the Tax that was to be gather'd every *Lustrum* or fifth Year : And forasmuch as this Sort of Tax was a Poll, or laid on Men's Heads, and that the Number of Men was Subject to encrease or diminish, this enrolling was frequently made either by a Decree of the Senate, or an Edict publish'd by the Emperor for the time being. *Augustus Cæsar* having then Issu'd an Edict to this Purpose, *Joseph*, who was of the House of *David*, and of the Town of *Bethlehem*, went, Pursuant to this Edict, to the said Town to be enroll'd, together with his Spouse the Blessed Virgin *Mary*, who at this time, carry'd in her Sacred Womb, our LORD JESUS CHRIST, the SAVIOUR of the World; and was there deliver'd of Him. Now this Edict was publish'd in the forty second Year of the Reign of *Augustus Cæsar*, computing the time from the Death of *Julius Cæsar*; in the Consulship of *Cornelius Lentulus* and *Valerius Messalinus*, in the one hundred and ninety fourth *Olympiad*, in the seven hundred and fifty second Year of the Building of *Rome*; in the five hundred and fortieth Year from the Captivity of *Babylon*, and in the five Thousand eight hundred and twenty seventh Year from the Creation of the World, as will appear by the following Chronological Tables.





A Chronological Table of the Years of the Reigns of the Rulers of the Jews, from the Captivity of Babylon to the Birth of CHRIST, parallel'd with those of the Kings of the Medes and Persians, of Asia and Syria; and the Roman Emperors to the forty second Year of Augustus Cæsar.

The Rulers of the Jews.

The Kings of the Medes and Persians.

	Years.		Years, M.
The Captivity of <i>Babylon</i> lasted	70	<i>Astiages</i> reign'd after the Cap-	} 31
<i>Zorobabel</i> rul'd	32	tivity of <i>Babylon</i>	
<i>Refa</i>	46	<i>Cyrus</i>	29
<i>John</i>	40	<i>Cambyfes</i>	07 6
<i>Judas</i>	14	<i>Smerdes</i> the Magician	00 6
<i>Joseph</i> the 1 <sup>st</sup> .	07	<i>Darius Hystaspes</i>	36
<i>Semei</i>	11	<i>Xerxes</i>	20
<i>Matthias</i> the 1 <sup>st</sup> .	12	<i>Artaxerxes Longimanus</i>	40
<i>Maat</i>	09	<i>Darius Nothus</i>	19
<i>Nagge</i>	10	<i>Artaxerxes Mnemon</i>	43
<i>Helli</i>	08	<i>Artaxerxes Ochus</i>	23
<i>Nabum</i>	07	<i>Arfames</i>	03
<i>Amos</i>	14	<i>Darius Codomanus</i>	06
<i>Matthias</i> the 2 <sup>d</sup> .	10	<i>Alexander</i> the Great, after the	} 05
<i>Joseph</i> the 2 <sup>d</sup> .	60	Defeat of <i>Darius</i>	
<i>Joannes Hircanus</i> the 1 <sup>st</sup> .	17	The Kings of Syria.	
An Interregnum of	03	After the Death of <i>Alexander</i> ,	} 12
<i>Jonathan</i>	19	an Interregnum of	
<i>Simon</i>	08	<i>Seleucus Nicator</i>	30
<i>Joannes Hircanus</i> the 2 <sup>d</sup> .	30	<i>Demetrius</i> the 1 <sup>st</sup> .	17
<i>Aristobulus</i>	01	<i>Antiochus Soter</i>	19
<i>Alexander Jannæus</i>	27	<i>Antiochus Theos</i>	15
<i>Alexandra</i>	09	<i>Seleucus Callinicus</i>	20
<i>Hircanus</i> the 3 <sup>d</sup> .	40	<i>Seleucus Ceraunus</i>	03
<i>Herodes</i>	36	<i>Antiochus Magnus</i>	36
		<i>Antiochus Epiphanes</i>	12
		<i>Antiochus Eupator</i>	02
		<i>Demetrius</i> the 2 <sup>d</sup>	10
		<i>Alexander Balas</i>	06
		<i>Demetrius</i> the 3 <sup>d</sup>	02
		<i>Antiochus Sedetes</i>	09
		<i>Alexander Zabinus</i>	01
		<i>Demetrius</i> the 4 <sup>th</sup>	04
		<i>Antiochus Gryphus</i>	06
		<i>Antiochus Cizicenus</i>	18
		The Roman Emperors	
		<i>Pompey</i> and <i>Julius Cæsar</i>	14
		<i>Augustus Cæsar</i>	41 11
Total.	540		Total. 541 11

The Age of the World 5827 Years, as will appear by the following Table.

liiii

A



## A

*Chronological Table of the whole Six Ages contain'd in this History, by which it appears, how exactly the Computation of the Septuagint agrees with that of Prophane History.*

## First AGE.

	Years
<i>Adam</i> , when he begat <i>Seth</i> , was	230 Old.
<i>Seth</i> , when he begat <i>Enos</i> , was	205
<i>Enos</i> , when he begat <i>Cainan</i> , was	190
<i>Cainan</i> , when he begat <i>Malaleel</i> , was	170
<i>Malaleel</i> , when he begat <i>Jared</i> , was	165
<i>Jared</i> , when he begat <i>Enoch</i> , was	162
<i>Enoch</i> , when he begat <i>Methusala</i> , was	165
<i>Methusala</i> , when he begat <i>Lamech</i> , was	187
<i>Lamech</i> , when he begat <i>Noah</i> , was	182
<i>Noah</i> begat three Sons, <i>Sem</i> , <i>Cham</i> and <i>Japhet</i> ; and, when the Deluge ended, was	600
Total	2256

## Second AGE.

	Years.
<i>Sem</i> begat <i>Arphaxad</i> after the Deluge	602
<i>Arphaxad</i> , when he begat <i>Cainan</i> , was	135 Old.
<i>Cainan</i> , when he begat <i>Sala</i> , was	130
<i>Sala</i> , when he begat <i>Heber</i> , was	130
<i>Heber</i> , when he begat <i>Phaleg</i> , was	134

Here begins the *Babylonian Monarchy*, Anno Mundi 2787.

Patriarchs.	Years.	Babylonian Kings.	Years, M.
<i>Phaleg</i> , when he begat <i>Reu</i> , was	130	<i>Nimrod</i> reign'd	300
<i>Reu</i> , when he begat <i>Serug</i> , was	132	<i>Enochus</i>	06 8
<i>Serug</i> , when he begat <i>Nachor</i> , was	130	<i>Chomababais</i>	07 6
<i>Nachor</i> , when he begat <i>Thare</i> , was	129	<i>Porus</i>	35
<i>Thare</i> , when he begat <i>Abraham</i> , was	130	<i>Nechubes</i>	43
<i>Abraham</i> , when he went into the Land of <i>Canaan</i> , was	75	<i>Abius</i>	48
		<i>Oniballus</i>	40
		<i>Chinzirus</i>	45
		<i>Merodach</i>	45
		* * * reign'd	40
		<i>Sardanapalus</i>	28
		<i>Nabius</i>	37
		<i>Parimius</i>	40
		<i>Nabonidus</i> reign'd in all 25 Years, but when <i>Abraham</i> came into the Land of <i>Canaan</i> , only	11
Total.	726	Total.	726 2

The Age of the WORLD, 3513.

Third



## Third A G E.

Patriarchs.	Years.	Babylonian Kings.	Years.
<i>Abraham</i> was in the Land of <i>Canaan</i> , when <i>Isaac</i> was born,	25	<i>Nabonadus</i> reign'd, after <i>Abraham</i> 's coming into the Land of <i>Canaan</i> ,	14
<i>Isaac</i> , when <i>Jacob</i> was born, was	60	<i>Belus</i> reign'd	55
<i>Jacob</i> , when he went down into <i>Egypt</i> , was	130	<i>Ninus</i>	52
<i>Levi</i> begat <i>Cobath</i> , after he had been in <i>Egypt</i>	17	<i>Semiramis</i>	42
<i>Cobath</i> , when he begat <i>Amram</i> , was	40	<i>Affyrian Kings.</i>	
<i>Amram</i> , when he begat <i>Moses</i> , was	78	<i>Ninyas</i>	38
<i>Moses</i> , when the Children of <i>Israel</i> left <i>Egypt</i> , was	80	<i>Arius</i>	30
		<i>Aralius</i>	40
		<i>Xerxes</i>	30
		<i>Armambres</i>	38
		<i>Belochus</i>	35
		<i>Baleus</i>	52
		<i>Sethos</i> , when <i>Moses</i> led the Children of <i>Israel</i> out of the Land of <i>Egypt</i> , reign'd only	4
Total.	430	Total.	430

The Age of the WORLD, 3943.

## Fourth A G E.

Rulers of <i>Israel</i> .	Years.	<i>Affyrian Kings.</i>	Years.
<i>Moses</i> govern'd the Children of <i>Israel</i> in the Wilderness	40	<i>Sethos</i> , after the Departure of the Children of <i>Israel</i> out of the Land of <i>Egypt</i> , reign'd	28
<i>Joshua</i> govern'd the same in the Land of <i>Canaan</i>	27	<i>Alamythus</i> reign'd	30
<i>Caleb</i> and the Elders govern'd them	50	<i>Aischalius</i>	22
An Anarchy, or Interregnum after the Death of the Elders, of	35	<i>Spherus</i>	28
The first Servitude of the <i>Israelites</i> , under <i>Chusan</i> King of <i>Syria</i> , lasted	68	<i>Alamythus</i> the 2d.	30
		<i>Sparthus</i>	42
		<i>Ajastades</i>	38
		<i>Amyntes</i>	45
<i>Othniel</i> the first Judge govern'd the <i>Israelites</i>	40	<i>Beleebus</i>	25
An Anarchy, after the Death of <i>Othniel</i> , of	33	<i>Baleterus</i>	30
The 2d Servitude of the <i>Israelites</i> under the <i>Moabites</i> lasted	18	<i>Lamprides</i>	30
<i>Abod</i> , 2d Judge govern'd the <i>Israelites</i>	80	<i>Sesares</i>	20
An Anarchy after the Death of <i>Abod</i> , of	37	<i>Lampraes</i>	30
The 3d Servitude of the <i>Israelites</i> , under <i>Jabin</i> King of the <i>Canaanites</i> , lasted	20	<i>Pamyas</i>	45
<i>Deborah</i> , 3d Judge govern'd	40	<i>Sosarmus</i>	22
An Anarchy after the Death of <i>Deborah</i> , of	18	<i>Ahybreus</i>	27
The 4th Servitude under the <i>Midianites</i> lasted	07	<i>Tentamus</i>	32
		<i>Tentus</i>	44
		<i>Arbelus</i>	42
		<i>Chalaus</i>	45
		<i>Anebus</i>	38
		<i>Babius</i>	37



Judges of Israel.		Assyrian Kings.	
	Years.		Years.
Gideon the 4th Judge	40		
Abimeleck 5th Judge	03	Thineus	30
Thola, 6th Judge	23		
Jair, 7th Judge	22		
An Anarchy after the Death of } Jair, of }	30	Dercyles	40
The 5th Servitude, under the } Philistines lasted }	18		
Jephth, 8th Judge	06	Empacmes	38
Abesan 9th Judge	07		
Abialon, 10th Judge	10		
Abdon 11th Judge	08		
An Anarchy, after the Death of } Abdon, of }	50	Laesthenes reign'd in all forty five Years, but when Solomon laid the Foundation of the Temple in Jerusalem, he had then reign'd only }	37
The 6th Servitude under the Phi- } listines lasted }	40		
Samson, 12th Judge	20		
Heli, 13th Judge	40		
The 7th Servitude, under the } Philistines, lasted }	20		
Kings of Israel.			
Samuel and Saul govern'd Israel	40		
David Reign'd	40		
Solomon, when he laid the Foun- } dation of the Temple, reign'd }	03		
Total 873		Total 873	

The Age of the WORLD, 4816.

### Fifth A G E.

Kings of Juda.		Kings of Assyria.	
	Years.		Years.
Solomon, after he had laid the } Foundation of the Temple in } Jerusalem, reign'd }	77	Laesthenes reign'd, after the Foun- } dation of the Temple was laid } in Jerusalem, }	10
Roboam	17	Perfiades reign'd	30
Abias	03	Ophrateus	21
Azi	41	Ephccares	52
Josaphat	25	Achragaves	42
Joram	08	Sardanapalus	15
Ochozias	01	Kings of the Medes:	
Athalia	06		
Joas	40	Arbaces reign'd	28
Amasias	29	Mandanes	50
Ozias, alias Azarius	52	Sofarmes	30
Joatham	16	Artecarmes	50
Achaz	16	Cardiceas	22
Ezechias	29	Artens alias Dejoces	53
Manasses	55	Phraortes	22
Amon	02	Ciaxares	40
Josias	31		
Joachas, alias Sellum reign'd only } 3 Months }			
		Joakims	



Kings of <i>Juda</i> .	Years.	Kings of the <i>Medes</i> .	Years.
<i>Joakim</i> reign'd	11	<i>Astages</i> , when the Captivity of <i>Babylon</i> happen'd, reign'd only	5
<i>Jechonias</i> reign'd only three Months, when he was car- ry'd to <i>Babylon</i> .			
<i>Sedecias</i>	11		
Total 470 6 M.		Total 470	

The Age of the WORLD, 5287.

Sixth AGE.

Rulers of the <i>Jews</i> .	Years.	Kings of the <i>Medes</i> and <i>Perfians</i> .	Years. M.
The Captivity of <i>Babylon</i> lasted	70	<i>Astages</i> reign'd after the Cap- tivity of <i>Babylon</i> .	31
<i>Zorobabel</i> rul'd	32	<i>Cyrus</i>	29
<i>Refa</i>	46	<i>Cambyses</i>	07 6
<i>John</i>	40	<i>Smerdes</i> the Magician	00 6
<i>Judas</i>	14	<i>Darius Hystaspes</i>	36
<i>Joseph</i>	07	<i>Xerxes</i>	20
<i>Semci</i>	11	<i>Artaxerxes Longimanus</i>	40
<i>Matthias</i>	12	<i>Darius Nethus</i>	19
<i>Maat</i>	09	<i>Artaxerxes Abiemen</i> .	43
<i>Nagge</i>	10	<i>Artaxerxes Ochus</i>	23
<i>Helli</i>	08	<i>Arfanes</i>	03
<i>Nabum</i>	07	<i>Darius Codomanus</i> .	06
<i>Amos</i>	14	The Greek Monarchs.	
<i>Matthias</i> the 2d	10	<i>Alexander</i> the Great	05
<i>Joseph</i>	60	An Interregnum of	12
<i>Joannes Hircanus</i>	17	<i>Seleucus Nicator</i>	30
An Interregnum of	03	<i>Demetrius</i> the 1st.	17
<i>Jonathan</i>	19	<i>Antiochus Soter</i>	19
<i>Simon</i>	08	<i>Antiochus Theos</i>	15
<i>Joannes Hircanus</i> the 2d.	30	<i>Seleucus Callinicus</i>	20
<i>Aristobulus</i>	01	<i>Seleucus Ceraunus</i>	03
<i>Alexander Janneus</i>	27	<i>Antiochus Magnus</i>	36
<i>Alexandra</i>	09	<i>Antiochus Epiphanes</i>	12
<i>Joannes Hircanus</i> the 3d	40	<i>Antiochus Eupator</i>	02
<i>Herodes</i>	36	<i>Demetrius</i> the 2d	12
		<i>Alexander Balas</i>	06
		<i>Demetrius</i> the 3d.	02
		<i>Antiochus Sidetes</i>	09
		<i>Alexander Zabinus</i>	01
		<i>Demetrius</i> the 4th	04
		<i>Antiochus Gryphus</i>	06
		<i>Antiochus Cræceus</i>	18
		Roman Emperors.	
		<i>Pompey</i> and <i>Julius Cæsar</i> .	14
		<i>Augustus Cæsar</i> , when <i>Christ</i> came to the World, reign'd	41 11
Total. 540		Total 541 11	

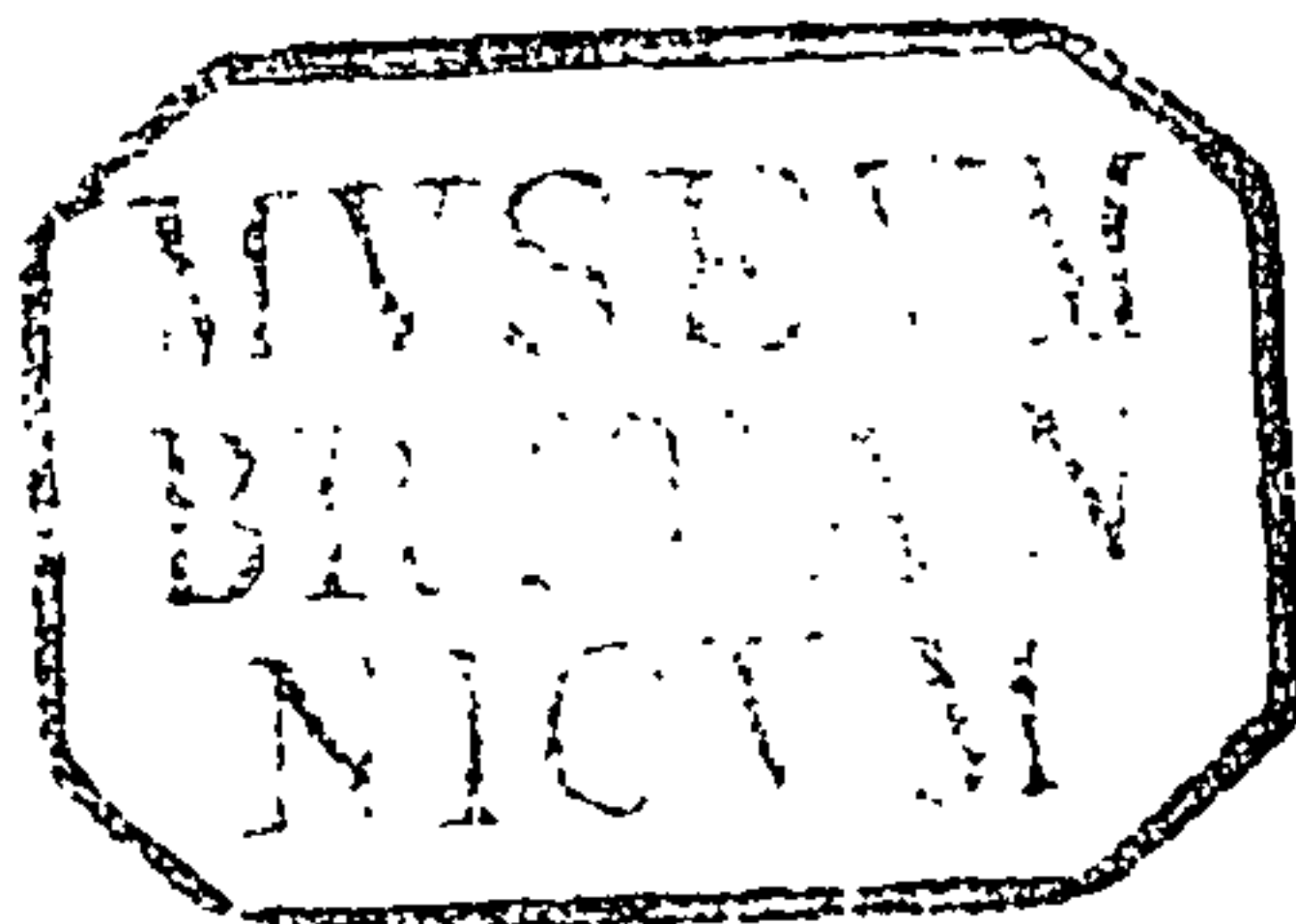


The six AGES summ'd up.

	Years.
The first AGE	2255
The second AGE	1257
The third AGE	0430
The fourth AGE	0873
The fifth AGE	0470
The sixth AGE	0540 11 Months.

---

*Total.* 5827, *Uno Minus Mense.*



*F I N I S.*